



# **Transact-SQL® User's Guide**

**Adaptive Server Enterprise  
12.5**

DOCUMENT ID: 32300-01-1250-03

LAST REVISED: August 2002

Copyright © 1989-2002 by Sybase, Inc. All rights reserved.

This publication pertains to Sybase software and to any subsequent release until otherwise indicated in new editions or technical notes. Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described herein is furnished under a license agreement, and it may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of that agreement.

To order additional documents, U.S. and Canadian customers should call Customer Fulfillment at (800) 685-8225, fax (617) 229-9845.

Customers in other countries with a U.S. license agreement may contact Customer Fulfillment via the above fax number. All other international customers should contact their Sybase subsidiary or local distributor. Upgrades are provided only at regularly scheduled software release dates. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, or translated in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, manual, optical, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Sybase, Inc.

Sybase, the Sybase logo, AccelaTrade, ADA Workbench, Adaptable Windowing Environment, Adaptive Component Architecture, Adaptive Server, Adaptive Server Anywhere, Adaptive Server Enterprise, Adaptive Server Enterprise Monitor, Adaptive Server Enterprise Replication, Adaptive Server Everywhere, Adaptive Server IQ, Adaptive Warehouse, Anywhere Studio, Application Manager, AppModeler, APT Workbench, APT-Build, APT-Edit, APT-Execute, APT-FORMS, APT-Translator, APT-Library, Backup Server, BizTracker, ClearConnect, Client-Library, Client Services, Convoy/DM, Copernicus, Data Pipeline, Data Workbench, DataArchitect, Database Analyzer, DataExpress, DataServer, DataWindow, DB-Library, dbQueue, Developers' Workbench, Direct Connect Anywhere, DirectConnect, Distribution Director, e-ADK, E-Anywhere, e-Biz Integrator, E-Whatever, EC-GATEWAY, ECMAP, ECRTA, eFulfillment Accelerator, Embedded SQL, EMS, Enterprise Application Studio, Enterprise Client/Server, Enterprise Connect, Enterprise Data Studio, Enterprise Manager, Enterprise SQL Server Manager, Enterprise Work Architecture, Enterprise Work Designer, Enterprise Work Modeler, eProcurement Accelerator, EWA, Financial Fusion, Financial Fusion Server, Gateway Manager, GlobalFIX, ImpactNow, Industry Warehouse Studio, InfoMaker, Information Anywhere, Information Everywhere, InformationConnect, InternetBuilder, iScript, Jaguar CTS, jConnect for JDBC, MainframeConnect, Maintenance Express, MDI Access Server, MDI Database Gateway, media.splash, MetaWorks, MySupport, Net-Gateway, Net-Library, New Era of Networks, ObjectConnect, ObjectCycle, OmniConnect, OmniSQL Access Module, OmniSQL Toolkit, Open Biz, Open Client, Open ClientConnect, Open Client/Server, Open Client/Server Interfaces, Open Gateway, Open Server, Open ServerConnect, Open Solutions, Optima++, PB-Gen, PC APT Execute, PC Net Library, Power++, power.stop, PowerAMC, PowerBuilder, PowerBuilder Foundation Class Library, PowerDesigner, PowerDimensions, PowerDynamo, PowerJ, PowerScript, PowerSite, PowerSocket, Powersoft, PowerStage, PowerStudio, PowerTips, Powersoft Portfolio, Powersoft Professional, PowerWare Desktop, PowerWare Enterprise, ProcessAnalyst, Rapport, Report Workbench, Report-Execute, Replication Agent, Replication Driver, Replication Server, Replication Server Manager, Replication Toolkit, Resource Manager, RW-DisplayLib, S-Designer, SDF, Secure SQL Server, Secure SQL Toolset, Security Guardian, SKILS, smart.partners, smart.parts, smart.script, SQL Advantage, SQL Anywhere, SQL Anywhere Studio, SQL Code Checker, SQL Debug, SQL Edit, SQL Edit/TPU, SQL Everywhere, SQL Modeler, SQL Remote, SQL Server, SQL Server Manager, SQL SMART, SQL Toolset, SQL Server/CFT, SQL Server/DBM, SQL Server SNMP SubAgent, SQL Station, SQLJ, STEP, SupportNow, S.W.I.F.T. Message Format Libraries, Sybase Central, Sybase Client/Server Interfaces, Sybase Financial Server, Sybase Gateways, Sybase MPP, Sybase SQL Desktop, Sybase SQL Lifecycle, Sybase SQL Workgroup, Sybase User Workbench, SybaseWare, Syber Financial, SyberAssist, SyBooks, System 10, System 11, System XI (logo), SystemTools, Tabular Data Stream, TradeForce, Transact-SQL, Translation Toolkit, UNIBOM, Unilib, Uninull, Unisep, Unistring, URK Runtime Kit for UniCode, Viewer, Visual Components, VisualSpeller, VisualWriter, VQL, WarehouseArchitect, Warehouse Control Center, Warehouse Studio, Warehouse WORKS, Watcom, Watcom SQL, Watcom SQL Server, Web Deployment Kit, Web.PB, Web.SQL, WebSights, WebViewer, WorkGroup SQL Server, XA-Library, XA-Server and XP Server are trademarks of Sybase, Inc. 07/02

Unicode and the Unicode Logo are registered trademarks of Unicode, Inc.

All other company and product names used herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to the restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of DFARS 52.227-7013 for the DOD and as set forth in FAR 52.227-19(a)-(d) for civilian agencies.

Sybase, Inc., One Sybase Drive, Dublin, CA 94568.

# Contents

About This Book .....	xix
-----------------------	-----

<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>SQL Building Blocks.....</b>	<b>1</b>
	SQL in Adaptive Server.....	1
	Queries, data modification, and commands .....	2
	Tables, columns, and rows.....	3
	The relational operations.....	3
	Compiled objects.....	4
	Naming conventions.....	6
	SQL data characters .....	7
	SQL language characters.....	7
	Identifiers.....	7
	Expressions in Adaptive Server .....	13
	Arithmetic and character expressions .....	13
	Relational and logical expressions .....	19
	Transact-SQL extensions.....	20
	The compute clause .....	21
	Control-of-flow language .....	21
	Stored procedures .....	21
	Extended stored procedures .....	22
	Triggers .....	23
	Defaults and rules .....	23
	Error handling and set options .....	23
	Additional Adaptive Server extensions to SQL.....	25
	Compliance to ANSI standards .....	27
	Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) flagger.....	28
	Chained transactions and isolation levels .....	28
	Identifiers.....	28
	SQL standard-style comments .....	29
	Right truncation of character strings.....	29
	Permissions required for update and delete statements .....	29
	Arithmetic errors .....	29
	Synonymous keywords .....	30
	Treatment of nulls.....	31

Adaptive Server login accounts.....	31
Group membership.....	32
Role membership .....	32
Getting information about your Adaptive Server account.....	33
Changing your password.....	33
Understanding remote logins .....	34
How to use Transact-SQL with the isql utility .....	36
Default databases .....	36
Using network-based security services with isql .....	37
Logging out of isql .....	38
Using the pubs2 and pubs3 sample databases .....	38
What is in the sample databases? .....	38
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	
<b>Queries: Selecting Data from a Table .....</b>	<b>41</b>
What are queries? .....	41
select syntax.....	42
Choosing columns: the select clause .....	44
Choosing all columns: select * .....	44
Choosing specific columns.....	45
Rearranging the order of columns.....	45
Renaming columns in query results .....	46
Expressions.....	47
Selecting text and image values.....	53
Select list summary .....	55
Eliminating duplicate query results with distinct .....	55
Specifying tables: the from clause .....	57
Selecting rows: the where clause.....	58
Comparison operators .....	59
Ranges (between and not between) .....	61
Lists (in and not in) .....	62
Pattern matching .....	65
Matching character strings: like .....	65
Character strings and quotation marks .....	71
“Unknown” values: NULL .....	71
Connecting conditions with logical operators .....	77
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	
<b>Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting.....</b>	<b>81</b>
Using aggregate functions .....	81
Aggregate functions and datatypes.....	83
count vs. count(*) .....	84
Using aggregate functions with distinct .....	85
Null values and the aggregate functions .....	86
Organizing query results into groups: the group by clause .....	87

group by syntax .....	88
Referencing other columns in queries using group by .....	90
Expressions and group by .....	93
Nesting aggregates with group by .....	94
Null values and group by .....	95
where clause and group by .....	96
group by and all .....	97
Using aggregates without group by .....	98
Selecting groups of data: the having clause .....	99
How the having, group by, and where clauses interact .....	101
Using having without group by .....	104
Sorting query results: the order by clause .....	105
order by and group by .....	107
order by and group by used with select distinct .....	107
Summarizing groups of data: the compute clause .....	108
Row aggregates and compute .....	111
Specifying more than one column after compute .....	112
Using more than one compute clause .....	113
Applying an aggregate to more than one column .....	114
Using different aggregates in the same compute clause .....	115
Grand values: compute without by .....	115
Combining queries: the union operator .....	117
Guidelines for union queries .....	119
Using union with other Transact-SQL commands .....	121
 <b>CHAPTER 4</b>	
<b>Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables .....</b>	<b>123</b>
How joins work .....	124
Join syntax .....	124
Joins and the relational model .....	125
How joins are structured .....	125
The from clause .....	127
The where clause .....	128
How joins are processed .....	130
Equijoins and natural joins .....	131
Joins with additional conditions .....	132
Joins not based on equality .....	133
Self-joins and correlation names .....	134
The not-equal join .....	135
Not-equal joins and subqueries .....	137
Joining more than two tables .....	138
Outer joins .....	140
Inner and outer tables .....	140
Outer join restrictions .....	141
Views used with outer joins .....	142

ANSI Inner and outer joins .....	142
ANSI outer joins .....	148
Transact-SQL outer joins .....	160
How null values affect joins .....	164
Determining which table columns to join.....	165
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	
<b>Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.....</b>	<b>167</b>
How subqueries work.....	167
Subquery syntax.....	168
Subquery restrictions.....	168
Example of using a subquery .....	169
Qualifying column names .....	171
Subqueries with correlation names .....	171
Multiple levels of nesting .....	172
Subqueries in update, delete, and insert statements .....	173
Subqueries in conditional statements.....	174
Using subqueries instead of expressions.....	175
Types of subqueries.....	176
Expression subqueries .....	176
Quantified predicate subqueries.....	179
Subqueries used with in .....	185
Subqueries used with not in .....	188
Subqueries using not in with NULL .....	188
Subqueries used with exists.....	189
Subqueries used with not exists.....	192
Finding intersection and difference with exists.....	192
Using correlated subqueries .....	194
Correlated subqueries containing Transact-SQL outer joins.	195
Correlated subqueries with correlation names .....	196
Correlated subqueries with comparison operators .....	196
Correlated subqueries in a having clause .....	198
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	
<b>Using and Creating Datatypes.....</b>	<b>199</b>
How Transact-SQL datatypes work .....	199
Using system-supplied datatypes .....	200
Exact numeric types: integers .....	201
Exact numeric types: decimal numbers.....	202
Approximate numeric datatypes.....	203
Money datatypes .....	203
Date and time datatypes .....	203
Character datatypes .....	204
Binary datatypes.....	209
The bit datatype.....	210

The timestamp datatype .....	211
The sysname datatype .....	211
Converting between datatypes.....	211
Mixed-mode arithmetic and datatype hierarchy .....	212
Working with money datatypes .....	214
Determining precision and scale .....	214
Creating user-defined datatypes .....	215
Specifying length, precision, and scale .....	216
Specifying null type .....	216
Associating rules and defaults with user-defined datatypes..	216
Creating a user-defined datatype with the IDENTITY property	217
Creating IDENTITY columns from other user-defined datatypes.	217
Dropping a user-defined datatype .....	217
Getting information about datatypes .....	218
 <b>CHAPTER 7</b>	
<b>Creating Databases and Tables.....</b>	<b>219</b>
What are databases and tables? .....	219
Enforcing data integrity in databases .....	220
Permissions within databases .....	221
Using and creating databases.....	222
Choosing a database: use.....	223
Creating a user database: create database .....	224
Altering the sizes of databases .....	227
Dropping databases .....	228
Creating tables .....	228
Maximum number of columns per table .....	229
Example of creating a table .....	229
Choosing table names.....	230
create table syntax .....	230
Allowing null values .....	232
Using IDENTITY columns .....	235
Using temporary tables .....	239
Creating tables in different databases.....	242
Managing identity gaps in tables .....	243
Parameters for controlling identity gaps .....	243
Comparison of identity burning set factor and identity_gap ..	244
Setting the table-specific identity gap .....	246
Changing the table-specific identity gap.....	247
Displaying table-specific identity gap information.....	247
Gaps due to insertions, deletions, identity grab size, and rollbacks	
249	
If table inserts reach the IDENTITY column's maximum value	251
Defining integrity constraints for tables .....	251

Specifying table-level or column-level constraints.....	252
Creating error messages for constraints .....	253
After creating a check constraint .....	254
Specifying default column values .....	254
Specifying unique and primary key constraints .....	255
Specifying referential integrity constraints .....	256
Specifying check constraints .....	260
Designing applications that use referential integrity .....	261
How to design and create a table.....	262
Make a design sketch.....	264
Create the user-defined datatypes .....	264
Choose the columns that accept null values .....	265
Define the table .....	265
Creating new tables from query results: select into .....	266
Checking for errors.....	269
Using select into with IDENTITY columns .....	269
Altering existing tables .....	272
Objects using select * do not list changes to table .....	273
Using alter table on remote tables.....	274
Adding columns.....	274
Dropping columns .....	277
Modifying columns.....	278
Adding, dropping, and modifying IDENTITY columns .....	282
Data copying .....	284
Modifying locking schemes and table schema .....	286
Altering columns with user defined datatypes .....	287
Errors and warnings from alter table .....	288
Renaming tables and other objects.....	291
Dropping tables .....	292
Assigning permissions to users.....	293
Getting information about databases and tables.....	294
Getting help on databases .....	294
Getting help on database objects.....	296
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	
<b>Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data .....</b>	<b>303</b>
Introduction .....	303
Permissions.....	304
Referential integrity .....	304
Transactions.....	305
Using the sample databases .....	305
Datatype entry rules .....	306
char, nchar, unichar, univarchar, varchar, nvarchar, and text .....	306
datetime and smalldatetime .....	307
binary, varbinary, and image .....	312

money and smallmoney .....	312
float, real, and double precision .....	313
decimal and numeric .....	313
int, smallint, and tinyint .....	314
timestamp .....	314
Adding new data .....	315
insert syntax .....	315
Adding new rows with values .....	315
Inserting data into specific columns .....	316
Adding new rows with select .....	324
Changing existing data.....	327
update syntax .....	328
Using the set clause with update...	329
Using the where clause with update.....	330
Using the from clause with update .....	331
Updates with joins .....	331
Updating IDENTITY columns .....	332
Changing text and image data .....	332
Deleting data .....	333
Using the from clause with delete .....	334
Deleting from IDENTITY columns .....	335
Deleting all rows from a table.....	336
truncate table syntax .....	336
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	
<b>Views: Limiting Access to Data .....</b>	<b>337</b>
How views work .....	337
Advantages of views .....	338
View examples .....	340
Creating views.....	342
create view syntax.....	342
Using the select statement with create view .....	344
After creating a view.....	348
Validating a view's selection criteria using with check option	349
Retrieving data through views.....	350
View resolution .....	351
Redefining views .....	352
Renaming views .....	353
Altering or dropping underlying objects .....	354
Modifying data through views.....	354
Restrictions on updating views .....	355
Dropping views.....	359
Using views as security mechanisms.....	359
Getting information about views.....	360
Getting help on views with sp_help .....	360

	Using sp_helptext to display view information.....	361
	Using sp_depends to list dependent objects.....	362
	Listing all views in a database.....	362
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Using the Built-In Functions in Queries .....</b>	<b>365</b>
	System functions that return database information.....	365
	Examples of using system functions .....	369
	String functions used for character strings or expressions .....	371
	Examples of using string functions.....	375
	Concatenation .....	379
	Nested string functions.....	381
	Text functions used for text and image data .....	382
	Readtext.....	383
	Examples of using text functions.....	384
	Aggregate functions .....	384
	Mathematical functions .....	386
	Examples of using mathematical functions .....	388
	Date functions .....	389
	Get current date: getdate .....	393
	Find date parts as numbers or names.....	394
	Calculate intervals or increment dates .....	394
	Add date interval: dateadd .....	395
	Datatype conversion functions .....	396
	Supported conversions.....	396
	Using the general purpose conversion function: convert .....	397
	Conversion rules .....	398
	Converting binary-like data.....	400
	Conversion errors.....	402
	Security functions .....	406
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	<b>Creating Indexes on Tables .....</b>	<b>409</b>
	How indexes work .....	409
	Comparing the two ways to create indexes.....	410
	Guidelines for using indexes .....	411
	Creating indexes .....	412
	create index syntax .....	413
	Indexing more than one column: composite indexes .....	413
	Using the unique option.....	414
	Including IDENTITY columns in nonunique indexes .....	414
	Ascending and descending index-column values .....	415
	Using fillfactor, max_rows_per_page, and reservepagegap ..	416
	Using clustered or nonclustered indexes .....	417
	Creating clustered indexes on segments .....	419

	Creating clustered indexes on partitioned tables .....	419
	Specifying index options .....	419
	Using the ignore_dup_key option.....	420
	Using the ignore_dup_row and allow_dup_row options.....	420
	Using the sorted_data option .....	421
	Using the on segment_name option.....	422
	Dropping indexes .....	422
	Determining what indexes exist on a table.....	423
	Updating statistics about indexes.....	425
	Updating partition statistics .....	426
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	<b>Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.....</b>	<b>427</b>
	How defaults and rules work .....	427
	Creating defaults .....	428
	create default syntax .....	429
	Binding defaults.....	430
	Unbinding defaults.....	432
	How defaults affect NULL values .....	433
	After creating a default .....	433
	Dropping defaults .....	434
	Creating rules .....	434
	create rule syntax .....	435
	Binding rules.....	436
	Rules and NULL values.....	438
	After defining a rule .....	438
	Unbinding rules .....	438
	Dropping rules .....	439
	Getting information about defaults and rules .....	440
<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	<b>Using Batches and Control-of-Flow Language .....</b>	<b>441</b>
	Introduction .....	441
	Rules associated with batches.....	442
	Examples of using batches .....	444
	Batches submitted as files.....	446
	Using control-of-flow language.....	447
	if...else .....	448
	case expression .....	450
	begin...end.....	460
	while and break...continue.....	460
	declare and local variables .....	463
	goto .....	463
	return .....	464
	print .....	465

raiserror .....	466
Creating messages for print and raiserror .....	467
waitfor.....	468
Comments .....	470
Local variables .....	472
Declaring local variables .....	472
Local variables and select statements .....	472
Local variables and update statements .....	474
Local variables and subqueries.....	474
Local variables and while loops and if...else blocks .....	475
Variables and null values .....	475
Global variables .....	477
Transactions and global variables.....	477
Global variables affected by set options.....	480
Language and character set information in global variables .	481
Global variables for monitoring system activity .....	482
Server information stored in global variables .....	482
Global variables and text and image data .....	484
 <b>CHAPTER 14</b>	
<b>Using Stored Procedures.....</b>	<b>485</b>
How stored procedures work .....	485
Examples of creating and using stored procedures .....	486
Stored procedures and permissions...	488
Stored Procedures and Performance.....	489
Creating and executing stored procedures .....	489
Parameters.....	490
Default parameters.....	492
Using more than one parameter.....	496
Procedure groups.....	497
Using with recompile in create procedure .....	498
Using with recompile in execute.....	498
Nesting procedures within procedures .....	499
Using temporary tables in stored procedures.....	499
Setting options in stored procedures.....	500
After creating a stored procedure.....	502
Executing stored procedures.....	502
Returning information from stored procedures.....	503
Return status .....	504
Checking roles in procedures.....	506
Return parameters .....	507
Restrictions associated with stored procedures .....	511
Qualifying names inside procedures .....	512
Renaming stored procedures .....	513
Renaming objects referenced by procedures.....	513

Using stored procedures as security mechanisms.....	514
Dropping stored procedures.....	514
System procedures .....	514
Executing system procedures .....	515
Permissions on system procedures .....	515
Types of system procedures .....	516
Other Sybase-supplied procedures.....	521
Getting information about stored procedures.....	522
Getting a report with sp_help .....	523
Viewing the source text of a procedure with sp_helptext .....	523
Identifying dependent objects with sp_depends.....	524
Identifying permissions with sp_helpprotect.....	525
<b>CHAPTER 15            Using Extended Stored Procedures.....</b>	<b>527</b>
Overview .....	527
XP Server .....	528
Dynamic Link Library Support .....	529
Open Server API .....	529
Example of creating and using ESPs .....	530
ESP <sup>s</sup> and Permissions.....	531
ESP <sup>s</sup> and Performance.....	532
Creating functions for ESPs .....	533
Files for ESP Development .....	533
Open Server data structures .....	533
Open Server return codes .....	534
Outline of a simple ESP function.....	534
ESP function example .....	535
Building the DLL .....	541
Registering ESPs .....	544
Using create procedure .....	544
Using sp_addextendedproc.....	545
Removing ESPs .....	546
Renaming ESPs .....	546
Executing ESPs .....	546
System ESPs .....	547
Getting information about ESPs .....	548
ESP exceptions and messages .....	549
Starting XP Server manually .....	549
<b>CHAPTER 16            Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity .....</b>	<b>551</b>
How triggers work .....	551
Using triggers vs. integrity constraints.....	553
Creating triggers.....	553

create trigger syntax.....	554
Using triggers to maintain referential integrity.....	556
Testing data modifications against the trigger test tables .....	557
Insert trigger example.....	559
Delete trigger examples .....	560
Update trigger examples .....	562
Multirow considerations.....	568
Insert trigger example using multiple rows.....	568
Delete trigger example using multiple rows.....	569
Update trigger example using multiple rows .....	569
Conditional insert trigger example using multiple rows .....	570
Rolling back triggers.....	572
Nesting triggers .....	574
Trigger self-recursion .....	575
Rules associated with triggers .....	577
Triggers and permissions .....	577
Trigger restrictions.....	577
Implicit and explicit null values .....	578
Triggers and performance .....	579
set commands in triggers .....	580
Renaming and triggers .....	580
Trigger tips .....	580
Disabling triggers .....	581
Dropping triggers.....	582
Getting information about triggers.....	582
sp_help.....	582
sp_helptext.....	583
sp_depends.....	584
 <b>CHAPTER 17</b>	
<b>Cursors: Accessing Data Row by Row.....</b>	<b>585</b>
How cursors work.....	585
How Adaptive Server processes cursors .....	586
Declaring cursors .....	590
declare cursor syntax .....	590
Types of cursors .....	591
Cursor scope .....	592
Cursor scans and the cursor result set.....	594
Making cursors updatable .....	595
Determining which columns can be updated.....	596
Opening cursors.....	598
Fetching data rows using cursors .....	598
fetch syntax .....	598
Checking the cursor status.....	599
Getting multiple rows with each fetch.....	600

Checking the number of rows fetched.....	601
Updating and deleting rows using cursors .....	602
Updating cursor result set rows.....	602
Deleting cursor result set rows .....	603
Closing and deallocating cursors .....	604
An example using a cursor.....	605
Using cursors in stored procedures .....	607
Cursors and locking .....	609
Cursor locking options.....	610
Getting information about cursors .....	611
Using browse mode instead of cursors .....	612
Browsing a table .....	612
Browse-mode restrictions .....	613
Timestamping a new table for browsing .....	613
Timestamping an existing table.....	613
Comparing timestamp values .....	614
Join cursor processing and data modifications .....	614
Updates and deletes that can affect the cursor position .....	614
Cursor positioning after a delete or update command without joins	
615	
Effects of updates and deletes on join cursors.....	615
Effects of join column buffering on join cursors.....	617
Recommendations .....	620
<b>CHAPTER 18</b>	
<b>Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery..</b>	<b>623</b>
How transactions work .....	623
Transactions and consistency .....	626
Transactions and recovery .....	626
Using transactions.....	627
Allowing data definition commands in transactions.....	628
System procedures that are not allowed in transactions.....	629
Beginning and committing transactions.....	629
Rolling back and saving transactions .....	630
Checking the state of transactions .....	632
Nested transactions.....	633
Example of a transaction.....	634
Selecting the transaction mode and isolation level .....	636
Choosing a transaction mode.....	636
Choosing an isolation level.....	638
Compliance with SQL standards .....	646
Using the lock table command to improve performance .....	647
Using the wait/howait options of the lock table command.....	648
Using transactions in stored procedures and triggers .....	648
Errors and transaction rollbacks .....	651

	Transaction modes and stored procedures .....	655
	Using cursors in transactions .....	657
	Issues to consider when using transactions.....	658
	Backup and recovery of transactions .....	659
<b>CHAPTER 19</b>	<b>Locking Commands and Options .....</b>	<b>661</b>
	Setting a time limit on waiting for locks .....	661
	wait/nowait option of the lock table command.....	662
	Setting a session-level lock-wait limit.....	663
	Setting a server-wide lock-wait limit .....	664
	Information on the number of lock-wait timeouts.....	664
	Readpast locking for queue processing .....	665
	Readpast syntax.....	665
	Incompatible locks during readpast queries .....	665
	Allpages-locked tables and readpast queries.....	666
	Effects of isolation levels select queries with readpast .....	666
	Data modification commands with readpast and isolation levels .	
	667	
	text and image columns and readpast .....	668
	Readpast-locking examples .....	668
<b>APPENDIX A</b>	<b>The pubs2 Database.....</b>	<b>671</b>
	Tables in the pubs2 database .....	671
	publishers table .....	671
	authors table.....	672
	titles table .....	674
	titleauthor table.....	681
	salesdetail table.....	683
	sales table .....	688
	stores table.....	689
	roysched table .....	690
	discounts table .....	694
	blurbs table.....	695
	au_pix table .....	696
	Diagram of the pubs2 database .....	699
<b>APPENDIX B</b>	<b>The pubs3 Database.....</b>	<b>701</b>
	Tables in the pubs3 database .....	701
	publishers table .....	701
	authors table.....	702
	titles table .....	704
	titleauthor table.....	711

salesdetail table.....	713
sales table .....	719
stores table.....	720
store_employees table .....	721
roysched table .....	726
discounts table .....	730
blurbs table .....	731
Diagram of the pubs3 database .....	733
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>735</b>



# About This Book

This manual, the *Transact-SQL User's Guide*, documents Transact-SQL®, an enhanced version of the SQL relational database language. The *Transact-SQL User's Guide* is intended for both beginners and those who have experience with other implementations of SQL.

## Audience

Users of the Sybase® Adaptive Server™ Enterprise database management systems who are unfamiliar with SQL can consider this guide as a textbook and start at the beginning. Novice SQL users should concentrate on the first part of this book. The second part describes advanced topics.

This manual is useful both as a review, for those acquainted with other versions of SQL, and as a guide to Transact-SQL enhancements. SQL experts should study the capabilities and features that Transact-SQL has added to standard SQL, especially the material on stored procedures.

## How to use this book

This book is a complete guide to Transact-SQL. It contains an introductory chapter, which gives an overview of SQL. The remaining chapters are divided into two main parts: Basic Concepts and Advanced Topics.

Chapter 1, “SQL Building Blocks,” describes the naming conventions used by SQL and the enhancements (also known as extensions) added by Transact-SQL. It also includes a description of how to get started with Transact-SQL using the isql utility. Sybase recommends that all users read this chapter.

“Part 1: Basic Concepts” includes Chapters 2–9. These chapters introduce you to the basic functionality of SQL. Users new to SQL should become familiar with the concepts described in these chapters before moving on to Part 2. Experienced users of SQL may want to skim through these chapters to learn about the Transact-SQL extensions introduced there and to review the material.

“Part 2: Advanced Topics” includes Chapters 10–18. These chapters describe Transact-SQL in more detail. Most of the Transact-SQL extensions are described here. Users familiar with SQL, but not Transact-SQL, should concentrate on these chapters.

---

The examples in this guide are based on the pubs2 and, where noted, pubs3 sample databases. For best use of the Transact-SQL User's Guide, new users should work through the examples. Ask your System Administrator how to get a clean copy of pubs2 and pubs3. For a complete description of these databases, see Appendix A, "The pubs2 Database," and Appendix B, "The pubs3 Database."

You can use Transact-SQL with the Adaptive Server standalone program isql. The isql program is a utility program called directly from the operating system.

## Related documents

The following documents comprise the Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise documentation:

- The release bulletin for your platform – contains last-minute information that was too late to be included in the books.

A more recent version of the release bulletin may be available on the World Wide Web. To check for critical product or document information that was added after the release of the product CD, use the Sybase Technical Library.
- The *Installation Guide* for your platform – describes installation, upgrade, and configuration procedures for all Adaptive Server and related Sybase products.
- *Configuring Adaptive Server Enterprise* for your platform – provides instructions for performing specific configuration tasks for Adaptive Server.
- *What's New in Adaptive Server Enterprise?* – describes the new features in Adaptive Server version 12.5, the system changes added to support those features, and the changes that may affect your existing applications.
- *Transact-SQL User's Guide* – documents Transact-SQL, Sybase's enhanced version of the relational database language. This manual serves as a textbook for beginning users of the database management system. This manual also contains descriptions of the pubs2 and pubs3 sample databases.
- *System Administration Guide* – provides in-depth information about administering servers and databases. This manual includes instructions and guidelines for managing physical resources, security, user and system databases, and specifying character conversion, international language, and sort order settings.

- *Reference Manual* – contains detailed information about all Transact-SQL commands, functions, procedures, and datatypes. This manual also contains a list of the Transact-SQL reserved words and definitions of system tables.
- *Performance and Tuning Guide* – explains how to tune Adaptive Server for maximum performance. This manual includes information about database design issues that affect performance, query optimization, how to tune Adaptive Server for very large databases, disk and cache issues, and the effects of locking and cursors on performance.
- The *Utility Guide* – documents the Adaptive Server utility programs, such as isql and bcp, which are executed at the operating system level.
- The *Quick Reference Guide* – provides a comprehensive listing of the names and syntax for commands, functions, system procedures, extended system procedures, datatypes, and utilities in a pocket-sized book. Available only in print version.
- The *System Tables Diagram* – illustrates system tables and their entity relationships in a poster format. Available only in print version.
- *Error Messages and Troubleshooting Guide* – explains how to resolve frequently occurring error messages and describes solutions to system problems frequently encountered by users.
- *Component Integration Services User's Guide* – explains how to use the Adaptive Server Component Integration Services feature to connect remote Sybase and non-Sybase databases.
- *Java in Adaptive Server Enterprise* – describes how to install and use Java classes as datatypes, functions, and stored procedures in the Adaptive Server database.
- *Using Sybase Failover in a High Availability System* – provides instructions for using Sybase's Failover to configure an Adaptive Server as a companion server in a high availability system.
- *Using Adaptive Server Distributed Transaction Management Features* – explains how to configure, use, and troubleshoot Adaptive Server DTM features in distributed transaction processing environments.
- *EJB Server User's Guide* – explains how to use EJB Server to deploy and execute Enterprise JavaBeans in Adaptive Server.
- *XA Interface Integration Guide for CICS, Encina, and TUXEDO* – provides instructions for using Sybase's DTM XA interface with X/Open XA transaction managers.

- 
- *Glossary* – defines technical terms used in the Adaptive Server documentation.
  - *Sybase jConnect for JDBC Programmer's Reference* – describes the jConnect for JDBC product and explains how to use it to access data stored in relational database management systems.
  - *Full-Text Search Specialty Data Store User's Guide* – describes how to use the Full-Text Search feature with Verity to search Adaptive Server Enterprise data.
  - *Historical Server User's Guide* – describes how to use Historical Server to obtain performance information for SQL Server and Adaptive Server.
  - *Monitor Server User's Guide* – describes how to use Monitor Server to obtain performance statistics from SQL Server and Adaptive Server.
  - *Monitor Client Library Programmer's Guide* – describes how to write Monitor Client Library applications that access Adaptive Server performance data.

**Other sources of information**

Use the Sybase Technical Library CD and the Technical Library Product Manuals Web site to learn more about your product:

- Technical Library CD contains product manuals and is included with your software. The DynaText browser (downloadable from Product Manuals at <http://www.sybase.com/detail/1,3693,1010661,00.html>) allows you to access technical information about your product in an easy-to-use format.

Refer to the *Technical Library Installation Guide* in your documentation package for instructions on installing and starting the Technical Library.

- Technical Library Product Manuals Web site is an HTML version of the Technical Library CD that you can access using a standard Web browser. In addition to product manuals, you will find links to the Technical Documents Web site (formerly known as Tech Info Library), the Solved Cases page, and Sybase/Powersoft newsgroups.

To access the Technical Library Product Manuals Web site, go to Product Manuals at <http://www.sybase.com/support/manuals/>.

**Sybase certifications on the Web**

Technical documentation at the Sybase Web site is updated frequently.

v **For the latest information on product certifications**

- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>.
- 2 Select Products from the navigation bar on the left.

- 3 Select a product name from the product list.
  - 4 Select the Certification Report filter, specify a time frame, and click Go.
  - 5 Click a Certification Report title to display the report.
- v **For the latest information on EBFs and Updates**
- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>.
  - 2 Select EBFs/Updates. Enter user name and password information, if prompted (for existing Web accounts) or create a new account (a free service).
  - 3 Specify a time frame and click Go.
  - 4 Select a product.
  - 5 Click an EBF/Update title to display the report.
- v **To create a personalized view of the Sybase Web site (including support pages)**

Set up a MySybase profile. MySybase is a free service that allows you to create a personalized view of Sybase Web pages.

- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>
- 2 Click MySybase and create a MySybase profile.

## Conventions

### Formatting SQL statements

The following sections describe conventions used in this manual.

SQL is a free-form language. There are no rules about the number of words you can put on a line or where you must break a line. However, for readability, all examples and syntax statements in this manual are formatted so that each clause of a statement begins on a new line. Clauses that have more than one part extend to additional lines, which are indented.

### Font and syntax conventions

Table 1 shows the conventions for syntax statements that appear in this manual:

**Table 1: Font and syntax conventions for this manual**

Element	Example
Command names, command option names, utility names, utility flags, and other keywords use this font.	select sp_configure
Database names, datatypes, file names and path names use this font.	master database

Element	Example
Variables, or words that stand for values that you fill in, are in <i>italics</i> .	<code>select column_name from table_name where search_conditions</code>
Parentheses are to be typed as part of the command.	<code>compute row_aggregate (column_name)</code>
Curly braces indicate that you must choose at least one of the enclosed options. Do not type the braces.	<code>{cash, check, credit}</code>
Brackets mean choosing one or more of the enclosed options is optional. Do not type the brackets.	<code>[anchovies]</code>
The vertical bar means you may select only one of the options shown.	<code>{die_on_your_feet   live_on_your_knees   live_on_your_feet}</code>
The comma means you may choose as many of the options shown as you like, separating your choices with commas to be typed as part of the command.	<code>[extra_cheese, avocados, sour_cream]</code>
An ellipsis (...) means that you can <i>repeat</i> the last unit as many times as you like.	<code>buy thing = price [cash   check   credit] , thing = price [cash   check   credit]]...</code>  You must buy at least one thing and give its price. You may choose a method of payment: one of the items enclosed in square brackets. You may also choose to buy additional things: as many of them as you like. For each thing you buy, give its name, its price, and (optionally) a method of payment.

- Syntax statements (displaying the syntax and all options for a command) appear as follows:

`sp_dropdevice [device_name]`

or, for a command with more options:

```
select column_name  
from table_name  
where search_conditions
```

In syntax statements, keywords (commands) are in normal font and identifiers are in lowercase. Italic font shows user-supplied words.

- Examples showing the use of Transact-SQL commands are printed like this:

`select * from publishers`

- Examples of output from the computer appear as follows:

0736      New Age Books

Boston

MA

0877	Binnet & Hardley	Washington	DC
1389	Algodata Infosystems	Berkeley	CA

**Case**

In this manual, most of the examples are in lowercase. However, you can disregard case when typing Transact-SQL keywords. For example, `SELECT`, `Select`, and `select` are the same.

Adaptive Server's sensitivity to the case of database objects, such as table names, depends on the sort order installed on Adaptive Server. You can change case sensitivity for single-byte character sets by reconfigured the Adaptive Server sort order. See the *System Administration Guide* for more information.

**Expressions**

Adaptive Server syntax statements use the following types of expressions.

**Table 2: Types of expressions used in syntax statements**

<b>Usage</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<i>expression</i>	Can include constants, literals, functions, column identifiers, variables, or parameters
<i>logical expression</i>	An expression that returns TRUE, FALSE, or UNKNOWN
<i>constant expression</i>	An expression that always returns the same value, such as "5+3" or "ABCDE"
<i>float_expr</i>	Any floating-point expression or expression that implicitly converts to a floating value
<i>integer_expr</i>	Any integer expression, or an expression that implicitly converts to an integer value
<i>numeric_expr</i>	Any numeric expression that returns a single value
<i>char_expr</i>	Any expression that returns a single character-type value
<i>binary_expression</i>	An expression that returns a single <i>binary</i> or <i>varbinary</i> value

**If you need help**

Each Sybase installation that has purchased a support contract has one or more designated people who are authorized to contact Sybase Technical Support. If you cannot resolve a problem using the manuals or online help, please have the designated person contact Sybase Technical Support or the Sybase subsidiary in your area.



# SQL Building Blocks

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
SQL in Adaptive Server	1
Naming conventions	6
Expressions in Adaptive Server	13
Transact-SQL extensions	20
Compliance to ANSI standards	27
Adaptive Server login accounts	31
How to use Transact-SQL with the isql utility	36
Using the pubs2 and pubs3 sample databases	38

## SQL in Adaptive Server

SQL (Structured Query Language) is a high-level language used in relational database systems. Originally developed by IBM's San Jose Research Laboratory in the late 1970s, SQL has been adopted by, and adapted for, many relational database management systems. It has been approved as the official relational query language standard by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

Transact-SQL, Sybase's extension of SQL, is compatible with IBM SQL and most other commercial implementations of SQL. It provides important extra capabilities and functions, such as summary calculations, stored procedures (predefined SQL statements), and error handling.

SQL includes commands not only for querying (retrieving data from) a database, but also for creating new databases and **database objects**, adding new data, modifying existing data, and other functions.

---

**Note** If Java is enabled on your Adaptive Server, you can install and use Java classes in the database. You can invoke Java operations and store Java classes using standard Transact-SQL commands. Refer to *Java in Adaptive Server Enterprise* for a complete description of this feature.

---

## Queries, data modification, and commands

In SQL, a **query** requests data using the select command. For example, this query asks for a listing of authors who live in the state of California:

```
select au_lname, city, state  
from authors  
where state = "CA"
```

**Data modification** refers to the addition, deletion, or change of data using the insert, delete, or update commands. For example:

```
insert into authors (au_lname, au_fname, au_id)  
values ("Smith", "Gabriella", "999-03-2346")
```

Other SQL commands, such as dropping tables or adding users, perform administrative operations. For example:

```
drop table authors
```

Each command or SQL statement begins with a **keyword**, such as insert, that names the basic operation performed. Many SQL commands also have one or more **keyword phrases**, or **clauses**, that tailor the command to meet a particular need. When you run a query, Transact-SQL displays the results. If no data meets the criteria specified in the query, the user gets a message to that effect. Data modification statements and administrative statements do not retrieve data, and therefore, do not display results. Transact-SQL provides a message to let the user know whether the data modification or other command has been performed.

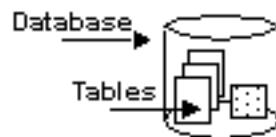
## Tables, columns, and rows

In relational database management systems, users access and modify data stored in tables. SQL is specifically designed for the relational model of database management.

Each row, or record, in a table describes one occurrence of a piece of data—a person, a company, a sale, or some other thing. Each column, or field, describes one characteristic of the data—a person’s name or address, a company’s name or president, quantity of items sold.

A relational database is made up of a set of tables that can be related to each other.

**Figure 1-1: Multiple tables in a database**



## The relational operations

The basic query operations in a relational system are selection (also called restriction), projection, and join. These can all be combined in the SQL select command.

A **selection** is a subset of the rows in a table. You specify the limiting conditions in the select query. For example, you might want to look only at the rows for all authors who live in California.

```
select *
from authors
where state = "CA"
```

A **projection** is a subset of the columns in a table. For example, this query displays only the name and city of all authors, omitting the street address, the phone number, and other information.

```
select au_fname, au_lname, city
from authors
```

A **join** links the rows in two or more tables by comparing the values in specified fields. For example, suppose you have one table containing information about authors, including the columns `au_id` (author identification number) and `au_lname` (author's last name). A second table contains title information about books, including a column that gives the ID number of the book's author (`au_id`). You might join the authors table and the titles table, testing for equality of the values in the `au_id` columns of each table. Whenever there is a match, a new row—containing columns from both tables—is created and displayed as part of the result of the join. Joins are often combined with projections and selections so that only selected columns of selected matching rows display.

```
select *
  from authors, publishers
 where authors.city = publishers.city
```

## Compiled objects

Adaptive Server uses **compiled objects** to contain vital information about each database and to help you access and manipulate data. A compiled object is any object that requires entries in the `sysprocedures` table, including:

- Check constraints
- Defaults
- Rules
- Stored procedures
- Extended stored procedures
- Triggers
- Views

Compiled objects are created from **source text**, which are SQL statements that describe and define the compiled object. When a compiled object is created, Adaptive Server:

- 1 Parses the source text, catching any syntactic errors, to generate a parsed tree.
- 2 Normalizes the parsed tree to create a normalized tree, which represents the user statements in a binary tree format. This is the compiled object.

- 3 Stores the compiled object in the sysprocedures table.
- 4 Stores the source text in the syscomments table.

---

**Note** If you are upgrading from Adaptive Server version 11.5 or earlier, and you have deleted source text from syscomments, you must restore the deleted portions before you upgrade. To do so, follow the process in the installation documentation for your platform.

---

## Saving source text

In Adaptive Server version 11.5 and in SQL Server® versions prior to that release, the source text was saved in syscomments so it could be returned to a user who executed sp\_helptext. Because this was the only purpose of saving the text, users often deleted the source text from the syscomments table to save disk space and to remove confidential information from this public area. However, you should not delete the source text because this may cause a problem for future upgrades of Adaptive Server. If you have removed the source text from syscomments, use the procedures in this section to restore the source text.

## Restoring source text

If a compiled object does not have matching source text in the syscomments table, you can restore the source text to syscomments using any of the following methods:

- Load the source text from a backup.
- Re-create the source text manually.
- Reinstall the application that created the compiled object.

## Verifying and encrypting source text

Adaptive Server versions 11.5 and later allow you to verify the existence of source text, and encrypt the text if you choose. Use these commands when you are working with source text:

- sp\_checkresource – verifies that source text is present in syscomments for each compiled object.
- sp\_hidetext – encrypts the source text of a compiled object in the syscomments table to prevent casual viewing.

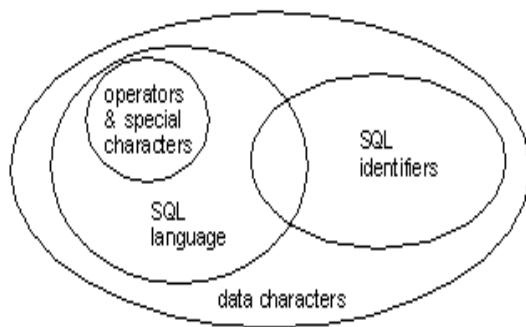
- sp\_helptext – displays the source text if it is present in syscomments, or notifies you of missing source text.
- dbcc checkcatalog – notifies you of missing source text.

## Naming conventions

The characters recognized by Adaptive Server are limited in part by the language of the installation and the default character set. Therefore, the characters allowed in SQL statements and in the data contained in the server vary from installation to installation and are determined in part by definitions in the default character set.

SQL statements must follow precise syntactical and structural rules, and can contain operators, constants, SQL keywords, special characters, and **identifiers**. Identifiers are objects within the server, such as database names or table names. Naming conventions vary for some parts of the SQL statement. Operator, constants, SQL keywords, and Transact-SQL extensions must adhere to stricter naming restrictions than identifiers, which themselves cannot contain operators and special characters. However, the data contained within the server can be named following more permissive rules. Figure 1-2 illustrates these relationships.

**Figure 1-2: Naming conventions governing SQL statements**



The sections that follow describe the sets of characters that can be used for each part of a statement. The section on identifiers also describes naming conventions for database objects.

## SQL data characters

The set of SQL data characters is the larger set from which both SQL language characters and identifier characters are taken. Any character in Adaptive Server's character set, including both single-byte and multibyte characters, can be used for data values.

## SQL language characters

SQL keywords, Transact-SQL extensions, and special characters such as the **comparison operators** > and <, can be represented only by 7-bit ASCII values A–Z, a–z, 0–9, and the following ASCII characters:

**Table 1-1: ASCII characters used in SQL**

;	(semicolon)	(	(open parenthesis)	)	(close parenthesis)
,	(comma)	:	(colon)	%	(percent sign)
-	(minus sign)	?	(question mark)	'	(single quote)
"	(double quote)	+	(plus sign)	_	(underscore)
*	(asterisk)	/	(slash)		(space)
<	(less than operator)	>	(greater than operator)	=	(equals operator)
&	(ampersand)		(vertical bar)	^	(circumflex)
[	(left bracket)	]	(right bracket)	\	(backslash)
@	(at sign)	~	(tilde)	!	(exclamation point)
\$	(dollar sign)	#	(number sign)	.	(period)

## Identifiers

Conventions for naming database objects apply throughout Adaptive Server software and documentation. Identifiers can be as many as 30 bytes in length, whether or not multibyte characters are used. The first character of an identifier must be declared as an alphabetic character in the character set definition in use on Adaptive Server.

The @ sign or \_(underscore character) can also be used. The @ sign as the first character of an identifier indicates a **local variable**.

Temporary table names must either begin with # (the pound sign) if they are created outside tempdb or be preceded by “tempdb.”. Table names for temporary tables that exist outside tempdb should not exceed 13 bytes in length, including the number sign, since Adaptive Server gives them an internal numeric suffix.

After the first character, identifiers can include characters declared as alphabetic, numeric, or the character \$, #, @, \_, ¥ (yen), or £ (pound sterling). However, you cannot use two @@ symbols together at the beginning of a named object, as in “@@myobject.” This naming convention is reserved for **global variables**, which are system-defined variables that Adaptive Server updates on an ongoing basis.

The case sensitivity of Adaptive Server is set when the server is installed and can be changed only by a System Administrator. To see the setting for your server, execute:

```
sp_helpsort
```

On a server that is not case-sensitive, the identifiers MYOBJECT, myobject, and MyObject (and all combinations of case) are considered identical. You can create only one of these objects, but you can use any combination of case to refer to that object.

No embedded spaces are allowed in identifiers, and none of the SQL reserved keywords can be used. The reserved words are listed in the Adaptive Server Reference Manual.

You can use the function valid\_name to determine if an identifier you have created is acceptable to Adaptive Server. For example:

```
select valid_name ("string")
```

*string* is the identifier you want to check. If *string* is not valid as an identifier, Adaptive Server returns a 0 (zero). If *string* is a valid identifier, Adaptive Server returns a number other than 0. Adaptive Server returns a 0 if illegal characters are used or if *string* is longer than 30 bytes.

## Using multibyte character sets

In multibyte character sets, a wider range of characters is available for use in identifiers. For example, on a server with the Japanese language installed, the following types of characters can be used as the first character of an identifier: Zenkaku or Hankaku Katakana, Hiragana, Kanji, Romaji, Cyrillic, Greek, or ASCII.

Although Hankaku Katakana characters are legal in identifiers on Japanese systems, they are not recommended for use in heterogeneous systems. These characters cannot be converted between the EUC-JIS and Shift-JIS character sets.

The same is true for some 8-bit European characters. For example, the character “Œ,” the OE ligature, is part of the Macintosh character set (code point 0xCE), but does not exist in the ISO 8859-1 (iso\_1) character set. If “Œ” exists in data being converted from the Macintosh to the ISO 8859-1 character set, it causes a conversion error.

If an object identifier contains a character that cannot be converted, the client loses direct access to that object.

## Delimited identifiers

**Delimited identifiers** are object names enclosed in double quotes. Using delimited identifiers allows you to avoid certain restrictions on object names. You can use double quotes to delimit table, view, and column names; you cannot use them for other database objects.

Delimited identifiers can be reserved words, can begin with non-alphabetic characters, and can include characters that would not otherwise be allowed. They cannot exceed 28 bytes. A pound sign (#) is illegal as a first character of any quoted identifier. (This restriction applies to Adaptive Server 11.5 and all later versions.)

Before you create or reference a delimited identifier, you must execute:

```
set quoted_identifier on
```

This allows Adaptive Server to recognize delimited identifiers. Each time you use the quoted identifier in a statement, you must enclose it in double quotes. For example:

```
create table "lone"(col1 char(3))
select * from "lone"
create table "include spaces" (col1 int)
```

---

**Note** Delimited identifiers cannot be used with bcp, may not be supported by all front-end products, and can produce unexpected results when used with system procedures.

---

While the quoted\_identifier option is turned on, do not use double quotes around character or date strings; use single quotes instead. Delimiting these strings with double quotes causes Adaptive Server to treat them as identifiers. For example, to insert a character string into *col1* of *Itable*, use:

```
insert "lone"(col1) values ('abc')
```

not:

```
insert "lone"(col1) values ("abc")
```

To insert a single quote into a column, use two consecutive single quotation marks. For example, to insert the characters “a'b” into col1, use:

```
insert "lone"(col1) values('a''b')
```

Syntax that includes quotes

When the quoted\_identifier option is set to on, you do not need to use double quotes around an identifier if the syntax of the statement requires that a quoted string contain an identifier. For example:

```
create table 'lone' (c1 int)
```

The quotes are included in the name of table 'lone':

```
select object_id('lone')
```

```
-----
```

```
896003192
```

You can include an embedded double quote in a quoted identifier by doubling the quote:

```
create table "embedded""quote" (c1 int)
```

However, there is no need to double the quote when the statement syntax requires the object name to be expressed as a string:

```
select object_id('embedded"quote')
```

## Uniqueness and qualification conventions

The names of database objects do not have to be unique in a database. However, column names and index names must be unique within a table, and other object names must be unique for each owner within a database. Database names must be unique in Adaptive Server.

If you try to create a column using a name that is not unique in the table, or to create another database object, such as a table, a view, or a stored procedure, with a name that you have already used in the same database, Adaptive Server responds with an error message.

You can uniquely identify a table or column by adding other names that qualify it. The database name, the owner's name, and, for a column, the table name or view name may be used to create a unique ID. Each of these qualifiers is separated from the next by a period:

For example, if the user “sharon” owns the authors table in the pubs2 database, the unique identifier of the city column in that table is:

```
pubs2.sharon.authors.city
```

The same naming syntax applies to other database objects. You can refer to any object in a similar fashion:

```
pubs2.dbo.titleview  
dbo.postalcoderule
```

If the `quoted_identifier` option of the `set` command is on, you can use double quotes around individual parts of a qualified object name. Use a separate pair of quotes for each qualifier that requires quotes. For example, use:

```
database.owner."table_name"."column_name"
```

rather than:

```
database.owner.table_name.column_name
```

The full naming syntax is not always allowed in `create` statements because you cannot create a view, procedure, rule, default, or trigger in a database other than the one you are currently in. The naming conventions are indicated in the syntax as:

```
[ [database.]owner.]object_name
```

or

```
[owner.]object_name
```

The default value for `owner` is the current user, and the default value for `database` is the current database. When you reference an object in any SQL statement, other than a `create` statement, without qualifying it with the database name and owner name, Adaptive Server first looks at all the objects you own, and then at the objects owned by the **Database Owner**. As long as Adaptive Server is given enough information to identify an object, you need not type every element of its name. You can omit intermediate elements and indicate their positions with periods:

```
database..table_name
```

In the example above, you must include the starting element if you are using this syntax to create tables. If you omit the starting element, you would create a table named ..mytable. The naming convention prevents you from performing certain actions on such a table, such as cursor updates.

When qualifying a column name and a table name in the same statement, use the same naming abbreviations for each; they are evaluated as strings and must match, or an error is returned. Here are two examples with different entries for the column name. The second example does not run because the syntax for the column name does not match the syntax for the table name.

```
select pubs2.dbo.publishers.city  
from pubs2.dbo.publishers
```

```
city  
-----  
Boston  
Washington  
Berkeley
```

```
select pubs2.sa.publishers.city  
from pubs2..publishers
```

The column prefix "pubs2.sa.publishers" does not match a table name or alias name used in the query.

## Identifying remote servers

You can execute stored procedures on a remote Adaptive Server. The results from the stored procedure display on the terminal that calls the procedure. The syntax for identifying a remote server and the stored procedure is:

```
[execute] server.[database].[owner].procedure_name
```

You can omit the execute keyword when the remote procedure call (RPC) is the first statement in a batch. If other SQL statements precede the RPC, you must use execute or exec. You must give the server name and the stored procedure name. If you omit the database name, Adaptive Server looks for procedure\_name in your default database. If you give the database name, you must also give the procedure owner's name, unless you own the procedure or the procedure is owned by the Database Owner.

The following statements execute the stored procedure byroyalty in the pubs2 database located on the GATEWAY server:

Statement	Notes
GATEWAY.pubs2.dbo.byroyalty	byroyalty is owned by the Database Owner.
GATEWAY..pubs2..byroyalty	
GATEWAY...byroyalty	Use if pubs2 is the default database.
declare @var int exec GATEWAY...byroyalty	Use when the statement is not the first statement in a batch.

See the *System Administration Guide* for information on setting up Adaptive Server for remote access. A remote server name (GATEWAY in the previous example) must match a server name in your local Adaptive Server's *interfaces* file. If the server name in *interfaces* is in uppercase letters, you must also use uppercase letters in the RPC.

## Expressions in Adaptive Server

An **expression** is a combination of one or more constants, literals, functions, column identifiers, and variables, separated by operators, that returns a single value. Expressions can be of several types, including **arithmetic**, **relational**, **logical** (or **Boolean**), and **character string**. In some Transact-SQL clauses, a subquery can be used in an expression. A case expression can be used in an expression.

Use parentheses to group the elements in an expression. When “*expression*” is given as a variable in a syntax statement, a simple expression is assumed. “Logical expression” is specified when only a logical expression is acceptable.

## Arithmetic and character expressions

The general pattern for arithmetic and character expressions is:

```
{constant | column_name | function | (subquery)
| (case_expression)}
[{{arithmetic_operator | bitwise_operator |
string_operator | comparison_operator }
{constant | column_name | function | (subquery)
| case_expression}}]...
```

## Operator precedence

Operators have the following precedence levels, where 1 is the highest level and 6 is the lowest:

- 1 unary (single argument) - + ~
- 2 \* /%
- 3 binary (two argument) + - & | ^
- 4 not
- 5 and
- 6 or

When all operators in an expression are of the same level, the order of execution is left to right. You can change the order of execution with parentheses—the most deeply nested expression is handled first.

## Arithmetic operators

Adaptive Server uses these arithmetic operators:

**Table 1-2: Arithmetic operators**

Operator	Meaning
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
%	Modulo (Transact-SQL extension)

You can use addition, subtraction, division, and multiplication on exact numeric, approximate numeric, and money type columns.

You cannot use the modulo operator on smallmoney, money, float, or real columns. Modulo finds the integer remainder after a division involving two whole numbers. For example,  $21 \% 11 = 10$  because 21 divided by 11 equals 1 with a remainder of 10.

When you perform arithmetic operations on mixed datatypes (for example, float and int) Adaptive Server follows specific rules for determining the type of the result. See Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes,” for more information.

## Bitwise operators

The bitwise operators are a Transact-SQL extension for use with data of the type integer. These operators convert each integer operand into its binary representation and then evaluate the operands column by column. A value of 1 corresponds to true; a value of 0 corresponds to false.

Table 1-3 and Table 1-4 summarize the results for operands of 0 and 1. If either operand is NULL, the bitwise operator returns NULL:

**Table 1-3: Truth tables for bitwise operations**

& (and)	1	0
1	1	0
0	0	0
<hr/>		
(or)	1	0
1	1	1
0	1	0
<hr/>		
^ (exclusive or)	1	0
1	0	1
0	1	0
<hr/>		
~ (not)		
1	FALSE	
0	0	

The following examples use two tinyint arguments: A = 170 (10101010 in binary form) and B = 75 (01001011 in binary form).

**Table 1-4: Examples of bitwise operations**

Operation	Binary form	Result	Explanation
(A & B)	10101010 01001011 -----	10	Result column equals 1 if both A and B are 1. Otherwise, result column equals 0.
	00001010		
(A   B)	10101010 01001011 -----	235	Result column equals 1 if either A or B, or both, is 1. Otherwise, result column equals 0.
	11101011		

<b>Operation</b>	<b>Binary form</b>	<b>Result</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
(A ^ B)	10101010 01001011 -----	225	Result column equals 1 if either A or B, but not both, is 1.
(~A)	10101010 ----- 11100001 01010101	85	All 1s are changed to 0s and all 0s to 1s.

## The String concatenation operator

The string operator + can concatenate two or more character or binary expressions. For example:

1    select Name = (au\_lname + ", " + au\_fname)  
      from authors

Displays author names under the column heading “Name” in last-name, first-name order, with a comma after the last name; for example, “Bennett, Abraham.”

2    select "abc" + " " + "def"

Returns the string “abc def”. The empty string is interpreted as a single space in all char, varchar, nchar, nvarchar, and text concatenation, and in varchar insert and assignment statements.

When concatenating non-character, non-binary expressions, use convert:

```
select "The date is " +  
       convert(varchar(12), getdate())
```

## The comparison operators

Adaptive Server uses these comparison operators:

**Table 1-5: Comparison operators**

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
<	Less than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<=	Less than or equal to
<>	Not equal to
!=	Not equal to (Transact-SQL extension)
!>	Not greater than (Transact-SQL extension)
!<	Not less than (Transact-SQL extension)

In comparing character data, < means closer to the beginning of the server's sort order and > means closer to the end of the sort order. Uppercase and lowercase letters are equal in a sort order that is not case sensitive. Use sp\_helpsort to see the sort order for your Adaptive Server. Trailing blanks are ignored for comparison purposes.

In comparing dates, < means earlier than and > means later than.

Put single or double quotes around all character and datetime data used with a comparison operator:

```
= "Bennet"
> "May 22 1947"
```

## Nonstandard operators

The following operators are Transact-SQL extensions:

- Modulo operator: %
- Negative comparison operators: !>, !<, !=
- Bitwise operators: ~, ^, |, &
- Join operators: \*= and =\*

## Comparing character expressions

Adaptive Server treats character constant expressions as varchar. If they are compared with non-varchar variables or column data, the datatype precedence rules are used in the comparison (that is, the datatype with lower precedence is converted to the datatype with higher precedence). If implicit datatype conversion is not supported, you must use the convert function (see “Supported conversions” on page HIDDEN).

Comparison of a char expression to a varchar expression follows the datatype precedence rule; the “lower” datatype is converted to the “higher” datatype. All varchar expressions are converted to char (that is, trailing blanks are appended) for the comparison.

## Using the empty string

The empty string (“”) or (“‘”) is interpreted as a single blank in insert or assignment statements on varchar data. When varchar, char, nchar, or nvarchar data is concatenated, the empty string is interpreted as a single space. For example, this is stored as “abc def”:

```
"abc" + " " + "def"
```

The empty string is never evaluated as NULL.

## Including quotation marks in character expressions

There are two ways to specify literal quotes within a char or varchar entry. The first method is to use an additional quote with a quote of the same type. This is called “escaping” the quote. For example, if you begin a character entry with a single quote, but you want to include a single quote as part of the entry, use two single quotes:

```
'I don't understand.'
```

Here is an example containing internal double and single quotes. The single quote does not have to be escaped, but the double quote does:

```
"He said, ""It's not really confusing." ""
```

The second method is to enclose a quote in the opposite kind of quotation mark. In other words, surround an entry containing a double quote with single quotes (or vice versa). Here are some examples:

```
'George said, "There must be a better way."'  
"Isn't there a better way?"  
'George asked, "Isn't there a better way?"'
```

To continue a character string that would go off the end of one line on your screen, enter a backslash (\) before going to the following line.

---

**Note** If the quoted\_identifier option is set to on, do not use double quotes around character or date data. You must use single quotes, or Adaptive Server treats the data as an identifier. For more information about quoted identifiers, see “Delimited identifiers” on page 9.

---

## Relational and logical expressions

A logical expression or relational expression returns TRUE, FALSE, or UNKNOWN. The general patterns are:

```
expression comparison_operator [any | all] expression  
expression [not] in expression  
[not] exists expression  
expression [not] between expression and expression  
expression [not] like "match_string" [escape "escape_character"]  
not expression like "match_string" [escape "escape_character"]  
expression is [not] null  
not logical_expression  
logical_expression {and | or} logical_expression
```

### Using *any*, *all*, and *in*

*any* is used with <, >, or = and a subquery. It returns results when any value retrieved in the subquery matches the value in the where or having clause of the outer statement. *all* is used with < or > and a subquery. It returns results when all values retrieved in the subquery are less than (<) or greater than (>) the value in the where or having clause of the outer statement. See Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries,” for more information.

*in* returns results when any value returned by the second expression matches the value in the first expression. The second expression must be a subquery or a list of values enclosed in parentheses. *in* is equivalent to = *any*.

## Connecting expressions with *and* and *or*

and connects two expressions and returns results when both are true. or connects two or more conditions and returns results when either of the conditions is true.

When more than one logical operator is used in a statement, and is evaluated before or. Use parentheses to change the order of execution.

Table 1-6 shows the results of logical operations, including those that involve null values:

**Table 1-6: Truth tables for logical expressions**

and	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
TRUE	TRUE	FALSE	UNKNOWN
FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE
NULL	UNKNOWN	FALSE	UNKNOWN

or	TRUE	FALSE	NULL
TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE
FALSE	TRUE	FALSE	UNKNOWN
NULL	TRUE	UNKNOWN	UNKNOWN

not	
TRUE	FALSE
FALSE	TRUE
NULL	UNKNOWN

The result UNKNOWN indicates that one or more of the expressions evaluates to NULL, and that the result of the operation cannot be determined to be either TRUE or FALSE.

# Transact-SQL extensions

Transact-SQL enhances the power of SQL and minimizes the occasions on which users must resort to a programming language to accomplish a desired task. Transact-SQL's capabilities go beyond the ISO standards and the many commercial versions of SQL.

Most of the Transact-SQL enhancements (known as extensions) are summarized here. The Transact-SQL extensions for each command are in the *Reference Manual*.

## The **compute** clause

The Transact-SQL compute clause extension is used with the row aggregate functions sum, max, min, avg, and count to calculate summary values. Queries that include a compute clause display results with both detail and summary rows. These reports resemble those produced by almost any Database Management System (DBMS) with a report generator. compute displays summary values as additional rows in the results, instead of as new columns. The compute clause is covered in Chapter 3, “Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting.”

## Control-of-flow language

Transact-SQL provides control-of-flow language that can be used as part of any SQL statement or batch. These constructs are available: begin...end, break, continue, declare, goto label, if...else, print, raiserror, return, waitfor, and while. Local variables can be defined with declare and assigned values. A number of predefined global variables are supplied by the system.

Transact-SQL also supports case expressions, which include the keywords case, when, then, coalesce, and nullif. case expressions replace the if statements of standard SQL. case expressions are allowed anywhere a value expression is used.

## Stored procedures

One of the most important Transact-SQL extensions is the ability to create stored procedures. A **stored procedure** is a collection of SQL statements and optional control-of-flow statements stored under a name. The creator of a stored procedure can also define parameters to be supplied when the stored procedure is executed.

The ability to write your own stored procedures greatly enhances the power, efficiency, and flexibility of the SQL database language. Since the execution plan is saved after stored procedures are run, stored procedures can subsequently run much faster than standalone statements.

Adaptive Server-supplied stored procedures, called **system procedures**, aid in Adaptive Server system administration. Chapter 14, “Using Stored Procedures,” discusses system procedures and explains how to create stored procedures. System procedures are discussed in detail in the *Reference Manual*.

Users can execute stored procedures on remote servers. All Transact-SQL extensions support return values from stored procedures, user-defined return status from stored procedures, and the ability to pass parameters from a procedure to its caller.

## Extended stored procedures

An **extended stored procedure** (ESP) has the interface of a stored procedure, but instead of containing SQL statements and control-of-flow statements, it executes procedural language code that has been compiled into a dynamic link library (DLL).

The procedural language in which an ESP function is written can be any language capable of calling C language functions and manipulating C datatypes.

ESPs allow Adaptive Server to perform a task outside the RDBMS in response to an event occurring within the database. For example, you could use an ESP to send an e-mail notification or network-wide broadcast in response to an event occurring within the Relational Database Management System (RDBMS).

There are some Adaptive Server-supplied ESPs, called **system extended stored procedures**. One of these, `xp_cmdshell`, allows you to execute an operating system command from within Adaptive Server. Chapter 15, “Using Extended Stored Procedures,” describes ESPs. The *Reference Manual* includes detailed information about system ESPs.

ESPs are implemented by an Open Server™ application called XP Server™, which runs on the same machine as Adaptive Server. Remote execution of a stored procedure is called a remote procedure call (RPC). Adaptive Server and XP Server communicate through RPCs. XP Server is automatically installed with Adaptive Server.

## Triggers

A **trigger** is a stored procedure that instructs the system to take one or more actions when a specific change is attempted. By preventing incorrect, unauthorized, or inconsistent changes to data, triggers help maintain the integrity of a database.

Triggers can also protect referential integrity—enforcing rules about the relationships among data in different tables. Triggers go into effect when a user attempts to modify data with an insert, delete, or update command.

Triggers can nest to a depth of 16 levels, and can call local or remote stored procedures or other triggers.

## Defaults and rules

Transact-SQL provides keywords for maintaining entity integrity (ensuring that a value is supplied for every column requiring one) and domain integrity (ensuring that each value in a column belongs to the set of legal values for that column). Defaults and rules define integrity constraints that come into play during data entry and modification.

A default is a value linked to a particular column or datatype, and inserted by the system if no value is provided during data entry. Rules are user-defined integrity constraints linked to a particular column or datatype, and enforced at data entry time. Rules and defaults are discussed in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

## Error handling and set options

A number of error handling techniques are available to the Transact-SQL programmer, including the ability to capture return status from stored procedures, define customized return values from stored procedures, pass parameters from a procedure to its caller, and get reports from global variables such as @@error. The raiserror and print statements, in combination with control-of-flow language, can direct error messages to the user of a Transact-SQL application. Developers can localize print and raiserror to use different languages.

Set options customize the display of results, show processing statistics, and provide other diagnostic aids for debugging your Transact-SQL programs. All set options except showplan and char\_convert take effect immediately.

The following paragraphs list the available set options. For more information, refer to the *Reference Manual*.

- `parseonly`, `noexec`, `prefetch`, `showplan`, `rowcount`, `nocount`, and `tablecount` control the way a query is executed. The `statistics` options display performance statistics after each query. `flushmessage` determines when Adaptive Server returns messages to the user. See the *Performance and Tuning Guide* for more information.
- `arithabort` determines whether Adaptive Server aborts queries with arithmetic overflow and numeric truncation errors. `arithignore` determines whether Adaptive Server prints a warning message if a query results in an arithmetic overflow. For more information, see “Arithmetic errors” on page 29.
- `offsets` and `procid` are used in DB-Library™ to interpret results from Adaptive Server.
- `datefirst`, `dateformat`, and `language` affect date functions, date order, and message display.
- `char_convert` controls character-set conversion between Adaptive Server and a client.
- `textsize` controls the size of `text` or `image` data returned with a `select` statement. See “Text functions used for text and image data” on page 382.
- `cursor rows` and `close on endtran` affect the way Adaptive Server handles cursors. See “Fetching data rows using cursors” on page 598.
- `identity_insert` allows or prohibits inserts that affect a table’s `IDENTITY` column. See “Gaps due to insertions, deletions, identity grab size, and rollbacks” on page 249.
- `chained` and `transaction` isolation level control how Adaptive Server handles transactions. See “Selecting the transaction mode and isolation level” on page 636.
- `self_recursion` allows Adaptive Server to handle triggers that cause themselves to fire. See “Trigger self-recursion” on page 575.
- `ansinull`, `ansi_permissions`, and `fipsflagger` control whether Adaptive Server flags the use of nonstandard SQL. `string_rtruncation` controls whether Adaptive Server raises an exception error when truncating a `char` or `nchar` string. See “Compliance to ANSI standards” on page 27.

- `quoted_identifier` controls whether Adaptive Server treats character strings enclosed in double quotes as identifiers. See “Delimited identifiers” on page 9 for more information.
- `role` controls the roles granted to you. For information about roles, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Additional Adaptive Server extensions to SQL

Other unique or unusual features of Transact-SQL include:

- The following extensions to SQL search conditions: modulo operator (%), negative comparison operators (!>, !<, and !=), bitwise operators (–, ^, |, and &), join operators (\*= and =\*), wildcard characters ([ ] and -), and the not operator (^). See Chapter 2, “Queries: Selecting Data from a Table.”
- Fewer restrictions on the group by clause and the order by clause. See Chapter 3, “Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting.”
- Subqueries, which can be used almost anywhere an expression is allowed. See Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.”
- Temporary tables and other temporary database objects, which exist only for the duration of the current work session, and disappear thereafter. See Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”
- User-defined datatypes built on Adaptive Server-supplied datatypes. See Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes,” and Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”
- The ability to insert data from a table into that same table. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”
- The ability to extract data from one table and put it into another with the update command. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”
- The ability to remove data based on data in other tables using the join in a delete statement. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”
- A fast way to delete all rows in a specified table and reclaim the space they took up with the truncate table command. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”

- IDENTITY columns, which provide system-generated values that uniquely identify each row within a table. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”
- Updates and selections through views. Unlike most other versions of SQL, Transact-SQL places no restrictions on retrieving data through views, and few restrictions on updating data through views. See Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data.”
- Dozens of built-in functions. See Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries.”
- Options to the `create index` command for fine-tuning aspects of performance determined by indexes, and controlling the treatment of duplicate keys and rows. See Chapter 11, “Creating Indexes on Tables.”
- Control over what happens when a user attempts to enter duplicate keys in a unique index, or duplicate rows in a table. See Chapter 11, “Creating Indexes on Tables.”
- Bitwise operators for use with integer and bit type columns. See “Bitwise operators” on page 49 and Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes.”
- Support for text and image datatypes. See Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes.”
- The ability to gain access to both Sybase and non-Sybase databases. With Component Integration Services, you can accomplish the following types of actions between tables in remote, heterogeneous servers: access remote tables as if they were local, perform joins, transfer data between tables, maintain referential integrity, provide applications such as PowerBuilder® with transparent access to heterogeneous data, and use native remote server capabilities. For more information, see the *Component Integration Services User’s Guide*.

## Compliance to ANSI standards

The progression of standards for relational database management systems is ongoing. These standards have been, and are being, adopted by ISO and several national standards bodies. SQL86 was the first of these standards. This was replaced by SQL89, which in turn was replaced by SQL92, which is the current standard. SQL92 defines three levels of conformance: entry, intermediate, and full. In the United States, the National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST) has defined the transitional level, which falls between the entry and intermediate levels.

Certain behaviors defined by the standards are not compatible with existing SQL Server and Adaptive Server applications. Transact-SQL provides set options that allow you to toggle these behaviors.

By default, compliant behavior is enabled for all Embedded SQL™ precompiler applications. Other applications needing to match SQL standard behavior can use the options in Table 1-7 for entry-level SQL92 compliance. For more information on setting these options, see *set* in the *Reference Manual*.

**Table 1-7: Set command flags for entry-level SQL92 compliance**

Option	Setting
ansi_permissions	on
ansinull	on
arithabort	off
arithabort numeric_truncation	on
arithignore	off
chained	on
close on endtran	on
fipsflagger	on
quoted_identifier	on
string_tr truncation	on
transaction isolation level	3

The following sections describe the differences between standard behavior and default Transact-SQL behavior.

## Federal Information Processing Standards (*FIPS*) flagger

For customers writing applications that must conform to the SQL92 standard, Adaptive Server provides a set fipsflagger option. When this option is turned on, all commands containing Transact-SQL extensions that are not allowed in entry-level SQL92 generate an informational message. This option does not disable the extensions. Processing completes when you issue the non-ANSI SQL command.

## Chained transactions and isolation levels

Adaptive Server provides SQL standard-compliant “chained” transaction behavior as an option. In chained mode, all data retrieval and modification commands (delete, insert, open, fetch, select, and update) implicitly begin a **transaction**. Since such behavior is incompatible with many Transact-SQL applications, Transact-SQL style (or “unchained”) transactions remain the default.

You can initiate chained transaction mode using the set chained option. The set transaction isolation level option controls transaction isolation levels. See Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery,” for more information.

## Identifiers

To be compliant with entry-level SQL92, identifiers cannot:

- Begin with a pound sign (#)
- Have more than 18 characters
- Contain lowercase letters

## Delimited identifiers

Adaptive Server supports delimited identifiers for table, view, and column names. Delimited identifiers are object names enclosed within double quotation marks. Using them allows you to avoid certain restrictions on object names.

Use the set quoted\_identifier option to recognize delimited identifiers. When this option is on, all characters enclosed in double quotes are treated as identifiers. Because this behavior is incompatible with many existing applications, the default setting for this option is off.

## SQL standard-style comments

In Transact-SQL, comments are delimited by “/\*” and “\*”, and can be nested. Transact-SQL also supports SQL standard-style comments, which consist of any string beginning with two connected minus signs, a comment, and a terminating new line:

```
select "hello" -- this is a comment
```

The Transact-SQL “/\*” and “\*” comment delimiters are fully supported, but “--” within Transact-SQL comments is not recognized.

## Right truncation of character strings

The string\_rtruncation set option controls silent truncation of character strings for SQL standard compatibility. Set this option to on to prohibit silent truncation and enforce SQL standard behavior.

## Permissions required for *update* and *delete* statements

The ansi\_permissions set option determines permissions required for delete and update statements. When this option is on, Adaptive Server uses the more stringent SQL92 permission requirements for these statements. Because this behavior is incompatible with many existing applications, the default setting for this option is off.

## Arithmetic errors

The arithabort and arithignore set options allow compliance with the SQL92 standard as follows:

- `arithabort arith_overflow` specifies behavior following a divide-by-zero error or a loss of precision. The default setting, `arithabort arith_overflow on`, rolls back the entire transaction in which the error occurs. If the error occurs in a batch that does not contain a transaction, `arithabort arith_overflow on` does not roll back earlier commands in the batch, but Adaptive Server does not execute statements in the batch that follow the error-generating statement.  
If you set `arithabort arith_overflow off`, Adaptive Server aborts the statement that causes the error but continues to process other statements in the transaction or batch.
- `arithabort numeric_truncation` specifies behavior following a loss of scale by an exact numeric type. The default setting, `on`, aborts the statement that causes the error but continues to process other statements in the transaction or batch. If you set `arithabort numeric_truncation off`, Adaptive Server truncates the query results and continues processing. For compliance with the SQL92 standard, enter `set arithabort numeric_truncation on`.
- `arithignore arith_overflow` determines whether Adaptive Server displays a message after a divide-by-zero error or a loss of precision. The default setting, `off`, displays a warning message after these errors. Setting `arithignore arith_overflow on` suppresses warning messages after these errors. For compliance to the SQL92 standard, enter `set arithignore off`.

## Synonymous keywords

Several keywords added for SQL standard compatibility are synonymous with existing Transact-SQL keywords.

**Table 1-8: ANSI-compatible keyword synonyms**

<b>Current syntax</b>	<b>Additional syntax</b>
commit tran, commit transaction	commit work
rollback tran, rollback transaction	rollback work
any	some
grant all	grant all privileges
revoke all	revoke all privileges
max ( <i>expression</i> )	max ([all   distinct]) <i>expression</i>
min ( <i>expression</i> )	min ([all   distinct]) <i>expression</i>
user_name() built-in function	user keyword

## Treatment of nulls

The set option ansinull determines whether or not evaluation of null-valued operands in SQL equality (=) or inequality (!=) comparisons and aggregate functions is SQL standard-compliant. This option does not affect how Adaptive Server evaluates null values in other kinds of SQL statements such as create table.

## Adaptive Server login accounts

Each Adaptive Server user must have a login account identified by a unique login name and a password. The account is established by a System Security Officer. Login accounts have the following characteristics:

- A login name, unique on that server.
- A password.
- A default database (optional). If a default is defined, the user starts each Adaptive Server session in the defined database without having to issue the use command. If no default is defined, each session starts in the master database.
- A default language (optional). This specifies the language in which prompts and messages display. If a language is not defined, Adaptive Server's default language, which is set at installation, is used.
- A full name (optional). This is your full name, which can be useful for documentation and identification purposes.

## **Group membership**

In Adaptive Server, you can use groups to grant and revoke permissions to more than one user at a time within a database. For example, if everyone who works in the “Sales” department needs access to certain tables, all of those users can be put into a group called “sales”. The Database Owner can grant specific access permissions to that group rather than having to grant permission to each user individually.

A group is created within a database, not on the server as a whole. The Database Owner is responsible for creating groups and assigning users to them. You are always a member of the “public” group, which includes all users on Adaptive Server. You can also belong to one other group. You can use `sp_helpuser` to find out what group you are a member of:

```
sp_helpuser user_name
```

## **Role membership**

In Adaptive Server, a System Security Officer can define and create roles as a convenient way to grant and revoke permissions to several users at a time, server-wide. For example, clerical staff may need to be able to insert and select from tables in several databases, but they may not need to update them. A System Security Officer could define a role called “clerical\_user\_role” and grant the role to everyone in the clerical staff. Database object owners could then grant “clerical\_user\_role” the required privileges.

Roles can be defined in a role hierarchy, where a role such as “office\_manager\_role” contains the “clerical\_user\_role”. Users who are granted roles in a hierarchy automatically have all the permissions of the roles that are lower in the hierarchy. For example, the Office Manager can perform all the actions permitted for the clerical staff. Hierarchies can include either system or user-defined roles.

To find out more about roles assigned to you use:

- `sp_displayroles` – to find out all roles assigned to you, whether or not they are active.
- `sp_activeroles` – to find out which of your assigned roles are active. If you specify the `expand_down` parameter, Adaptive Server displays any roles contained within your currently active roles.

The syntax is:

```
sp_displayroles user_name  
sp_activeroles expand_down
```

For more information about roles, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Getting information about your Adaptive Server account

You can get information about your own Adaptive Server login account by using:

```
sp_displaylogin
```

Adaptive Server returns the following information:

- Your server user ID
- Your login name
- Your full name
- Any roles granted to you (regardless of whether they are currently active)
- Whether your account is locked
- The date you last changed your password

## Changing your password

It is a good idea to change your password periodically. The System Security Officer can configure Adaptive Server to require that you change your password at preset, regular intervals. If this is the case on your server, Adaptive Server notifies you when it is time to change your password.

---

**Note** If you use remote servers, you must change your password on all remote servers that you access *before* you change it on your local server. For more information, see “Changing your password on a remote server” on page 35.

---

You can change your password at any time using `sp_password`:

```
sp_password old_passwd, new_passwd
```

When you create a new password:

- It must be at least six bytes long.
- It can be any printable letters, numbers, or symbols.
- The maximum size for a password is 30 bytes. If your password exceeds 30 bytes, Adaptive Server uses only the first 30 characters.

When you specify a password, enclose it in quotation marks if:

- It includes characters other than A–Z, a–z, 0–9, \_, #, valid single-byte or multibyte alphabetic characters, or accented alphabetic characters.
- It begins with a number 0–9.

The following example shows how to change the password “terrible2” to “3blindmice”:

```
sp_password terrible2, "3blindmice"
```

A return status of 0 means that the password was changed. For more information about `sp_password`, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Understanding remote logins

You can execute stored procedures on a remote Adaptive Server using RPCs if you have been granted access to the remote server and an appropriate database on that server. Remote execution of a stored procedure is a *remote procedure call* (RPC).

To obtain access to a remote server:

- The remote server must be known to your local server. This occurs when the System Security Officer executes `sp_addserver`.
- You must acquire a login on the remote server. This happens when the System Administrator executes `sp_adremotelogin`.
- You must be added as a user to the appropriate database on the remote server. This is accomplished when the Database Owner executes `sp_adduser`.

These procedures are discussed in the *System Administration Guide*.

When you can access the remote server, you can execute an RPC by qualifying the stored procedure name with the name of the remote server. For example, to execute `sp_help` on the GATEWAY server, enter:

```
GATEWAY...sp_help
```

Or, to fully qualify the name of the procedure, include the name of the database containing the procedure and the name of its owner:

```
GATEWAY..sysystemprocs.dbo.sp_help
```

In addition, if a System Security Officer has set up the local and remote servers to use network-based security services, one or more of the following functions may be in effect when you execute RPCs:

- Mutual authentication – the local server authenticates the remote server by retrieving the credential of the remote server and verifying it with the security mechanism. With this service, the credentials of both servers are authenticated and verified.
- Message confidentiality via encryption – messages are encrypted when sent to the remote server, and results from the remote server are encrypted.
- Message integrity – messages between the servers are checked for tampering.

If you are using the unified login feature of network-based security, a System Security Officer can use `sp_remoteoption` on the remote server to establish you as a trusted user who does not need to supply a password to the remote server. If you are using Open Client™ Client-Library™/C, you can use `ct_remote_pwd` to specify a password for the remote server.

For more information about network-based security services, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Changing your password on a remote server

You must change your password on all remote servers that you access *before* you change it on your local server. If you change it on the local server first, when you issue the RPC to execute `sp_password` on the remote server, the command fails because your local and remote passwords do not match.

The syntax for changing your password on the remote server is:

```
remote_server...sp_password old_passwd, new_passwd
```

For example:

```
GATEWAY...sp_password terrible2, "3blindmice"
```

For information on changing your password on the local server, review “[Changing your password](#)” on page 33.

## How to use Transact-SQL with the *isql* utility

You can use Transact-SQL directly from the operating system with the standalone utility program *isql*.

You must first set up an account, or login, on Adaptive Server. To use *isql*, type a command similar to the following at your operating system prompt:

```
isql -Uhoratio -Ptallahassee -Shaze -w300
```

where “horatio” is the user, “tallahassee” is the password, and “haze” is the name of the Adaptive Server to which you are connecting. The *-w* parameter displays *isql* output at a width of 300 characters. Login names and passwords are case-sensitive.

If you start *isql* without using a login name, Adaptive Server assumes that your login name is the same as your operating system name. For details about specifying your server login name and other parameters for *isql*, see the Utility Programs manual for your platform.

---

**Note** Do not use the *-P* option to *isql* to specify your password, because another user might see your password.

---

After you start *isql*, you see:

```
1>
```

You can now start issuing Transact-SQL commands.

To connect to a non-Sybase database using Component Integration Services, use the *connect* to command. For more information, see the *Component Integration Services User’s Guide*. See also *connect to...disconnect* in the *Reference Manual*.

## Default databases

When your Adaptive Server account was created, you may have been assigned a default database to which you are connected when you log in. For example, your default database might be *pubs2*, the sample database. If you were not assigned a default database, you are connected to the **master database**.

You can change your default database to any database that you have permission to use, or to any database that allows guests. Any user with an Adaptive Server login can be a guest. To change your default database, use `sp_modifylogin`, which is described in the *Reference Manual*.

To change to the `pubs2` database, which is used for most examples in this manual, enter:

```
1> use pubs2  
2> go
```

Enter the word “go” on a line by itself and do not precede it with blanks or tabs. It is the command terminator; it lets Adaptive Server know that you have finished typing, and you are ready for your command to be executed.

In general, examples of Transact-SQL statements shown in this manual do not include the line prompts used by the `isql` utility, nor do they include the terminator `go`.

## Using network-based security services with *isql*

You can specify the `-V` option of `isql` to use network-based security services such as unified login. With unified login, you can be authenticated with a security mechanism offered by a third-party provider and then log in to Adaptive Server without specifying a login name or a password. Other security services you can use, if they are supported by the third-party security mechanism, include:

- Data confidentiality
- Data integrity
- Mutual authentication
- Data origin checking
- Data replay detection
- Out-of-sequence detection

See the *System Administration Guide* for more information about the options you can specify to use network-based security.

## **Logging out of *isql***

You can log out of isql at any time by typing:

`quit`

or

`exit`

Either of these commands returns you to the operating system prompt, and do not require the terminator “go”.

For more details on isql, see the *Utility Guide*.

## **Using the *pubs2* and *pubs3* sample databases**

The pubs2 sample database is used for most examples in this manual. Where noted, the pubs3 database is used instead. You can try any of the examples on your own workstation.

The query results you see on your screen may not look exactly as they do in this manual. That is because some of the examples here have been reformatted (for example, the columns have been realigned) for visual clarity or to take up less space on the page.

To change the sample database using create or data modification statements, you may need to get additional permissions from a System Administrator. If you do change the sample database, Sybase suggests that you return it to its original state for the sake of future users. Ask a System Administrator if you need help restoring the sample databases.

## **What is in the sample databases?**

The sample database, pubs2, contains these tables: publishers, authors, titles, titleauthor, roysched, sales, salesdetail, stores, discounts, au\_pix, and blurbs. The pubs3 sample database adds store\_employees but does not include au\_pix. pubs3 is an updated version of pubs2 and can be used for referential integrity examples. Its tables differ slightly from the tables defined in pubs2.

Here is a brief description of each table:

- publishers contains the identification numbers, names, cities, and states of three publishing companies.
- authors contains an identification number, first and last name, address information, and contract status for each author.
- titles contains the book ID, name, type, publisher ID, price, advance, royalty, year-to-date sales, comments, and publication date for each book.
- titleauthor links the titles and authors tables together. It contains each book's title ID, author ID, author order, and the royalty split among the authors of a book.
- roysched lists the unit sales ranges and the royalty connected with each range. The royalty is some percentage of the net receipts from sales.
- sales records the store ID, order number, and date of book sales. It acts as the master table for the detail rows in salesdetail.
- salesdetail records the bookstore sales of titles in the titles table.
- stores lists bookstores by store ID.
- store\_employees lists employees for the stores described in the stores table.
- discounts lists three types of discounts for bookstores.
- au\_pix contains pictures of the authors in binary form using the image datatype. au\_pix is in pubs2 only.
- blurbs contains long book descriptions using the text datatype.

The pubs2 database is illustrated in Appendix A, “The pubs2 Database,” while pubs3 is illustrated in Appendix B, “The pubs3 Database.”



# Queries: Selecting Data from a Table

The `select` command retrieves data stored in the rows and columns of database tables using a procedure called a query. A query has three main parts: the `select` clause, the `from` clause, and the `where` clause.

This chapter explains queries, provides examples, and discusses:

Topic	Page
What are queries?	41
Choosing columns: the <code>select</code> clause	44
Eliminating duplicate query results with <code>distinct</code>	55
Specifying tables: the <code>from</code> clause	57
Selecting rows: the <code>where</code> clause	58
Pattern matching	65

This chapter focuses on basic single-table `select` statements. Many sections contain sample statements that you can use to practice writing queries. If you want to integrate other Transact-SQL functionality, such as joins, subqueries, and aggregates, you can find more complex query examples later in this book.

## What are queries?

A SQL query requests data from the database and receives the results. This process, also known as **data retrieval**, is expressed using the `select` statement. You can use it for **selections**, which retrieve a subset of the rows in one or more tables, and you can use it for **projections**, which retrieve a subset of the columns in one or more tables.

A simple example of a `select` statement is:

```
select select_list
  from table_list
 where search_conditions
```

The select clause specifies the columns you want to retrieve. The from clause specifies the tables to search. The where clause specifies which rows in the tables you want to see. For example, the following select statement finds the first and the last names of writers living in Oakland from the authors table, in the pubs2 database.

```
select au_fname, au_lname  
from authors  
where city = "Oakland"
```

Results of this query appear in columnar format:

au_fname	au_lname
Marjorie	Green
Dick	Straight
Dirk	Stringer
Stearns	MacFeather
Livia	Karsen

( 5 rows affected)

## **select syntax**

The select syntax can be simpler or more complex than shown in the previous example. A simple select statement contains only the select clause; the from clause is almost always included, but is necessary only in select statements that retrieve data from tables. All other clauses, including the where clause, are optional. The full syntax of the select statement includes these phrases and keywords:

```
select [all | distinct] select_list  
[into [[database.]owner.] table_name]  
[from [[database.]owner.]{view_name|table_name}  
[(index {index_name} | table_name)  
[parallel [degree_of_parallelism] ]  
[prefetch size] [lru | mru]])]  
[holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]  
.[[database.]owner.]{view_name|table_name}  
[(index {index_name} | table_name)  
[parallel [degree_of_parallelism] ]  
[prefetch size] [lru | mru]])]  
[holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]...]  
  
[where search_conditions]  
  
[group by [all] aggregate_free_expression
```

```
[, aggregate_free_expression]...]
[having search_conditions]

[order by
{[[[database.]owner.][table_name].[view_name.}]
 column_name | select_list_number | expression} [asc | desc]
[,{[[[database.]owner.][table_name][view_name.}]
 column_name | select_list_number | expression}
 [asc | desc]]...]

[compute row_aggregate(column_name)
 [, row_aggregate(column_name)]...
 [by column_name [, column_name]...]]

[for {read only | update [of column_name_list]}]

[at isolation {read uncommitted | read committed | serializable}]

[for browse]
```

Use the clauses in a select statement in the order shown above. For example, if the statement includes a group by clause and an order by clause, the group by clause must precede the order by clause.

Qualify the names of database objects if there is ambiguity about which object is being referred to. If several columns in multiple tables are called “name”, you may have to qualify “name” with the database name, owner name, or table name. For example:

```
select au_lname from pubs2.dbo.authors
```

Since the examples in this chapter involve single-table queries, column names in syntax models and examples are usually not qualified with the names of the tables, owners, or databases to which they belong. These elements are left out for readability; it is never wrong to include qualifiers. The remaining sections in this chapter analyze the syntax of the select statement in more detail.

This chapter describes only some of the clauses and keywords included in the syntax of the select command. The following clauses are discussed in other chapters:

- group by, having, order by, and compute are described in Chapter 3, “Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting.”
- into is described in Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”
- at isolation is described in Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

The holdlock, noholdlock, and shared keywords (which deal with locking in Adaptive Server) and the index clause are described in the *Performance and Tuning Guide*. For information about the for read only and for update clauses, see the declare cursor command in the *Reference Manual*.

---

**Note** The for browse clause is used only in DB-Library applications. See the *Open Client DB-Library/C Reference Manual* for details. See also “Using browse mode instead of cursors” on page 612.

---

## Choosing columns: the select clause

The items in the select clause make up the select list. When the select list consists of a column name, a group of columns, or the wildcard character (\*), the data is retrieved in the order in which it is stored in the table (create table order).

### Choosing all columns: `select *`

The asterisk (\*) selects all the column names in all the tables specified by the from clause. Use it to save typing time and errors when you want to see all the columns in a table. \* retrieves the data in create table order.

The syntax for selecting all the columns in a table is:

```
select *
from table_list
```

The following statement retrieves all columns in the publishers table and displays them in create table order. This statement retrieves all rows since it contains no where clause:

```
select *
from publishers
```

The results look like this:

pub_id	pub_name	city	state
0736	New Age Books	Boston	WA
0877	Binnet & Hardley	Washington	DC
1389	Algodata Infosystems	Berkeley	CA

```
(3 rows affected)
```

If you listed all the column names in the table in order after the select keyword, you would get exactly the same results:

```
select pub_id, pub_name, city, state  
from publishers
```

You can also use “\*” more than once in a query:

```
select *, *  
from publishers
```

This query displays each column name and each piece of column data twice. Like a column name, you can qualify an asterisk with a table name. For example:

```
select publishers.*  
from publishers
```

However, because select \* finds all the columns currently in a table, changes in the structure of a table such as adding, removing, or renaming columns automatically modify the results of select \*. Listing columns individually gives you more precise control over the results.

## Choosing specific columns

To select only specific columns in a table, use:

```
select column_name[, column_name]...  
from table_name
```

Separate column names with commas, for example:

```
select au_lname, au_fname  
from authors
```

## Rearranging the order of columns

The order in which you list the column names in the select clause determines the order in which the columns display. The examples that follow show how to specify column order, displaying publisher names and identification numbers from all three rows in the publishers table. The first example prints pub\_id first, followed by pub\_name; the second reverses that order. The information is the same but the organization changes.

```
select pub_id, pub_name
from publishers
pub_id    pub_name
-----
0736      New Age Books
0877      Binnet & Hardley
1389      Algodata Infosystems

(3 rows affected)
select pub_name, pub_id
from publishers
pub_name                pub_id
-----
New Age Books            0736
Binnet & Hardley         0877
Algodata Infosystems     1389

(3 rows affected)
```

## Renaming columns in query results

When query results display, the default heading for each column is the name given to it when it was created. You can rename a column heading for display purposes by using one of the following instead of only the column name in a select list.

*column\_heading = column\_name*

or:

*column\_name column\_heading*

or:

*column\_name as column\_heading*

This provides a substitute name for the column. For example, to change `pub_name` to “Publisher” in the previous query, type any of the following statements:

```
select Publisher = pub_name, pub_id
from publishers
select pub_name Publisher, pub_id
from publishers
select pub_name as Publisher, pub_id
from publishers
```

The results of these statements look like this:

```
Publisher          pub_id
-----
New Age Books      0736
Binnet & Hardley   0877
Algodata Infosystems 1389

(3 rows affected)
```

## Expressions

The select statement can also include one or more **expressions**, which allow you to manipulate the data retrieved.

```
select expression [, expression]...
  from table_list
```

An expression is any combination of constants, column names, functions, subqueries, or case expressions, connected by arithmetic or bitwise operators and parentheses.

If any table or column name in the list does not conform to the rules for valid identifiers, set the quoted\_identifier option on and enclose the identifier in double quotes.

## Quoted strings in column headings

You can include any characters—even blanks—in a column heading if you enclose the entire heading in quotation marks. You do not need to set the quoted\_identifier option on. If the column heading is not enclosed in quotation marks, it must conform to the rules for identifiers. Both of the following queries produce the same result:

```
select "Publisher's Name" = pub_name
  from publishers
select pub_name "Publisher's Name"
  from publishers
Publisher's Name
-----
New Age Books
Binnet & Hardley
Algodata Infosystems

(3 rows affected)
```

In addition, you can use Transact-SQL reserved words in quoted column headings. For example, the following query, using the reserved word sum as a column heading, is valid:

```
select "sum" = sum(total_sales) from titles
```

Quoted column headings cannot be more than 30 bytes long.

---

**Note** Before using quotes around a column name in a create table, alter table, select into, or create view statement, you must set quoted\_identifier on.

---

## Character strings in query results

The select statements you have seen so far produce results showing data in the database. You can also write queries so that the results contain strings of characters.

Enclose the string you want to include in single or double quotation marks and separate it from other elements in the select list with a comma. Use double quotation marks if there is an apostrophe in the string—otherwise, the apostrophe is interpreted as a single quotation mark.

Here is a query with a character string:

```
select "The publisher's name is", Publisher = pub_name  
from publishers
```

Publisher
-----
The publisher's name is
The publisher's name is
The publisher's name is
New Age Books
Binnet & Hardley
Algodata Infosystems

(3 rows affected)

## Computed values in the select list

You can perform computations with data from numeric columns or on numeric constants in a select list.

## Bitwise operators

The bitwise operators are a Transact-SQL extension that you can use with integers. These operators convert each integer operand into its binary representation, then evaluates the operands column by column. A value of 1 corresponds to true; a value of 0 corresponds to false.

Table 2-1 shows the bitwise operators.

**Table 2-1: Bitwise operators**

Operator	Meaning
&	Bitwise and (two operands)
	Bitwise or (two operands)
^	Bitwise exclusive or (two operands)
~	Bitwise not (one operand)

For more information on bitwise operators, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Arithmetic operators

Table 2-2 shows the available arithmetic operators.

**Table 2-2: Arithmetic operators**

Operator	Operation
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
/	Division
*	Multiplication
%	Modulo

With the exception of the modulo operator, you can use any arithmetic operator on any numeric column (int, smallint, tinyint, numeric, decimal, float, or money). A modulo, which can be used on all numeric columns except money, finds the integer remainder after a division involving two whole numbers. For example,  $21 \% 11 = 10$  because 21 divided by 11 equals 1, with a remainder of 10.

You can perform certain arithmetic operations on datetime columns using the date functions. See Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries,” for information. You can use all of these operators in the select list with column names and numeric constants in any combination. For example, to see what a projected sales increase of 100 percent for all the books in the titles table looks like, enter:

```
select title_id, total_sales, total_sales * 2
```

```
from titles
```

Here are the results:

title_id	total_sales	
-----	-----	-----
BU1032	4095	8190
BU1111	3876	7752
BU2075	18722	37444
BU7832	4095	8190
MC2222	2032	4064
MC3021	22246	44492
MC3026	NULL	NULL
PC1035	8780	17560
PC8888	4095	8190
PC9999	NULL	NULL
PS1372	375	750
PS2091	2045	4090
PS2106	111	222
PS3333	4072	8144
PS7777	3336	6672
TC3218	375	750
TC4203	15096	30192
TC7777	4095	8190

```
(18 rows affected)
```

Notice the null values in the total\_sales column and the computed column. Null values have no explicitly assigned values. When you perform any arithmetic operation on a null value, the result is NULL. You can give the computed column a heading, “proj\_sales” for example, by entering:

```
select title_id, total_sales,
       proj_sales = total_sales * 2
  from titles
```

title_id	total_sales	proj_sales
-----	-----	-----
BU1032	4095	8190
...		

Try adding character strings such as “Current sales =” and “Projected sales are” to the select statement. The column from which the computed column is generated does not have to appear in the select list. The total\_sales column, for example, is shown in these sample queries only for comparison of its values with the values from the total\_sales \* 2 column. To see only the computed values, enter:

```
select title_id, total_sales * 2
from titles
```

Arithmetic operators also work directly with the data values in specified columns, when no constants are involved. For example:

```
select title_id, total_sales * price
from titles
title_id
-----
BU1032      81,859.05
BU1111      46,318.20
BU2075      55,978.78
BU7832      81,859.05
MC2222      40,619.68
MC3021      66,515.54
MC3026          NULL
PC1035      201,501.00
PC8888      81,900.00
PC9999          NULL
PS1372      8,096.25
PS2091      22,392.75
PS2106          777.00
PS3333      81,399.28
PS7777      26,654.64
TC3218      7,856.25
TC4203      180,397.20
TC7777      61,384.05

(18 rows affected)
```

Computed columns can also come from more than one table. The joining and subqueries chapters in this manual include information on multitable queries.

As an example of a join, this query multiplies the number of copies of a psychology book sold by an outlet (the *qty* column from the *salesdetail* table) by the price of the book (the *price* column from the *titles* table).

```
select salesdetail.title_id, stor_id, qty * price
from titles, salesdetail
where titles.title_id = salesdetail.title_id
and titles.title_id = "PS2106"
title_id      stor_id
-----
PS2106        8042      210.00
PS2106        8042      350.00
PS2106        8042      217.00
```

(3 rows affected)

## Arithmetic operator precedence

When there is more than one arithmetic operator in an expression, multiplication, division, and modulo are calculated first, followed by subtraction and addition. If all arithmetic operators in an expression have the same level of precedence, the order of execution is left to right. Expressions in parentheses take precedence over all other operations.

For example, the following select statement multiplies the total sales of a book by its price to calculate a total dollar amount, then subtracts from that one half of the author's advance.

```
select title_id, total_sales * price - advance / 2
      from titles
```

The product of total\_sales and price is calculated first, because the operator is multiplication. Next, the advance is divided by 2, and the result is subtracted from total\_sales \* price.

To avoid misunderstandings, use parentheses. The following query has the same meaning and gives the same results as the previous one, but it is easier to understand:

```
select title_id,(total_sales * price) - (advance /2)
      from titles
title_id
-----
BU1032      79,359.05
BU1111      43,818.20
BU2075      50,916.28
BU7832      79,359.05
MC2222      40,619.68
MC3021      59,015.54
MC3026          NULL
PC1035      198,001.00
PC8888      77,900.00
PC9999          NULL
PS1372      4,596.25
PS2091      1,255.25
PS2106      -2,223.00
PS3333      80,399.28
PS7777      24,654.64
TC3218      4,356.25
TC4203      178,397.20
```

```
TC7777    57,384.05
```

```
(18 rows affected)
```

Use parentheses to change the order of execution; calculations inside parentheses are handled first. If parentheses are nested, the most deeply nested calculation has precedence. For example, the result and meaning of the preceding example is changed if you use parentheses to force evaluation of the subtraction before the division:

```
select title_id, (total_sales * price - advance) / 2
from titles
title_id
-----
BU1032      38,429.53
BU1111      20,659.10
BU2075      22,926.89
BU7832      38,429.53
MC2222      20,309.84
MC3021      25,757.77
MC3026      NULL
PC1035      97,250.50
PC8888      36,950.00
PC9999      NULL
PS1372      548.13
PS2091      10,058.88
PS2106      -2,611.50
PS3333      39,699.64
PS7777      11,327.32
TC3218      428.13
TC4203      88,198.60
TC7777      26,692.03
```

```
(18 rows affected)
```

## Selecting text and *image* values

text and image values can be quite large. When a select list includes text and image values, the limit on the length of the data returned depends on the setting of the @@textsize global variable. The default setting for @@textsize depends on the software you use to access Adaptive Server; the default value is 32K for isql. To change the value, use the set command:

```
set textsize 25
```

With this setting of @@textsize, a select statement that includes a text column displays only the first 25 bytes of the data.

---

**Note** When you select image data, the returned value includes the characters “0x”, which indicates that the data is hexadecimal. These two characters are counted as part of @@textsize.

---

To reset @@textsize to the Adaptive Server default value, use:

```
set textsize 0
```

The default display is the actual length of the data when its size is less than textsize. For more information about text and image datatypes, see Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes.”

## Using readtext

The readtext command provides a way to retrieve text and image values if you want to retrieve only a selected portion of a column’s data. readtext requires the name of the table and column, the text pointer, a starting offset within the column, and the number of characters or bytes to retrieve. This example finds six characters in the copy column in the blurbs table:

```
declare @val binary(16)
select @val = textptr(copy) from blurbs
where au_id = "648-92-1872"
readtext blurbs.copy @val 2 6 using chars
```

In the example, after the @val local variable has been declared, readtext displays characters 3 - 8 of the copy column, since the offset was 2.

Instead of storing potentially large text and image data in the table, Adaptive Server stores it in a special structure. A text pointer (textptr) which points to the page where the data is actually stored is assigned. When you retrieve data using readtext, you actually retrieve textptr, which is a 16-byte varbinary string. To avoid this, declare a local variable to hold textptr, and then use the variable with readtext, as in the example above.

See “Text functions used for text and image data” on page 382 for an advanced discussion of the readtext command.

## Select list summary

The select list can include \* (all columns in create table order), a list of column names in any order, character strings, column headings, and expressions including arithmetic operators. You can also include aggregate functions, which are discussed in Chapter 3, “Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting.” Here are some select lists to try with the tables in the pubs2 sample database:

- ```
select titles.*  
from titles
```
- ```
select Name = au_fname, Surname = au_lname  
from authors
```
- ```
select Sales = total_sales * price,  
ToAuthor = advance,  
ToPublisher = (total_sales * price) - advance  
from titles
```
- ```
select "Social security #", au_id  
from authors
```
- ```
select this_year = advance, next_year = advance  
+ advance/10, third_year = advance/2,  
"for book title #", title_id  
from titles
```
- ```
select "Total income is",  
Revenue = price * total_sales,  
"for", Book# = title_id  
from titles
```

## Eliminating duplicate query results with *distinct*

The optional distinct keyword eliminates duplicate rows from the default results of a select statement.

For compatibility with other implementations of SQL, Adaptive Server syntax allows the use of all to explicitly ask for all rows. The default for select statements is all. If you do not specify distinct, you will get, by default, all rows including duplicates.

For example, here is the result of searching for all the author identification codes in the titleauthor table without distinct:

```
select au_id
from titleauthor
au_id
-----
172-32-1176
213-46-8915
213-46-8915
238-95-7766
267-41-2394
267-41-2394
274-80-9391
409-56-7008
427-17-2319
472-27-2349
486-29-1786
486-29-1786
648-92-1872
672-71-3249
712-45-1867
722-51-5454
724-80-9391
724-80-9391
756-30-7391
807-91-6654
846-92-7186
899-46-2035
899-46-2035
998-72-3567
998-72-3567
```

(25 rows affected)

There are some duplicate listings. Use distinct to eliminate them.

```
select distinct au_id
from titleauthor
au_id
-----
172-32-1176
213-46-8915
238-95-7766
267-41-2394
274-80-9391
409-56-7008
```

```
427-17-2319  
472-27-2349  
486-29-1786  
648-92-1872  
672-71-3249  
712-45-1867  
722-51-5454  
724-80-9391  
756-30-7391  
807-91-6654  
846-92-7186  
899-46-2035  
998-72-3567
```

```
(19 rows affected)
```

`distinct` treats multiple null values as duplicates. In other words, when `distinct` is included in a `select` statement, only one NULL is returned, no matter how many null values are encountered.

When used with the `order by` clause, `distinct` can return multiple values. See “`order by` and `group by` used with `select distinct`” on page 107 for more information.

## Specifying tables: the *from* clause

The `from` clause is required in every `select` statement involving data from tables or views. Use it to list all the tables and views containing columns included in the `select` list and in the `where` clause. If the `from` clause includes more than one table or view, separate them with commas.

The maximum number of tables and views allowed in a query is 16. This includes tables listed in the `from` clause, base tables referenced by a view definition, any tables referenced in subqueries, a table being created with the `into` keyword, and any tables referenced as part of referential integrity constraints.

The `from` syntax looks like this:

```
select select_list  
      [from [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}  
        [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]  
      [, [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}  
        [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]]...]
```

Table names can be between 1 and 30 bytes long. You can use a letter, @, #, or \_ as the first character. The characters that follow can be digits, letters, or @, #, \$, \_, ¥, or £. Temporary table names must begin either with “#” (pound sign), if they are created outside tempdb, or with “tempdb..”. If you create a temporary table outside tempdb, its name must be less than 13 bytes, since Adaptive Server attaches an internal numeric suffix to the name to ensure that the name is unique. For more information, see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”

The full naming syntax for tables and views is always permitted in the from clause:

```
database.owner.table_name  
database.owner.view_name
```

However, the full naming syntax is necessary only if there is some confusion about the name.

You can give table names correlation names to save typing. Assign the correlation name in the from clause by giving the correlation name after the table name, like this:

```
select p.pub_id, p.pub_name  
from publishers p
```

All other references to that table (for example, in a where clause) must also use the correlation name. Correlation names cannot begin with a numeral.

## Selecting rows: the *where* clause

The where clause in a select statement specifies the search conditions that determine which rows are retrieved. The general format is:

```
select select_list  
from table_list  
where search_conditions
```

Search conditions, or qualifications, in the where clause include:

- Comparison operators (=, <, >, and so on)

```
where advance * 2 > total_sales * price
```

- Ranges (between and not between)

```
where total_sales between 4095 and 12000
```

- Lists (in, not in)

```
where state in ("CA", "IN", "MD")
```

- Character matches (like and not like)

```
where phone not like "415%"
```

- Unknown values (is null and is not null)

```
where advance is null
```

- Combinations of search conditions (and, or)

```
where advance < 5000 or total_sales between 2000  
and 2500
```

The `where` keyword can also introduce:

- Join conditions (see Chapter 4, “Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables”)
- Subqueries (see Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries”)

---

**Note** The only `where` condition that you can use on text columns is `like` (or not `like`).

---

For more information on search conditions, see the “`where` Clause” section in the *Reference Manual*.

## Comparison operators

Transact-SQL uses these comparison operators:

**Table 2-3: Comparison operators**

Operator	Meaning
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
<	Less than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<=	Less than or equal to
<>	Not equal to
!=	Not equal to (Transact-SQL extension)
!>	Not greater than (Transact-SQL extension)
!<	Not less than (Transact-SQL extension)

The operators are used in this syntax:

*where expression comparison\_operator expression*

An *expression* is a constant, column name, function, subquery, case expression, or any combination of these, connected by arithmetic or bitwise operators. In comparing character data, < means earlier in the sort order and > means later in the sort order. Use the *sp\_helpsort* to display the sort order for your Adaptive Server.

Trailing blanks are ignored for the purposes of comparison. For example, “Dirk” is the same as “Dirk ”. In comparing dates, < means earlier than and > means later than. Put apostrophes or quotation marks around all char, nchar, unichar, varchar, nvarchar, univarchar, text, and datetime data. For more information on entering datetime data, see Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”

Here are some sample select statements that use comparison operators:

```
select *
from titleauthor
where royaltyper < 50
select authors.au_lname, authors.au_fname
from authors
where au_lname > "McBadden"
select au_id, phone
from authors
where phone != "415 658-9932"
select title_id, newprice = price * $1.15
from publs2..titles
where advance > 5000
```

not negates an expression. Either of the following two queries finds all business and psychology books that have advances of less than \$5500. Note the difference in position between the negative logical operator (not) and the negative comparison operator (!>).

```
select title_id, type, advance
from titles
where (type = "business" or type = "psychology")
and not advance >5500
select title_id, type, advance
from titles
where (type = "business" or type = "psychology")
and advance !>5500
title_id      type          advance
-----  -----  -----
BU1032        business      5,000.00
BU1111        business      5,000.00
BU7832        business      5,000.00
PS2091        psychology   2,275.00
PS3333        psychology   2,000.00
PS7777        psychology   4,000.00

(6 rows affected)
```

## Ranges (*between* and *not between*)

Use the *between* keyword to specify an inclusive range.

For example, to find all the books with sales between and including 4095 and 12,000, you can write this query:

```
select title_id, total_sales
from titles
where total_sales between 4095 and 12000
title_id      total_sales
-----  -----
BU1032        4095
BU7832        4095
PC1035        8780
PC8888        4095
TC7777        4095

(5 rows affected)
```

You can specify an exclusive range with the greater than (>) and less than (<) operators:

```
select title_id, total_sales
from titles
where total_sales > 4095 and total_sales < 12000
title_id    total_sales
-----  -----
PC1035        8780

(1 row affected)
```

not between finds all rows outside the specified range. To find all the books with sales outside the \$4095 to \$12,000 range, type:

```
select title_id, total_sales
from titles
where total_sales not between 4095 and 12000
title_id    total_sales
-----  -----
BU1111        3876
BU2075        18722
MC2222         2032
MC3021        22246
PS1372          375
PS2091        2045
PS2106          111
PS3333        4072
PS7777        3336
TC3218          375
TC4203        15096

(11 rows affected)
```

## Lists (*in* and *not in*)

The *in* keyword allows you to select values that match any one of a list of values. The expression can be a constant or a column name, and the values list can be a set of constants or a subquery.

For example, to list the names and states of all authors who live in California, Indiana, or Maryland, you can use:

```
select au_lname, state
from authors
where state = "CA" or state = "IN" or state = "MD"
```

Or, to get the same results with less typing, use in. Separate items following the in keyword by commas and enclose them in parentheses. Put single or double quotes around char, varchar, unichar, univarchar and datetime values. For example:

```
select au_lname, state  
from authors  
where state in ("CA", "IN", "MD")
```

This is what results from either query:

au_lname	state
White	CA
Green	CA
Carson	CA
O'Leary	CA
Straight	CA
Bennet	CA
Dull	CA
Gringlesby	CA
Locksley	CA
Yokomoto	CA
DeFrance	IN
Stringer	CA
MacFeather	CA
Karsen	CA
Panteley	MD
Hunter	CA
McBadden	CA

(17 rows affected)

Perhaps the most important use for the in keyword is in nested queries, also called **subqueries**. For a full discussion of subqueries, see Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.” The following example gives an idea of what you can do with nested queries and the in keyword.

Suppose you want to know the names of the authors who receive less than 50 percent of the total royalties on the books they co-author. The authors table gives author names and the titleauthor table gives royalty information. By putting the two tables together using in, but without listing the two tables in the same from clause, you can extract the information you need. The following query:

- Searches the titleauthor table for all au\_ids of authors making less than 50 percent of the royalty on any one book.
- Selects from the authors table all the author names with au\_ids that match the results from the titleauthor query. The results show that several authors fall into the less than 50 percent category.

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where au_id in
      (select au_id
       from titleauthor
       where royaltyper <50)
au_lname          au_fname
-----          -----
Green            Marjorie
O'Leary          Michael
Gringlesby      Burt
Yokomoto         Akiko
MacFeather      Stearns
Ringer           Anne

(6 rows affected)
```

not in finds the authors that do not match the items in the list. The following query finds the names of authors who do not make less than 50 percent of the royalties on at least one book.

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where au_id not in
      (select au_id
       from titleauthor
       where royaltyper <50)
au_lname          au_fname
-----          -----
White            Johnson
Carson           Cheryl
Straight          Dick
Smith             Meander
Bennet            Abraham
Dull              Ann
Locksley          Chastity
Greene            Morningstar
Blotchet-Halls   Reginald
del Castillo     Innes
DeFrance          Michel
```

Stringer	Dirk
Karsen	Livia
Panteley	Sylvia
Hunter	Sheryl
McBadden	Heather
Ringer	Albert
Smith	Gabriella

(18 rows affected)

## Pattern matching

You can include wildcard characters in the `where` clause to search for unknown characters or to group data according to common features. The sections below describe pattern matching using SQL and Transact-SQL. For more information on pattern matching, see the *Reference Manual*.

### Matching character strings: *like*

The `like` keyword searches for a character string that matches a pattern. `like` is used with `char`, `varchar`, `nchar`, `nvarchar`, `unichar`, `univarchar`, `binary`, `varbinary`, `text`, and `datetime` data.

The syntax for `like` is:

```
{where | having} [not]  
column_name [not] like "match_string"
```

*match\_string* can include the symbols in Table 2-4:

**Table 2-4: Special symbols for matching character strings**

Symbols	Meaning
%	Matches any string of zero or more characters.
_	Matches a single character.
[specifier]	Brackets enclose ranges or sets, such as [a-f] or [abcdef]. <i>specifier</i> can take two forms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>rangespec1-rangespec2</i>: <i>rangespec1</i> indicates the start of a range of characters. - is a special character, indicating a range. <i>rangespec2</i> indicates the end of a range of characters.</li> <li>• <i>set</i>: can be composed of any discrete set of values, in any order, such as [a2bR]. The range [a-f], and the sets [abcdef] and [fcbdae] return the same set of values.</li> </ul> Specifiers are case-sensitive.
[^specifier]	A caret (^) preceding a specifier indicates non-inclusion. [^a-f] means “not in the range a-f”; [^a2bR] means “not a, 2, b, or R.”

You can match the column data to constants, variables, or other columns that contain the **wildcard** characters shown in Table 2-4. When using constants, enclose the match strings and character strings in quotation marks. For example, using like with the data in the authors table:

- like “Mc%” searches for every name that begins with “Mc” (McBadden).
- like “%inger” searches for every name that ends with “inger” (Ringer, Stringer).
- like “%en%” searches for every name containing “en” (Bennet, Green, McBadden).
- like “\_heryl” searches for every six-letter name ending with “heryl” (Cheryl).
- like “[CK]ars[eo]n” searches for “Carsen,” “Karsen,” “Carson,” and “Karson” (Carson).
- like “[M-Z]inger” searches for all names ending with “inger” that begin with any single letter from M to Z (Ringer).
- like “M[^c]%” searches for all names beginning with “M” that do not have “c” as the second letter.

This query finds all the phone numbers in the authors table that have an area code of 415:

```
select phone  
from authors  
where phone like "415%"
```

The only where condition you can use on text columns is like. This query finds all the rows in the blurbs table where the copy column includes the word “computer”:

```
select * from blurbs  
where copy like "%computer%"
```

Adaptive Server interprets wildcard characters used without like as literals rather than as a pattern; they represent exactly their own values. The following query attempts to find any phone numbers that consist of the four characters “415%” only. It does not find phone numbers that start with 415.

```
select phone  
from authors  
where phone = "415%"
```

When you use like with datetime values, Adaptive Server converts the dates to the standard datetime format, and then to varchar or univarchar. Since the standard storage format does not include seconds or milliseconds, you cannot search for seconds or milliseconds with like and a pattern.

It is a good idea to use like when you search for datetime values, since datetime entries may contain a variety of date parts. For example, if you insert the value “9:20” and the current date into a column named arrival\_time, this query will not find the value, because Adaptive Server converts the entry into “Jan 1 1900 9:20AM”:

```
where arrival_time = "9:20"
```

However, the clause below finds the 9:20 value:

```
where arrival_time like "%9:20%"
```

## Using *not like*

You can use the same wildcard characters with not like, that you can use with like. For example, to find all the phone numbers in the authors table that do *not* have 415 as the area code, you can use either of these queries:

```
select phone
```

```
from authors
where phone not like "415%"
select phone
from authors
where not phone like "415%"
```

### ***not like* and *^* may give different results**

You cannot always duplicate not like patterns with like and the negative wildcard character [^]. Match strings with negative wildcard characters are evaluated in steps, one character at a time. If the match fails at any point in the evaluation, it is eliminated.

For example, this query finds the system tables in a database whose names begin with “sys”:

```
select name
from sysobjects
where name like "sys%"
```

If you have a total of 32 objects and like finds 13 names that match the pattern, not like will find the 19 objects that do not match the pattern.

```
where name not like "sys%"
```

A pattern such as the following may not produce the same results:

```
like [^s][^y][^s]%
```

Instead of 19, you might get only 14, with all the names that begin with “s” or have “y” as the second letter or have “s” as the third letter eliminated from the results, as well as the system table names.

## **Using wildcard characters as literal characters**

You can search for wildcard characters by escaping them and searching for them as literals. There are two ways to use the wildcard characters as literals in a like match string: square brackets and the escape clause. The match string can also be a variable or a value in a table that contains a wildcard character.

### **Square brackets (Transact-SQL extension)**

Use square brackets for the percent sign, the underscore, and right and left brackets. To search for a dash, rather than using it to specify a range, use the dash as the first character inside a set of brackets.

**Table 2-5: Using square brackets to search for wildcard characters**

<b>like clause</b>	<b>Searches for</b>
like "5%"	5 followed by any string of 0 or more characters
like "5[%]"	5%
like "_n"	an, in, on, and so forth
like "[_]n"	_n
like "[a-cdf]"	a, b, c, d, or f
like "[~-acdf]"	~, a, c, d, or f
like "[[ ]]"	[
like "[[]]"	]

**escape clause (SQL-compliant)**

Use the escape clause to specify an escape character in the like clause. An escape character must be a single character string. Any character in the server's default character set can be used.

**Table 2-6: Using the escape clause**

<b>like clause</b>	<b>Searches for</b>
like "5@%" escape "@"	5%
like "*_n" escape "***"	_n
like "%80@%%" escape "@"	string containing 80%
like "*_sql**%" escape "***"	string containing _sql*
like "%#####_#%" escape "#"	string containing ##_%

An escape character is valid only within its like clause and has no effect on other like clauses in the same statement.

The only characters that are valid following an escape character are the wildcard characters (\_ , % , [ , ] , and [^ ]), and the escape character itself. The escape character affects only the character following it. If a pattern contains two literal occurrences of a character that happens to be an escape character, the string must contain four consecutive escape characters (see the last example in Table 2-6). Otherwise, Adaptive Server raises a SQLSTATE error condition and returns an error message.

Specifying more than one escape character raises a SQLSTATE error condition, and Adaptive Server returns an error message:

```
like "%XX_%" escape "XX"
like "%XX%X_%" escape "XX"
```

## Interaction of wildcard characters and square brackets

An escape character retains its special meaning within square brackets, unlike the wildcard characters. Do not use existing wildcard characters as escape characters in the escape clause, for these reasons:

- If you specify “\_” or “%” as an escape character, it loses its special meaning within that like clause and acts only as an escape character.
- If you specify “[“ or “]” as an escape character, the Transact-SQL meaning of the bracket is disabled within that like clause.
- If you specify “-” or “^” as an escape character, it loses the special meaning that it normally has within square brackets and acts only as an escape character.

## Trailing blanks and %

Adaptive Server truncates trailing blanks following “%” in a like clause to a single trailing blank. like “% ” (percent sign followed by 2 spaces) matches “X ” (one space); “X ” (two spaces); “X ” (three spaces), or any number of trailing spaces.

## Using wildcard characters in columns

You can use wildcard characters for columns and column names. You might want to create a table called `special_discounts` in the `pubs2` database to run a price projection for a special sale:

```
create table special_discounts
  id_type char(3), discount int)
  insert into special_discounts
    values("BU%", 10)
    ...

```

The table should contain the following data:

id_type	discount
BU%	10
PS%	12
MC%	15

The following query uses wildcard characters in `id_type` in the where clause:

```
select title_id, discount, price, price -
```

```
(price*discount/100)
from special_discounts, titles
where title_id like id_type
```

Here are the results of that query:

title_id	discount	price	
BU1032	10	19.99	17.99
BU1111	10	11.95	10.76
BU2075	10	2.99	2.69
BU7832	10	19.99	17.99
PS1372	12	21.59	19.00
PS2091	12	10.95	9.64
PS2106	12	7.00	6.16
PS3333	12	19.99	17.59
PS7777	12	7.99	7.03
MC2222	15	19.99	16.99
MC3021	15	2.99	2.54
MC3026	15	NULL	NULL

(12 rows affected)

This permits sophisticated pattern matching without having to construct a series of or clauses.

## Character strings and quotation marks

When you enter or search for character and date data (char, nchar, unichar, varchar, nvarchar, univarchar, datetime, and smalldatetime datatypes), you must enclose it in single or double quotation marks.

See Chapter 1, “SQL Building Blocks” for more information on character data and Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes” for more information on datetime datatypes.

## “Unknown” values: NULL

A NULL in a column means no entry has been made in that column. A data value for the column is “unknown” or “not available.”

NULL is *not* synonymous with “zero” or “blank”. Rather, null values allow you to distinguish between a deliberate entry of zero for numeric columns (or blank for character columns) and a non-entry, which is NULL for both numeric and character columns.

NULL can be entered in a column where null values are permitted in two ways:

- If you do not enter any data, Adaptive Server automatically enters “NULL”.
- Users can explicitly enter the word “NULL” or “null” *without* quotation marks.

If you type the word “NULL” in a character column and include quotation marks, it is treated as data, rather than a null value.

Query results display the word NULL. For example, the advance column of the titles table allows null values. By inspecting the data in that column you can tell whether a book had *no* advance payment by agreement (the row MC2222 has zero in the advance column) or whether the advance amount was *not known* when the data was entered (the row MC3026 has NULL in the advance column).

```
select title_id, type, advance
from titles
where pub_id = "0877"
title_id      type          advance
-----  -----
MC2222        mod_cook      0.00
MC3021        mod_cook     15,000.00
MC3026        UNDECIDED    NULL
PS1372        psychology   7,000.00
TC3218        trad_cook    7,000.00
TC4203        trad_cook    4,000.00
TC7777        trad_cook    8,000.00

(7 rows affected)
```

## Testing a column for null values

Use `is null` in `where`, `if`, and `while` clauses (discussed in Chapter 13, “Using Batches and Control-of-Flow Language”) to compare column values to `NULL` and to select them or perform a particular action based on the results of the comparison. Only columns that return a value of `TRUE` are selected or result in the specified action; those that return `FALSE` or `UNKNOWN` do not.

The following example selects only rows for which `advance` is less than \$5000 or `NULL`:

```
select title_id, advance
from titles
where advance < $5000 or advance is null
```

Adaptive Server treats null values in different ways, depending on the **operators** that you use and the type of values you are comparing. In general, the result of comparing null values is `UNKNOWN`, since it is impossible to determine whether `NULL` is equal (or not equal) to a given value or to another `NULL`. The following cases return `TRUE` when *expression* is any column, variable or literal, or combination of these, which evaluates as `NULL`:

- *expression* is `null`
- *expression* = `null`
- *expression* = `@x` where `@x` is a variable or parameter containing `NULL`. This exception facilitates writing stored procedures with null default parameters.
- *expression* != `n` where `n` is a literal not containing `NULL` and *expression* evaluates to `NULL`.

The negative versions of these expressions return `TRUE` when the expression does not evaluate to `NULL`:

- *expression* is not `null`
- *expression* != `null`
- *expression* != `@x`

When the keywords `like` and `not like` are used instead of the operators = and !=, the opposite occurs. This comparison returns `TRUE`:

- *expression* not like `null`

While this comparison returns `FALSE`:

- *expression* like null

Note that the far right side of these expressions is a literal null, or a variable or parameter containing NULL. If the far right side of the comparison is an expression (such as @nullvar + 1), the entire expression evaluates to NULL.

Null column values do not join with other null column values. Comparing null column values to other null column values in a where clause always returns UNKNOWN, regardless of the comparison operator, and the rows are not included in the results. For example, this query returns no result rows where column1 contains NULL in both tables (although it may return other rows):

```
select column1
  from table1, table2
 where table1.column1 = table2.column1
```

These operators return results when used with a NULL:

- = returns all rows that contain NULL.
- != or <> returns all rows that do *not* contain NULL.

When set ansinull is “on” for SQL compliance, the = and != operators do not return results when used with a NULL. Regardless of the set ansinull option value, the following operators never return values when used with a NULL: <, <=, !<, >, >=, !>.

Adaptive Server can determine that a column value is NULL. Thus, this will be considered true:

```
column1 = NULL
```

However, the following comparisons can never be determined, since NULL means “having an unknown value”:

```
where column1 > null
```

There is no reason to assume that two unknown values are the same.

This logic also applies when you use two column names in a where clause, that is, when you join two tables. A clause like “where column1 = column2” does not return rows where the columns contain null values.

You can also find null values or non-null values with this pattern:

```
where column_name is [not] null
```

For example:

```
where advance < $5000 or advance is null
```

Some of the rows in the titles table contain incomplete data. For example, a book called The Psychology of Computer Cooking (title\_id = MC3026) has been proposed and its title, title identification number, and probable publisher have been entered. However, since the author has no contract yet and details are still up in the air, null values appear in the price, advance, royalty, total\_sales, and notes columns. Because null values do not match anything in a comparison, a query for all the title identification numbers and advances for books with advances of less than \$5000 will not find The Psychology of Computer Cooking.

```
select title_id, advance
from titles
where advance < $5000
title_id    advance
-----  -----
MC2222      0.00
PS2091      2,275.00
PS3333      2,000.00
PS7777      4,000.00
TC4203      4,000.00

(5 rows affected)
```

Here is a query for books with an advance of less than \$5000 *or* a null value in the advance column:

```
select title_id, advance
from titles
where advance < $5000
      or advance is null
title_id    advance
-----  -----
MC2222      0.00
MC3026      NULL
PC9999      NULL
PS2091      2,275.00
PS3333      2,000.00
PS7777      4,000.00
TC4203      4,000.00

(7 rows affected)
```

See Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables,” for information on NULL in the create table statement and for information on the relationship between NULL and defaults. See Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data,” for information on inserting null values into a table.

## Difference between FALSE and UNKNOWN

There is an important logical difference between FALSE and UNKNOWN: the opposite of false (“not false”) is true, while the opposite of UNKNOWN is still UNKNOWN. For example, “`1 = 2`” evaluates to false and its opposite, “`1 != 2`”, evaluates to true. But “not unknown” is still unknown. If null values are included in a comparison, you cannot negate the expression to get the opposite set of rows or the opposite truth value.

## Substituting a value for NULLs

Use the `isnull` built-in function to substitute a particular value for nulls. The substitution is made only for display purposes; actual column values are not affected. The syntax is:

```
isnull(expression, value)
```

For example, use the following statement to select all the rows from `titles`, and display all the null values in column `notes` with the value `unknown`.

```
select isnull(notes, "unknown")  
from titles
```

## Expressions that evaluate to NULL

An expression with an arithmetic or bitwise operator evaluates to NULL if any of the operands is null. For example, this evaluates to NULL if `column1` is NULL:

```
1 + column1
```

## Concatenating strings and NULL

If you concatenate a string and NULL, the expression evaluates to the string. For example:

```
select "abc" + NULL + "def"  
-----  
abcdef
```

## System-generated NULLs

In Transact-SQL, system-generated NULLs, such as those that result from a system function like convert, behave differently than user-assigned NULLs. For example, in the following statement, a not equals comparison of the user-provided NULL and 1 returns TRUE:

```
if (1 != NULL) print "yes" else print "no"
yes
```

The same comparison with a system-generated NULL returns UNKNOWN:

```
if (1 != convert(integer, NULL))
print "yes" else print "no"
no
```

For more consistent behavior, set ansi\_null on. Then both system-generated and user-provided NULLs cause the comparison to return UNKNOWN.

## Connecting conditions with logical operators

The **logical operators** and, or, and not are used to connect search conditions in where clauses. The syntax is:

```
{where | having} [not]
column_name join_operator column_name
```

where *join\_operator* is a comparison operator and *column\_name* is the column used in the comparison. Qualify the name of the column if there is any ambiguity.

and joins two or more conditions and returns results only when *all* of the conditions are true. For example, the following query finds only the rows in which the author's last name is Ringer and the author's first name is Anne. It does not find the row for Albert Ringer.

```
select *
from authors
where au_lname = "Ringer" and au_fname = "Anne"
```

or also connects two or more conditions, but it returns results when *any* of the conditions is true. The following query searches for rows containing Anne or Ann in the au\_fname column.

```
select *
from authors
where au_fname = "Anne" or au_fname = "Ann"
```

You can specify as many as 252 and and or conditions.

not negates the expression that follows it. The following query selects all the authors who do not live in California:

```
select * from authors
where not state = "CA"
```

When more than one logical operator is used in a statement, and operators are normally evaluated before or operators. You can change the order of execution with parentheses. For example:

```
select * from authors
where (city = "Oakland" or city = "Berkeley") and
state = "CA"
```

## Logical operator precedence

Arithmetic and bitwise operators are handled before logical operators.

When more than one logical operator is used in a statement, not is evaluated first, then and, and finally or. See “Bitwise operators” on page 15 for more information.

For example, the following query finds *all* the business books in the titles table, no matter what their advances are, as well as all psychology books that have an advance of more than \$5500. The advance condition pertains only to psychology books because the and is handled before the or.

```
select title_id, type, advance
from titles
where type = "business" or type = "psychology"
      and advance > 5500
title_id    type        advance
-----  -----
BU1032     business    5,000.00
BU1111     business    5,000.00
BU2075     business    10,125.00
BU7832     business    5,000.00
PS1372     psychology  7,000.00
PS2106     psychology  6,000.00

(6 rows affected)
```

You can change the meaning of the query by adding parentheses to force evaluation of the or first. This query finds all business and psychology books that have advances of more than \$5500:

```
select title_id, type, advance
```

```
from titles
where (type = "business" or type = "psychology")
      and advance > 5500
title_id    type        advance
-----  -----
BU2075      business    10,125.00
PS1372      psychology  7,000.00
PS2106      psychology  6,000.00

(3 rows affected)
```



# Using Aggregates, Grouping, and Sorting

This chapter addresses the sum, avg, count, count(\*), max, and min aggregate functions that enable you to summarize the data retrieved in a query. This chapter also discusses how to organize data into categories and subgroups using the group by, having, and order by clauses. Two Transact-SQL extensions—the compute clause and the union operator, are also discussed.

This chapter contains the following sections:

Topic	Page
Using aggregate functions	81
Organizing query results into groups: the group by clause	87
Selecting groups of data: the having clause	99
Sorting query results: the order by clause	105
Summarizing groups of data: the compute clause	108
Combining queries: the union operator	117

If your Adaptive Server is not case sensitive, see group by and having Clauses and compute Clause in the *Reference Manual* for examples on how case sensitivity affects the data returned by these clauses.

## Using aggregate functions

The aggregate functions are: sum, avg, count, min, max, and count(\*). You can use **aggregate functions** to calculate and summarize data. For example, to find out how many books have been sold in the titles table of the pubs2 database, type:

```
select sum(total_sales)
from titles
-----
97746
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

Note that there is no column heading for the aggregate column in the example.

An aggregate function takes as an argument the column name on whose values it will operate. You can apply aggregate functions to all the rows in a table, to a subset of the table specified by a where clause, or to one or more groups of rows in the table. From each set of rows to which an aggregate function is applied, Adaptive Server generates a single value.

Here is the syntax of the aggregate function:

```
aggregate_function ( [all | distinct] expression)
```

Expression is usually a column name. However, it can also be a constant, a function, or any combination of column names, constants, and functions connected by arithmetic or bitwise operators. You can also use a case expression or subquery in an expression.

For example, with this statement you can calculate the average price of all books if prices were doubled:

```
select avg(price * 2)
from titles
-----
29.53
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

You can use the optional keyword *distinct* with sum, avg, and count to eliminate duplicate values before the aggregate function is applied. *all*, which performs the operation on all rows, is the default.

The syntax of the aggregate functions and the results they produce are shown in Table 3-1:

**Table 3-1: Syntax and results of aggregate functions**

Aggregate Function	Result
<i>sum([all distinct] expression)</i>	Total of the ( <i>distinct</i> ) values in the expression
<i>avg([all distinct] expression)</i>	Average of the ( <i>distinct</i> ) values in the expression
<i>count([all distinct] expression)</i>	Number of ( <i>distinct</i> ) non-null values in the expression
<i>count(*)</i>	Number of selected rows
<i>max(expression)</i>	Highest value in the expression
<i>min(expression)</i>	Lowest value in the expression

You can use the aggregate functions in a select list, as shown in the previous example, or in the having clause. For information about the having clause, see “Selecting groups of data: the having clause” on page 99.

You cannot use aggregate functions in a where clause, but most select statements with an aggregate function in the select list include a where clause that restricts the rows to which the aggregate is applied. In the examples given earlier in this section, each aggregate function produced a single summary value for the whole table.

If a select statement includes a where clause, but not a group by clause (see “Organizing query results into groups: the group by clause” on page 87), an aggregate function produces a single value for the subset of rows, called a **scalar aggregate**. However, a select statement can also include a column in its select list (a Transact-SQL extension), that repeats the single value for each row in the result table.

This query returns the average advance and the sum of sales for business books only, and has a column name preceding it called “advance and sales”:

```
select "advance and sales", avg(advance),
       sum(total_sales)
  from titles
 where type = "business"
-----
advance and sales           6,281.25      30788
(1 row affected)
```

## Aggregate functions and datatypes

You can use the aggregate functions with any type of column, with the following exceptions:

- You can use sum and avg with numeric columns only—int, smallint, tinyint, decimal, numeric, float, and money.
- You cannot use min and max with bit datatypes.
- You cannot use aggregate functions other than count(\*) with text and image datatypes.

For example, you can use min (minimum) to find the lowest value—the one closest to the beginning of the alphabet—in a character type column:

```
select min(au_lname)
from authors
-----
Bennet

(1 row affected)
```

However, you cannot average the contents of a text column:

```
select avg(au_lname)
from authors
-----
Bennet

(1 row affected)
Msg 257, Level 16, State 1:
Line 1:
Implicit conversion from datatype 'VARCHAR' to 'INT'
is not allowed. Use the CONVERT function to run this
query.
```

## **count vs. count(\*)**

While count finds the number of non-null values in the expression, count(\*) finds the total number of rows in a table. This statement finds the total number of books:

```
select count(*)
from titles
-----
18

(1 row affected)
```

count(\*) returns the number of rows in the specified table without eliminating duplicates. It counts each row, including those containing null values.

Like other aggregate functions, you can combine count(\*) with other aggregates in the select list, with where clauses, and so on:

```
select count(*), avg(price)
from titles
where advance > 1000
-----
15      14.42
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

## Using aggregate functions with *distinct*

You can use the optional keyword *distinct* only with *sum*, *avg*, and *count*. When you use *distinct*, Adaptive Server eliminates duplicate values before performing calculations.

If you use *distinct*, you cannot include an arithmetic expression in the argument. The argument must use a column name only. *distinct* appears inside the parentheses and before the column name. For example, to find the number of different cities in which there are authors, enter:

```
select count(distinct city)
from authors
-----
```

```
16
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

For an accurate calculation of the average price of all business books, omit *distinct*. The following statement returns the average price of all business books:

```
select avg(price)
from titles
where type = "business"
-----
```

```
13.73
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

However, if two or more books have the same price and you use *distinct*, the shared price is included only once in the calculation:

```
select avg(distinct price)
from titles
where type = "business"
-----
```

```
11.64
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

## Null values and the aggregate functions

Adaptive Server ignores any null values in the column on which the aggregate function is operating for the purposes of the function (except count(\*), which includes them). If you have set ansinull to on, Adaptive Server returns an error message whenever a null value is ignored. For more information, see the set command in the *Reference Manual*.

For example, the count of advances in the titles table is not the same as the count of title names, because of the null values in the advance column:

```
select count(advance)
from titles
-----
16

(1 row affected)
select count(title)
from titles
-----
18

(1 row affected)
```

If all the values in a column are null, count returns 0. If no rows meet the conditions specified in the where clause, count returns 0. The other functions all return NULL. Here are examples:

```
select count(distinct title)
from titles
where type = "poetry"
-----
0

(1 row affected)
select avg(advance)
from titles
where type = "poetry"
-----
NULL

(1 row affected)
```

## Organizing query results into groups: the *group by* clause

The group by clause divides the output of a query into groups. You can group by one or more column names, or by the results of computed columns using numeric datatypes in an expression. When used with aggregates, group by retrieves the calculations in each subgroup, and may return multiple rows. The maximum number of columns or expressions you can use in a group by clause is 16.

---

**Note** You cannot group by columns of text or image datatypes.

---

While you can use group by without aggregates, such a construction has limited functionality and may produce confusing results. The following example groups the results by title type:

```
select type, advance
from titles
group by type
type          advance
-----
business      5,000.00
business      5,000.00
business     10,125.00
business      5,000.00
mod_cook       0.00
mod_cook    15,000.00
UNDECIDED      NULL
popular_comp   7,000.00
popular_comp   8,000.00
popular_comp      NULL
psychology    7,000.00
psychology    2,275.00
psychology    6,000.00
psychology    2,000.00
psychology    4,000.00
trad_cook      7,000.00
trad_cook      4,000.00
trad_cook      8,000.00

(18 rows affected)
```

With an aggregate for the advance column, the query returns the sum for each group:

```
select type, sum(advance)
from titles
group by type
type
-----
UNDECIDED           NULL
business            25,125.00
mod_cook             15,000.00
popular_comp         15,000.00
psychology           21,275.00
trad_cook             19,000.00

( 6 rows affected)
```

The summary values in a group by clause using aggregates are called **vector aggregates**, as opposed to scalar aggregates, which result when only one row is returned (see “Using aggregate functions” on page 81).

## group by syntax

The complete syntax of the select statement is repeated here so that you can see the group by clause in context:

```
select [all | distinct] select_list
      [into [[database.]owner.][table_name]
       [from [[database.]owner.]{view_name | table_name
          [(index {index_name | table_name}
            [parallel [degree_of_parallelism]]
            [prefetch size] [lru | mru]])}
          [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]
          .,[[[database.]owner.]{view_name | table_name
            [(index {index_name | table_name}
              [parallel [degree_of_parallelism]]
              [prefetch size] [lru | mru]])}
            [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]]...]
          [where search_conditions]

          [group by [all] aggregate_free_expression
            [, aggregate_free_expression]...]
          [having search_conditions]

          [order by
            {{{[[database.]owner.]} {table_name. | view_name.}}
              column_name | select_list_number | expression} [asc | desc]
            [, {{{[[database.]owner.}{table_name|view_name.}}]
              column_name | select_list_number | expression}]}
```

[asc | desc]...]

[compute *row\_aggregate* (*column\_name*)  
[, *row\_aggregate*(*column\_name*)...]  
[by *column\_name* [, *column\_name*]...]]

[for {read only | update [of *column\_name\_list*]})]

[at isolation {read uncommitted | read committed | serializable}]

[for browse]

Remember that the order of the clauses in the select statement is significant. You can omit any of the optional clauses, but when you use them, they must appear in the order shown above.

## group by and SQL standards

The SQL standards for group by are more restrictive than Sybase's standard. The SQL standard requires that:

- The columns in a select list must be in the group by expression or they must be arguments of aggregate functions.
- A group by expression can only contain column names in the select list, but not those used only as arguments for vector aggregates.

Several Transact-SQL extensions (described in the following sections) relax these restrictions, however the more complex result sets may be more difficult to understand. If you set the fipsflagger option as follows, you will receive a warning message stating that Transact-SQL extensions are used:

```
set fipsflagger on
```

For more information about the fipsflagger option, see the set command in the *Reference Manual*.

## Nesting groups with group by

You can list more than one column in the group by clause to nest groups. Once the sets are established with group by, the aggregates are applied. This statement finds the average price and the sum of book sales, grouped first by publisher identification number and then by type:

```
select pub_id, type, avg(price), sum(total_sales)  
from titles  
group by pub_id, type
```

```
pub_id    type      -----  -----  -----  
0736     business   2.99   18,722  
0736     psychology 11.48   9,564  
0877     UNDECIDED  NULL    NULL  
0877     mod_cook   11.49   24,278  
0877     psychology 21.59   375  
0877     trad_cook  15.96   19,566  
1389     business   17.31   12,066  
1389     popular_comp 21.48   12,875  
  
( 8 rows affected)
```

You can nest many groups within groups, up to the maximum of 16 columns or expressions specified with group by.

## Referencing other columns in queries using *group by*

SQL standards state that the group by must contain items from the select list. However, Transact-SQL allows you to specify any valid column name in either the group by or select list, whether they employ aggregates or not.

Through the following extensions, Sybase lifts restrictions on what you can include or omit in the select list of a query that includes group by.

- The columns in the select list are *not* limited to the grouping columns and columns used with the vector aggregates.
- The columns specified by group by are *not* limited to those non-aggregate columns in the select list.

A vector aggregate must be accompanied by a group by clause. The SQL standards require that the non-aggregate columns in the select list match the group by columns. However, the first bulleted item described above allows you to specify additional, extended columns in the select list of the query.

For example, many versions of SQL do not allow the inclusion of the extended title\_id column in the select list, but it is legal in Transact-SQL:

```
select type, title_id, avg(price), avg(advance)  
from titles  
group by type  
type          title_id      -----  -----  
business      BU1032       13.73   6,281.25
```

business	BU1111	13.73	6,281.25
business	BU2075	13.73	6,281.25
business	BU7832	13.73	6,281.25
mod_cook	MC2222	11.49	7,500.00
mod_cook	MC3021	11.49	7,500.00
UNDECIDED	MC3026	NULL	NULL
popular_comp	PC1035	21.48	7,500.00
popular_comp	PC8888	21.48	7,500.00
popular_comp	PC9999	21.48	7,500.00
psychology	PS1372	13.50	4,255.00
psychology	PS2091	13.50	4,255.00
psychology	PS2106	13.50	4,255.00
psychology	PS3333	13.50	4,255.00
psychology	PS7777	13.50	4,255.00
trad_cook	TC3218	15.96	6,333.33
trad_cook	TC4203	15.96	6,333.33
trad_cook	TC7777	15.96	6,333.33

(18 rows affected)

The above example still aggregates the price and advance columns based on the type column, but its results also display the title\_id for the books included in each group.

The second extension described above allows you to group columns that are not specified as columns in the select list of the query. These columns do not appear in the results, but the vector aggregates still compute their summary values. For example:

```
select state, count(au_id)
from authors
group by state, city
state
-----
CA      2
CA      1
CA      5
CA      5
CA      2
CA      1
CA      1
CA      1
IN      1
KS      1
MD      1
MI      1
```

OR	1
TN	1
UT	2

(16 rows affected)

This example groups the vector aggregate results by both state and city, even though it does not display which city belongs to each group. Therefore, results are potentially misleading.

You may think the following query should produce similar results to the previous query, since only the vector aggregate seems to tally the number of each city for each row:

```
select state, count(au_id)
from authors
group by city
```

However, its results are much different. By not using group by with both the state and city columns, the query tallies the number of each city, but it displays the tally for each row of that city in authors rather than grouping them into one result row per city.

state	
CA	1
CA	5
CA	2
CA	1
CA	5
KS	1
CA	2
CA	2
CA	1
CA	1
TN	1
OR	1
CA	1
MI	1
IN	1
CA	5
CA	5
MD	1
CA	2
CA	1
UT	2
UT	2

```
(23 rows affected)
```

When you use the Transact-SQL extensions in complex queries that include the where clause or joins, the results may become even more difficult to understand. To avoid confusing or misleading results with group by, Sybase suggests that you use the fipsflagger option to identify queries that use Transact-SQL extensions. See “group by and SQL standards” on page 89 for details.

For more information about Transact-SQL extensions to group by and how they work, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Expressions and group by

Another Transact-SQL extension allows you to group by an expression that does not include aggregate functions. For example:

```
select avg(total_sales), total_sales * price
from titles
group by total_sales * price
-----
          NULL      NULL
        111       777.00
        375      7,856.25
        375      8,096.25
       2045     22,392.75
       3336     26,654.64
       2032     40,619.68
       3876     46,318.20
      18722    55,978.78
       4095    61,384.05
      22246    66,515.54
       4072    81,399.28
       4095    81,859.05
       4095    81,900.00
      15096   180,397.20
       8780   201,501.00
```

```
(16 rows affected)
```

The expression “total\_sales \* price” is allowed.

You cannot group by a column heading, also known as an **alias**, although you can still use one in your select list. This statement produces an error message:

```
select Category = type, title_id, avg(price),  
avg(advance)  
from titles  
group by Category
```

The group by clause should be “group by type”, not “group by Category”.

```
select Category = type, title_id, avg(price),  
avg(advance)  
from titles  
group by type
```

## Nesting aggregates with *group by*

Another Transact-SQL extension allows you to nest a vector aggregate inside a scalar aggregate. For example, to find the average price of all types of books using a non-nested aggregate, enter:

```
select avg(price)  
from titles  
group by type  
-----  
NULL  
13.73  
11.49  
21.48  
13.50  
15.96
```

(6 rows affected)

Nesting the average price inside the max function produces the highest average price of a group of books, grouped by type:

```
select max(avg(price))  
from titles  
group by type  
-----  
21.48
```

(1 row affected)

By definition, the group by clause applies to the innermost aggregate—in this case, avg.

## Null values and *group by*

If the grouping column contains a null value, that row becomes its own group in the results. If the grouping column contains more than one null value, the null values form a single group. Here is an example that uses *group by* and the *advance* column, which contains some null values:

```
select advance, avg(price * 2)
from titles
group by advance
advance
-----
NULL          NULL
0.00          39.98
2000.00       39.98
2275.00       21.90
4000.00       19.94
5000.00       34.62
6000.00       14.00
7000.00       43.66
8000.00       34.99
10125.00      5.98
15000.00      5.98
```

(11 rows affected)

If you are using the *count(column\_name)* aggregate function, grouping by a column that contains null values will return a count of zero for the grouping row, since *count(column\_name)* does not count null values. In most cases, you should use *count(\*)* instead. This example groups and counts on the *price* column from the *titles* table, which contains null values, and shows *count(\*)* for comparison:

```
select price, count(price), count(*)
from titles
group by price
price
-----
NULL          0    2
2.99          2    2
7.00          1    1
7.99          1    1
10.95         1    1
11.95         2    2
14.99         1    1
19.99         4    4
20.00         1    1
```

```
20.95      1      1  
21.59      1      1  
22.95      1      1  
  
(12 rows affected)
```

## **where clause and group by**

You can use a where clause in a statement with group by. Rows that do not satisfy the conditions in the where clause are eliminated before any grouping is done. Here is an example:

```
select type, avg(price)  
from titles  
where advance > 5000  
group by type  
type  
-----  
business      2.99  
mod_cook      2.99  
popular_comp   21.48  
psychology     14.30  
trad_cook     17.97  
  
(5 rows affected)
```

Only the rows with advances of more than \$5000 are included in the groups that are used to produce the query results.

However, the way that Adaptive Server handles extra columns in the select list and the where clause may seem contradictory. For example:

```
select type, advance, avg(price)  
from titles  
where advance > 5000  
group by type  
type      advance  
-----  
business  5,000.00  2.99  
business  5,000.00  2.99  
business  10,125.00 2.99  
business  5,000.00  2.99  
mod_cook   0.00    2.99  
mod_cook  15,000.00 2.99  
popular_comp 7,000.00 21.48  
popular_comp 8,000.00 21.48
```

```

popular_comp      NULL      21.48
psychology       7,000.00   14.30
psychology       2,275.00   14.30
psychology       6,000.00   14.30
psychology       2,000.00   14.30
psychology       4,000.00   14.30
trad_cook        7,000.00   17.97
trad_cook        4,000.00   17.97
trad_cook        8,000.00   17.97

(17 rows affected)

```

It only seems as if the query is ignoring the where clause when you look at the results for the advance (extended) column. Adaptive Server still computes the vector aggregate using only those rows that satisfy the where clause, but it also displays all rows for any extended columns that you include in the select list. To further restrict these rows from the results, you must use a having clause (described later in this chapter).

## **group by and all**

The keyword **all** in the group by clause is a Transact-SQL enhancement. It is meaningful only if the select statement in which it is used also includes a where clause.

If you use **all**, the query results include all the groups produced by the group by clause, even if some groups do not have any rows that meet the search conditions. Without **all**, a select statement that includes group by does not show groups for which no rows qualify.

Here is an example:

```

select type, avg(advance)
from titles
where advance > 1000 and advance < 10000
group by type
type
-----
business           5,000.00
popular_comp       7,500.00
psychology         4,255.00
trad_cook          6,333.33

(4 rows affected)
select type, avg(advance)

```

```
from titles
where advance > 1000 and advance < 10000
group by all type
type
-----
UNDECIDED           NULL
business            5,000.00
mod_cook             NULL
popular_comp         7,500.00
psychology           4,255.00
trad_cook            6,333.33

(6 rows affected)
```

The first statement produces groups only for those books that commanded advances of more than \$1000 but less than \$10,000. Since no modern cooking books have an advance within that range, there is no group in the results for the mod\_cook type.

The second statement produces groups for all types, including modern cooking and “UNDECIDED,” even though the modern cooking group does not include any rows that meet the qualification specified in the where clause. Adaptive Server returns a NULL result for all groups that lack qualifying rows.

## Using aggregates without *group by*

By definition, scalar aggregates apply to all rows in a table, producing a single value for the whole table for each function. The Transact-SQL extension that allows you to include extended columns with vector aggregates also allows you to include extended columns with scalar aggregates. For example, look at the publishers table:

pub_id	pub_name	city	state
0736	New Age Books	Boston	MA
0877	Binnet & Hardley	Washington	DC
1389	Algodata Infosystems	Berkeley	CA

It contains three rows. The following query produces a three-row scalar aggregate based on each row of the table:

```
select pub_id, count(pub_id)
from publishers
pub_id
```

```
-----  
0736      3  
0877      3  
1389      3  
  
(3 rows affected)
```

Because Adaptive Server treats publishers as a single group, the scalar aggregate applies to the (single-group) table. The results display every row of the table for each column you include in the select list, in addition to the scalar aggregate.

The where clause behaves the same way for scalar aggregates as with vector aggregates. The where clause restricts the columns included in the aggregate summary values, but it does not affect the rows that appear in the results for each extended column you specify in the select list. For example:

```
select pub_id, count(pub_id)  
from publishers  
where pub_id < "1000"  
pub_id  
-----  
0736      2  
0877      2  
1389      2  
  
(3 rows affected)
```

Like the other Transact-SQL extensions to group by, this extension provides results that may be difficult to understand, especially for queries on large tables or queries with multitable joins.

## Selecting groups of data: the *having* clause

Use the having clause to display or reject rows defined by the group by clause. The having clause sets conditions for the group by clause in the same way where sets conditions for the select clause, except where cannot include aggregates, while having often does. This example is legal:

```
select title_id  
from titles  
where title_id like "PS%"  
having avg(price) > $2.0
```

But this example is not:

```
select title_id  
from titles  
where avg(price) > $20
```

having clauses can reference any of the items that appear in the select list.

This statement is an example of a having clause with an aggregate function. It groups the rows in the titles table by type, but eliminates the groups that include only one book:

```
select type  
from titles  
group by type  
having count(*) > 1  
type  
-----  
business  
mod_cook  
popular_comp  
psychology  
trad_cook
```

(5 rows affected)

Here is an example of a having clause without aggregates. It groups the titles table by type and displays only those types that start with the letter “p”:

```
select type  
from titles  
group by type  
having type like "p%"  
type  
-----  
popular_comp  
psychology
```

(2 rows affected)

When you include more than one condition in the having clause, combine the conditions with and, or, or not. For example, to group the titles table by publisher, and to include only those publishers who have paid more than \$15,000 in total advances, whose books average less than \$18 in price, and whose identification numbers (pub\_id) are greater than 0800, the statement is:

```
select pub_id, sum(advance), avg(price)
```

```
from titles
group by pub_id
having sum(advance) > 15000
    and avg(price) < 18
    and pub_id > "0800"
pub_id
-----
0877          41,000.00           15.41

(1 row affected)
```

## How the *having*, *group by*, and *where* clauses interact

When you include the having, group by, and where clauses in a query, the sequence in which each clause affects the rows determines the final results:

- The where clause excludes rows that do not meet its search conditions.
- The group by clause collects the remaining rows into one group for each unique value in the group by expression.
- Aggregate functions specified in the select list calculate summary values for each group.
- The having clause excludes rows from the final results that do not meet its search conditions.

The following query illustrates the use of where, group by, and having clauses in one select statement containing aggregates:

```
select stor_id, title_id, sum(qty)
from salesdetail
where title_id like "PS%"
group by stor_id, title_id
having sum(qty) > 200
stor_id  title_id
-----
5023    PS1372            375
5023    PS2091            1,845
5023    PS3333            3,437
5023    PS7777            2,206
6380    PS7777            500
7067    PS3333            345
7067    PS7777            250
```

```
(7 rows affected)
```

The query functioned in this order:

- 1 The where clause identified only rows with title\_id beginning with “PS” (psychology books),
- 2 group by collected the rows by common stor\_id and title\_id,
- 3 The sum aggregate calculated the total number of books sold for each group, and
- 4 The having clause excluded the groups whose totals do not exceed 200 books from the final results.

All of the previous having examples adhere to the SQL standards, which specify that columns in a having expression must have a single value, and must be in the select list or group by clause. However, the Transact-SQL extensions to having allow columns or expressions not in the select list and not in the group by clause.

The following example determines the average price for each title type, but it excludes those types that do not have more than \$10,000 in total sales, even though the sum aggregate does not appear in the results.

```
select type, avg(price)
from titles
group by type
having sum(total_sales) > 10000
type
-----
business      13.73
mod_cook      11.49
popular_comp  21.48
trad_cook     15.96
```

```
(4 rows affected)
```

The extension behaves as if the column or expression were part of the select list but not part of the displayed results. If you include a non-aggregated column with having, but it is not part of the select list or the group by clause, the query produces results similar to the “extended” column extension described earlier in this chapter. For example:

```
select type, avg(price)
from titles
group by type
having total_sales > 4000
type
```

```
-----  
business      13.73  
business      13.73  
business      13.73  
mod_cook      11.49  
popular_comp   21.48  
popular_comp   21.48  
psychology     13.50  
trad_cook      15.96  
trad_cook      15.96
```

(9 rows affected)

Unlike an extended column, the total\_sales column does not appear in the final results, yet the number of displayed rows for each type depends on the total\_sales for each title. The query indicates that three business, one mod\_cook, two popular\_comp, one psychology, and two trad\_cook, titles exceed \$4000 in total sales.

As mentioned earlier, the way Adaptive Server handles extended columns may seem as if the query is ignoring the where clause in the final results. To make the where conditions affect the results for the extended column, you should repeat the conditions in the having clause. For example:

```
select type, advance, avg(price)  
from titles  
where advance > 5000  
group by type  
having advance > 5000  
type      advance  
-----  
business  10,125.00    2.99  
mod_cook  15,000.00    2.99  
popular_comp  7,000.00  21.48  
popular_comp  8,000.00  21.48  
psychology   7,000.00  14.30  
psychology   6,000.00  14.30  
trad_cook    7,000.00  17.97  
trad_cook    8,000.00  17.97
```

(8 rows affected)

## Using **having** without **group by**

A query with a having clause should also have a group by clause. If you omit group by, all the rows not excluded by the where clause return as a single group.

Because no grouping is done between the where and having clauses, they cannot act independently of each other. having acts like where because it affects the rows in a single group rather than groups, except the having clause can still use aggregates.

This example uses the having clause in the following way: it averages the price, excludes from the results titles with advances greater than \$4,000, and produces results where price is less than the average price:

```
select title_id, advance, price
from titles
where advance < 4000
having price > avg(price)
title_id      advance      price
-----  -----  -----
BU1032        5,000.00    19.99
BU7832        5,000.00    19.99
MC2222         0.00       19.99
PC1035        7,000.00    22.95
PC8888        8,000.00    20.00
PS1372        7,000.00    21.59
PS3333        2,000.00    19.99
TC3218        7,000.00    20.95

(8 rows affected)
```

You can also use the having clause with the Transact-SQL extension that allows you to omit the group by clause from a query that includes an aggregate in its select list. These scalar aggregate functions calculate values for the table as a single group, not for groups within the table.

In this example, the group by clause is omitted, which makes the aggregate function calculate a value for the whole table. The having clause excludes non-matching rows from the result group.

```
select pub_id, count(pub_id)
from publishers
having pub_id < "1000"
pub_id
-----
0736            3
0877            3
```

```
(2 rows affected)
```

## Sorting query results: the **order by** clause

The **order by** clause allows you to sort query results by one or more columns, up to 31. Each sort is either ascending (**asc**) or descending (**desc**). If neither is specified, **asc** is the default. The following query orders results by **pub\_id**:

```
select pub_id, type, title_id
from titles
order by pub_id
pub_id    type          title_id
-----  -----
0736      business      BU2075
0736      psychology   PS2091
0736      psychology   PS2106
0736      psychology   PS3333
0736      psychology   PS7777
0877      UNDECIDED    MC3026
0877      mod_cook     MC2222
0877      mod_cook     MC3021
0877      psychology   PS1372
0877      trad_cook    TC3218
0877      trad_cook    TC4203
0877      trad_cook    TC7777
1389      business     BU1032
1389      business     BU1111
1389      business     BU7832
1389      popular_comp PC1035
1389      popular_comp PC8888
1389      popular_comp PC9999
```

```
(18 rows affected)
```

If you name more than one column in the **order by** clause, Adaptive Server nests the sorts. The following statement sorts the rows in the **stores** table first by **stor\_id** in descending order, then by **payterms** (in ascending order, since **desc** is not specified), and finally by **country** (also ascending).

Adaptive Server sorts null values first within any group.

```
select stor_id, payterms, country
```

```
from stores
order by stor_id desc, payterms
stor_id payterms      country
-----
8042    Net 30        USA
7896    Net 60        USA
7131    Net 60        USA
7067    Net 30        USA
7066    Net 30        USA
6380    Net 60        USA
5023    Net 60        USA

( 7 rows affected)
```

You can use the **position number** of a column in a select list instead of the column name. Column names and select list numbers can be mixed. Both of the following statements produce the same results as the preceding one.

```
select pub_id, type, title_id
from titles
order by 1 desc, 2, 3
select pub_id, type, title_id
from titles
order by 1 desc, type, 3
```

Most versions of SQL require that order by items appear in the select list, but Transact-SQL has no such restriction. You could order the results of the preceding query by title, although that column does not appear in the select list.

---

**Note** You cannot use order by on text or image columns.

---

Adaptive Server does not allow subqueries, aggregates, variables and constant expressions in the order by list.

With order by, null values come before all others.

The effects of an order by clause on mixed-case data depend on the sort order installed on your Adaptive Server. The basic choices are binary, dictionary order, and case-insensitive. The system procedure `sp_helpsort` displays the sort order for your server. See the *Reference Manual* for more information on sort orders.

## **order by and group by**

You can use an order by clause to order the results of a group by in a particular way.

Put the order by clause after the group by clause. For example, to find the average price of each type of book and order the results by average price, the statement is:

```
select type, avg(price)
from titles
group by type
order by avg(price)
type
-----
UNDECIDED      NULL
mod_cook        11.49
psychology      13.50
business        13.73
trad_cook       15.96
popular_comp    21.48

(6 rows affected)
```

## **order by and group by used with select distinct**

A select distinct query with order by or group by can return duplicate values if the order by or group by column is not in the select list. For example:

```
select distinct pub_id
from titles
order by type
pub_id
-----
0877
0736
1389
0877
1389
0736
0877
0877

(8 rows affected)
```

If a query has an order by or group by clause that includes columns not in the select list, Adaptive Server adds those columns as hidden columns in the columns being processed. The columns listed in the order by or group by clause are included in the test for distinct rows. To comply with ANSI standards, include the order by or group by column in the select list. For example:

```
select distinct pub_id, type
  from titles
 order by type
    pub_id type
    -----
 0877  UNDECIDED
 0736  business
 1389  business
 0877  mod_cook
 1389  popular_comp
 0736  psychology
 0877  psychology
 0877  trad_cook

(8 rows affected)
```

## **Summarizing groups of data: the *compute* clause**

The *compute* clause is a Transact-SQL extension. Use it with row aggregates to produce reports that show subtotals of grouped summaries. Such reports, usually produced by a report generator, are called control-break reports, since summary values appear in the report under the control of the groupings (“breaks”) you specify in the *compute* clause.

These summary values appear as additional rows in the query results, unlike the aggregate results of a *group by* clause, which appear as new columns.

A *compute* clause allows you to see detail and summary rows with one select statement. You can calculate summary values for subgroups and you can calculate more than one row aggregate (see “Row aggregates and *compute*” on page 111) for the same group.

The general syntax for *compute* is:

```
compute row_aggregate(column_name)
[, row_aggregate(column_name)]...
[by column_name [, column_name]...]
```

The row aggregates you can use with compute are sum, avg, min, max, and count. You can use sum and avg only with numeric columns. Unlike the order by clause, you cannot use the positional number of a column from the select list instead of the column name.

---

**Note** You cannot use text or image columns in a compute clause.

---

A system test may fail because there are too many aggregates in the compute clause of a query. The number of aggregates that each compute clause can accommodate is limited to 127, and if a compute clause contains more than 127 aggregates, the system generates an error message when you try to execute the query.

Each avg() aggregate counts as two aggregates when you are counting toward the limit of 127, because an avg() aggregate is actually a combination of a sum() aggregate and a count() aggregate.

Following are two queries and their results. The first one uses group by and aggregates. The second uses compute and row aggregates. Note the difference in the results.

```
select type, sum(price), sum(advance)
from titles
group by type
type
-----
UNDECIDED      NULL      NULL
business       54.92     25,125.00
mod_cook        22.98     15,000.00
popular_comp    42.95     15,000.00
psychology      67.52     21,275.00
trad_cook       47.89     19,000.00

(6 rows affected)
select type, price, advance
from titles
order by type
compute sum(price), sum(advance) by type
type      price          advance
-----
UNDECIDED    NULL          NULL
```

Compute Result:

```
-----  
          NULL           NULL  
  
type      price      advance  
-----  
business   2.99    10,125.00  
business   11.95   5,000.00  
business   19.99   5,000.00  
business   19.99   5,000.00
```

Compute Result:

```
-----  
          54.92        25,125.00  
type      price      advance  
-----  
mod_cook   2.99    15,000.00  
mod_cook   19.99    0.00
```

Compute Result:

```
-----  
          22.98        15,000.00  
  
type      price      advance  
-----  
popular_comp  NULL     NULL  
popular_comp  20.00   8,000.00  
popular_comp  22.95   7,000.00
```

Compute Result:

```
-----  
          42.95        15,000.00  
  
type      price      advance  
-----  
psychology  7.00    6,000.00  
psychology  7.99    4,000.00  
psychology  10.95   2,275.00  
psychology  19.99   2,000.00  
psychology  21.59   7,000.00
```

Compute Result:

```
-----  
          67.52        21,275.00  
  
type      price      advance
```

```

-----
trad_cook    11.95          4,000.00
trad_cook    14.99          8,000.00
trad_cook    20.95          7,000.00

Compute Result:
-----
                           47.89          19,000.00

(24 rows affected)

```

Each summary value is treated as a row.

## Row aggregates and *compute*

The row aggregates used with compute are listed in Table 3-2:

**Table 3-2: How aggregates are used with a compute statement**

Row aggregates	Result
sum	Total of the values in the expression
avg	Average of the values in the expression
max	Highest value in the expression
min	Lowest value in the expression
count	Number of selected rows

These row aggregates are the same aggregates that can be used with group by, except there is no row aggregate function that is the equivalent of count(\*). To find the summary information produced by group by and count(\*), use a compute clause without the by keyword.

## Rules for *compute* clauses

- Adaptive Server does not allow the distinct keyword with the row aggregates.
- The columns in a compute clause must appear in the select list.
- You cannot use select into (see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables”) in the same statement as a compute clause because statements that include compute do not generate normal rows.

- If you use compute with the by keyword, you must also use an order by clause. The columns listed after by must be identical to, or a subset of, those listed after order by, and must be in the same left-to-right order, start with the same expression, and not skip any expressions.

For example, suppose the order by clause is:

```
order by a, b, c
```

The compute clause can be any or all of these:

```
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by a, b, c  
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by a, b  
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by a
```

The compute clause cannot be any of these:

```
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by b, c  
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by a, c  
compute row_aggregate (column_name) by c
```

You must use a column name or an expression in the order by clause; you cannot sort by a column heading.

- The compute keyword can be used without by to generate grand totals, grand counts, and so on. order by is optional if you use the compute keyword without by. The compute keyword without by is discussed under “Grand values: compute without by” on page 115.

## Specifying more than one column after `compute`

Listing more than one column after the by keyword affects the query by breaking a group into subgroups and applying the specified row aggregate to each level of grouping. For example, this query finds the sum of the prices of psychology books from each publisher:

```
select type, pub_id, price  
from titles  
where type = "psychology"  
order by type, pub_id, price  
compute sum(price) by type, pub_id  
type      pub_id  price  
-----  -----  
psychology    0736      7.00  
psychology    0736      7.99
```

```
psychology      0736      10.95
psychology      0736      19.99

Compute Result:
-----
        45.93
type      pub_id  price
-----
psychology      0877      21.59

Compute Result:
-----
        21.59

(7 rows affected)
```

## Using more than one **compute** clause

You can use different aggregates in the same statement by including more than one compute clause. The following query is similar to the preceding one but adds the sum of the prices of psychology books by publisher:

```
select type, pub_id, price
from titles
where type = "psychology"
order by type, pub_id, price
compute sum(price) by type, pub_id
compute sum(price) by type
type      pub_id  price
-----
psychology      0736      7.00
psychology      0736      7.99
psychology      0736      10.95
psychology      0736      19.99

Compute Result:
-----
        45.93

type      pub_id  price
-----
psychology      0877      21.59

Compute Result:
-----
```

```
21.59  
  
Compute Result:  
-----  
67.52  
  
(8 rows affected)
```

## Applying an aggregate to more than one column

One compute clause can apply the same aggregate to several columns. This query finds the sum of the prices and advances for each type of cookbook:

```
select type, price, advance  
from titles  
where type like "%cook"  
order by type  
compute sum(price), sum(advance) by type  
type      price          advance  
----- ----- -----  
mod_cook      2.99      15,000.00  
mod_cook     19.99        0.00  
  
Compute Result:  
-----  
22.98      15,000.00  
  
type      price          advance  
----- ----- -----  
trad_cook    11.95      4,000.00  
trad_cook    14.99      8,000.00  
trad_cook    20.95      7,000.00  
  
Compute Result:  
-----  
47.89      19,000.00  
  
(7 rows affected)
```

Remember, the columns to which the aggregates apply must also be in the select list.

## Using different aggregates in the same `compute` clause

You can use different aggregates in the same `compute` clause:

```
select type, pub_id, price
from titles
where type like "%cook"
order by type, pub_id
compute sum(price), max(pub_id) by type
type      pub_id  price
-----
mod_cook   0877     2.99
mod_cook   0877    19.99

Compute Result:
-----
22.98 0877

type      pub_id  price
-----
trad_cook  0877    11.95
trad_cook  0877    14.99
trad_cook  0877    20.95

Compute Result:
-----
47.89 0877

(7 rows affected)
```

## Grand values: `compute without by`

You can use the `compute` keyword without `by` to generate grand totals, grand counts, and so on.

This statement finds the grand total of the prices and advances of all types of books that cost more than \$20:

```
select type, price, advance
from titles
where price > $20
compute sum(price), sum(advance)
type      price        advance
-----
popular_comp       22.95    7,000.00
psychology         21.59    7,000.00
```

```
trad_cook           20.95      7,000.00
Compute Result:
-----
65.49 21,000.00
(4 rows affected)
```

You can use a `compute` with `by` and a `compute` without `by` in the same query. The following query finds the sum of prices and advances by type and then computes the grand total of prices and advances for all types of books.

```
select type, price, advance
from titles
where type like "%cook"
order by type
compute sum(price), sum(advance) by type
compute sum(price), sum(advance)
type      price          advance
-----
mod_cook    2.99      15,000.00
mod_cook    19.99        0.00
Compute Result:
-----
22.98 15,000.00
type      price          advance
-----
trad_cook   11.95      4,000.00
trad_cook   14.99      8,000.00
trad_cook   20.95      7,000.00
Compute Result:
-----
47.89 19,000.00
Compute Result:
-----
70.87 34,000.00
(8 rows affected)
```

## Combining queries: the *union* operator

The union operator combines the results of two or more queries into a single result set. The Transact-SQL extension to union allows you to:

- Use union in the select clause of an insert statement.
- Specify new column headings in the order by clause of a select statement when union is present in the select statement.

The syntax of the union operator is as follows:

```
query1
[union [all] queryN] ...
[order by clause]
[compute clause]
```

where *query1* is:

```
select select_list
[into clause]
[from clause]
[where clause]
[group by clause]
[having clause]
```

and *queryN* is:

```
select select_list
[from clause]
[where clause]
[group by clause]
[having clause]
```

**Figure 3-1: Union combining queries**

Table T1		Table T2	
a	b	a	b
char(4)	int	char(4)	int
abc	1	ghi	3
def	2	jkl	4
ghi	3	JKL	5

For example, suppose you have the following two tables containing the data shown:

The following query creates a union between the two tables:

```
create table T1 (a char(4), b int)
insert T1 values ("abc", 1)
insert T1 values ("def", 2)
insert T1 values ("ghi", 3)
create table T2 (a char(4), b int)
insert T2 values ("ghi", 3)
insert T2 values ("jkl", 4)
insert T2 values ("JKL", 5)
select * from T1
union
select * from T2
a      b
----- -----
abc      1
def      2
ghi      3
jkl      4
JKL      5
(5 rows affected)
```

By default, the union operator removes duplicate rows from the result set. Use the all option to include duplicate rows. Notice also that the columns in the result set have the same names as the columns in T1. You can use any number of union operators in a Transact-SQL statement. For example:

```
x union y union z
```

By default, Adaptive Server evaluates a statement containing union operators from left to right. You can use parentheses to specify a different evaluation order.

For example, the following two expressions are not equivalent:

```
x union all (y union z)
```

```
(x union all y) union z
```

In the first expression, duplicates are eliminated in the union between *y* and *z*. Then, in the union between that set and *x*, duplicates are *not* eliminated. In the second expression, duplicates are included in the union between *x* and *y*, but are then eliminated in the subsequent union with *z*; *all* does not affect the final result of this statement.

## Guidelines for *union* queries

When you use union statements:

- All select lists in the union statement must have the same number of expressions (such as column names, arithmetic expressions, and aggregate functions). The following statement is invalid because the first select list is longer than the second:

```
create table stores_east
(stor_id char(4) not null,
stor_name varchar(40) null,
stor_address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode char(10) null,
payterms varchar(12) null)
```

```
select stor_id, city, state from stores
union
select stor_id, city from stores_east
```

```
drop table stores_east
```

- Corresponding columns in all tables, or any subset of columns used in the individual queries, must be of the same datatype, or an implicit data conversion must be possible between the two datatypes, or an explicit conversion should be supplied. For example, a union is not possible between a column of the char datatype and one of the int datatype, unless an explicit conversion is supplied. However, a union is possible between a column of the money datatype and one of the int datatype. See union and “Datatype Conversion Functions” in the *Reference Manual* for more information about comparing datatypes in a union statement.
- You must place corresponding columns in the individual queries of a union statement in the same order, because union compares the columns one to one in the order given in the query. For example, suppose you have the following tables:

**Figure 3-2: Union comparing columns**

<b>Table T3</b>			<b>Table T4</b>	
a	b	c	a	b
int	char(4)	char(4)	char(4)	int
1	abc	JKL	abc	1
2	def	MNO	def	2
3	ghi	PQR	ghi	3

This query:

```
select a, b from T3
union
select b, a from T4
```

produces:

a	b
1	abc
2	def
3	ghi

(3 rows affected)

The following query results in an error message, because the datatypes of corresponding columns are not compatible:

```
select a, b from T3
union
select a, b from T4
```

```
drop table T3
drop table T4
```

When you combine different (but compatible) datatypes such as float and int in a union statement, Adaptive Server converts them to the datatype with the most precision.

- Adaptive Server takes the column names in the table resulting from a union from the *first* individual query in the union statement. Therefore, to define a new column heading for the result set, do so in the first query. In addition, to refer to a column in the result set by a new name, for example, in an order by statement, refer to it in that way in the first select statement.

The following query is correct:

```
select Cities = city from stores
union
select city from authors
order by Cities
```

## Using *union* with other Transact-SQL commands

When you use union statements with other Transact-SQL commands:

- The first query in the union statement may contain an into clause that creates a table to hold the final result set. For example, the following statement creates a table called results that contains the union of tables publishers, stores, and salesdetail:

```
use master
sp_dboption pubs2, "select into", true
use pubs2
checkpoint
select pub_id, pub_name, city into results
from publishers
union
select stor_id, stor_name, city from stores
```

```
union
select stor_id, title_id, ord_num from
salesdetail
```

You can use the into clause only in the first query; if it appears anywhere else, you get an error message.

- You can use order by and compute clauses only at the end of the union statement to define the order of the final results or to compute summary values. You cannot use them within the individual queries that make up the union statement.
- You can use group by and having clauses within individual queries only; you cannot use them to affect the final result set.
- You can also use the union operator within an insert statement. For example:

```
create table tour (city varchar(20), state char(2))
```

```
insert into tour
select city, state from stores
union
select city, state from authors
drop table tour
```

- You cannot use the union operator within a create view statement.
- You cannot use the union operator on text and image columns.
- You cannot use the for browse clause in statements involving the union operator.

# Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables

A **join** operation compares two or more tables (or views) by specifying a column from each, comparing the values in those columns row by row, and linking the rows that have matching values. It then displays the results in a new table. The tables specified in the join can be in the same database or in different databases.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How joins work	124
How joins are structured	125
How joins are processed	130
Equijoins and natural joins	131
Joins with additional conditions	132
Joins not based on equality	133
Self-joins and correlation names	134
The not-equal join	135
Joining more than two tables	138
Outer joins	140
Transact-SQL outer joins	160
How null values affect joins	164
Determining which table columns to join	165

You can state many joins as subqueries, which also involve two or more tables. See Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.”

When Component Integration Services is enabled, you can perform joins across remote servers. For more information, see the *Component Integration Services User’s Guide*.

## How joins work

When you join two or more tables, the columns being compared must have similar values—that is, values using the same or similar datatypes.

There are several types of joins, such as equijoins, natural joins, and outer joins. The most common join, the equijoin, is based on equality. The following join finds the names of authors and publishers located in the same city:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name  
from authors, publishers  
where authors.city = publishers.city  
au_fname      au_lname      pub_name  
-----        -----  
Cheryl        Carson       Algodata Infosystems  
Abraham       Bennet       Algodata Infosystems  
  
( 2 rows affected)
```

Because the query draws on information contained in two separate tables, publishers and authors, you need a join to retrieve the requested information. This statement joins the publishers and authors tables using the city column as the link.:.

```
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

## Join syntax

You can embed a join in a select, update, insert, delete, or subquery. Other join restrictions and clauses may follow the join conditions. Joins use the following syntax:

```
start of select, update, insert, delete, or subquery  
from {table_list | view_list}  
where [not]  
    [table_name. | view_name.]column_name join_operator  
    [table_name. | view_name.]column_name  
[{and | or} [not]  
    [table_name.|view_name.]column_name join_operator  
    [table_name.|view_name.]column_name]...  
End of select, update, insert, delete, or subquery
```

## Joins and the relational model

The join operation is the hallmark of the relational model of database management. More than any other feature, the join distinguishes relational database management systems from other types of database management systems.

In structured database management systems, often known as network and hierarchical systems, relationships between data values are predefined. Once a database has been set up, it is difficult to make queries about unanticipated relationships among the data.

In a relational database management system, on the other hand, relationships among data values are left unstated in the definition of a database. They become explicit when the data is manipulated—when you **query** the database, not when you create it. You can ask any question that comes to mind about the data stored in the database, regardless of what was intended when the database was set up.

According to the rules of good database design, called **normalization rules**, each table should describe one kind of entity—a person, place, event, or thing. That is why, when you want to compare information about two or more kinds of entities, you need the join operation. Relationships among data stored in different tables are discovered by joining them.

A corollary of this rule is that the join operation gives you unlimited flexibility in adding new kinds of data to your database. You can always create a new table that contains data about a different kind of entity. If the new table has a field with values similar to those in some field of an existing table or tables, it can be linked to those other tables by joining.

## How joins are structured

A join statement, like a select statement, starts with the keyword **select**. The columns named after the **select** keyword are the columns to be included in the query results, in their desired order. The previous example specified the columns that contained the authors' names from the **authors** table, and publishers' names from the **publishers** tables:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name  
from authors, publishers
```

You do not have to qualify the columns au\_fname, au\_lname, and pub\_name by a table name because there is no ambiguity about the table to which they belong. But the city column used for the join comparison does need to be qualified, because there are columns of that name in both the authors and publishers tables:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name  
from authors, publishers  
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

Though neither of the city columns is printed in the results, Adaptive Server needs the table name to perform the comparison.

To specify that all the columns of the tables involved in the query be included in the results, use an asterisk (\*) with select. For example, to include all the columns in authors and publishers in the preceding join query, the statement is:

```
select *  
from authors, publishers  
where authors.city = publishers.city  
au_id      au_lname au_fname phone      address  
city       state postalcode contract pub_id pub_name  
city       state  
-----  
-----  
-----  
238-95-7766 Carson    Cheryl   415 548-7723 589 Darwin Ln.  
Berkeley   CA        94705      1          1389   Algodata Infosystems  
Berkeley   CA  
409-56-7008 Bennet    Abraham  415 658-9932 223 Bateman St  
Berkeley   CA        94705      1          1389   Algodata Infosystems  
Berkeley   CA  
  
(2 rows affected)
```

The display shows a total of 2 rows with 13 columns each. Because of the length of the rows, each takes up multiple horizontal lines in this display. Whenever “\*” is used, the columns in the results are displayed in the order in which they were stated in the create statement that created the table.

The select list and the results of a join need not include columns from both of the tables being joined. For example, to find the names of the authors that live in the same city as one of the publishers, your query need not include any columns from publishers:

```
select au_lname, au_fname  
from authors, publishers
```

```
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

Remember, just as in any select statement, column names in the select list and table names in the from clause must be separated by commas.

## The **from** clause

Use the from clause to specify which tables and views to join. This is the clause that indicates to Adaptive Server that a join is desired. You can list the tables or views in any order. The order of tables affects the results displayed only when you use `select *` to specify the select list.

More than two tables or views can be named in the from clause. At most, a query can reference 16 tables. This maximum includes:

- Base tables or views listed in the from clause
- Each instance of multiple references to the same table (self-joins)
- Tables referenced in subqueries
- Base tables referenced by the views listed in the from clause
- Tables being created with `into`
- Work tables created as a result of the query

If the join is part of an update or delete statement, the query can only refer to 15 tables.

The following example joins columns from the titles and publishers tables, doubling the price of all books published in California:

```
begin tran
update titles
    set price = price * 2
    from titles, publishers
    where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
        and publishers.state = "CA"
rollback tran
```

See “Joining more than two tables” on page 138 for information on joins involving more than two tables or views.

As explained in Chapter 2, “Queries: Selecting Data from a Table,” table or view names can be qualified by the names of the owner and database, and can be given correlation names for convenience. For example:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
```

```
from pubs2.blue.authors, pubs2.blue.publishers  
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

You can join views in exactly the same way as tables and use views wherever tables are used. Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data” discusses views; this chapter uses only tables in its examples.

## The **where** clause

Use the **where** clause to determine which rows are included in the results. **where** specifies the connection between the tables and views named in the **from** clause. Be sure to qualify column names if there is ambiguity about the table or view to which they belong. For example:

```
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

This **where** clause gives the names of the columns to be joined, qualified by table names if necessary, and the join operator—often equality, sometimes “greater than” or “less than.” For details of **where** clause syntax, see Chapter 2, “Queries: Selecting Data from a Table”.

---

**Note** You will get unexpected results if you omit the **where** clause of a join. Without a **where** clause, any of the join queries discussed so far will produce 69 rows instead of 2. “How joins are processed” on page 130 explains this unexpected result.

---

The **where** clause of a join statement can include other conditions in addition to the one that links columns from different tables. In other words, you can include a join operation and a select operation in the same SQL statement. See “How joins are processed” on page 130 for an example.

## Join operators

Joins that match columns on the basis of equality are called **equijoins**. A more precise definition of an **equijoin** is given under “Equijoins and natural joins” on page 131, along with examples of joins not based on equality.

Equijoins use the following comparison operators:

**Table 4-1: Join operators**

Operator	Meaning
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<	Less than
<=	Less than or equal to
!=	Not equal to
!>	Less than or equal to
!<	Greater than or equal to

Joins that use the relational operators are collectively called **theta joins**.

Another set of join operators is used for **outer joins**, also discussed in detail later in this chapter. The outer join operators are Transact-SQL extensions, as shown in Table 4-2:

**Table 4-2: Outer join operators**

Operator	Action
*=	Include in the results all the rows from the first table, not just the ones where the joined columns match.
=*	Include in the results all the rows from the second table, not just the ones where the joined columns match.

## Datatypes in join columns

The columns being joined must have the same or compatible datatypes. Use the `convert` function when comparing columns whose datatypes cannot be implicitly converted. Columns being joined need not have the same name, although they often do.

If the datatypes used in the join are compatible, Adaptive Server automatically converts them. For example, Adaptive Server converts among any of the numeric type columns—`int`, `smallint`, `tinyint`, `decimal`, or `float`, and among any of the character type and date columns—`char`, `varchar`, `unichar`, `univarchar`, `nchar`, `nvarchar`, and `datetime`. For details on datatype conversion, see Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries,” and the “Datatype Conversion Functions” section of the *Reference Manual*.

## Joins and *text* and *image* columns

You cannot use joins for columns containing text or image values. You can, however, compare the lengths of text columns from two tables with a where clause. For example:

```
where datalength(texttab_1.textcol) >  
      datalength(texttab_2.textcol)
```

# How joins are processed

Knowing how joins are processed helps to understand them—and to figure out why, when you incorrectly state a join, you sometimes get unexpected results. This section describes the processing of joins in conceptual terms. Adaptive Server's actual procedure is more sophisticated.

Conceptually speaking, the first step in processing a join is to form the **Cartesian product** of the tables—all the possible combinations of the rows from each of the tables. The number of rows in a Cartesian product of two tables is equal to the number of rows in the first table multiplied by the number of rows in the second table.

The Cartesian product of the authors table and the publishers table is 69 (23 authors multiplied by 3 publishers). You can have a look at a Cartesian product with any query that includes columns from more than one table in the select list, more than one table in the from clause, and no where clause. For example, if you leave the where clause off the join used in previous examples, Adaptive Server combines each of the 23 authors with each of the 3 publishers, and returns all 69 rows.

This Cartesian product does not contain any particularly useful information. In fact, it is downright misleading, because it implies that every author in the database has a relationship with every publisher in the database—which is not true at all.

That is why you must include a where clause in the join, which specifies the columns to be matched and the basis on which to match them. It may also include other restrictions. Once Adaptive Server forms the Cartesian product, it eliminates the rows that do not satisfy the join by using the conditions in the where clause.

For example, the where clause in the previous example eliminates from the results all rows in which the author's city is not the same as the publisher's city:

```
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

## Equijoins and natural joins

Joins based on equality (=) are called **equijoins**. Equijoins compare the values in the columns being joined for equality and then include all the columns in the tables being joined in the results.

This earlier query is an example of an equijoin:

```
select *
  from authors, publishers
 where authors.city = publishers.city
```

In the results of that statement, the city column appears twice. By definition, the results of an equijoin contain two identical columns. Because there is usually no point in repeating the same information, one of these columns can be eliminated by restating the query. The result is called a **natural join**.

The query that results in the natural join of publishers and authors on the city column is:

```
select publishers.pub_id, publishers.pub_name,
       publishers.state, authors.*
  from publishers, authors
 where publishers.city = authors.city
```

The column publishers.city does not appear in the results.

Another example of a natural join is:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
  from authors, publishers
 where authors.city = publishers.city
```

You can use more than one join operator to join more than two tables or to join more than two pairs of columns. These "join expressions" are usually connected with and, although or is also legal.

Following are two examples of joins connected by and. The first lists information about books (type of book, author, and title), ordered by book type. Books with more than one author have multiple listings, one for each author.

```
select type, au_lname, au_fname, title  
from authors, titles, titleauthor  
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id  
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id  
order by type
```

The second finds the names of authors and publishers that are located in the same city and state:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name  
from authors, publishers  
where authors.city = publishers.city  
and authors.state = publishers.state
```

## Joins with additional conditions

The where clause of a join query can include selection criteria as well as the join condition. For example, to retrieve the names and publishers of all the books for which advances of more than \$7500 were paid, the statement is:

```
select title, pub_name, advance  
from titles, publishers  
where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id  
and advance > $7500
```

title	pub_name	advance
You Can Combat Computer Stress!	New Age Books	10,125.00
The Gourmet Microwave	Binnet & Hardley	15,000.00
Secrets of Silicon Valley	Algodata Infosystems	8,000.00
Sushi, Anyone?	Binnet & Hardley	8,000.00

( 4 rows affected )

The columns being joined (pub\_id from titles and publishers) do not need to appear in the select list and, therefore, do not show up in the results.

You can include as many selection criteria as you want in a join statement. The order of the selection criteria and the join condition is not important.

## Joins not based on equality

The condition for joining the values in two columns does not need to be equality. You can use any of the other comparison operators: not equal ( $\neq$ ), greater than ( $>$ ), less than ( $<$ ), greater than or equal to ( $\geq$ ), and less than or equal to ( $\leq$ ). Transact-SQL also provides the operators  $\!>$  and  $\!<$ , which are equivalent to  $\leq$  and  $\geq$ , respectively.

This example of a greater-than join finds New Age authors who live in states that come after New Age Books' state, Massachusetts, in alphabetical order.

```
select pub_name, publishers.state,
       au_lname, au_fname, authors.state
  from publishers, authors
 where authors.state > publishers.state
   and pub_name = "New Age Books"

```

pub_name	state	au_lname	au_fname	state
New Age Books	MA	Greene	Morningstar	TN
New Age Books	MA	Blotchet-Halls	Reginald	OR
New Age Books	MA	del Castillo	Innes	MI
New Age Books	MA	Panteley	Sylvia	MD
New Age Books	MA	Ringer	Anne	UT
New Age Books	MA	Ringer	Albert	UT

(6 rows affected)

The following example uses a  $\geq$  join and a  $<$  join to look up the correct royalty from the roysched table, based on the book's total sales.

```
select t.title_id, t.total_sales, r.royalty
  from titles t, roysched r
 where t.title_id = r.title_id
   and t.total_sales >= r.lorange
   and t.total_sales < r.hirange

```

title_id	total_sales	royalty
BU1032	4095	10
BU1111	3876	10
BU2075	1872	24
BU7832	4095	10
MC2222	2032	12
MC3021	22246	24
PC1035	8780	16
PC8888	4095	10
PS1372	375	10

PS2091	2045	12
PS2106	111	10
PS3333	4072	10
PS7777	3336	10
TC3218	375	10
TC4203	15096	14
TC7777	4095	10

(16 rows affected)

## Self-joins and correlation names

Joins that compare values within the same column of one table are called **self-joins**. To distinguish the two roles in which the table appears, use aliases, or correlation names.

For example, you can use a self-join to find out which authors in Oakland, California, live in the same postal code area. Since this query involves a join of the authors table with itself, the authors table appears in two roles. To distinguish these roles, you can temporarily and arbitrarily give the authors table two different correlation names—such as au1 and au2—in the from clause. These correlation names qualify the column names in the rest of the query. The self-join statement looks like this:

```
select au1.au_fname, au1.au_lname,
au2.au_fname, au2.au_lname
from authors au1, authors au2
where au1.city = "Oakland" and au2.city = "Oakland"
and au1.state = "CA" and au2.state = "CA"
and au1.postalcode = au2.postalcode
au_fname      au_lname      au_fname      au_lname
-----        -----        -----        -----
Marjorie      Green        Marjorie      Green
Dick          Straight     Dick          Straight
Dick          Straight     Dirk          Stringer
Dick          Straight     Livia         Karsen
Dirk          Stringer    Dick          Straight
Dirk          Stringer    Dirk          Stringer
Dirk          Stringer    Livia         Karsen
Stearns       MacFeather  Stearns       MacFeather
Livia         Karsen      Dick          Straight
Livia         Karsen      Dirk          Stringer
Livia         Karsen      Livia         Karsen
```

```
(11 rows affected)
```

List the aliases in the from clause in the same order as you refer to them in the select list, as in this example. Depending on the query, the results may be ambiguous if you list them in a different order.

To eliminate the rows in the results where the authors match themselves, and are identical except that the order of the authors is reversed, you can make this addition to the self-join query:

```
select au1.au_fname, au1.au_lname,
au2.au_fname, au2.au_lname
from authors au1, authors au2
where au1.city = "Oakland" and au2.city = "Oakland"
and au1.state = "CA" and au2.state = "CA"
and au1.postalcode = au2.postalcode
and au1.au_id < au2.au_id
au_fname      au_lname      au_fname      au_lname
-----        -----        -----        -----
Dick          Straight     Dirk          Stringer
Dick          Straight     Livia         Karsen
Dirk          Stringer    Livia         Karsen
```

```
(3 rows affected)
```

It is now clear that Dick Straight, Dirk Stringer, and Livia Karsen all have the same postal code.

## The not-equal join

The not-equal join is particularly useful in restricting the rows returned by a self-join. In the following example, a not-equal join and a self-join find the categories in which there are two or more inexpensive (less than \$15) books of different prices:

```
select distinct t1.type, t1.price
from titles t1, titles t2
where t1.price < $15
and t2.price < $15
and t1.type = t2.type
and t1.price != t2.price
type      price
-----  ----
```

```
business      2.99
business     11.95
psychology    7.00
psychology    7.99
psychology   10.95
trad_cook    11.95
trad_cook   14.99
```

(7 rows affected)

The expression “*not column\_name = column\_name*” is equivalent to “*column\_name != column\_name*.”

The following example uses a not-equal join, combined with a self-join. It finds all the rows in the titleauthor table where there are two or more rows with the same title\_id, but different au\_id numbers that is, books which have more than one author.

```
select distinct t1.au_id, t1.title_id
from titleauthor t1, titleauthor t2
where t1.title_id = t2.title_id
and t1.au_id != t2.au_id
order by t1.title_id
au_id          title_id
-----  -----
213-46-8915    BU1032
409-56-7008    BU1032
267-41-2394    BU1111
724-80-9391    BU1111
722-51-5454    MC3021
899-46-2035    MC3021
427-17-2319    PC8888
846-92-7186    PC8888
724-80-9391    PS1372
756-30-7391    PS1372
899-46-2035    PS2091
998-72-3567    PS2091
267-41-2394    TC7777
472-27-2349    TC7777
672-71-3249    TC7777
```

(15 rows affected)

For each book in titles, the following example finds all other books of the same type that have a different price:

```
select t1.type, t1.title_id, t1.price, t2.title_id,
t2.price
```

```
from titles t1, titles t2
where t1.type = t2.type
and t1.price != t2.price
```

Be careful when interpreting the results of a not-equal join. For example, it would be easy to think you could use a not-equal join to find the authors who live in a city where no publisher is located:

```
select distinct au_lname, authors.city
from publishers, authors
where publishers.city != authors.city
```

However, this query finds the authors who live in a city where no publishers are located, which is all of them. The correct SQL statement is a subquery:

```
select distinct au_lname, authors.city
from publishers, authors
where authors.city not in
(select city from publishers
where authors.city = publishers.city)
```

## Not-equal joins and subqueries

Sometimes a not-equal join query is not sufficiently restrictive and needs to be replaced by a subquery. For example, suppose you want to list the names of authors who live in a city where no publisher is located. For the sake of clarity, let us also restrict this query to authors whose last names begin with “A”, “B”, or “C”. A not-equal join query might be:

```
select distinct au_lname, authors.city
from publishers, authors
where au_lname like "[ABC]%"
and publishers.city != authors.city
```

The results are not an answer to the question that was asked:

au_lname	city
Bennet	Berkeley
Carson	Berkeley
Blotchet-Halls	Corvallis

(3 rows affected)

The system interprets this version of the SQL statement to mean: “find the names of authors who live in a city where *some* publisher is not located.” All the excluded authors qualify, including the authors who live in Berkeley, home of the publisher Algodata Infosystems.

In this case, the way that the system handles joins (first finding every eligible combination before evaluating other conditions) causes this query to return undesirable results. You must use a subquery to get the results you want. A subquery can eliminate the ineligible rows first and then perform the remaining restrictions.

Here is the correct statement:

```
select distinct au_lname, city
from authors
where au_lname like "[ABC]%"
and city not in
(select city from publishers
where authors.city = publishers.city)
```

Now, the results are what you want:

au_lname	city
Blotchet-Halls	Corvallis

(1 row affected)

Subqueries are covered in greater detail in Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.”

## Joining more than two tables

The titleauthor table of pubs2 offers a good example of a situation in which joining more than two tables is helpful. To find the titles of all the books of a particular type and the names of their authors, the query is:

```
select au_lname, au_fname, title
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and titles.type = "trad_cook"

au_lname      au_fname      title
-----  -----  -----

```

```

-
Panteley      Sylvia      Onions, Leeks, and Garlic:
Cooking

Secrets of the Mediterranean
Blotchet-Halls Reginald   Fifty Years in Buckingham
Palace

Kitchens
O'Leary        Michael     Sushi, Anyone?
Gringlesby    Burt         Sushi, Anyone?
Yokomoto       Akiko       Sushi, Anyone?

(5 rows affected)

```

Notice that one of the tables in the `from` clause, `titleauthor`, does not contribute any columns to the results. Nor do any of the columns that are joined—`au_id` and `title_id`—appear in the results. Nonetheless, this join is possible only by using `titleauthor` as an intermediate table.

You can also join more than two pairs of columns in the same statement. For example, here is a query that shows the `title_id`, its total sales and the range in which they fall, and the resulting royalty:

```

select titles.title_id, total_sales, lorange,
hirange, royalty
from titles, roysched
where titles.title_id = roysched.title_id
and total_sales >= lorange
and total_sales < hirange
title_id      total_sales      lorange hirange      royalty
-----      -----      ----- -----      -----
BU1032          4095            0    5000      10
BU1111          3876            0    4000      10
BU2075          18722           14001  50000      24
BU7832          4095            0    5000      10
MC2222          2032            2001  4000      12
MC3021          2224            12001  50000      24
PC1035          8780            4001  10000     16
PC8888          4095            0    5000      10
PS1372          375             0    10000     10
PS2091          2045            1001  5000      12
PS2106          111             0    2000      10
PS3333          4072            0    5000      10
PS7777          3336            0    5000      10
TC3218          375             0    2000      10
TC4203          15096           8001  16000     14
TC7777          4095            0    5000      10

```

```
(16 rows affected)
```

When there is more than one join operator in the same statement, either to join more than two tables or to join more than two pairs of columns, the “join expressions” are almost always connected with and, as in the earlier examples. However, it is also legal to connect them with or.

## Outer joins

Joins that include all rows, regardless of whether there is a matching row, are called **outer joins**. Adaptive Server supports both left and right outer joins. For example, the following query joins the titles and the titleauthor tables on their title\_id column:

```
select *
from titles, titleauthor
where titles.title_id *= titleauthor.title_id
```

Sybase supports both Transact-SQL and ANSI outer joins. Transact-SQL outer joins (shown in the previous example) use the \*= command to indicate a left outer join and the =\* command to indicate a right outer join. Transact-SQL outer joins were created by Sybase as part of the Transact-SQL language. See “Transact-SQL outer joins” on page 160 for more information about Transact-SQL outer joins.

ANSI outer joins use the keywords left join and right join to indicate a left and right join, respectively. Sybase implemented the ANSI outer join syntax to fully comply with the ANSI standard. See “ANSI Inner and outer joins” on page 142 for more information about ANSI outer joins. This is the previous example rewritten as an ANSI outer join:

```
select *
from titles left join titleauthor
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

## Inner and outer tables

The terms **outer table** and **inner table** describe the placement of the tables in an outer join:

- In a *left join*, the **outer table** and **inner table** are the left and right tables respectively. The outer table and inner table are also referred to as the row-preserving and null-supplying tables, respectively.
- In a *right join*, the outer table and inner table are the right and left tables respectively.

For example, in the queries below, T1 is the outer table and T2 is the inner table:

```
T1 left join T2  
T2 right join T1
```

Or, using Transact-SQL syntax:

```
T1 *= T2  
T2 =* T1
```

## Outer join restrictions

If a table is an inner member of an outer join, it cannot participate in *both* an outer join clause and a regular join clause. The following query fails because the salesdetail table is part of both the outer join and a regular join clause:

```
select distinct sales.stor_id, stor_name, title  
from sales, stores, titles, salesdetail  
where qty > 500  
and salesdetail.title_id =* titles.title_id  
and sales.stor_id = salesdetail.stor_id  
and sales.stor_id = stores.stor_id  
Msg 303, Level 16, State 1:  
Server 'FUSSY', Line 1:  
The table 'salesdetail' is an inner member of an  
outer-join clause. This is not allowed if the table  
also participates in a regular join clause.
```

If you want to know the name of the store that sold more than 500 copies of a book, you would have to use a second query. If you submit a query with an outer join and a qualification on a column from the inner table of the outer join, the results may not be what you expect. The qualification in the query does not restrict the number of rows returned, but rather affects which rows contain the null value. For rows that do not meet the qualification, a null value appears in the inner table's columns of those rows.

## Views used with outer joins

If you define a view with an outer join, and then query the view with a qualification on a column from the inner table of the outer join, the results may not be what you expect. The query returns all rows from the inner table. Rows that do not meet the qualification show a NULL value in the appropriate columns of those rows.

The following rules determine what types of updates you can make to columns through join views:

- delete statements are not allowed on join views.
- insert statements are not allowed on join views created with check option.
- update statements are allowed on join views with check option. The update fails if any of the affected columns appears in the where clause, in an expression that includes columns from more than one table.
- If you insert or update a row through a join view, all affected columns must belong to the same base table.

## ANSI Inner and outer joins

This is the ANSI syntax for joining tables:

```
left_table [inner | left [outer] | right [outer]]
join right_table
on left_column_name = right_column_name
```

The result of the join between the left and the right tables is called a **joined table**. Joined tables are defined in the from clause. For example:

```
select titles.title_id, title, ord_num, qty
from titles left join salesdetail
on titles.title_id = salesdetail.title_id
title_id      title          ord_num      qty
-----      -----
-----      -----
BU1032      The Busy Executive    AX-532-FED-452-2Z7    200
BU1032      The Busy Executive    NF-123-ADS-642-9G3
1000
...
TC7777      Sushi, Anyone?      ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8    1500
TC7777      Sushi, Anyone?      XS-135-DER-432-8J2    1090
```

```
(118 rows affected)
```

ANSI join syntax allows you to write either:

- **Inner joins**, in which the joined table includes only the rows of the inner and outer tables that meet the conditions of the *on* clause. For information, see “ANSI inner joins” on page 145. The result set of a query that includes an inner join does not include any null-supplied rows for the rows of the outer table that do not meet the conditions of the *on* clause.
- **Outer joins**, in which the joined table includes all the rows from the outer table whether or not they meet the conditions of the *on* clause. If a row does not meet the conditions of the *on* clause, values from the inner table are stored in the joined table as null values. The *where* clause of an ANSI outer join restricts the rows that are included in the query result. For more information, see “ANSI outer joins” on page 148.

---

**Note** You can also use ANSI syntax to join views.

---

Sybase ANSI join syntax does not support the *using* clause.

## Correlation name and column referencing rules for ANSI joins

The following are the correlation name and column reference rules specifically for ANSI joins. For more information about correlation names, see “Self-joins and correlation names” on page 134.

- If a table or view uses a correlation name reference to the column or view it must always use the same correlation name, rather than the table name or view name. That is, you cannot name a table in a query with a correlation name and then use its table name later. The following example correctly uses the correlation name *t* to specify the table where its *pub\_id* column is specified:

```
select title, t.pub_id, pub_name  
from titles t left join publishers p  
on t.pub_id = p.pub_id
```

However, the following example incorrectly uses the table name instead of the correlation name for the *titles* table (*t.pub\_id*) in the *on* clause of the query and produces the subsequent error message:

```
select title, t.pub_id, pub_name  
from titles t left join publishers p
```

```
on titles.pub_id = p.pub_id
Msg 107, Level 15, State 1:
Server 'server_name', Line 1:
The column prefix 't' does not match with a table
name or alias name used in the query. Either the
table is not specified in the FROM clause or it
has a correlation name which must be used
instead.
```

- The restriction specified in the on clause can reference:
  - Columns that are specified in the joined table's reference
  - Columns that are specified in joined tables that are contained in the ANSI join (for example, in a nested join)
  - Correlation names in subqueries for tables specified in outer query blocks
- The condition specified in the on clause *cannot* reference columns that are introduced in ANSI joins that *contain* another ANSI join (typically when the joined table produced by the second join is joined with the first join).

Here is an example of an illegal column reference that produces an error:

```
select *
from titles left join titleauthor
on titles.title_id=roysched.title_id      /*join #1*/
left join roysched
on titleauthor.title_id=roysched.title_id  /*join
#2*/
where titles.title_id != "PS7777"
```

The first left join cannot reference the roysched.title\_id column because this column is not introduced until the second join. You can correctly rewrite this query as:

```
select *
from titles
left join (titleauthor
left join roysched
on titleauthor.title_id = roysched.title_id) /*join
#1*/
on titles.title_id = roysched.title_id        /*join
#2*/
where titles.title_id != "PS7777"
```

And another example:

```
select title, price, titleauthor.au_id, titleauthor.title_id, pub_name,
publishers.city
from roysched, titles
left join titleauthor
on roysched.title_id=titleauthor.title_id
left join authors
on titleauthor.au_id=roysched.au_id, publishers
```

In this query, neither the roysched table or the publishers table are part of either left join. Because of this, neither left join can refer to columns in either the roysched or publishers tables as part of their on clause condition.

## ANSI inner joins

Joins that produce a result set that includes only the rows of the joining tables that meet the restriction are called **inner joins**. Rows that do not meet the join restriction are not included in the joined table. If you require the joined table to include all the rows from one of the tables, regardless of whether they meet the restriction, use an outer join. See “ANSI outer joins” on page 148, for more information.

Adaptive Server supports the use of both Transact-SQL inner joins and ANSI inner joins. Queries using Transact-SQL inner joins separate the tables being joined by commas and list the join comparisons and restrictions in the where clause. For example:

```
select au_id, titles.title_id, title, price
from titleauthor, titles
where titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
and price > $15
```

For information about writing Transact-SQL inner joins, see “How joins are structured” on page 125.

ANSI-standard inner joins syntax is:

```
select select_list
      from table1 inner join table2
            on join_condition
```

For example, the following use of inner join is equivalent to the Transact SQL join above:

```
select au_id, titles.title_id, title, price
from titleauthor inner join titles
```

```
on titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
and price > 15

au_id      title_id  title          price
-----  -----  -----
-----
213-46-8915  BU1032  The Busy Executive's Datab
19.99
409-56-7008  BU1032  The Busy Executive's Datab
19.99
. . .
172-32-1176  PS3333  Prolonged Data Deprivation
19.99
807-91-6654  TC3218  Onions, Leeks, and Garlic:
20.95
(11 rows affected)
```

The two methods of writing joins, ANSI or Transact-SQL, are equivalent. For example, there is no difference between the result sets produced by the following queries:

```
select title_id, pub_name
from titles, publishers
where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
```

and

```
select title_id, pub_name
from titles left join publishers
on titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
```

An inner join can be part of an update or delete statement. For example, the following query multiplies the price for all the titles published in California by 1.25:

```
begin tran
update titles
    set price = price * 1.25
    from titles inner join publishers
    on titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
    and publishers.state = "CA"
```

### **The join table of an inner join**

An ANSI join specifies which tables or views to join in the query. The table references specified in the ANSI join comprise the joined table. For example, the join table of the following query includes the title, price, advance, and royaltyper columns:

```

select title, price, advance, royaltyper
from titles inner join titleauthor
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
title      price     advance    royaltyper
-----  -----  -----  -----
The Busy...   19.99   5,000.00    40
The Busy...   19.99   5,000.00    60
...
Sushi, A...   14.99   8,000.00    30
Sushi, A...   14.99   8,000.00    40
(25 rows affected)

```

If a joined table is used as a table reference in an ANSI inner join, it becomes a **nested** inner join. ANSI nested inner joins follow the same rules as ANSI outer joins.

A query can reference a maximum of 50 user tables (or 14 work tables) on each side of a union, including:

- Base tables or views listed in the from clause
- Each correlated reference to the same table (self-join)
- Tables referenced in subqueries
- Base tables referenced by the views or nested views
- Tables being created with into

### The **on** clause of an ANSI inner join

The **on** clause of an ANSI inner join specifies the conditions used when the tables or views are joined. Although you can join on any column of a table, your performance may be better if these columns are indexed. Often, you must use qualifiers (table or correlation names) to uniquely identify the columns and the tables to which they belong. For example:

```

from titles t left join titleauthor ta
on t.title_id = ta.title_id

```

This **on** clause eliminates rows from both tables where there is no matching **title\_id**. For more information about correlation names, see “Self-joins and correlation names” on page 134.

The **on** clause often compares the ANSI joins tables, as in the third and fourth line of the following query:

```

select title, price, pub_name
from titles inner join publishers
on titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id

```

```
and total_sales > 300
```

The join restriction specified in this `on` clause removes all rows from the join table that do not have sales greater than 300. The `on` clause can also specify search arguments, as illustrated in the fourth line of the query.

ANSI inner joins restrict the result set similarly whether the condition is placed in the `on` clause or the `where` clause (unless they are nested in an outer join). That is, the following queries produce the same result sets:

```
select stor_name, stor_address, ord_num, qty
from salesdetail inner join stores
on salesdetail.stor_id = stores.stor_id
where qty > 3000
```

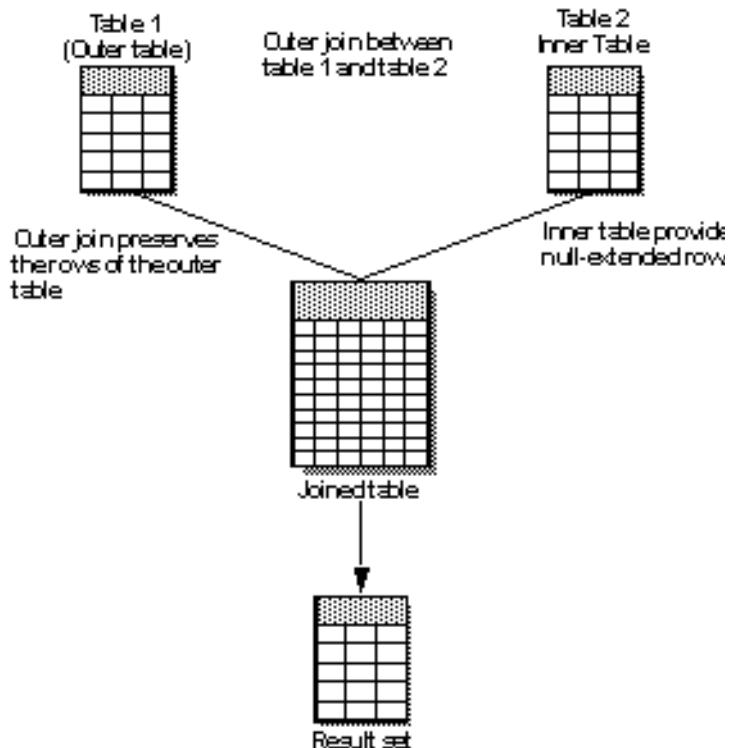
and

```
select stor_name, stor_address, ord_num, qty
from salesdetail inner join stores
on salesdetail.stor_id = stores.stor_id
and qty > 3000
```

A query is usually more readable if the restriction is placed in the `where` clause; this explicitly tells users which rows of the join table are included in the result set.

## ANSI outer joins

Joins that produce a joined table that includes all rows from the outer table, regardless of whether the `on` clause produces matching rows or not, are called **outer joins**. Inner joins and equijoins produce a result set that includes only the rows from the tables where there are matching values in the `join` clause. There are times, however, when you want to include not only the matching rows, but also the rows from one of the tables where there are no matching rows in the second table. This type of join is an outer join. In an outer join, rows that do not meet the `on` clause conditions are included in the joined table with null-supplied values for the inner table of the outer join. The inner table is also referred to as the null-supplying member. The roles of the inner and outer tables are described in Figure 4-1:

**Figure 4-1: The roles of an outer and inner table in an outer join**

Sybase recommends that applications use ANSI outer joins because they unambiguously specify whether the on or where clause contains the predicate.

This section discusses only the ANSI outer joins; for information about Transact-SQL outer joins, see “Transact-SQL outer joins” on page 160.

---

**Note** Queries that contain ANSI outer joins cannot contain Transact-SQL outer joins, and vice versa. However, a query with ANSI outer joins can reference a view that contains a Transact-SQL outer join, and vice versa.

---

ANSI outer join syntax is:

```
select select_list
      from table1 {left | right} [outer] join table2
          on predicate
          [join restriction]
```

Left joins retain all the rows of the table reference listed on the left of the join clause; right joins retain all the rows of the table reference on the right of the join clause. In left joins, the left table reference is referred to as the outer table or row-preserving table.

The following example determines the authors who live in the same city as their publishers:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
from authors left join publishers
on authors.city = publishers.city
au_fname    au_lname    pub_name
-----  -----  -----
Johnson     White      NULL
Marjorie    Green      NULL
Cheryl      Carson     Algodata Infosystems
. . .
Abraham    Bennet     Algodata Infosystems
. . .
Anne        Ringer     NULL
Albert      Ringer     NULL
( 23 rows affected)
```

The result set contains all the authors from the authors table. The authors who do not live in the same city as their publishers produce null values in the pub\_name column. Only the authors who live in the same city as their publishers, Cheryl Carson and Abraham Bennet, produce a non-null value in the pub\_name column.

You can rewrite a left outer join as a right outer join by reversing the placement of the tables in the from clause. Also, if the select statement specifies “select \*”, you must write an explicit list of all the column names, otherwise the columns in the result set may not be in the same order for the rewritten query.

Here is the previous example rewritten as a right outer join, which produces the same result set as the left outer join above:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
from publishers right join authors
on authors.city = publishers.city
```

## Should the predicate be in the `on` or `where` clause?

The result set of an ANSI outer join depends on whether you place the restriction in the `on` or the `where` clause. The `on` clause defines the result set of a joined table and which rows of this joined table have null-supplied values; the `where` clause defines which rows of the joined table are included in the result set.

Whether you use an `on` or a `where` clause in your join condition depends on what you want your result set to include. The following examples may help you decide whether to place the predicate in the `on` or the `where` clause.

### Predicate restrictions on an outer table

The following query places a restriction on the outer table in the `where` clause. Because the restriction is applied to the result of the outer join, it removes all the rows for which the condition is *not* true:

```
select title, titles.title_id, price, au_id
from titles left join titleauthor
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
where titles.price > $20.00
title          title_id  price    au_id
-----  -----  -----
But Is It User F... PC1035      22.95  238-95-7766
Computer Phobic ... PS1372      21.59  724-80-9391
Computer Phobic ... PS1372      21.59  756-30-7391
Onions, Leeks, a... TC3218      20.95  807-91-6654
(4 rows affected)
```

Four rows meet the criteria and only these are included in the result set.

However, if you move this restriction on the outer table to the `on` clause, the result set includes all the rows that meet the `on` clause condition. Rows from the outer table that do not meet the condition are null-extended:

```
select title, titles.title_id, price, au_id
from titles left join titleauthor
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and titles.price > $20.00
title          title_id  price    au_id
-----  -----  -----
The Busy Executive's  BU1032      19.99  NULL
Cooking with Compute  BU1111      11.95  NULL
You Can Combat Compu  BU2075      2.99   NULL
Straight Talk About   BU7832      19.99  NULL
Silicon Valley Gastro  MC2222      19.99  NULL
The Gourmet Microwave  MC3021      2.99   NULL
The Psychology of Com  MC3026      NULL    NULL
```

But Is It User Friend	PC1035	22.95	238-95-7766
Secrets of Silicon Va	PC8888	20.00	NULL
Net Etiquette	PC9999	NULL	NULL
Computer Phobic and	PS1372	21.59	724-80-9391
Computer Phobic and	PS1372	21.59	756-30-7391
Is Anger the Enemy?	PS2091	10.95	NULL
Life Without Fear	PS2106	7.00	NULL
Prolonged Data Depri	PS3333	19.99	NULL
Emotional Security:	PS7777	7.99	NULL
Onions, Leeks, and Ga	TC3218	20.95	807-91-6654
Fifty Years in Buckin	TC4203	11.95	NULL
Sushi, Anyone?	TC7777	14.99	NULL

(19 rows affected)

Moving the restriction to the on clause added 15 null-supplied rows to the result set.

Generally, if your query uses a restriction on an outer table, and you want the result set to remove only the rows for which the restriction is false, you should probably place the restriction in the where clause to limit the rows of the result set. Outer table predicates are not used for index keys if they are in the on clause.

Whether you place the restriction on an outer table in the on or where clause ultimately depends on the information you need the query to return. If you only want the result set to include only the rows for which the restriction is true, you should place the restriction in the where clause. However if you require the result set to include all the rows of the outer table, regardless of whether they satisfy the restriction, you should place the restriction in the on clause.

### Restrictions on an inner table

The following query includes a restriction on an inner table in the where clause:

```
select title, titles.title_id, titles.price, au_id
  from titleauthor left join titles
    on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
   where titles.price > $20.00
      title          title_id     price     au_id
      -----          -----      ----      -----
      But Is U...    PC1035      22.95    238-95-7766
      Computer Ph... PS1372      21.59    724-80-9391
      Computer Ph... PS1372      21.59    756-30-7391
      Onions, Lee... TC3218      20.95    807-91-6654
(4 rows affected)
```

Because the restriction of the where clause is applied to the result set *after* the join is made, it removes all the rows for which the restriction is *not* true. Put another way, the where clause is not true for all null-supplied values and removes them. A join that places its restriction in the where clause is effectively an inner join.

However, if you move the restriction to the on clause, it is applied during the join and is utilized in the production of the joined table. In this case, the result set includes all the rows of the inner table for which the restriction is true, plus all the rows of the outer table, which are null-extended if they do not meet the restriction criteria:

```
select title, titles.title_id, price, au_id
from titleauthor left join titles
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and price > $20.00
title      title_id    price        au_id
-----  -----  -----  -----
NULL        NULL       NULL      172-32-1176
NULL        NULL       NULL      213-46-8915
...
Onions,     TC3218    20.95      807-91-6654
...
NUL        NULL       NULL      998-72-3567
NULL        NULL       NULL      998-72-3567
(25 rows affected)
```

This result set includes 21 rows that the previous example did not include.

Generally, if your query requires a restriction on an inner table (for example “and price > \$20.00” in query above), you probably want to place the condition in the on clause; this preserves the rows of the outer table. If you include a restriction for an inner table in the where clause, the result set might not include the rows of the outer table.

Like the criteria for the placement of a restriction on an outer table, whether you place the restriction for an inner table in the on or where clause ultimately depends on the result set you want. If you are interested only in the rows for which the restriction is true, and not including the full set of rows for the outer table, place the restriction in the where clause. However, if you require the result set to include all the rows of the outer table, regardless of whether they satisfy the restriction, you should place the restriction in the on clause.

Restrictions included in both an inner and outer table

The restriction in the where clause of the following query includes both the inner and outer tables:

```
select title, titles.title_id, price, price*qty, qty
from salesdetail left join titles
on titles.title_id = salesdetail.title_id
where price*qty > $30000.00

title          title_id    price   qty
-----        -----      ----  -----
---
Silicon Valley Ga  MC2222    19.99 40,619.68 2032
But Is It User Fr PC1035    22.95 45,900.00 2000
But Is It User Fr PC1035    22.95 45,900.00 2000
But Is It User Fr PC1035    22.95 49,067.10 2138
Secrets of Silico PC8888    20.00 40,000.00 2000
Prolonged Data De PS3333    19.99 53,713.13 2687
Fifty Years in Bu TC4203    11.95 32,265.00 2700
Fifty Years in Bu TC4203    11.95 41,825.00 3500
(8 rows affected)
```

Placing the restriction in the where clause eliminates the following rows from the result set:

- The rows for which the restriction “`price*qty>$30000.0`” is false
- The rows for which the restriction “`price*qty>$30000.0`” is unknown because `price` is null

To keep the unmatched rows of the outer table, move the restriction into the `on` clause, as in this example:

```
select title, titles.title_id, price, price*qty, qty
from salesdetail left join titles
on titles.title_id = salesdetail.title_id
and price*qty > $30000.00

title          title_id    price   qty
-----        -----      ----  -----
---
NULL           NULL       NULL    NULL     75
NULL           NULL       NULL    NULL     75
...
Secrets of Silico PC8888    20.00 40,000.00 2000
...
NULL           NULL       NULL    NULL     300
NULL           NULL       NULL    NULL     400
(116 rows affected)
```

This query retains all 116 rows of the `salesdetail` table in the result set, and null-extends the rows that do not meet the restriction.

Where you place the restriction that includes both the inner and outer table depends on the result set you want. If you are interested in only the rows for which the restriction is true, place the restriction in the `where` clause. However, if you want to include all the rows of the outer table, regardless of whether they satisfy the restriction, place the restriction in the `on` clause.

## Nested ANSI outer joins

Nested outer joins use the result set of one outer join as the table reference for another. For example:

```
select t.title_id, title, ord_num, sd.stor_id, stor_name
from (salesdetail sd
left join titles t
on sd.title_id = t.title_id) /*join #1*/
left join stores
on sd.stor_id = stores.stor_id /*join #2*/
title_id    title        ord_num  stor_id  stor_name
-----  -----  -----  -----
TC3218    Onions, L...  234518   7896     Fricative Bookshop
TC7777    Sushi, An...  234518   7896     Fricative Bookshop
...
TC4203    Fifty Yea...  234518   6380     Eric the Read Books
MC3021    The Gourmet... 234518   6380     Eric the Read Books
(116 rows affected)
```

In this example, the joined table between the `salesdetail` and `titles` tables is logically produced first and is then joined with the columns of the `stores` table where `salesdetail.stor_id` equals `stores.stor_id`. Semantically, each level of nesting in a join creates a joined table and is then used for the next join.

In the query above, because the first outer join becomes an operator of the second outer join, this query is a **left-nested outer join**.

This example shows a *right nested outer join*:

```
select stor_name, qty, date, sd.ord_num
from salesdetail sd left join (stores /*join #1 */
left join sales on stores.stor_id = sales.stor_id) /*join #2 */
on stores.stor_id = sd.stor_id
where date > "1/1/1990"
stor_name    qty   date           ord_num
-----  -----  -----  -----
News & Brews  200 Jun 13 1990 12:00AM  NB-3.142
News & Brews  250 Jun 13 1990 12:00AM  NB-3.142
News & Brews  345 Jun 13 1990 12:00AM  NB-3.142
```

```
...  
Thoreau Read    1005 Mar 21 1991 12:00AM  ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0  
Thoreau Read    2500 Mar 21 1991 12:00AM  AB-123-DEF-425-1Z3  
Thoreau Read    4000 Mar 21 1991 12:00AM  AB-123-DEF-425-1Z3
```

In this example, the second join (between the stores and the sales tables) is logically produced first, and is joined with the salesdetail table. Because the second outer join is used as the table reference for the first outer join, this query is a **right-nested outer join**.

If the on clause for the first outer join (“from salesdetail . . .”) fails, it supplies null values to both the stores and sales tables in the second outer join.

### Parentheses in nested outer joins

Nested outer joins produce the same result set with or without parenthesis. Large queries with many outer joins can be much more readable for users if the joins are structured using parentheses.

### The on clause in nested outer joins

The placement of the on clause in a nested outer join determines which join is logically processed first. Reading from left to right, the first on clause is the first join to be defined.

In this example, the position of the on clause in the first join (in parentheses indicates that it is the table reference for the second join, so it is defined *first*, producing the table reference to be joined with the authors table:

```
select title, price, au_fname, au_lname  
from (titles left join titleauthor  
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id) /*join #1*/  
left join authors  
on titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id      /*join #2*/  
and titles.price > $15.00  
title          price      au_fname        au_lname  
-----  -----  -----  -----  
The Busy Exe... 19.99     Marjorie       Green  
The Busy Exe... 19.99     Abrahame       Bennet  
...  
Sushi, Anyon... 14.99     Burt           Gringlesby  
Sushi, Anyon... 14.99     Akiko          Yokomoto  
(26 rows affected)
```

However, if the `on` clauses are in different locations, the joins are evaluated in a different sequence, but still produce the same result set (this is for explanatory purposes only; if joined tables are logically produced in a different order, it is highly unlikely that they will produce the same result set):

```
select title, price, au_fname, au_lname
from titles left join
(titleauthor left join authors
on titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id)          /*join #2*/
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id        /*join #1*/
and au_lname like "Yokomoto"
```

title	price	au_fname	au_lname
The Busy Executive's	19.99	Marjorie	Green
The Busy Executive's	19.99	Abraham	Bennet
. . .			
Sushi, Anyone?	14.99	Burt	Gringlesby
Sushi, Anyone?	14.99	Akiko	Yokomoto

(26 rows affected)

The position of the `on` clause of the first join (the last line of the query) indicates that the *second* left join is a table reference of the first join, so it is performed first. That is, the result of the second left join is joined with the `titles` table.

## Converting outer joins with join-order dependency

Almost all Transact-SQL outer joins written for earlier versions of Adaptive Server that are run on a version 12.0 and later Adaptive Server produce the same result set. However, there is a category of outer join queries whose result sets depend on the join order chosen during optimization. Depending on where in the query the predicate is evaluated, these queries may produce different result sets when they are issued using the current version of Adaptive Server. The result sets they return are determined by the ANSI rules for assigning predicates to joins.

Predicates cannot be evaluated until all the tables they reference are processed. That is, in the following query the predicate “`and titles.price > 20`” cannot be evaluated until the `titles` table is processed:

```
select title, price, au_ord
  from titles, titleauthor
 where titles.title_id *= titleauthor.title_id
   and titles.price > 20
```

Predicates in earlier versions of Adaptive Server were evaluated according to the following semantics:

- If the predicate was evaluated on the inner table of an outer join, the predicate had on clause semantics.
- If the predicate was evaluated with a table that is outer to all outer joins, or is join-order independent, the predicate had where clause semantics.

---

**Note** Before you run Adaptive Server in a production environment, make sure you start it with traceflag 4413 and run any queries that you think may be join-order dependent in pre-12.0 versions of Adaptive Server. Adaptive Server started with trace flag 4413 issues a message similar to the following when you run a query that is join-order dependent in a pre-12.0 version of Adaptive Server:

Warning: The results of the statement on line %d  
are join-order independent. Results may differ on  
pre-12.0 releases, where the query is potentially  
join-order dependent.

Make sure you resolve dependencies your applications have on result sets of join-order queries produced by pre-12.0 Adaptive Server.

---

### When do join-order dependent outer joins affect me?

Generally, you will not have any problem from join-order dependent queries because predicates typically only reference:

- An outer table, which is evaluated using where clause semantics
- An inner table, which is evaluated using on clause semantics
- The inner table and tables upon which the inner table is dependent

These do not produce join-order dependent outer joins. However, Transact-SQL queries that have any of the following characteristics may produce a different result set after they are translated to an ANSI outer join:

- Predicates that contain or statements and reference an inner table of an outer join and another table that this inner table is not dependent on

- Inner table attributes that are referenced in the same predicate as a table which is not in the inner table's join-order dependency
- An inner table referenced in a subquery as a correlated reference

The following examples demonstrate the issues of translating Transact-SQL queries with join-order dependency to ANSI outer join queries.

Example:

```
select title, price, authors.au_id, au_lname
from titles, titleauthor, authors
where titles.title_id =* titleauthor.title_id
and titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id
and (titles.price is null or authors.postalcode = '94001')
```

This query is join-order independent because the outer join references both the titleauthor and the titles tables, and the authors table can be joined with these tables according to three join orders:

- authors, titleauthors, titles (as part of the on clause)
- titleauthors, authors, titles (as part of the on clause)
- titleauthors, titles, authors (as part of the where clause)

This query produces the following message:

**Warning:** The results of the statement on line 1 are join-order independent. Results may differ on pre-12.0 releases, where the query is potentially join-order dependent. Use trace flag 4413 to suppress this warning message.

Following is the ANSI equivalent:

```
select title, price, authors.au_id, au_lname
from titles right join
(titleauthor inner join authors
on titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id)
on titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
where (titles.price is null or authors.postalcode = '94001')
```

Another example:

```
select title, au_fname, au_lname, titleauthor.au_id, price
from titles, titleauthor, authors
where authors.au_id *= titleauthor.au_id
and titleauthor.au_ord*titles.price > 40
```

The query is join-order dependent for the same reason as the previous example. Here is the ANSI equivalent:

```
select title, au_fname, au_lname, titleauthor.au_id, price
```

```
from titles,(authors left join titleauthor  
on titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id)  
where titleauthor.au_ord*titles.price > 40
```

## Transact-SQL outer joins

Transact-SQL includes syntax for both left and right outer joins. The *left outer join*, \*=, selects all rows from the first table that meet the statement's restrictions. The second table generates values if there is a match on the join condition. Otherwise, the second table generates null values.

For example, the following left outer join lists all authors and finds the publishers (if any) in their city:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name  
from authors, publishers  
where authors.city *= publishers.city
```

The *right outer join*, =\*, selects all rows from the second table that meet the statement's restrictions. The first table generates values if there is a match on the join condition. Otherwise, the first table generates null values.

---

**Note** You cannot include a Transact-SQL outer join in a having clause.

---

A table is either an inner or an outer member of an outer join. If the join operator is \*=, the second table is the inner table; if the join operator is =\*, the first table is the inner table. You can compare a column from the inner table to a constant as well as using it in the outer join. For example, if you want to find out which title has sold more than 4000 copies:

```
select qty, title from salesdetail, titles  
where qty > 4000  
and titles.title_id *= salesdetail.title_id
```

However, the inner table in an outer join cannot also participate in a regular join clause.

An earlier example used a join to find the names of authors who live in the same city as a publisher returned two names: Abraham Bennet and Cheryl Carson. To include all the authors in the results, regardless of whether a publisher is located in the same city, use an outer join. Here is what the query and the results of the outer join look like:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
```

```

from authors, publishers
where authors.city *= publishers.city
au_fname      au_lname      pub_name
-----
Johnson       White        NULL
Marjorie      Green        NULL
Cheryl        Carson       Algodata Infosystems
Michael       O'Leary      NULL
Dick          Straight     NULL
Meander       Smith        NULL
Abraham       Bennet       Algodata Infosystems
Ann           Dull         NULL
Burt           Gringlesby NULL
Chastity      Locksley    NULL
Morningstar   Greene       NULL
Reginald      Blotche-Halls NULL
Akiko          Yokomoto     NULL
Innes          del Castillo NULL
Michel         DeFrance    NULL
Dirk           Stringer    NULL
Stearns       MacFeather  NULL
Livia          Karsen       NULL
Sylvia         Panteley    NULL
Sheryl         Hunter      NULL
Heather        McBadden   NULL
Anne           Ringer      NULL
Albert         Ringer      NULL

( 23 rows affected)

```

The comparison operator \*= distinguishes the outer join from an ordinary join. This “left” outer join tells Adaptive Server to include all the rows in the authors table in the results, whether or not there is a match on the city column in the publishers table. Notice that in the results, there is no matching data for most of the authors listed, so these rows contain NULL in the pub\_name column.

The “right” outer join is specified with the comparison operator =\*, which indicates that all the rows in the second table are to be included in the results, regardless of whether there is matching data in the first table.

Substituting this operator in the outer join query shown earlier gives this result:

```

select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
from authors, publishers
where authors.city =* publishers.city

```

au_fname	au_lname	pub_name
NULL	NULL	New Age Books
NULL	NULL	Binnet & Hardley
Cheryl	Carson	Algodata Infosystems
Abraham	Bennet	Algodata Infosystems

(4 rows affected)

You can further restrict an outer join by comparing it to a constant. This means that you can zoom in on precisely the values you really want to see and use the outer join to list the rows that did not make the cut. Let us look at the equijoin first and compare it to the outer join. For example, to find out which titles had a sale of more than 500 copies from any store, use this query:

```
select distinct salesdetail.stor_id, title
from titles, salesdetail
where qty > 500
and salesdetail.title_id = titles.title_id

stor_id title
-----
5023   Sushi, Anyone?
5023   Is Anger the Enemy?
5023   The Gourmet Microwave
5023   But Is It User Friendly?
5023   Secrets of Silicon Valley
5023   Straight Talk About Computers
5023   You Can Combat Computer Stress!
5023   Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats
5023   Emotional Security: A New Algorithm
5023   The Busy Executive's Database Guide
5023   Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens
5023   Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies
5023   Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance Sheets
7067   Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens

(14 rows affected)
```

Also, to show the titles that did not have a sale of more than 500 copies in any store, you can use an outer join query:

```
select distinct salesdetail.stor_id, title
from titles, salesdetail
where qty > 500
and salesdetail.title_id =* titles.title_id

stor_id title
```

```
-----  

NULL    Net Etiquette  

NULL    Life Without Fear  

5023   Sushi, Anyone?  

5023   Is Anger the Enemy?  

5023   The Gourmet Microwave  

5023   But Is It User Friendly?  

5023   Secrets of Silicon Valley  

5023   Straight Talk About Computers  

NULL    The Psychology of Computer Cooking  

5023   You Can Combat Computer Stress!  

5023   Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats  

5023   Emotional Security: A New Algorithm  

5023   The Busy Executive's Database Guide  

5023   Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens  

7067   Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens  

5023   Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies  

5023   Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance Sheets  

NULL    Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals:  

        Behavior Variations  

NULL    Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of the  

        Mediterranean
```

(19 rows affected)

You can restrict an inner table with a simple clause. The following example lists the authors who live in the same city as a publisher, but excludes the author Cheryl Carson, who would normally be listed as an author living in a publisher's city:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, pub_name
from authors, publishers
where authors.city =* publishers.city
and authors.au_lname != "Carson"

au_fname      au_lname      pub_name
-----      -----
NULL          NULL          New Age Books
NULL          NULL          Binnet & Hardley
Abraham       Bennet        Algodata Infosystems
```

(3 rows affected)

## How null values affect joins

Null values in tables or views being joined will never match each other. Since bit columns do not permit null values, a value of 0 appears in an outer join when there is no match for a bit column that is in the inner table.

The result of a join of NULL with any other value is NULL. Because null values represent unknown or inapplicable values, Transact-SQL has no reason to believe that one unknown value matches another.

You can detect the presence of null values in a column from one of the tables being joined only by using an outer join. Here are two tables, each of which has a NULL in the column that will participate in the join. A left outer join displays the null value in the first table.

**Figure 4-2: Null values in outer join**

Table t1		Table t2	
a	b	c	d
1	one	NULL	two
NULL	three	4	four
4	join4		

Here is the left outer join:

```
select *
from t1, t2
where a *= c
      a          b          c          d
-----  -----  -----  -----
      1    one      NULL      NULL
      NULL  three     NULL      NULL
      4   join4      4    four
( 3 rows affected)
```

The results make it difficult to distinguish a null in the data from a null that represents a failure to join. When null values are present in data being joined, it is usually preferable to omit them from the results by using a regular join.

## Determining which table columns to join

`sp_helpjoins` lists the columns in two tables or views that are likely join candidates. Its syntax is:

```
sp_helpjoins table1, table2
```

For example, here is how to use `sp_helpjoins` to find the likely join columns between `titleauthor` and `titles`:

```
sp_helpjoins titleauthor, titles
first_pair
-----
title_id           title_id
```

The column pairs that `sp_helpjoins` displays come from two sources. First, `sp_helpjoins` checks the `syskeys` table in the current database to see if any foreign keys have been defined on the two tables with `sp_foreignkey`, and then checks to see if any common keys have been defined on the two tables with `sp_commonkey`. If it does not find any common keys there, the procedure applies less restrictive criteria to identify any keys that may be reasonably joined. It checks for keys with the same user datatypes, and if that fails, for columns with the same name and datatype.

For complete information on the system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.



# Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries

A **subquery** is a select statement that is nested inside another select, insert, update, or delete statement, inside a conditional statement, or inside another subquery.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How subqueries work	167
Types of subqueries	176
Using correlated subqueries	194

You can also express subqueries as join operations. See Chapter 4, “Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables.”

## How subqueries work

Subqueries, also called **inner queries**, appear within a where or having clause of another SQL statement or in the select list of a statement. You can use subqueries to handle query requests that are expressed as the results of other queries. A statement that includes a subquery operates on rows from one table, based on its evaluation of the subquery’s select list, which can refer either to the same table as the outer query, or to a different table. In Transact-SQL, a subquery can also be used almost anywhere an expression is allowed, if the subquery returns a single value. A case expression can also include a subquery.

For example, this subquery lists the names of all authors whose royalty split is more than \$75:

```
select au_fname, au_lname
  from authors
 where au_id in
    (select au_id
```

```
        from titleauthor  
        where royaltyper > 75 )
```

select statements that contain one or more subqueries are sometimes called **nested queries** or **nested select statements**.

You can formulate as joins many SQL statements that include a subquery. Other questions can be posed only with subqueries. Some people find subqueries easier to understand. Other SQL users avoid subqueries whenever possible. You can choose whichever formulation you prefer.

The result of a subquery that returns no values is NULL. If a subquery returns NULL, the query failed.

## Subquery syntax

Always enclose the select statement of a subquery in parentheses. The select syntax for a subquery is somewhat restricted:

```
(select [all | distinct] subquery_select_list  
    [from [[database.]owner.{[table_name | view_name}  
        [{index indexation | prefetch size | [lru | mru]}]]]  
        [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]  
        [,[[database.]owner.{[table_name | view_name}  
            [{index indexation | prefetch size | [lru | mru]}]]]  
            [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared]]...]  
        [where search_conditions]  
        [group by aggregate_free_expression ,  
            aggregate_free_expression]...]  
        [having search_conditions])
```

## Subquery restrictions

A subquery is subject to the following restrictions:

- The *subquery\_select\_list* can consist of only one column name, except in the exists subquery, where an (\*) is usually used in place of the single column name. Do not specify more than one column name. Qualify column names with table or view names if there is ambiguity about the table or view to which they belong.

- Subqueries can be nested inside the where or having clause of an outer select, insert, update, or delete statement, inside another subquery, or in a select list. Alternatively, you can write many statements that contain subqueries as joins; Adaptive Server processes such statements as joins.
- In Transact-SQL, a subquery can appear almost anywhere an expression can be used, if it returns a single value.
- You cannot use subqueries in an order by, group by, or compute by list.
- You cannot include a for browse clause or a union in a subquery.
- The select list of an inner subquery introduced with a comparison operator can include only one expression or column name, and the subquery must return a single value. The column you name in the where clause of the outer statement must be join-compatible with the column you name in the subquery select list.
- text and image datatypes are not allowed in subqueries.
- Subqueries cannot manipulate their results internally, that is, a subquery cannot include the order by clause, the compute clause, or the into keyword.
- Correlated (repeating) subqueries are not allowed in the select clause of an updatable cursor defined by declare cursor.
- There is a limit of 16 nesting levels.
- The maximum number of subqueries on each side of a union is 16.
- The where clause of a subquery can contain an aggregate function only if the subquery is in a having clause of an outer query and the aggregate value is a column from a table in the from clause of the outer query.
- The result expression from a subquery is subject to the same limits as for any expression. The maximum length of an expression is 16K. For more information, see “Expressions, Identifiers, and Wildcard Characters” on page 219 of the *Adaptive Server Reference Manual*.

## Example of using a subquery

Suppose you want to find the books that have the same price as *Straight Talk About Computers*. First, you find the price of *Straight Talk*:

```
select price
from titles
where title = "Straight Talk About Computers"
price
-----
$19.99

(1 row affected)
```

You use the results of the first query in a second query to find all the books that cost the same as *Straight Talk*:

```
select title, price
from titles
where price = $19.99
title          price
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide    19.99
Straight Talk About Computers        19.99
Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats    19.99
Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies 19.99

(4 rows affected)
```

You can use a subquery to receive the same results in only one step:

```
select title, price
from titles
where price =
  (select price
   from titles
   where title = "Straight Talk About Computers")
title          price
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide    19.99
Straight Talk About Computers        19.99
Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats    19.99
Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies 19.99

(4 rows affected)
```

## Qualifying column names

Column names in a statement are implicitly qualified by the table referenced in the from clause at the same level. In the following example, the table name publishers implicitly qualifies the pub\_id column in the where clause of the outer query. The reference to pub\_id in the select list of the subquery is qualified by the subquery's from clause—that is, by the titles table:

```
select pub_name
  from publishers
 where pub_id in
       (select pub_id
        from titles
       where type = "business")
```

This is what the query looks like with the implicit assumptions spelled out:

```
select pub_name
  from publishers
 where publishers.pub_id in
       (select titles.pub_id
        from titles
       where type = "business")
```

It is never wrong to state the table name explicitly, and you can override implicit assumptions about table names by using explicit qualifications.

## Subqueries with correlation names

As discussed in Chapter 4, “Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables,” table correlation names are required in self-joins because the table being joined to itself appears in two different roles. You can also use correlation names in nested queries that refer to the same table in both an inner query and an outer query.

For example, you can find authors who live in the same city as Livia Karsen by using this subquery:

```
select aul.au_lname, aul.au_fname, aul.city
  from authors aul
 where aul.city in
       (select au2.city
        from authors au2
       where au2.au_fname = "Livia"
         and au2.au_lname = "Karsen")
```

au_lname	au_fname	city
Green	Marjorie	Oakland
Straight	Dick	Oakland
Stringer	Dirk	Oakland
MacFeather	Stearns	Oakland
Karsen	Livia	Oakland

(5 rows affected)

Explicit correlation names make it clear that the reference to authors in the subquery is not the same as the reference to authors in the outer query.

Without explicit correlation, the subquery is:

```
select au_lname, au_fname, city
from authors
where city in
  (select city
   from authors
   where au_fname = "Livia"
     and au_lname = "Karsen")
```

Alternatively, you can state the above query, as well as other statements in which the subquery and the outer query refer to the same table, as self-joins:

```
select aul.au_lname, aul.au_fname, aul.city
from authors aul, authors au2
where aul.city = au2.city
  and au2.au_lname = "Karsen"
  and au2.au_fname = "Livia"
```

A subquery restated as a join may not return the results in the same order; additionally, the join may require the distinct keyword to eliminate duplicates.

## Multiple levels of nesting

A subquery can include one or more subqueries. You can nest up to 16 subqueries in a statement.

For example: “Find the names of authors who have participated in writing at least one popular computing book.”

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
```

```
where au_id in
  (select au_id
   from titleauthor
   where title_id in
     (select title_id
      from titles
      where type = "popular_comp" ) )
au_lname          au_fname
-----
Carson            Cheryl
Dull              Ann
Locksley          Chastity
Hunter            Cheryl

(4 rows affected)
```

The outermost query selects all author names. The next query finds the authors' IDs, and the innermost query returns the title ID numbers PC1035, PC8888, and PC9999.

You can also express this query as a join:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and type = "popular_comp"
```

## Subqueries in *update*, *delete*, and *insert* statements

You can nest subqueries in update, delete, and insert statements as well as in select statements.

---

**Note** Running the sample queries in this section changes the pubs2 database. Ask a System Administrator to help you get a clean copy of the sample database.

---

The following query doubles the price of all books published by New Age Books. The statement updates the titles table; its subquery references the publishers table.

```
update titles
set price = price * 2
where pub_id in
```

```
(select pub_id  
      from publishers  
     where pub_name = "New Age Books")
```

An equivalent update statement using a join is:

```
update titles  
set price = price * 2  
  from titles, publishers  
 where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id  
   and pub_name = "New Age Books"
```

You can remove all records of sales of business books with this nested select statement:

```
delete salesdetail  
  where title_id in  
        (select title_id  
          from titles  
         where type = "business")
```

An equivalent delete statement using a join is:

```
delete salesdetail  
  from salesdetail, titles  
 where salesdetail.title_id = titles.title_id  
   and type = "business"
```

## Subqueries in conditional statements

You can use subqueries in conditional statements. The preceding subquery that removed all records of sales of business books can be rewritten, as shown in the next example, to check for the records *before* deleting them:

```
if exists (select title_id  
            from titles  
           where type = "business")  
begin  
    delete salesdetail  
      where title_id in  
            (select title_id  
              from titles  
             where type = "business")  
end
```

## Using subqueries instead of expressions

In Transact-SQL, you can substitute a subquery almost anywhere you can use an expression in a select, update, insert, or delete statement. For example, a subquery can compare with a column from the inner table of an outer join.

You cannot use a subquery in an order by list or as an expression in the values list in an insert statement.

The following statement shows how to find the titles and types of books that have been written by authors living in California and that are also published there:

```

select title, type
from titles
where title in
    (select title
     from titles, titleauthor, authors
     where titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
     and titleauthor.au_id = authors.au_id
     and authors.state = "CA")
and title in
    (select title
     from titles, publishers
     where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
     and publishers.state = "CA")
title          type
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide   business
Cooking with Computers:
    Surreptitious Balance Sheets   business
    Straight Talk About Computers  business
    But Is It User Friendly?      popular_comp
    Secrets of Silicon Valley     popular_comp
    Net Etiquette                  popular_comp

(6 rows affected)

```

The following statement selects the book titles that have had more than 5000 copies sold, lists their prices, and the price of the most expensive book:

```

select title, price,
       (select max(price) from titles)
     from titles
    where total_sales > 5000
title          price

```

```
-----  
You Can Combat Computer Stress!      2.99   22.95  
The Gourmet Microwave                2.99   22.95  
But Is It User Friendly?            22.95   22.95  
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace  
    Kitchens                         11.95   22.95  
  
(4 rows affected)
```

## Types of subqueries

There are two basic types of subqueries:

- **Expression subqueries** are introduced with an unmodified comparison operator, must return a single value, and can be used almost anywhere an expression is allowed in SQL.
- **Quantified predicate subqueries** operate on lists introduced with in or with a comparison operator modified by any or all. Quantified predicate subqueries return 0 or more values. This type is also used as an existence test, introduced with exists.

Subqueries of either type are either noncorrelated or correlated (repeating).

- A **noncorrelated subquery** can be evaluated as if it were an independent query. Conceptually, the results of the subquery are substituted in the main statement, or outer query. This is *not* how Adaptive Server actually processes statements with subqueries. Noncorrelated subqueries can alternatively be stated as joins and are processed as joins by Adaptive Server.
- A **correlated subquery** cannot be evaluated as an independent query, but can reference columns in a table listed in the from list of the outer query. Correlated subqueries are discussed in detail at the end of this chapter.

## Expression subqueries

Expression subqueries include:

- Subqueries in a select list (introduced with in)

- Subqueries in a where or having clause connected by a comparison operator (=, !=, >, >=, <, <=)

Expression subqueries take the general form:

[Start of select, insert, update, delete statement or subquery]

where *expression comparison\_operator (subquery)*

[End of select, insert, update, delete statement or subquery]

An expression consists of a subquery or any combination of column names, constants, and functions connected by arithmetic or bitwise operators.

The *comparison\_operator* is one of:

Operator	Meaning
=	Equal to
>	Greater than
<	Less than
>=	Greater than or equal to
<=	Less than or equal to
!=	Not equal to
<>	Not equal to
!>	Not greater than
!<	Not less than

If you use a column name in the where or having clause of the outer statement, make sure a column name in the *subquery\_select\_list* is join compatible with it.

A subquery that is introduced with an unmodified comparison operator (that is, a comparison operator that is not followed by any or all) must resolve to a single value. If such a subquery returns more than one value, Adaptive Server returns an error message.

For example, suppose that each publisher is located in only one city. To find the names of authors who live in the city where Algodata Infosystems is located, write a statement with a subquery that is introduced with the comparison operator =:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
  from authors
 where city =
    (select city
      from publishers
```

```
        where pub_name = "Algodata Infosystems")
au_lname      au_fname
-----
Carson          Cheryl
Bennet          Abraham

(2 rows affected)
```

## Using scalar aggregate functions to guarantee a single value

Subqueries that are introduced with unmodified comparison operators often include scalar aggregate functions, because these return a single value.

For example, to find the names of books that are priced higher than the current minimum price:

```
select title
from titles
where price >
    (select min(price)
     from titles)
title
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide
Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance
    Sheets
Straight Talk About Computers
Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats
But Is It User Friendly?
Secrets of Silicon Valley
Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals:
    Behavior Variations
Is Anger the Enemy?
Life Without Fear
Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies
Emotional Security: A New Algorithm
Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of the
    Mediterranean
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens
Sushi, Anyone?

(14 rows affected)
```

## group by and having in expression subqueries

Because subqueries that are introduced by unmodified comparison operators must return a single value, they cannot include group by and having clauses unless you know that the group by and having clauses will return a single value.

For example, this query finds the books that are priced higher than the lowest priced book in the trad\_cook category:

```
select title
  from titles
 where price >
  (select min(price)
    from titles
   group by type
  having type = "trad_cook")
```

## Using distinct with expression subqueries

Subqueries that are introduced with unmodified comparison operators often include the distinct keyword to ensure the return of a single value.

For example, without distinct, this subquery would fail because it would return more than one value:

```
select pub_name from publishers
  where pub_id =
  (select distinct pub_id
    from titles
   where pub_id = publishers.pub_id)
```

## Quantified predicate subqueries

Quantified predicate subqueries, which return a list of 0 and higher values, are subqueries in a where or having clause that are connected by any, all, in, or exists. The any or all subquery operators modify comparison operators.

There are three types of quantified predicate subqueries:

- any/all subqueries. Subqueries introduced with a modified comparison operator, which may include a group by or having clause, take the general form:

[Start of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

where expression comparison\_operator [any | all]

(*subquery*)

[End of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

- in/not in subqueries. Subqueries introduced with in or not in take the general form:

[Start of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

where *expression* [not] in (*subquery*)

[End of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

- exists/not exists subqueries. Subqueries introduced by exists or not exists are existence tests which take the general form:

[Start of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

where [not] exists (*subquery*)

[End of select, insert, update, delete statement; or subquery]

Though Adaptive Server allows the keyword distinct in quantified predicate subqueries, it always processes the subquery as if distinct were not included.

## Subqueries with **any** and **all**

The keywords all and any modify a comparison operator that introduces a subquery.

When any is used with <, >, or = with a subquery, it returns results when any value retrieved in the subquery matches the value in the where or having clause of the outer statement.

When all is used with < or > in a subquery, it returns results when all values retrieved in the subquery match the value in the where or having clause of the outer statement.

The syntax for any and all is:

{where | having} [not]  
                  *expression comparison\_operator {any | all} (subquery)*

Using the > comparison operator as an example:

- > all means greater than every value, or greater than the maximum value. For example, > all (1, 2, 3) means greater than 3.
- > any means greater than at least one value, or greater than the minimum value. Therefore, > any (1, 2, 3) means greater than 1.

If you introduce a subquery with all and a comparison operator does not return any values, the entire query fails.

all and any can be tricky. For example, you might ask “Which books commanded an advance greater than any book published by New Age Books?”

You can paraphrase this question to make its SQL “translation” more clear: “Which books commanded an advance greater than the largest advance paid by New Age Books?” The all keyword, *not* the any keyword, is required here:

```
select title
from titles
where advance > all
    (select advance
     from publishers, titles
     where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
       and pub_name = "New Age Books")
title
-----
The Gourmet Microwave

(1 row affected)
```

For each title, the outer query gets the titles and advances from the titles table, and it compares these to the advance amounts paid by New Age Books returned from the subquery. The outer query looks at the largest value in the list and determines whether the title being considered has commanded an even greater advance.

#### > all means greater than all values

The > all operator means that the value in the column that introduces the subquery must be greater than each of the values returned by the subquery, for a row to satisfy the condition in the outer query.

For example, to find the books that are priced higher than the highest-priced book in the mod\_cook category:

```
select title from titles where price > all
    (select price from titles
     where type = "mod_cook")
title
-----
But Is It User Friendly?
Secrets of Silicon Valley
```

```
Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals:  
    Behavior Variations  
Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of  
    the Mediterranean  
  
(4 rows affected)
```

However, if the set returned by the inner query contains a NULL, the query returns 0 rows. This is because NULL stands for “value unknown,” and it is impossible to tell whether the value you are comparing is greater than an unknown value.

For example, try to find the books that are priced higher than the highest-priced book in the `popular_comp` category:

```
select title from titles where price > all  
    (select price from titles  
        where type = "popular_comp")  
title  
-----  
  
(0 rows affected)
```

No rows were returned because the subquery found that one of the books, *Net Etiquette*, has a null price.

#### = all means equal to every value

The `= all` operator means that the value in the column that introduces the subquery must be the same as each value in the list of values returned by the subquery, for a row to satisfy the outer query.

For example, the following query finds out which authors live in the same city by looking at the postal code:

```
select au_fname, au_lname, city  
from authors  
where city = all  
    (select city  
        from authors  
        where postalcode like "946%")
```

#### > any means greater than at least one value

`> any` means that the value in the column that introduces the subquery must be greater than at least one of the values in the list returned by the subquery, for a row to satisfy the outer query.

The following example is introduced with a comparison operator modified by any. It finds each title that has an advance larger than any advance amount paid by New Age Books.

```
select title
from titles
where advance > any
    (select advance
     from titles, publishers
      where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
        and pub_name = "New Age Books")
title
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide
Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance
Sheets
You Can Combat Computer Stress!
Straight Talk About Computers
The Gourmet Microwave
But Is It User Friendly?
Secrets of Silicon Valley
Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals:
    Behavior Variations
Is Anger the Enemy?
Life Without Fear
Emotional Security: A New Algorithm
Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of
    the Mediterranean
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens
Sushi, Anyone?

(14 rows affected)
```

For each title selected by the outer query, the inner query finds a list of advance amounts paid by New Age Books. The outer query looks at all the values in the list and determines whether the title being considered has commanded an advance that is larger than any of those values. In other words, this example finds titles with advances as large as or larger than the *lowest* value paid by New Age Books.

If the subquery does not return any values, the entire query fails.

#### = any means equal to some value

The = any operator is an existence check; it is equivalent to in. For example, to find authors that live in the same city as any publisher, you can use either =any or in:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city = any
  (select city
   from publishers)
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city in
  (select city
   from publishers)
au_lname      au_fname
-----
Carson        Cheryl
Bennet        Abraham

(2 rows affected)
```

However, the `!= any` operator is different from `not in`. The `!= any` operator means “`not = a or not = b or not = c`”; `not in` means “`not = a and not = b and not = c`”.

For example, to find the authors who live in a city where no publisher is located:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city != any
  (select city
   from publishers)
```

The results include all 23 authors. This is because every author lives in *some* city where no publisher is located, and each author lives in only one city.

The inner query finds all the cities in which publishers are located, and then, for *each* city, the outer query finds the authors who do not live there.

Here is what happens when you substitute `not in` in the same query:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city not in
  (select city
   from publishers)
au_lname      au_fname
-----
White         Johnson
Green         Marjorie
O'Leary       Michael
```

Straight	Dick
Smith	Meander
Dull	Ann
Gringlesby	Burt
Locksley	Chastity
Greene	Morningstar
Blotchet-Halls	Reginald
Yokomoto	Akiko
del Castillo	Innes
DeFrance	Michel
Stringer	Dirk
MacFeather	Stearns
Karsen	Livia
Panteley	Sylvia
Hunter	Sheryl
McBadden	Heather
Ringer	Anne
Ringer	Albert

( 21 rows affected)

These are the results you want. They include all the authors except Cheryl Carson and Abraham Bennet, who live in Berkeley, where Algodata Infosystems is located.

You get the same results if you use !=all, which is equivalent to not in:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city != all
  (select city
   from publishers)
```

## Subqueries used with *in*

Subqueries that are introduced with the keyword in return a list of 0 and higher values. For example, this query finds the names of the publishers who have published business books:

```
select pub_name
from publishers
where pub_id in
  (select pub_id
   from titles
   where type = "business")
pub_name
```

```
-----  
New Age Books  
Algodata Infosystems
```

```
(2 rows affected)
```

This statement is evaluated in two steps. The inner query returns the identification numbers of the publishers who have published business books, 1389 and 0736. These values are then substituted in the outer query, which finds the names that go with the identification numbers in the publishers table. The query looks like this:

```
select pub_name  
from publishers  
where pub_id in ("1389", "0736")
```

Another way to formulate this query using a subquery is:

```
select pub_name  
from publishers  
where "business" in  
(select type  
from titles  
where pub_id = publishers.pub_id)
```

Note that the expression following the where keyword in the outer query can be a constant as well as a column name. You can use other types of expressions, such as combinations of constants and column names.

The preceding queries, like many other subqueries, can be alternatively formulated as a join query:

```
select distinct pub_name  
from publishers, titles  
where publishers.pub_id = titles.pub_id  
and type = "business"
```

Both this query and the subquery versions find publishers who have published business books. All are equally correct and produce the same results, though you may need to use the distinct keyword to eliminate duplicates.

However, one advantage of using a join query rather than a subquery for this and similar problems is that a join query shows columns from more than one table in the result. For example, to include the titles of the business books in the result, you would need to use the join version:

```
select pub_name, title  
from publishers, titles
```

```

          where publishers.pub_id = titles.pub_id
          and type = "business"
pub_name           title
-----
Algodata Infosystems The Busy Executive's Database Guide
Algodata Infosystems Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious
                         Balance Sheets
New Age Books        You Can Combat Computer Stress!
Algodata Infosystems Straight Talk About Computers

(4 rows affected)

```

Here is another example of a statement that can be formulated either with a subquery or a join query: “Find the names of all second authors who live in California and receive less than 30 percent of the royalties on a book.” Using a subquery, the statement is:

```

select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where state = "CA"
and au_id in
(select au_id
from titleauthor
where royaltyper < 30
and au_ord = 2)
au_lname           au_fname
-----
MacFeather        Stearns

(1 row affected)

```

The outer query produces a list of the 15 authors who live in California. The inner query is then evaluated, producing a list of the IDs of the authors who meet the qualifications.

More than one condition can be included in the `where` clause of both the inner and the outer query.

Using a join, the query is expressed like this:

```

select au_lname, au_fname
from authors, titleauthor
where state = "CA"
  and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
  and royaltyper < 30
  and au_ord = 2

```

A join can always be expressed as a subquery. A subquery can often be expressed as a join.

## Subqueries used with *not in*

Subqueries that are introduced with the keyword phrase *not in* also return a list of 0 and higher values. *not in* means “*not = a and not = b and not = c*”.

This query finds the names of the publishers who have *not* published business books, the inverse of the example in “Subqueries used with *in*” on page 185:

```
select pub_name from publishers
where pub_id not in
  (select pub_id
   from titles
   where type = "business")
pub_name
-----
Binnet & Hardley

(1 row affected)
```

The query is the same as the previous one except that *not in* is substituted for *in*. However, you cannot convert this statement to a join; the “*not equal*” join finds the names of publishers who have published *some* book that is not a business book. The difficulties interpreting the meaning of joins that are not based on equality are discussed in detail in Chapter 4, “Joins: Retrieving Data from Several Tables.”

## Subqueries using *not in* with NULL

A subquery using *not in* returns a set of values for each row in the outer query. If the value in the outer query is not in the set returned by the inner query, the *not in* evaluates to TRUE, and the outer query puts the record being considered in the results.

However, if the set returned by the inner query contains no matching value, but it does contain a NULL, the *not in* returns UNKNOWN. This is because NULL stands for “value unknown,” and it is impossible to tell whether the value you are looking for is in a set containing an unknown value. The outer query discards the row. For example:

```
select pub_name
      from publishers
     where $100.00 not in
           (select price
              from titles
             where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id)
pub_name
-----
New Age Books

(1 row affected)
```

New Age Books is the only publisher that does not publish any books that cost \$100. Binnet & Handley and Algodata Infosystems were not included in the query results because each publishes a book for which the price is undecided.

## Subqueries used with *exists*

Use the `exists` keyword with a subquery to test for the existence of some result from the subquery:

`{where | having} [not] exists (subquery)`

That is, the `where` clause of the outer query tests for the existence of the rows returned by the subquery. The subquery does not actually produce any data, but returns a value of TRUE or FALSE.

For example, this query finds the names of all the publishers who publish business books:

```
select pub_name
      from publishers
     where exists
           (select *
              from titles
             where pub_id = publishers.pub_id
               and type = "business")
pub_name
-----
New Age Books
Algodata Infosystems

(2 rows affected)
```

To conceptualize the resolution of this query, consider each publisher's name in turn. Does this value cause the subquery to return at least one row? In other words, does it cause the existence test to evaluate to TRUE?

In the results of the preceding query, the second publisher's name is Algodata Infosystems, which has an identification number of 1389. Are there any rows in the titles table in which pub\_id is 1389 and type is business? If so, "Algodata Infosystems" should be one of the values selected. The same process is repeated for each of the other publisher's names.

A subquery that is introduced with exists is different from other subqueries, in these ways:

- The keyword exists is not preceded by a column name, constant, or other expression.
- The subquery exists evaluates to TRUE or FALSE rather than returning any data.
- The select list of the subquery usually consists of the asterisk (\*). There is no need to specify column names, since you are simply testing for the existence or nonexistence of rows that meet the conditions specified in the subquery. Otherwise, the select list rules for a subquery introduced with exists are identical to those for a standard select list.

The exists keyword is very important, because there is often no alternative non-subquery formulation. In practice, a subquery introduced by exists is always a correlated subquery (see "Using correlated subqueries" on page 194).

Although you cannot express some queries formulated with exists in any other way, you can express all queries that use in or a comparison operator modified by any or all with exists. Some examples of statements using exists and their equivalent alternatives follow.

Here are two ways to find authors that live in the same city as a publisher:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where city = any
  (select city
   from publishers)
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where exists
  (select *
```

```
        from publishers
        where authors.city = publishers.city)
au_lname      au_fname
-----
Carson          Cheryl
Bennet          Abraham

(2 rows affected)
```

Here are two queries that find titles of books published by any publisher located in a city that begins with the letter “B”:

```
select title
from titles
where exists
    (select *
     from publishers
     where pub_id = titles.pub_id
     and city like "B%")
select title
from titles
where pub_id in
    (select pub_id
     from publishers
     where city like "B%")
title
-----
You Can Combat Computer Stress!
Is Anger the Enemy?
Life Without Fear
Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies
Emotional Security: A New Algorithm
The Busy Executive's Database Guide
Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance
Sheets
Straight Talk About Computers
But Is It User Friendly?
Secrets of Silicon Valley
Net Etiquette

(11 rows affected)
```

## Subqueries used with *not exists*

*not exists* is just like *exists* except that the where clause in which it is used is satisfied when no rows are returned by the subquery.

For example, to find the names of publishers who do *not* publish business books, the query is:

```
select pub_name
  from publishers
 where not exists
   (select *
    from titles
    where pub_id = publishers.pub_id
      and type = "business")
pub_name
-----
Binnet & Hardley

(1 row affected)
```

This query finds the titles for which there have been no sales:

```
select title
  from titles
 where not exists
   (select title_id
    from salesdetail
    where title_id = titles.title_id)
title
-----
The Psychology of Computer Cooking
Net Etiquette

(2 rows affected)
```

## Finding intersection and difference with *exists*

You can use subqueries that are introduced with *exists* and *not exists* for two set theory operations: intersection and difference. The intersection of two sets contains all elements that belong to both of the original sets. The difference contains the elements that belong only to the first set.

The intersection of authors and publishers over the city column is the set of cities in which both an author and a publisher are located:

```
select distinct city
```

```
from authors
where exists
  (select *
   from publishers
   where authors.city = publishers.city)
city
-----
Berkeley

(1 row affected)
```

The difference between authors and publishers over the city column is the set of cities where an author lives but no publisher is located, that is, all the cities except Berkeley:

```
select distinct city
from authors
where not exists
  (select *
   from publishers
   where authors.city = publishers.city)
city
-----
Gary
Covelo
Oakland
Lawrence
San Jose
Ann Arbor
Corvallis
Nashville
Palo Alto
Rockville
Vacaville
Menlo Park
Walnut Creek
San Francisco
Salt Lake City

(15 rows affected)
```

## Using correlated subqueries

You can evaluate many of the previous queries by executing the subquery once and substituting the resulting values into the where clause of the outer query; these are noncorrelated subqueries. In queries that include a repeating subquery, or **correlated subquery**, the subquery depends on the outer query for its values. The subquery is executed repeatedly, once for each row that is selected by the outer query.

This example finds the names of all authors who earn 100 percent royalty on a book:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
  from authors
 where 100 in
       (select royaltyper
        from titleauthor
        where au_id = authors.au_id)
au_lname      au_fname
-----  -----
White          Johnson
Green          Marjorie
Carson         Cheryl
Straight        Dick
Locksley       Chastity
Blotchet-Hall Reginald
del Castillo  Innes
Panteley       Sylvia
Ringer         Albert

( 9 rows affected)
```

Unlike most of the previous subqueries, the subquery in this statement cannot be resolved independently of the main query. It needs a value for `authors.au_id`, but this value is a variable—it changes as Adaptive Server examines different rows of the `authors` table.

This is how the preceding query is evaluated: Transact-SQL considers each row of the `authors` table for inclusion in the results, by substituting the value in each row in the inner query. For example, suppose Transact-SQL first examines the row for Johnson White. Then, `authors.au_id` takes the value “172-32-1176,” which Transact-SQL substitutes for the inner query:

```
select royaltyper
  from titleauthor
 where au_id = "172-32-1176"
```

The result is 100, so the outer query evaluates to:

```
select au_lname, au_fname
from authors
where 100 in (100)
```

Since the where condition is true, the row for Johnson White is included in the results. If you go through the same procedure with the row for Abraham Bennet, you can see how that row is not included in the results.

## Correlated subqueries containing Transact-SQL outer joins

Adaptive Server version 12.5 does not process correlated subqueries containing Transact-SQL outer joins in the same way that earlier versions of Adaptive Server did. The following is an example of a query using a correlated variable as the outer member of a Transact-SQL outer join:

```
select t2.b1, (select t2.b2 from t1 where t2.b1 *= t1.a1) from t2
```

Earlier versions of Adaptive Server used trace flag 298 to display error messages for these queries. Depending on whether trace flag 298 was turned on or off and whether the query used the correlated variable as an inner or outer member of an outer join, Adaptive Server displayed the behavior described in Table 5-1:

**Table 5-1: Behavior in earlier versions of Adaptive Server**

Type of query	Trace flag 298 turned off	Trace flag 298 turned on
Correlated as an inner member of an outer join	Disallowed: produces error message 11013	No error
Correlated as an outer member of an outer join	No error	Disallowed: produces error message 301

Adaptive Server reverses the behavior of trace flag 298. Because Adaptive Server version 12.5 translates Transact-SQL outer joins into ANSI outer joins during the preprocessor stage, there is the potential for different results when allowing such queries to run. Allowing correlated subqueries that contain Transact-SQL outer joins to run with the 298 trace flag turned on is consistent with Sybase's historical trace flag usage. For version 12.5, the behavior of trace flag 298 is:

**Table 5-2: Behavior in Adaptive Server version 12.5**

Type of query	Trace flag 298 turned off	Trace flag 298 turned on
Correlated as an inner member of an outer join	Disallowed: produces error message 11013	Disallowed: produces error message 11013

Type of query	Trace flag 298 turned off	Trace flag 298 turned on
Correlated as an outer member of an outer join	Disallowed: produces error message 11055	No error

Adaptive Server has changed error message 301 to error message 11055, although the text of the message remains the same.

## Correlated subqueries with correlation names

You can use a correlated subquery to find the types of books that are published by more than one publisher:

```
select distinct t1.type
  from titles t1
 where t1.type in
       (select t2.type
        from titles t2
       where t1.pub_id != t2.pub_id)
      type
-----
business
psychology

(2 rows affected)
```

Correlation names are required in the following query to distinguish between the two roles in which the titles table appears. This nested query is equivalent to the self-join query:

```
select distinct t1.type
  from titles t1, titles t2
 where t1.type = t2.type
   and t1.pub_id != t2.pub_id
```

## Correlated subqueries with comparison operators

Expression subqueries can be correlated subqueries. For example, to find the sales of psychology books where the quantity is less than average for sales of that title:

```
select s1.ord_num, s1.title_id, s1.qty
  from salesdetail s1
 where title_id like "PS%"
```

```

        and s1.qty <
        (select avg(s2.qty)
         from salesdetail s2
         where s2.title_id = s1.title_id)
ord_num          title_id    qty
-----  -----
91-A-7           PS3333     90
91-A-7           PS2106     30
55-V-7           PS2106     31
AX-532-FED-452-2Z7 PS7777    125
BA71224          PS7777    200
NB-3.142          PS2091    200
NB-3.142          PS7777    250
NB-3.142          PS3333    345
ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8 PS3333    750
91-A-7           PS7777    180
356921          PS3333    200

(11 rows affected)

```

The outer query selects the rows of the sales table (or “s1”) one by one. The subquery calculates the average quantity for each sale being considered for selection in the outer query. For each possible value of s1, Transact-SQL evaluates the subquery and puts the record being considered in the results, if the quantity is less than the calculated average.

Sometimes a correlated subquery mimics a group by statement. To find the titles of books that have prices higher than average for books of the same type, the query is:

```

select t1.type, t1.title
from titles t1
where t1.price >
      (select avg(t2.price)
       from titles t2
       where t1.type = t2.type)
type          title
-----  -----
business      The Busy Executive's Database Guide
business      Straight Talk About Computers
mod_cook      Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats
popular_comp  But Is It User Friendly?
psychology    Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic
               Individuals: Behavior Variations
psychology    Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case
               Studies
trad_cook     Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking

```

```
(7 rows affected)
```

For each possible value of t1, Transact-SQL evaluates the subquery and includes the row in the results if the price value of that row is greater than the calculated average. It is not necessary to group by type explicitly, because the rows for which the average price is calculated are restricted by the where clause in the subquery.

## Correlated subqueries in a *having* clause

Quantified predicate subqueries can be correlated subqueries.

This example of a correlated subquery in the having clause of an outer query finds the types of books in which the maximum advance is more than twice the average within a given group:

```
select t1.type
from titles t1
group by t1.type
having max(t1.advance) >= any
       (select 2 * avg(t2.advance)
        from titles t2
        where t1.type = t2.type)
type
-----
mod_cook
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

The subquery above is evaluated once for each group that is defined in the outer query, that is, once for each type of book.

# Using and Creating Datatypes

A **datatype** defines the kind of information each column in a table holds, and how that information is stored. You can use Adaptive Server system datatypes when you are defining columns, or you can create and use user-defined datatypes.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How Transact-SQL datatypes work	199
Using system-supplied datatypes	200
Converting between datatypes	211
Mixed-mode arithmetic and datatype hierarchy	212
Creating user-defined datatypes	215
Getting information about datatypes	218

## How Transact-SQL datatypes work

In Transact-SQL, datatypes specify the type of information, size, and storage format of table columns, stored procedure parameters, and local variables. For example, the int (integer) datatype stores whole numbers in the range of plus or minus  $2^{31}$ , and the tinyint (tiny integer) datatype stores whole numbers between 0 and 255 only.

Adaptive Server supplies several system datatypes, and two user-defined datatypes, timestamp and sysname. You can use sp\_addtype to build user-defined datatypes based on the system datatypes.

You must specify a system datatype or user-defined datatype when declaring a column, local variable, or parameter. The following example uses the system datatypes char, numeric, and money to define the columns in the create table statement:

```
create table sales_daily
  (stor_id char(4),
  ord_num numeric(10,0),
```

```
ord_amt money)
```

The next example uses the bit system datatype to define the local variable in the declare statement:

```
declare @switch bit
```

Subsequent chapters describe in more detail how to declare columns, local variables, and parameters using the datatypes described in this chapter. You can determine which datatypes have been defined for columns of existing tables by using sp\_help.

## Using system-supplied datatypes

Table 6-1 lists the system-supplied datatypes provided for various types of information, the synonyms recognized by Adaptive Server, and the range and storage size for each. The system datatypes are printed in lowercase characters, although Adaptive Server allows you to enter them in either uppercase or lowercase. Most Adaptive Server-supplied datatypes are not reserved words and can be used to name other objects.

**Table 6-1: Adaptive Server system datatypes**

Datatypes by category	Synonyms	Range	Bytes of storage
<i>Exact numeric: integers</i>			
tinyint		0 to 255 (Negative numbers are not permitted.)	1
smallint		$2^{15}$ -1 (32,767) to $-2^{15}$ (-32,768)	2
int	integer	$2^{31}$ -1 (2,147,483,647) to $-2^{31}$ (-2,147,483,648)	4
<i>Exact numeric: decimals</i>			
numeric (p, s)		$10^{38}$ -1 to $-10^{38}$	2 to 17
decimal (p, s)	dec	$10^{38}$ -1 to $-10^{38}$	2 to 17
<i>Approximate numeric</i>			
float (precision)		machine dependent	4 for default precision < 16, 8 for default precision $\geq$ 16
double precision		machine dependent	8
real		machine dependent	4
<i>Money</i>			
smallmoney		214,748.3647 to -214,748.3648	4

Datatypes by category	Synonyms	Range	Bytes of storage
money		922,337,203,685,477.5807 to -922,337,203,685,477.5808	8
<i>Date/time</i>			
smalldatetime		January 1, 1900 to June 6, 2079	4
datetime		January 1, 1753 to December 31, 9999	8
<i>Character</i>			
char(n)	character	pagesize	n
varchar(n)	character varying, char varying	pagesize	actual entry length
unichar	Unicode character	pagesize	$n * @@unicharsize$ (@@unicharsize equals 2)
univarchar	Unicode character varying, char varying	pagesize	actual number of characters * @@unicharsize
nchar(n)	national character, national char	pagesize	$n * @@ncharsize$
nvarchar(n)	nchar varying, national char varying, national character varying	pagesize	@@ncharsize * number of characters
text		$2^{31} - 1$ (2,147,483,647) bytes or fewer	0 when uninitialized; multiple of 2K after initialization
<i>Binary</i>			
binary(n)		pagesize	n
varbinary(n)		pagesize	actual entry length
image		$2^{31} - 1$ (2,147,483,647) bytes or fewer	0 when uninitialized; multiple of 2K after initialization
<i>Bit</i>			
bit		0 or 1	1 (one byte holds up to 8 bit columns))

## Exact numeric types: integers

Adaptive Server provides three datatypes, tinyint, smallint, and int, to store integers (whole numbers). These types are exact numeric types; they preserve their accuracy during arithmetic operations.

Choose among the integer types based on the expected size of the numbers to be stored. Internal storage size varies by datatype.

## Exact numeric types: decimal numbers

Use the exact numeric types, numeric and decimal, for numbers that include decimal points. Data stored in numeric and decimal columns is packed to conserve disk space and preserves its accuracy to the least significant digit after arithmetic operations. The numeric and decimal types are identical in all respects but one: Only numeric types with a scale of 0 can be used for the IDENTITY column.

The exact numeric types accept two optional parameters, precision and scale, enclosed within parentheses and separated by a comma:

*datatype [(precision [, scale ])]*

Adaptive Server defines each combination of **precision** and **scale** as a distinct datatype. For example, numeric(10,0) and numeric(5,0) are two separate datatypes. The precision and scale determine the range of values that can be stored in a decimal or numeric column:

- The precision specifies the maximum number of decimal digits that can be stored in the column. It includes all digits to the right or left of the decimal point. You can specify a precision of 1–38 digits or use the default precision of 18 digits.
- The scale specifies the maximum number of digits that can be stored to the right of the decimal point. The scale must be less than or equal to the precision. You can specify a scale of 0–38 digits or use the default scale of 0 digits.

Exact numeric types with a scale of 0 display without a decimal point. You cannot enter a value that exceeds either the precision or the scale for the column.

The storage size for a numeric or decimal column depends on its precision. The minimum storage requirement is 2 bytes for a 1- or 2-digit column. Storage size increases by 1 byte for each additional 2 digits of precision, to a maximum of 17 bytes.

## Approximate numeric datatypes

The numeric types float, double precision, and real store numeric data that can tolerate rounding during arithmetic operations.

Approximate numeric datatypes store, as binary fractions, slightly inaccurate representations of real numbers, stored as binary fractions.

Anytime an approximate numeric value is displayed, printed, transferred between hosts, or used in calculations, the numbers lose precision. Note that isql displays only six significant digits after the decimal point and rounds the remainder. For more information on precision and approximate numeric datatypes, see the *Reference Manual*.

Use the approximate numeric types for data that covers a wide range of values. They support all aggregate functions and all arithmetic operations except modulo (%).

The real and double precision types are built on types supplied by the operating system. The float type accepts an optional precision in parentheses. float columns with a precision of 1–15 are stored as real; those with higher precision are stored as double precision. The range and storage precision for all three types is machine dependent.

## Money datatypes

The money datatypes, money and smallmoney, store monetary data. You can use these datatypes for U.S. dollars and other decimal currencies, although Adaptive Server provides no means to convert from one currency to another. You can use all arithmetic operations except modulo, and all aggregate functions, with money and smallmoney data.

Both money and smallmoney are accurate to one ten-thousandth of a monetary unit, but round values up to two decimal places for display purposes. The default print format places a comma after every three digits.

## Date and time datatypes

Use the datetime and smalldatetime datatypes to store date and time information from January 1, 1753 through December 31, 9999. Dates outside this range must be entered, stored, and manipulated as char or varchar values.

- datetime columns hold dates between January 1, 1753 and December 31, 9999. datetime values are accurate to 1/300 second on platforms that support this level of granularity. Storage size is 8 bytes: 4 bytes for the number of days since the base date of January 1, 1900 and 4 bytes for the time of day.
- smalldatetime columns hold dates from January 1, 1900 to June 6, 2079, with accuracy to the minute. Its storage size is 4 bytes: 2 bytes for the number of days after January 1, 1900, and 2 bytes for the number of minutes after midnight.

Enclose date and time information in single or double quotes. You can enter it in either uppercase or lowercase letters and include spaces between data parts. Adaptive Server recognizes a wide variety of data entry formats, which are described in Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.” However, Adaptive Server rejects values such as 0 or 00/00/00, which are not recognized as dates.

The default display format for dates is “Apr 15 1987 10:23PM”. You can use the convert function for other styles of date display. You can also do some arithmetic calculations on datetime values with the built-in date functions, though Adaptive Server may round or truncate millisecond values.

## Character datatypes

Use the character datatypes to store strings consisting of letters, numbers, and symbols entered within single or double quotes. You can use the like keyword to search these strings for particular characters and the built-in string functions to manipulate their contents. Strings consisting of numbers can be converted to exact and approximate numeric datatypes with the convert function, and then used for arithmetic.

The char(*n*) datatype stores fixed-length strings, and the varchar(*n*) datatype stores variable-length strings, in single-byte character sets such as English. Their national character counterparts, nchar(*n*) and nvarchar(*n*), store fixed- and variable-length strings in multibyte character sets such as Japanese. The unichar and univarchar datatypes store Unicode characters, which are a constant size. You can specify the maximum number of characters with *n* or use the default column length of one character. For strings larger than the page size, use the text datatype.

**Table 6-2: Character datatypes**

Datatype	Stores
char(n)	Fixed-length data, such as social security numbers or postal codes
varchar(n)	Data, such as names, that is likely to vary greatly in length
unichar	Fixed-length Unicode data, comparable to Char
univarchar	Unicode data that is likely to vary greatly in length, comparable to varchar
nchar(n)	Fixed-length data in multibyte character sets
nvarchar(n)	Variable-length data in multibyte character sets
text	Up to 2,147,483,647 bytes of printable characters on linked lists of data pages

Adaptive Server truncates entries to the specified column length without warning or error, unless you set string\_truncation on. See the set command in the *Reference Manual* for more information. The empty string, “” or ‘’, is stored as a single space rather than as NULL. Thus, “abc” + “” + “def” is equivalent to “abc def”, not to “abcdef”.

Fixed- and variable-length columns behave somewhat differently:

- Data in fixed-length columns is blank-padded to the column length. For the char and unichar datatypes, storage size is  $n$  bytes, ( $\text{unichar} = n * @@unicharsize$ ); for the nchar datatype,  $n$  times the average national character length ( $@@ncharsize$ ). When you create a char, unichar, or nchar column that allows nulls, Adaptive Server converts it to a varchar, univarchar, or nvarchar column and uses the storage rules for those datatypes. This is not true of char and nchar variables and parameters.
- Data in variable-length columns is stripped of trailing blanks; storage size is the actual length of the data. For varchar or univarchar columns, this is the number of characters; for nvarchar columns, it is the number of characters times the average character length. Variable-length character data may require less space than fixed-length data, but it is accessed somewhat more slowly.

## Unichar datatype

The unichar and univarchar datatypes support the UTF-16 encoding of Unicode in the Adaptive Server. These datatypes are independent of the char and varchar datatypes, but mirror their behavior.

For example, the built-in functions that operate on char and varchar also operate on unichar and univarchar. However, unichar and univarchar store only UTF-16 characters and have no connection to the default character set ID or the default sortorder ID as char and varchar do.

To use the unichar and univarchar datatypes, the default character set for the server must be set to UTF-8.

Each unichar/univarchar character requires two bytes of storage. The declaration of a unichar/univarchar column is the number of 16-bit Unicode values. The following example creates a table with one unichar column for 10 Unicode values requiring 20 bytes of storage:

```
create table unitbl (unicol unichar(10))
```

The length of a unichar/univarchar column is limited by the size of a data page, just as the length of char/varchar columns.

Note that Unicode surrogate pairs use the storage of two 16-bit Unicode values (i.e., four bytes). Be aware of this when declaring columns intended to store Unicode surrogate pairs. By default, Adaptive Server Enterprise correctly handles surrogates, taking care not to split the pair. Truncation of Unicode data is handled in a manner similar to that of char and varchar data.

Unichar expressions can be used anywhere char expressions are used, including comparison operators, joins, subqueries, etc. Note however, that mixed-mode expressions of both unichar and char are performed as unichar. The number of Unicode values that can participate in such operations is limited to the maximum size of a unichar string.

The *normalization* process modifies Unicode data so there is only a single representation in the database for a given sequence of abstract characters. Often, characters followed by combined diacritics are replaced by pre-combined forms. This allows significant performance optimizations. By default, the server assumes all Unicode data should be normalized.

## Relational expressions

All relational expressions involving at least one expression of unichar or univarchar, will be based on the default Unicode sort order. If one expression is unichar and the other is varchar (nvarchar, char, or nchar), the latter will be implicitly converted to unichar.

The following expressions are most often used in where clauses, where it may be combined with logical operators.

When comparing Unicode character data “less than” means closer to the beginning of the default Unicode default sort order, and “greater than” means closer to the end. “Equality” means the Unicode default sort order makes no distinction between two values (although they need not be identical). For example, the precomposed character ê must be considered equal to the combining sequence consisting of the letter e followed by U+0302. If the Unicode normalization feature is turned on (the default), the Unicode data is automatically normalized and the server never sees unnormalized data.

**Table 6-3: Relational expressions**

<code>expr1 op_compare [any   all] (subquery)</code>	The use of any or all with comparison operators and expr2 being a subquery, implicitly invokes min or max. For instance “expr1> any expr2” means, in effect, “expr1> min(expr2)”.
<code>expr1 [not] in (expression list)</code> <code>expr1 [not] in (subquery)</code>	The in operator checks for equality with each of the elements in expr2, which can be a list of constants, or the results of a subquery.
<code>expr1 [not] between expr2 and expr3</code>	The between operator specifies a range. It is, in effect, shorthand for “expr1 = expr2 and expr1<= expr3”.
<code>expr1 [not] like “match_string” [escape “esc_char”]</code>	The like operator specifies a pattern to be matched. The semantics for pattern matching with Unicode data are the same for regular character data. If expr1 is a unichar column name, then “match_string” may be either a unichar string or a varchar string. In the latter case, an implicit conversion will take place between varchar and unichar

## Join operators

Join operators appear in the same manner as comparison operators. In fact, any comparison operator can be used in a join. Expressions involving at least one expression of type unichar will be based on the default Unicode sort order. If one expression is of type unichar and the other type varchar (nvarchar, char, or nchar), the latter will be implicitly converted to unichar.

## Union operators

The union operator will operate with unichar data much like it does with varchar data. Corresponding columns from individual queries must be implicitly convertible to unichar, or explicit conversion must be used.

## Clauses and modifiers

When unichar and univarchar columns are used in group by and order by clauses, equality is judged according to the default Unicode sort order. This is also true when using the distinct modifier.

## **text datatype**

The text datatype stores up to 2,147,483,647 bytes of printable characters on linked lists of separate data pages. Each page stores a maximum of 1800 bytes of data.

To save storage space, define text columns as NULL. When you initialize a text column with a non-null insert or update, Adaptive Server assigns a text pointer and allocates an entire 2K data page to hold the value.

You cannot use the text datatype:

- For parameters to stored procedures, as values passed to these parameters, or for local variables
- For parameters to remote procedure calls (RPCs)
- In order by, compute, group by, or union clauses
- In an index
- In subqueries or joins
- In a where clause, except with the keyword like
- With the + concatenation operator
- In the if update clause of a trigger

If you are using databases connected with Component Integration Services, there are several differences in the way text datatypes are handled. See the *Component Integration Services User's Guide* for more information.

For more information about the text datatype, see “Changing text and image data” on page 332.

## Binary datatypes

The binary datatypes store raw binary data, such as pictures, in a hexadecimal-like notation. Binary data begins with the characters “0x” and includes any combination of digits and the uppercase and lowercase letters A–F. The two digits following “0x” in binary and varbinary data indicate the type of number: “00” represents a positive number and “01” represents a negative number.

If the input value does not include the “0x”, Adaptive Server assumes that the value is an ASCII value and converts it.

---

**Note** Adaptive Server manipulates the binary types in a platform-specific manner. For true hexadecimal data, use the hexToInt and intToHex functions. See Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries.”

---

Use the binary(n) and varbinary(n) datatypes to store data up to 255 bytes in length. Each byte of storage holds 2 binary digits. Specify the column length with *n*, or use the default length of 1 byte. If you enter a value longer than *n*, Adaptive Server truncates the entry to the specified length without warning or error.

- Use the fixed-length binary type, binary(n), for data in which all entries are expected to have a similar length. Because entries in binary columns are zero-padded to the column length, they may require more storage space than those in varbinary columns, but they are accessed somewhat faster.
- Use the variable-length binary type, varbinary(n), for data that is expected to vary greatly in length. Storage size is the actual size of the data values entered, not the column length. Trailing zeros are truncated.

When you create a binary column that allows nulls, Adaptive Server converts it to a varbinary column and uses the storage rules for that datatype.

You can search binary strings with the like keyword and operate on them with the built-in string functions. Because the exact form in which you enter a particular value depends upon the hardware you are using, *calculations involving binary data may produce different results on different platforms.*

## **image datatype**

Use the **image** datatype to store larger blocks of binary data on external data pages. An **image** column can store up to 2,147,483,647 bytes of data on linked lists of data pages separate from other data storage for the table.

When you initialize an **image** column with a non-null insert or update, Adaptive Server assigns a text pointer and allocates an entire 2K data page to hold the value. Each page stores a maximum of 1800 bytes.

To save storage space, define **image** columns as **NULL**. To add **image** data without saving large blocks of binary data in your transaction log, use **writetext**. See the *Reference Manual* for details on **writetext**.

You cannot use the **image** datatype:

- For parameters to stored procedures, as values passed to these parameters, or for local variables
- For parameters to remote procedure calls (RPCs)
- In **order by**, **compute**, **group by**, or **union** clauses
- In an index
- In subqueries or joins
- In a **where** clause, except with the keyword **like**
- With the **+** concatenation operator
- In the **if update** clause of a trigger

If you are using databases connected with Component Integration Services, there are several differences in the way **image** datatypes are handled. See the *Component Integration Services User's Guide* for more information.

For more information about the **image** datatype, see “**Changing text and image data**” on page 332.

## **The *bit* datatype**

Use **bit** columns for true and false or yes and no types of data. **bit** columns hold either 0 or 1. Integer values other than 0 or 1 are accepted, but are always interpreted as 1. Storage size is 1 byte. Multiple **bit** datatypes in a table are collected into bytes. For example, 7-bit columns fit into 1 byte; 9-bit columns take 2 bytes.

Columns of datatype bit cannot be NULL and cannot have indexes on them. The status column in the syscolumns system table indicates the unique offset position for bit columns.

## The *timestamp* datatype

The timestamp user-defined datatype is necessary for columns in tables that are to be browsed in Open Client™ DB-Library applications.

Every time a row containing a timestamp column is inserted or updated, the timestamp column is automatically updated. A table can have only one column of the timestamp datatype. A column named timestamp automatically has the system datatype timestamp. Its definition is:

```
varbinary(8) "NULL"
```

Because timestamp is a user-defined datatype, you cannot use it to define other user-defined datatypes. You must enter it as “timestamp” in all lowercase letters.

## The *sysname* datatype

sysname is a user-defined datatype that is used in the system tables. Its definition is:

```
varchar(30) "NULL"
```

You cannot use the sysname datatype to create a column. You can, however, create a user-defined datatype with a base type of sysname. You can then use this **user-defined datatype** to create columns. For more information about user-defined datatypes, see “Creating user-defined datatypes” on page 215.

## Converting between datatypes

Adaptive Server automatically handles many conversions from one datatype to another. These are called implicit conversions. You can explicitly request other conversions with the convert, inttohex, and hexToInt functions. Other conversions cannot be done, either explicitly or automatically, because of incompatibilities between the datatypes.

For example, Adaptive Server automatically converts char expressions to datetime for the purposes of a comparison, if they can be interpreted as datetime values. However, for the purposes of display, you must use the convert function to convert char to int. Similarly, you must use convert on integer data if you want Adaptive Server to treat it as character data so that you can use the like keyword with it.

The syntax for the convert function is:

```
convert (datatype, expression, [style])
```

In the following example, convert displays the total\_sales column using the char datatype, in order to display all sales beginning with the digit 2:

```
select title, total_sales
from titles
where convert (char(20), total_sales) like "2%"
```

The optional style parameter is used to convert datetime values to char or varchar datatypes to get a wide variety of date display formats.

See Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries” for details on the convert, inttohex, and hexoint functions.

## Mixed-mode arithmetic and datatype hierarchy

When you perform arithmetic on values with different datatypes, Adaptive Server must determine the datatype and, in some cases, the length and precision, of the result.

Each system datatype has a **datatype hierarchy**, which is stored in the systypes system table. User-defined datatypes inherit the hierarchy of the system type on which they are based.

The following query ranks the datatypes in a database by hierarchy. In addition to the information shown below, your query results will include information about any user-defined datatypes in the database:

```
select name, hierarchy
from systypes
order by hierarchy
name          hierarchy
-----
floatn          1
float           2
```

datetimn	3
datetime	4
real	5
numericon	6
numeric	7
decimaln	8
decimal	9
moneyn	10
money	11
smallmoney	12
smalldatetime	13
intn	14
int	15
smallint	16
tinyint	17
bit	18
univarchar	19
unichar	20
reserved	21
varchar	22
sysname	22
nvarchar	22
char	23
nchar	23
varbinary	24
timestamp	24
binary	25
text	26
image	27

( 30 rows affected )

The datatype hierarchy determines the results of computations using values of different datatypes. The result value is assigned the datatype that is closest to the top of the list.

In the following example, qty from the sales table is multiplied by royalty from the roysched table. qty is a smallint, which has a hierarchy of 16; royalty is an int, which has a hierarchy of 15. Therefore, the datatype of the result is an int.

`smallint(qty) * int(royalty) = int`

## Working with *money* datatypes

If you are combining money and literals or variables, and you need results of money type, use money literals or variables:

```
create table mytable  
(moneycol money,)  
insert into mytable values ($10.00)  
select moneycol * $2.5 from mytable
```

If you are combining money with a float or numeric datatype from column values, use the convert function:

```
select convert (money, moneycol * percentcol)  
      from debits, interest  
drop table mytable
```

## Determining precision and scale

For the numeric and decimal types, each combination of precision and scale is a distinct Adaptive Server datatype. If you perform arithmetic on two numeric or decimal values, n1 with precision p1 and scale s1, and n2 with precision p2 and scale s2, Adaptive Server determines the precision and scale of the results as shown in Table 6-4:

**Table 6-4: Precision and scale after arithmetic operations**

Operation	Precision	Scale
n1 + n2	max(s1, s2) + max(p1 -s1, p2 - s2) + 1	max(s1, s2)
n1 - n2	max(s1, s2) + max(p1 -s1, p2 - s2) + 1	max(s1, s2)
n1 * n2	s1 + s2 + (p1 - s1) + (p2 - s2) + 1	s1 + s2
n1 / n2	max(s1 + p2 + 1, 6) + p1 - s1 + p2	max(s1 + p2 -s2 + 1, 6)

## Creating user-defined datatypes

A Transact-SQL enhancement to SQL allows you to name and design your own datatypes to supplement the system datatypes. A user-defined datatype is defined in terms of system datatypes. You can give one name to a frequently used datatype definition. This makes it easy for you to custom fit datatypes to columns.

---

**Note** To use a user-defined datatype in more than one database, create it in the model database. The user-defined datatype definition then becomes known to all new databases you create.

---

Once you define a datatype, it can be used as the datatype for any column in the database. For example, tid is used as the datatype for columns in several pubs2 tables: titles.title\_id, titleauthor.title\_id, sales.title\_id, and roysched.title\_id.

The advantage of user-defined datatypes is that you can bind rules and defaults to them for use in several tables. For more about this topic, see Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

Use sp\_addtype to create user datatypes. It takes as parameters the name of the user datatype being created, the Adaptive Server-supplied datatype from which it is being built, and an optional NULL, NOT NULL, or IDENTITY specification.

You can build a user-defined datatype using any system datatype other than timestamp. User-defined datatypes have the same datatype hierarchy as the system datatypes on which they are based. Unlike Adaptive Server-supplied datatypes, user-defined datatype names are case-sensitive.

Here is the syntax for sp\_addtype:

```
sp_addtype datatype_name,  
          phystype [ (length) | (precision [, scale] ) ]  
          [, "identity" | nulltype]
```

Here is how tid was defined:

```
sp_addtype tid, "char(6)", "not null"
```

You must enclose a parameter within single or double quotes if it includes a blank or some form of punctuation, or if it is a keyword other than null (for example, identity or sp\_helpgroup). In this example, quotes are required around char(6) because of the parentheses, but around “not null” because of the blank. They are not required around tid.

## Specifying length, precision, and scale

When you build a user-defined datatype based upon certain Adaptive Server datatypes, you must specify additional parameters:

- The char, nchar, varchar, nvarchar, binary, and varbinary datatypes expect a length in parentheses. If you do not supply one, Adaptive Server assumes the default length of 1 character.
- The float datatype expects a precision in parentheses. If you do not supply one, Adaptive Server uses the default precision for your platform.
- The numeric and decimal datatypes expect a precision and scale, in parentheses and separated by a comma. If you do not supply them, Adaptive Server uses a default precision of 18 and scale of 0.

You cannot change the length, precision, or scale specification when you include the user-defined datatype in a create table statement.

## Specifying null type

The null type determines how the user-defined datatype treats nulls. You can create a user-defined datatype with a null type of “null”, “NULL”, “nonull”, “NONULL”, “not null”, or “NOT NULL”. bit and IDENTITY types do not allow null values.

If you omit the null type, Adaptive Server uses the null mode defined for the database (by default, NOT NULL). For compatibility with the SQL standards, use sp\_dboption to set the allow nulls by default option to true.

You can override the null type when you include the user-defined datatype in a create table statement.

## Associating rules and defaults with user-defined datatypes

Once you have created a user-defined datatype, use sp\_bindrule and sp\_bindefault to associate rules and defaults with the datatype. Use sp\_help to print a report that lists the rules, defaults, and other information associated with the datatype.

Rules and defaults are discussed in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.” For complete information on, and syntax for, system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Creating a user-defined datatype with the IDENTITY property

To create a user-defined datatype with the IDENTITY property, use `sp_addtype`. The new type must be based on a physical type of numeric with a scale of 0:

```
sp_addtype typename, "numeric (precision, 0)",  
"identity"
```

The following example creates a user-defined type, `IdentType`, with the IDENTITY property:

```
sp_addtype IdentType, "numeric(4,0)", "identity"
```

When you create a column from an IDENTITY type, you can specify either identity or not null—or neither one—in the `create` or `alter table` statement. The column automatically inherits the IDENTITY property.

Here are three different ways to create an IDENTITY column from the `IdentType` user-defined type:

```
create table new_table (id_col IdentType)  
drop table new_table  
create table new_table (id_col IdentType identity)  
drop table new_table  
create table new_table (id_col IdentType not null)  
drop table new_table
```

---

**Note** If you try to create a column that allows nulls from an IDENTITY type, the `create table` or `alter table` statement fails.

---

## Creating IDENTITY columns from other user-defined datatypes

You can create IDENTITY columns from user-defined datatypes that do not have the IDENTITY property. The user-defined types must have a physical datatype of numeric with a scale of 0 and must be defined as not null.

## Dropping a user-defined datatype

To drop a user-defined datatype, execute `sp_droptype`:

```
sp_droptype typename
```

---

**Note** You cannot drop a datatype that is already in use in any table.

---

## Getting information about datatypes

Use `sp_help` to display information about the properties of a system datatype or a user-defined datatype. The report indicates the base type from which the datatype was created, whether it allows nulls, the names of any rules and defaults bound to the datatype, and whether it has the `IDENTITY` property.

The following examples display the information about the `money` system datatype and the `tid` user-defined datatype:

```
sp_help money
Type_name Storage_type Length Prec Scale
----- -----
money      money          8 NULL  NULL
Nulls      Default_name   Rule_name  Identity
----- -----
           1    NULL          NULL       NULL

(return status = 0)
sp_help tid
Type_name Storage_type Length Prec Scale
----- -----
tid        varchar         6 NULL  NULL
Nulls      Default_name   Rule_name  Identity
----- -----
           0    NULL          NULL       0

(return status = 0)
```

# Creating Databases and Tables

This chapter describes how to create databases and tables.

This chapter includes these sections:

Topic	Page
What are databases and tables?	219
Using and creating databases	222
Altering the sizes of databases	227
Dropping databases	228
Creating tables	228
Managing identity gaps in tables	243
Defining integrity constraints for tables	251
How to design and create a table	262
Creating new tables from query results: select into	266
Altering existing tables	272
Dropping tables	292
Assigning permissions to users	293
Getting information about databases and tables	294

For information on managing databases, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## What are databases and tables?

A database stores information (data) in a set of database objects, such as tables, that relate to each other. A table is a collection of rows that have associated columns containing individual data items. You define how your data is organized when you create your databases and tables. This process is called *data definition*.

Adaptive Server database objects include:

- Tables

- Rules
- Defaults
- Stored procedures
- Triggers
- Views
- Referential integrity constraints
- Check integrity constraints

This chapter covers the creation, modification, and deletion of databases and tables, including integrity constraints.

Columns and **datatypes** define the type of data included in tables and are discussed in this chapter. Indexes describe how data is organized in tables. They are not considered database objects by Adaptive Server and are not listed in sysobjects. Indexes are discussed in Chapter 11, “Creating Indexes on Tables.”

## Enforcing data integrity in databases

**Data integrity** refers to the correctness and completeness of data within a database. To enforce data integrity, you can constrain or restrict the data values that users can insert, delete, or update in the database. For example, the integrity of data in the pubs2 and pubs3 databases requires that a book title in the titles table must have a publisher in the publishers table. You cannot insert books that do not have a valid publisher into titles, because it violates the data integrity of pubs2 or pubs3.

Transact-SQL provides several mechanisms for integrity enforcement in a database such as rules, defaults, indexes, and triggers. These mechanisms allow you to maintain these types of data integrity:

- *Requirement* – requires that a table column must contain a valid value in every row; it cannot allow null values. The create table statement allows you to restrict null values for a column.
- *Check or Validity* – limits or restricts the data values inserted into a table column. You can use triggers or rules to enforce this type of integrity.

- *Uniqueness* – no two table rows can have the same non-null values for one or more table columns. You can use indexes to enforce this integrity.
- *Referential* – data inserted into a table column must already have matching data in another table column or another column in the same table. A single table can have up to 192 references.

Consistency of data values in the database is another example of data integrity, which is described in Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

As an alternative to using rules, defaults, indexes, and triggers, Transact-SQL provides a series of **integrity constraints** as part of the create table statement to enforce data integrity as defined by the SQL standards. These integrity constraints are described later in this chapter.

## Permissions within databases

Whether or not you can create and drop databases and database objects depends on your permissions or privileges. Ordinarily, a System Administrator or Database Owner sets up the permissions for you, based on the kind of work you do and the functions you need. These permissions can be different for each user in a given installation or database.

You can determine what your permissions are by executing:

```
sp_helpprotect user_name
```

*user\_name* is your Adaptive Server login name.

To make your experiments with database objects as convenient as possible, the pubs2 and pubs3 databases have a “**guest**” user name in their sysusers system tables. The scripts that create pubs2 and pubs3 grant a variety of permissions to “guest”.

The “guest” mechanism means that anyone who has a **login** on Adaptive Server, that is, anyone who is listed in master..syslogins, has access to pubs2 and pub3, and permission to create and drop such objects as tables, indexes, defaults, rules, procedures, and so on. The “guest” user name also allows you to use certain stored procedures, create user-defined datatypes, query the database, and modify the data in it.

To use the pubs2 or pubs3 database, issue the use command. Adaptive Server checks whether you are listed under your own name in pubs2..sysusers or pubs3..sysusers. If not, you are admitted as a guest without any action on your part. If you are listed in the sysusers table for pubs2 or pubs3, Adaptive Server admits you as yourself, but may give you different permissions from those of “guest.”

---

**Note** All the examples in this chapter assume you are being treated as “guest.”

---

Most users can look at the system tables in the master database by means of the “guest” mechanism previously described. Users who are not recognized by name in the master database are allowed in and treated as a user named “guest.” The “guest” user is added to the master database in the script that creates the master database when it is installed.

A Database Owner, “dbo”, can add a “guest” user to any user database using sp\_adduser. System Administrators automatically become the Database Owner in any database they use. For more information, see the *System Administration Guide* and the *Reference Manual*.

## Using and creating databases

A database is a collection of related tables and other database objects—views, indexes, and so on.

When you install Adaptive Server, it contains these **system databases**:

- The master database controls the user databases and the operation of Adaptive Server as a whole.
- The sybsystemprocs database contains the system stored procedures.
- The sybsystemdb database contains information about distributed transactions.
- The temporary database, tempdb, stores temporary objects, including temporary tables created with the name prefix “tempdb..”.
- The model database is used by Adaptive Server as a template for creating new user databases.

In addition, System Administrators can install these optional databases:

- pubs2 – a sample database that contains data representing a publishing operation. You can use this database to test your server connections and learn Transact-SQL. Most of the examples in the Adaptive Server documentation query the pubs2 database.
- pubs3 – a version of pubs2 that uses referential integrity examples. pubs3 has a table, `store_employees`, that uses a self-referencing column. pubs3 also includes an IDENTITY column in the `sales` table. Additionally, the primary keys in its master tables use nonclustered unique indexes, and the `titles` table has an example of the numeric datatype.
- interpubs – similar to pubs2, but contains French and German data.
- jpubs – similar to pubs2, but contains Japanese data. Use it if you have installed the Japanese Language Module.

These optional databases are user databases. All of your data is stored in user databases. Adaptive Server manages each database by means of system tables. The **data dictionary** tables in the master database and in other databases are considered system tables.

## Choosing a database: `use`

The `use` command lets you access an existing database. Its syntax is:

```
use database_name
```

For example, to access the `pubs2` database, type:

```
use pubs2
```

This command allows you to access the `pubs2` database only if you are a known user in `pubs2`. Otherwise, you see an error message.

It is likely that you will be automatically connected to the master database when you log in to Adaptive Server, so if you want to use another database, issue the `use` command. You or a System Administrator can change the database to which you initially connect by using `sp_modifylogin`. Only a System Administrator can change the default database for another user.

## Creating a user database: *create database*

You can create a new database if a System Administrator has granted you permission to use *create database*. You must be using the *master* database when you create a new database. In many enterprises, a System Administrator creates all databases. The creator of a database is its owner. Another user who creates a database for you can transfer ownership of it using *sp\_changedbowner*.

The Database Owner is responsible for giving users access to the database and for granting and revoking certain other permissions to users. In some organizations, the Database Owner is also responsible for maintaining regular backups of the database and for reloading it in case of system failure. The Database Owner can temporarily attain any other user's permissions on a database by using the *setuser* command.

Because each database is allocated a significant amount of space, even if it contains only small amounts of data, you may not have permission to use *create database*.

The simplest form of *create database* is:

```
create database database_name
```

To create a new database called *newpubs* database, first verify you are using the *master* database rather than *pubs2*, and then type this command:

```
use master
create database newpubs
drop database newpubs
use pubs2
```

A database name must be unique on Adaptive Server, and must follow the rules for identifiers described under "Identifiers" on page 7. Adaptive Server can manage up to 32,767 databases. You can create only one database at a time. The maximum number of segments for any database is 32.

Adaptive Server creates a new database as a copy of the *model* database, which contains the system tables that belong in every user database.

The creation of a new database is recorded in the *master* database tables *sysdatabases* and *sysusages*.

The full syntax of *create database* is:

```
create database database_name
[on {default | database_device} [= size]
[, database_device [= size]]...]
```

```
[log on database_device [= size]
 [, database_device [= size]...]
 [with override]
 [for load]
```

This chapter describes all the create database options except with override. For information about with override, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## The on clause

The optional on clause allows you to specify where to store the database and how much space in megabytes to allocate for it. If you use the keyword default, the database is assigned to an available database device in the pool of default database devices indicated in the master database table sysdevices. Use sp\_helpdevice to see which devices are in the default list.

---

**Note** A System Administrator may have made certain storage allocations based on performance statistics and other considerations. Before creating databases, you should check with a System Administrator.

---

To specify a size of 5MB for a database to be stored in this default location, use on default = *size*:

```
use master
create database newpubs
on default = 5
drop database newpubs
use pubs2
```

To specify a different location for the database, give the logical name of the database device where you want it stored. A database can be stored on more than one database device, with different amounts of space on each.

This example creates the newpubs database and allocates 3MB to it on publdata and 2MB on newdata:

```
create database newpubs
on publdata = 3, newdata = 2
```

If you omit the on clause and the size, the database is created with 2MB of space from the pool of default database devices indicated in sysdevices.

A database allocation can range in size from 2MB to  $2^{23}$ MB.

## The **log on** clause

Unless you are creating very small, noncritical databases, always use the log on database\_device extension to create database. This places the transaction logs on a separate database device. There are several reasons for placing the logs on a separate device:

- It allows you to use dump transaction rather than dump database, thus saving time and tapes.
- It allows you to establish a fixed size for the log, keeping it from competing with other database activity for space.

Additional reasons for placing the log on a separate *physical* device from the data tables are:

- It improves performance.
- It ensures full recovery in the event of hard disk failures.

The following command places the log for newpubs on the logical device pubslog, with a size of 1MB:

```
create database newpubs
on publdata = 3, newdata = 2
log on pubslog = 1
```

---

**Note** When you use the log on extension, you are placing the database transaction log on a segment named “logsegment”. To add more space for an existing log, use alter database and, in some cases, sp\_extendsegment. See the *Reference Manual* or the *System Administration Guide* for details.

---

The size of the device required for the transaction log varies according to the amount of update activity and the frequency of transaction log dumps. As a rule of thumb, allocate to the log between 10 and 25 percent of the space you allocate to the database.

## The **for load** option

The optional for load clause invokes a streamlined version of create database that you can use only for loading a database dump. Use the for load option for recovery from media failure or for moving a database from one machine to another. See the *System Administration Guide* for more information.

## Altering the sizes of databases

If a database has filled its allocated storage space, you cannot add new data or updates to it. Existing data, of course, is always preserved. If the space allocated for a database proves to be too small, the Database Owner can increase it with the `alter database` command. `alter database` permission defaults to the Database Owner, and cannot be transferred. You must be using the master database to use `alter database`.

The default increase is 2MB from the default pool of space. This statement adds 2MB to newpubs on the default database device:

```
alter database newpubs
```

The full `alter database` syntax allows you to extend a database by a specified number of megabytes (minimum 1MB) and to specify where the storage space is to be added:

```
alter database database_name
  [on {default | database_device} [= size]
   [, database_device [= size]...]
  [log on {default | database_device} [= size]
   [, database_device [= size]...]
  [with override]
  [for load]
```

The `on` clause in the `alter database` command is just like the `on` clause in `create database`. The `for load` clause is just like the `for load` clause in `create database` and can be used only on a database created with the `for load` clause.

To increase the space allocated for newpubs by 2MB on the database device `pubsdata`, and by 3MB on the database device `newdata`, type:

```
alter database newpubs
  on pubsdata = 2, newdata = 3
```

When you use `alter database` to allocate more space on a device already in use by the database, all of the segments already on that device use the added space fragment. All the objects already mapped to the existing segments can now grow into the added space. The maximum number of segments for any database is 32.

When you use `ALTER DATABASE` to allocate space on a device that is not yet in use by a database, the system and default segments are mapped to the new device. To change this segment mapping, use `sp_dropsegment` to drop the unwanted segments from the device.

---

**Note** Using `sp_extendsegment` automatically unmaps the system and default segments.

---

For information about `WITH OVERRIDE`, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Dropping databases

Use the `DROP DATABASE` command to remove a database. `DROP DATABASE` deletes the database and all of its contents from Adaptive Server, frees the storage space that had been allocated for it, and deletes references to it from the master database.

The syntax is:

```
drop database database_name [, database_name]...
```

You cannot drop a database that is in use, that is, open for reading or writing by any user.

As indicated, you can drop more than one database in a single command. For example:

```
drop database newpubs, newdb
```

You cannot remove damaged database with `DROP DATABASE`. Use `DBCC DBREPAIR` instead.

## Creating tables

When you create a table, you name its columns and supply a datatype for each column. You can also specify whether a particular column can hold null values or specify integrity constraints for columns in the table. There can be as many as 2,000,000,000 tables per database.

## Maximum number of columns per table

The maximum number of columns in a table depends on many factors, including, among others, your server's logical page size and whether the tables are configured for allpages- or data only-locking. For a complete description of the maximum number of columns per table, see the `create table` command in the *Reference Manual*.

## Example of creating a table

Use the newpubs database you created in the previous section if you want to try these examples. Otherwise, these changes will affect another database, like pubs2 or pubs3.

The simplest form of `|create|table|` is:

```
create table table_name  
(column_name datatype)
```

For example, to create a table named `names` with one column named `some_name`, and a fixed length of 11 bytes, enter:

```
create table names  
(some_name char(11))  
drop table names
```

If you have set `quoted_identifier` on, both the table name and the column names can be delimited identifiers. Otherwise, they must follow the rules for identifiers described under “Identifiers” on page 7. Column names must be unique within a table, but you can use the same column name in different tables in the same database.

There must be a datatype for each column. The word “char” after the column name in the example above refers to the datatype of the column—the type of value that column will contain. Datatypes are discussed in Chapter 6, “Using and Creating Datatypes.”

The number in parentheses after the datatype gives the maximum number of bytes that can be stored in the column. You give a maximum length for some datatypes. Others have a system-defined length.

Be sure to put parentheses around the list of column names, and commas after each column definition. The last column definition does not need a comma after it.

---

**Note** A variable cannot be used in a default if the default is part of a create table statement.

---

## Choosing table names

The create table command builds the new table in the currently open database. Table names must be unique for each user.

You can create temporary tables either by preceding the table name in a create table statement with a pound sign (#) or by specifying the name prefix “tempdb..”. For more information, see “Using temporary tables” on page 239.

You can use any tables or other objects that you have created without qualifying their names. You can also use objects created by the Database Owner without qualifying their names, as long as you have the appropriate permissions on them. These rules hold for all users, including the System Administrator and the Database Owner.

Different users can create tables of the same name. For example, a user named “jonah” and a user named “sally” can each create a table named info. Users who have permissions on both tables have to qualify them as jonah.info and sally.info. Sally must qualify references to Jonah’s table as jonah.info, but she can refer to her own table simply as info.

## *create table* syntax

The syntax of create table is:

```
create table [database.[owner].]table_name (column_name datatype  
[default {constant_expression | user | null}]  
{{{identity | null | not null}}}  
[off row | in row]  
[[constraint constraint_name]  
{{unique | primary key}  
[clustered | nonclustered] [asc | desc]  
[with {fillfactor = pct,  
max_rows_per_page = num_rows,}
```

```
        reservepagegap = num_pages}]
[on segment_name]
| references [[database.]owner.]ref_table [
    ref_column)]
| check (search_condition)}]}...
| [constraint constraint_name]
{{unique | primary key}
[clustered | nonclustered]
(column_name [asc | desc]
[{}, column_name [asc | desc]...])
[with {fillfactor = pct
    max_rows_per_page = num_rows ,
    reservepagegap = num_pages }]
[on segment_name]
|foreign key (column_name [{,column_name}...])
    references [[database.]owner.]ref_table
        [(ref_column [{, ref_column}...])]
| check (search_condition) ...
[{}, {next_column | next_constraint}...])
[lock {datarows | datapages | allpages}]
[with {max_rows_per_page = num_rows,
    exp_row_size = num_bytes,
    reservepagegap = num_pages,
    identity_gap = num_values}]
[on segment_name ]
[[external table] at pathname]
```

---

**Note** For a complete discussion of the syntax, see *create table* in the *Reference Manual*.

---

The *create table* statement:

- Defines each column in the table.
- Provides the column name and datatype and specifies how each column handles null values.
- Specifies which column, if any, has the IDENTITY property.
- Defines column-level integrity constraints and table-level integrity constraints. Each table definition can have multiple constraints per column and per table.

For example, the *create table* statement for the *titles* table in the *pubs2* database is:

```
create table titles
(title_id tid,
title varchar(80) not null,
```

```
type char(12),
pub_id char(4) null,
price money null,
advance money null,
royalty int null,
total_sales int null,
notes varchar(200) null,
pubdate datetime,
contract bit not null)
```

The following sections describe components of table definition: system-supplied datatypes, user-defined datatypes, null types, and IDENTITY columns.

---

**Note** The `on segment_name` extension to `create table` allows you to place your table on an existing segment. `segment_name` points to a specific database device or a collection of database devices. Before creating a table on a segment, see a System Administrator or the Database Owner for a list of segments that you can use. Certain segments may be allocated to specific tables or indexes for performance reasons, or for other considerations.

---

## Allowing null values

For each column, you can specify whether to allow null values. A null value is *not* the same as “zero” or “blank.” `NULL` means no entry has been made, and usually implies “value unknown” or “value not applicable.” It indicates that the user did not make any entry, for whatever reason. For example, a null entry in the `price` column of the `titles` table does not mean that the book is being given away free, but that the price is not known or has not yet been set.

If the user does not make an entry in a column defined with the keyword `null`, Adaptive Server supplies the value “`NULL`”. A column defined with the keyword `null` also accepts an explicit entry of `NULL` from the user, no matter what datatype it is. Be careful when you enter null values in character columns. If you put the word “`null`” inside single or double quotes, Adaptive Server interprets the entry as a character string rather than as the value `NULL`.

If you omit null or not null in the create table statement, Adaptive Server uses the null mode defined for the database (by default, NOT NULL). Use sp\_dboption to set the allow nulls by default option to true.

You must make an entry in a column defined as NOT NULL; otherwise, Adaptive Server displays an error message.

Defining columns as NULL provides a placeholder for data you may not yet know. For example, in the titles table, price, advance, royalty, and total\_sales are set up to allow NULL.

However, title\_id and title are not, because the lack of an entry in these columns would be meaningless and confusing. A price without a title makes no sense, whereas a title without a price simply means that the price has not been set yet or is not available.

In create table , use the keywords not null when the information in the column is critical to the meaning of the other columns.

## Constraints and rules used with null values

You cannot define a column to allow null values, and then override this definition with a constraint or a rule that prohibits null values. For example, if a column definition specifies NULL and a rule specifies:

```
@val in (1,2,3)
```

An implicit or explicit NULL does not violate the rule. The column definition overrides the rule, even a rule that specifies:

```
@val is not null
```

See “Defining integrity constraints for tables” on page 251 for more information on constraints. Rules are covered in detail in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

## Defaults and null values

You can use defaults, that is, values that are supplied automatically when no entry is made, with both NULL and NOT NULL columns. A default counts as an entry. However, you cannot designate a NULL default for a NOT NULL column. You can specify null values as defaults using the default constraint of create table or using create default. The default constraint is described later in this chapter; create default is described in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

If you specify NOT NULL when you create a column and do not create a default for it, an error message occurs when a user fails to make an entry in that column during an insert. In addition, the user cannot insert or update such a column with NULL as a value.

Table 7-1 illustrates the interaction between a column's default and its null type when a user specifies no column value or explicitly enters a NULL value. The three possible results are a null value for the column, the default value for the column, or an error message.

**Table 7-1: Column definition and null defaults**

Column definition	User entry	Result
Null and default defined	Enters no value	Default used
	Enters NULL value	NULL used
Null defined, no default defined	Enters no value	NULL used
	Enters NULL value	NULL used
Not null, default defined	Enters no value	Default used
	Enters NULL value	NULL used
Not null, no default defined	Enters no value	Error
	Enters NULL value	Error

## Nulls require variable length datatypes

Only columns with variable-length datatypes can store null values. When you create a NULL column with a fixed-length datatype, Adaptive Server converts it to the corresponding variable-length datatype. Adaptive Server does not inform you of the type change.

Table 7-2 lists the fixed-length datatypes and the variable-length datatypes to which Adaptive Server converts them. Certain variable-length datatypes, such as moneyn, are reserved; you cannot use them to create columns, variables, or parameters.

**Table 7-2: Conversion of fixed-length to variable-length datatypes**

Original Fixed-Length Datatype	Converted To
char	varchar
nchar	nvarchar
binary	
datetime	datetimn
float	floatn
int, smallint, and tinyint	intn
decimal	decimaln
numeric	numericon
money and smallmoney	moneyn

Data entered into char, nchar, and binary columns follows the rules for variable-length columns, rather than being padded with spaces or zeros to the full length of the column specification.

### ***text and image columns***

text and image columns created with insert and NULL are not initialized and contain no value. They do not use storage space and cannot be accessed with readtext or writetext.

When a NULL value is written in a text or image column with update, the column is initialized, a valid text pointer to the column is inserted into the table, and a 2K data page is allocated to the column. Once the column is initialized, it can be accessed by readtext and writetext. See the Adaptive Server for more information.

## **Using IDENTITY columns**

An IDENTITY column contains a value for each row, generated automatically by Adaptive Server, that uniquely identifies the row within the table.

Each table can have only one IDENTITY column. You can define an IDENTITY column when you create a table with a create table or select into statement, or add it later with an alter table statement. IDENTITY columns cannot be updated and do not allow nulls.

You define an IDENTITY column by specifying the keyword `identity`, instead of `null` or `not null`, in the `create table` statement. IDENTITY columns must have a datatype of numeric and scale of 0. Define the IDENTITY column with any desired precision, from 1 to 38 digits, in a new table:

```
create table table_name  
  (column_name numeric(precision ,0) identity)
```

The maximum possible column value is  $10^{\text{precision}} - 1$ . For example, this command creates a table with an IDENTITY column that allows a maximum value of  $10^5 - 1$ , or 9999:

```
create table sales_daily  
  (sale_id numeric(5,0) identity,  
   stor_id char(4) not null)
```

You can create automatic IDENTITY columns by using the `auto identity` database option and the size of `auto identity configuration` parameter. To include IDENTITY columns in nonunique indexes, use the `identity in nonunique index` database option.

---

**Note** By default, Adaptive Server begins numbering rows with the value 1, and continues numbering rows consecutively as they are added. Some activities, such as manual insertions, deletions, or transaction rollbacks, and server shutdowns or failures, can create gaps in IDENTITY column values. Adaptive Server provides several methods of controlling identity gaps described in “Managing identity gaps in tables” on page 243.

---

## Creating IDENTITY columns with user-defined datatypes

You can use user-defined datatypes to create IDENTITY columns. The user-defined datatype must have an underlying type of numeric and a scale of 0. If the user-defined datatype was created with the `IDENTITY` property, you do not have to repeat the `identity` keyword when creating the column.

This example shows a user-defined datatype with the IDENTITY property:

```
sp_addtype ident, "numeric(5)", "identity"
```

This example shows an IDENTITY column based on the `ident` datatype:

```
create table sales_monthly  
  (sale_id ident, stor_id char(4) not null)
```

If the user-defined type was created as not null, you must specify the identity keyword in the create table statement. You cannot create an IDENTITY column from a user-defined datatype that allows null values.

## Referencing IDENTITY columns

When you create a table column that references an IDENTITY column, as with any referenced column, make sure it has the same datatype definition as the IDENTITY column. For example, in the pubs3 database, the sales table is defined using the ord\_num column as an IDENTITY column:

```
create table sales
(stor_id char(4) not null
    references stores(stor_id),
ord_num numeric(6,0) identity,
date datetime not null,
unique nonclustered (ord_num))
```

Notice that the ord\_num IDENTITY column is defined as a unique constraint, which it needs for referencing the ord\_num column in salesdetail. salesdetail is defined as follows:

```
create table salesdetail
(stor_id char(4) not null
    references storesz(stor_id),
ord_num numeric(6,0)
    references salesz(ord_num),
title_id tid not null
    references titles(title_id),
qty smallint not null,
discount float not null)
```

An easy way to insert a row into salesdetail after inserting a row into sales is to use the `@@identity` global variable to insert the IDENTITY column value into salesdetail. The `@@identity` global variable stores the most recently generated IDENTITY column value. For example:

```
begin tran
insert sales values ("6380", "04/25/97")
insert salesdetail values ("6380", @@identity,
"TC3218", 50, 50)
commit tran
```

This example is in a transaction because both inserts depend on each other to succeed. For example, if the sales insert fails, the value of `@@identity` will be different, resulting in an erroneous row being inserted into `salesdetail`. Because the two inserts are in a transaction, if one fails, the entire transaction is rejected.

For more information on IDENTITY columns, see “Retrieving IDENTITY column values with `@@identity`” on page 321. For information on transactions, see Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

## Referring to IDENTITY columns with `syb_identity`

Once you have defined an IDENTITY column, you do not have to remember the actual column name. You can use the `syb_identity` keyword, qualified by the table name where necessary, in a select, insert, update, or delete statement on the table.

For example, this query selects the row for which `sale_id` equals 1:

```
select * from sales_monthly  
where syb_identity = 1
```

## Creating “hidden” IDENTITY columns automatically

System Administrators can use the auto identity database option to automatically include a 10-digit IDENTITY column in new tables. To turn this feature on in a database, use:

```
sp_dboption database_name, "auto identity", "true"
```

Each time a user creates a new table without specifying either a primary key, a unique constraint, or an IDENTITY column, Adaptive Server automatically defines an IDENTITY column. The IDENTITY column is not visible when you use `select *` to retrieve all columns from the table. You must explicitly include the column name, `SYB_IDENTITY_COL` (all uppercase letters), in the select list. If Component Integration Services is enabled, the automatic IDENTITY column for proxy tables is called `OMNI_IDENTITY_COL`.

To set the precision of the automatic IDENTITY column, use the size of auto identity configuration parameter. For example, to set the precision of the IDENTITY column to 15 use:

```
sp_configure "size of auto identity", 15
```

## Using temporary tables

Temporary tables are created in the tempdb database. To create a temporary table, you must have create table permission in tempdb. create table permission defaults to the Database Owner.

To make a table temporary, use the pound sign (#) or “tempdb..” before the table name in the create table statement.

There are two kinds of temporary tables:

- Tables that can be shared among Adaptive Server sessions

You create a shareable temporary table by specifying tempdb as part of the table name in the create table statement. For example, the following statement creates a temporary table that can be shared among Adaptive Server sessions:

```
create table tempdb..authors
(au_id char(11))
drop table tempdb..authors
```

Adaptive Server does not change the names of temporary tables created this way. The table exists until the current session ends or until its owner drops it using drop table.

- Tables that are accessible only by the current Adaptive Server session or procedure

You create a nonshareable temporary table by specifying a pound sign (#) before the table name in the create table statement. For example:

```
create table #authors
(au_id char (11))
```

The table exists until the current session or procedure ends, or until its owner drops it using drop table.

If you do not use the pound sign or “tempdb..” before the table name, and you are not currently using tempdb, the table is created as a permanent table. A permanent table stays in the database until it is explicitly dropped by its owner.

This statement creates a nonshareable temporary table:

```
create table #myjobs
(task char(30),
start datetime,
stop datetime,
notes varchar(200))
```

You can use this table to keep a list of today's chores and errands, along with a record of when you start and finish, and any comments you may have. This table and its data will automatically be deleted at the end of the current work session. Temporary tables are not recoverable.

You can associate rules, defaults, and indexes with temporary tables, but you cannot create views on temporary tables or associate triggers with them. You can use a user-defined datatype when creating a temporary table only if the datatype exists in tempdb..systypes.

To add an object to tempdb for the current session only, execute sp\_addtype while using tempdb. To add an object permanently, execute sp\_addtype in model, then restart Adaptive Server so model is copied to tempdb.

## **Ensuring that the temporary table name is unique**

To ensure that a temporary table name is unique for the current session, Adaptive Server:

- Truncates the table name to 13 characters, including the pound sign (#)
- Pads shorter names to 13 characters, using underscores (\_)
- Appends a 17-digit numeric suffix that is unique for an Adaptive Server session

The following example shows a table created as #temptable and stored as #temptable\_\_\_\_0000050010721973:

```
use pubs2
go
create table #temptable (task char(30))
go
use tempdb
go
select name from sysobjects where name like
    "#temptable%"
go
name
-----
#temptable____0000050010721973

(1 row affected)
```

## Manipulating temporary tables in stored procedures

Stored procedures can reference temporary tables that are created during the current session. Within a stored procedure, you cannot create a temporary table, drop it, and then create a new temporary table with the same name.

### Temporary tables with names beginning with “#”

Temporary tables with names beginning with “#” that are created within stored procedures disappear when the procedure exits. A single procedure can:

- Create a temporary table
- Insert data into the table
- Run queries on the table
- Call other procedures that reference the table

Since the temporary table must exist in order to create procedures that reference it, here are the steps to follow:

- 1 Use create table to create the temporary table.
- 2 Create the procedures that access the temporary table, but do not create the procedure that creates the table.
- 3 Drop the temporary table.
- 4 Create the procedure that creates the table and calls the procedures created in step 2.

### Tables with names beginning with `tempdb..`.

You can create temporary tables without the # prefix, using `create table tempdb..tablename` from inside a stored procedure. These tables do not disappear when the procedure completes, so they can be referenced by independent procedures. Follow the steps above to create these tables.

---

**Warning!** Create temporary tables with the “`tempdb..`” prefix from inside a stored procedure *only* if you intend to share the table among users and sessions. Stored procedures that create and drop a temporary table should use the # prefix to avoid inadvertent sharing.

---

## **General rules on temporary tables**

Temporary tables with names that begin with # are subject to the following restrictions:

- You cannot create views on these tables.
- You cannot associate triggers with these tables.
- You cannot tell which session or procedure has created these tables.

These restrictions do not apply to shareable, temporary tables created in tempdb.

Rules that apply to both types of temporary tables:

- You can associate rules, defaults, and indexes with temporary tables. Indexes created on a temporary table disappear when the temporary table disappears.
- System procedures such as sp\_help work on temporary tables only if you invoke them from tempdb.
- You cannot use user-defined datatypes in temporary tables unless the datatypes exist in tempdb; that is, unless the datatypes have been explicitly created in tempdb since the last time Adaptive Server was restarted.
- You do not have to set the select into/bulkcopy option on to select into a temporary table.

## **Creating tables in different databases**

As the create table syntax shows, you can create a table in a database other than the current one by qualifying the table name with the name of the other database. However, you must be an authorized user of the database in which you are creating the table, and you must have create table permission in it.

If you are using pubs2 or pubs3 and there is another database called newpubs, you can create a table called newtab in newpubs like this:

```
create table newpubs..newtab (coll int)
```

You cannot create other database objects—views, rules, defaults, stored procedures, and triggers—in a database other than the current one.

## Managing identity gaps in tables

The IDENTITY column contains a unique ID number, generated by Adaptive Server, for each row in a table. Because of the way the server generates ID numbers by default, you may occasionally have large gaps in the ID numbers. The `identity_gap` parameter gives you control over ID numbers, and potential gaps in them, for a specific table.

By default, Adaptive Server allocates a block of ID numbers in memory instead of writing each ID number to disk as it is needed, which requires more processing time. The server writes the highest number of each block to the table's object allocation map (OAM) page. This number is used as the starting point for the next block after the currently allocated block of numbers is used or "burned". The other numbers of the block are held in memory, but are not saved to disk. Numbers are considered burned when they are allocated to memory, then deleted from memory either because they were assigned to a row, or because they were erased from memory due to some abnormal occurrence such as a system failure.

Allocating a block of ID numbers improves performance by reducing contention for the table. However, if the server fails or is shut down with no wait before all the ID numbers are assigned, the unused numbers are burned. When the server is running again, it starts numbering with the next block of numbers based on the highest number of the previous block that the server wrote to disk. Depending on how many allocated numbers were assigned to rows before the failure, you may have a large gap in the ID numbers.

Identity gaps can also result from dumping and loading an active database. When dumping, database objects are saved to the OAM page. If an object is currently being used, the 'maximum used identity value' is not be in the OAM page and, therefore, is not dumped.

## Parameters for controlling identity gaps

Adaptive Server provides parameters that allow you to control gaps in identity numbers as described in Table 7-3.

**Table 7-3: Parameters for controlling identity gaps**

Parameter Name	Scope	Used with	Description
<code>identity_gap</code>	table-specific	<code>create table</code> or <code>select into</code>	Creates ID number blocks of a specific size for a specific table. Overrides identity burning set factor for the table. Works with identity grab size.

Parameter Name	Scope	Used with	Description
identity burning set factor	server-wide	sp_configure	<p>Indicates a percentage of the total available ID numbers you want to have allocated for each block. Works with identity grab size. If the identity_gap for a table is set to 1 or higher, identity burning set factor has no effect on that table. The burning set factor is used for all tables for which identity_gap is set to 0.</p> <p>When you set identity burning set factor, you express the number in decimal form, and then multiply it by 10,000,000 (<math>10^7</math>) to get the correct value to use with sp_configure. For example, to release 15 percent (.15) of the potential IDENTITY column values at one time, you specify a value of .15 times <math>10^7</math> (or 1,500,000):</p> <pre>sp_configure "identity burning set factor", 1500000</pre>
identity grab size	server-wide	sp_configure	Reserves a block of contiguous ID numbers for each process. Works with identity burning set factor and identity_gap.

## Comparison of *identity burning set factor* and *identity\_gap*

The identity\_gap parameter gives you control over the size of identity gaps for a particular table as illustrated in the following examples. In the examples, we have created a table named books to list all the books in our bookstore. We want each book to have a unique ID number, and we want Adaptive Server to automatically generate the ID numbers.

### Example of using *identity burning set factor*

When defining the IDENTITY column for the books table, we used the default numeric value of (18, 0), which provides a total of 999,999,999,999,999,999 ID numbers. For the identity burning set factor configuration parameter, we are using the default setting of 5000 (.05 percent of 999,999,999,999,999,999), which means that Adaptive Server allocates blocks of 500,000,000,000,000 numbers.

The server allocates the first 500,000,000,000,000 numbers in memory and stores the highest number of the block (500,000,000,000,000) on the table's OAM page. When all the numbers are assigned to rows or burned, the server takes the next block of numbers (the next 500,000,000,000,000), starting with 500,000,000,000,001, and stores the number 1,000,000,000,000,000 as the highest number of the block.

Let's say, after row number 500,000,000,000,022 the server fails. Only numbers 1 through 500,000,000,000,022 were used as ID numbers for books. Numbers 500,000,000,000,023 through 1,000,000,000,000,000 are burned. When the server is running again, it creates ID numbers starting from the highest number stored on the table's OAM page plus one (1,000,000,000,000,001), which leaves a gap of 499,999,999,999,978 ID numbers.

To reduce this large gap in identity numbers for a specific table, you can set the identity gap as described in “Example of using *identity\_gap*.”

### Example of using *identity\_gap*

In this case, we create the books table with an *identity\_gap* value of 1000. This overrides the server-wide identity burning set factor setting that resulted in blocks of 500,000,000,000,000 ID numbers. Instead, ID numbers are allocated in memory in blocks of 1000.

The server allocates the first 1000 numbers and stores the highest number of the block (1000) to disk. When all the numbers are used, the server takes the next 1000 numbers, starting with 1001, and stores the number 2000 as the highest number.

Now, let's say that after row number 1002 we lose power, which causes the server to fail. Only the numbers 1000 through 1002 were used, and numbers 1003 through 2000 are lost. When the server is running again, it creates ID numbers starting from the highest number stored on the table's OAM page plus one (2000), which leaves a gap of only 998 numbers.

You can significantly reduce the gap in ID numbers by setting the `identity_gap` for a table instead of using the server-wide table burning set factor. However, there may be a performance cost to setting this value too low. Each time the server must write the highest number of a block to disk, performance is affected. For example, if `identity_gap` is set to 1, which means you are allocating one ID number at a time, the server must write the new number every time a row is created, which may reduce performance because of page lock contention on the table. You must find the best setting to achieve the optimal performance with the lowest gap value acceptable for your situation.

## Setting the table-specific identity gap

Set the table-specific identity gap when you create a table using either `create table` or `select into`.

### Setting identity gap with `create table`

The syntax is:

```
create table table_name (column_name
    datatype(constant_expression) identity)
    with identity_gap = value
```

For example:

```
create table mytable (IdNum numeric(12,0) identity)
    with identity_gap = 10
```

This statement creates a table named `mytable` with an identity column. The identity gap is set to 10, which means ID numbers will be allocated in memory in blocks of ten. If the server fails or is shut down with no wait, the maximum gap between the last ID number assigned to a row and the next ID number assigned to a row is ten numbers.

### Setting identity gap with `select into`

If you are creating a table in a `select into` statement from a table that has a specific identity gap setting, the new table does not inherit the identity gap setting from the parent table. Instead, the new table uses the identity burning set factor setting. To give the new table a specific `identity_gap` setting, specify the identity gap in the `select into` statement. You can give the new table an identity gap that is the same as or different from the parent table.

For example, to create a new table (newtable) from the existing table (mytable) with an identity gap:

```
select identity into newtable
with identity_gap = 20
from mytable
```

## Changing the table-specific identity gap

To change the identity gap for a specific table, use `sp_chgattribute`:

```
sp_chgattribute "table_name", "identity_gap", set_number
```

where:

- *table\_name* is the name of the table for which you want to change the identity gap.
- *identity\_gap* indicates that you want to change the identity gap.
- *set\_number* is the new size of the identity gap.

For example:

```
sp_chgattribute "mytable", "identity_gap", 20
```

To change mytable to use the identity burning set factor setting instead of the *identity\_gap* setting, set *identity\_gap* to 0:

```
sp_chgattribute "mytable", "identity_gap", 0
```

## Displaying table-specific identity gap information

To see the *identity\_gap* setting for a table, use `sp_help`.

For example, the zero value in the *identity\_gap* column (towards the end of the output) indicates that no table-specific identity gap is set. mytable uses the server-wide identity burning set factor value.

Name	Type	Owner
mytable	user table	dbo

```
(1 row affected)
Data_located_on_segment      When_created
-----
-----
default                      Jun  8 1999  5:35PM
Column_name      Type          Length Prec Scale
Nulls Default_name

Rule_name       Identity
-----
-----
idnum          numeric        6   12    0    0 NULL
NULL           1

Object does not have any indexes.

No defined keys for this object.
Object is not partitioned.
Lock scheme Allpages
The attribute 'exp_row_size' is not applicable to
tables with
allpages lock scheme.
The attribute 'concurrency_opt_threshold' is not
applicable to
tables with allpages lock scheme.

exp_row_size reservepagegap fillfactor
max_rows_per_page identity_gap

-----
-----
1           0           0           0
0
concurrency_opt_threshold
-----
0
```

If you change the identity\_gap of mytable to 20, the sp\_help output for the table shows 20 in the identity\_gap column. This setting overrides the server-wide identity burning set factor value.

```
sp_help mytable
Name          Owner
Type
-----
-----
```

```

-----  

mytable           dbo  

      user table  

(1 row affected)  

Data_located_on_segment    When_created  

-----  

-----  

default                Jun  8 1999  5:35PM  

Column_name   Type          Length Prec Scale  

Nulls Default_name  

Rule_name       Identity  

-----  

-----  

-----  

idnum      numeric        6   12   0   0 NULL  

NULL  

Object does not have any indexes.  

No defined keys for this object.  

Object is not partitioned.  

Lock scheme Allpages  

The attribute 'exp_row_size' is not applicable to  

tables with  

allpages lock scheme.  

The attribute 'concurrency_opt_threshold' is not  

applicable to  

tables with allpages lock scheme.  

exp_row_size reservepagegap fillfactor  

max_rows_per_page identity_gap  

-----  

-----  

1                  0       0       0  

20  

concurrency_opt_threshold  

-----  

0

```

## Gaps due to insertions, deletions, identity grab size, and rollbacks

Manual insertions into the IDENTITY column, deletion of rows, the value of the identity grab size configuration parameter, and transaction rollbacks can create gaps in IDENTITY column values. These gaps are not affected by the setting of the identity burning set factor configuration parameter.

For example, assume that you have an IDENTITY column with these values:

```
select syb_identity from stores_cal
  id_col
-----
  1
  2
  3
  4
  5

(5 rows affected)
```

You can delete all rows for which the IDENTITY column falls between 2 and 4, leaving gaps in the column values:

```
delete stores_cal
where syb_identity between 2 and 4
select syb_identity from stores_cal
  id_col
-----
  1
  5

(2 rows affected)
```

After setting `identity_insert` on for the table, the table owner, Database Owner, or System Administrator can manually insert any legal value greater than 5. For example, inserting a value of 55 would create a large gap in IDENTITY column values:

```
insert stores_cal
(syb_identity, stor_id, stor_name)
values (55, "5025", "Good Reads")
select syb_identity from stores_cal
  id_col
-----
  1
  5
  55

(3 rows affected)
```

If `identity_insert` is then set to off, Adaptive Server assigns an IDENTITY column value of  $55 + 1$ , or 56, for the next insertion. If the transaction that contains the `insert` statement is rolled back, Adaptive Server discards the value 56 and uses a value of 57 for the next insertion.

## If table inserts reach the IDENTITY column's maximum value

The maximum number of rows you can insert into a table depends on the precision set for the IDENTITY column. If a table reaches that limit, you can either re-create the table with a larger precision or, if the table's IDENTITY column is not used for referential integrity, use the bcp utility to remove the gaps. See "Reaching the IDENTITY column's maximum value" on page 323 for more information.

## Defining integrity constraints for tables

Transact-SQL provides two methods for maintaining data integrity in a database:

- Defining rules, defaults, indexes, and triggers
- Defining create table integrity constraints

Choosing one method over the other depends on your requirements. Integrity constraints offer the advantages of defining integrity controls in one step during the table creation process (as defined by the SQL standards) and of simplifying the process to create those integrity controls. However, integrity constraints are more limited in scope and less comprehensive than defaults, rules, indexes, and triggers.

For example, triggers provide more complex handling of referential integrity than those declared in create table. Also, the integrity constraints defined by a create table are specific for that table; you cannot bind them to other tables, and you can only drop or change them using alter table. Constraints cannot contain subqueries or aggregate functions, even on the same table.

The two methods are not mutually exclusive. You can use integrity constraints along with defaults, rules, indexes, and triggers. This gives you the flexibility to choose the best method for your application. This section describes the create table integrity constraints. Defaults, rules, indexes, and triggers are described in later chapters.

You can create the following types of constraints:

- unique and primary key constraints require that no two rows in a table have the same values in the specified columns. In addition, a primary key constraint requires that there not be a null value in any row of the column.
- Referential integrity (references) constraints require that data being inserted in specific columns already have matching data in the specified table and columns. Use sp\_helpconstraint to find a table's referenced tables.
- check constraints limit the values of data inserted into columns.

You can also enforce data integrity by restricting the use of null values in a column (the null or not null keywords) and by providing default values for columns (the default clause). See “Allowing null values” on page 232 for information about the null and not null keywords.

For information about any constraints defined for a table, see “Using sp\_helpconstraint to find a table's constraint information” on page 297.

---

**Warning!** Do not define or alter the definitions of constraints for system tables.

---

## Specifying table-level or column-level constraints

You can declare integrity constraints at the table or column level. Although the difference is rarely noticed by users, column-level constraints are only checked if a value in the column is being modified, while the table-level constraints are checked if there is any modification to a row, regardless of whether or not it changes the column in question.

You place column-level constraints after the column name and datatype, but before the delimiting comma. You enter table-level constraints as separate comma-delimited clauses. Adaptive Server treats table-level and column-level constraints the same way; both ways are equally efficient

However, you must declare constraints that operate on more than one column as table-level constraints. For example, the following create table statement has a check constraint that operates on two columns, pub\_id and pub\_name:

```
create table my_publishers
(pub_id      char(4),
pub_name     varchar(40),
```

```
constraint my_chk_constraint
    check (pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877")
           or pub_name not like "Bad News Books"))
```

You can declare constraints that operate on just one column as column-level constraints, but it is not required. For example, if the above check constraint uses only one column (`pub_id`), you can place the constraint on that column:

```
create table my_publishers
(pub_id      char(4) constraint my_chk_constraint
     check (pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877")),
pub_name     varchar(40))
```

In either case, the `constraint` keyword and accompanying `constraint_name` are optional. The check constraint is described under “Specifying check constraints” on page 260.

---

**Note** You cannot issue `create table` with a check constraint and then insert data into the table in the same batch or procedure. Either separate the `create` and `insert` statements into two different batches or procedures, or use `execute` to perform the actions separately.

---

## Creating error messages for constraints

You can create error messages and bind them to constraints by creating messages with `sp_addmessage` and binding them to constraints with `sp_bindmsg`.

For example:

```
sp_addmessage 25001,
    "The publisher ID must be 1389, 0736, or 0877"
sp_bindmsg my_chk_constraint, 25001
insert my_publishers values
    ("0000", "Reject This Publisher")
Msg 25001, Level 16, State 1:
Server 'snipe', Line 1:
The publisher ID must be 1389, 0736, or 0877
Command has been aborted.
```

To change the message for a constraint, bind a new message. The new message replaces the old message.

Unbind messages from constraints using `sp_unbindmsg`; drop user-defined messages using `sp_dropmessage`.

For example:

```
sp_unbindmsg my_chk_constraint  
sp_dropmessage 25001
```

To change the text of a message but keep the same error number, unbind it, drop it with `sp_dropmessage`, add it again with `sp_addmessage`, and bind it with `sp_bindmsg`.

## After creating a check constraint

After you create a check constraint, the **source text** describing the check constraint is stored in the text column of the `syscomments` system table. *Do not remove this information from syscomments*; doing so can cause problems for future upgrades of Adaptive Server. If you have security concerns, encrypt the text in `syscomments` by using `sp_hidetext`, described in the *Reference Manual*. For more information, see “Compiled objects” on page 4.

## Specifying default column values

Before you define any column-level integrity constraints, you can specify a default value for the column with the `default` clause. The **default clause** assigns a default value to a column as part of the create table statement. When a user does not enter a value for the column, Adaptive Server inserts the default value.

You can use the following values with the `default` clause:

- *constant\_expression* – specifies a constant expression to use as a default value for the column. It cannot include the name of any columns or other database objects, but you can include built-in functions that do not reference database objects. This default value must be compatible with the datatype of the column.
- `user` – specifies that Adaptive Server insert the user name as the default. The datatype of the column must be either `char(30)` or `varchar(30)` to use this default.

- null – specifies that Adaptive Server insert the null value as the default. You cannot define this default for columns that do not allow null values (using the notnull keyword).

For example, this create table statement defines two column defaults:

```
create table my_titles
(title_id      char(6),
title         varchar(80),
price         money      default null,
total_sales   int        default 0)
```

You can include only one default clause per column in a table.

Using the default clause to assign defaults is simpler than the two-step Transact-SQL method. In Transact-SQL, you can use create default to declare the default value and then bind it to the column with sp\_bindefault.

## Specifying unique and primary key constraints

You can declare unique or primary key constraints to ensure that no two rows in a table have the same values in the specified columns. Both constraints create unique indexes to enforce this data integrity. However, primary key constraints are more restrictive than unique constraints. Columns with primary key constraints cannot contain a NULL value. You normally use a table's primary key constraint in conjunction with referential integrity constraints defined on other tables.

The definition of unique constraints in the SQL standards specifies that the column definition shall not allow null values. By default, Adaptive Server defines the column as not allowing null values (if you have not changed this using sp\_dboption) when you omit null or not null keywords in the column definition. In Transact-SQL, you can define the column to allow null values along with the unique constraint, since the unique index used to enforce the constraint allows you to insert a null value.

---

**Note** Do not confuse the unique and primary key integrity constraints with the information defined by sp\_primarykey, sp\_foreignkey, and sp\_commonkey. The unique and primary key constraints actually create indexes to define unique or primary key attributes of table columns. sp\_primarykey, sp\_foreignkey, and sp\_commonkey define the logical relationship of keys (in the syskeys table) for table columns, which you enforce by creating indexes and triggers.

---

unique constraints create unique nonclustered indexes by default; primary key constraints create unique clustered indexes by default. You can declare either clustered or nonclustered indexes with either type of constraint.

For example, the following `create table` statement uses a table-level unique constraint to ensure that no two rows have the same values in the `stor_id` and `ord_num` columns:

```
create table my_sales
(stor_id      char(4),
ord_num      varchar(20),
date         datetime,
unique clustered (stor_id, ord_num))
```

There can be only one clustered index on a table, so you can specify only one unique clustered or primary key clustered constraint.

You can use the unique and primary key constraints to create unique indexes (including the `with fillfactor`, `with max_rows_per_page`, and `on segment_name` options) when enforcing data integrity. However, indexes provide additional capabilities. For information about indexes and their options, including the differences between clustered and nonclustered indexes, see Chapter 11, “Creating Indexes on Tables.”

## Specifying referential integrity constraints

**Referential integrity** refers to the methods used to manage the relationships between tables. When you create a table, you can define constraints to ensure that the data inserted into a particular column has matching values in another table.

There are three types of references you can define in a table: references to another table, references from another table, and self-references, that is, references within the same table.

The following two tables from the `pubs3` database illustrate how declarative referential integrity works. The first table, `stores`, is a “referenced” table:

```
create table stores
(stor_id      char(4) not null,
stor_name    varchar(40) null,
stor_address varchar(40) null,
city         varchar(20) null,
state        char(2) null,
country      varchar(12) null,
```

```

postalcode    char(10) null,
payterms      varchar(12) null,
unique nonclustered (stor_id))

```

The second table, `store_employees`, is a “referencing table” because it contains a reference to the `stores` table. It also contains a self-reference:

```

create table store_employees
(stor_id      char(4) null
     references stores(stor_id),
emp_id       id not null,
mgr_id       id null
     references store_employees(emp_id),
emp_lname    varchar(40) not null,
emp_fname    varchar(20) not null,
phone        char(12) null,
address      varchar(40) null,
city         varchar(20) null,
state        char(2) null,
country      varchar(12) null,
postalcode   varchar(10) null,
unique nonclustered (emp_id))

```

The references defined in the `store_employees` table enforce the following restrictions:

- Any store specified in the `store_employees` table must be included in the `stores` table. The `references` constraint enforces this by saying that any value inserted into the `stor_id` column in `store_employees` must already exist in the `stor_id` column in `my_stores`.
- All managers must have employee identification numbers. The `references` constraint enforces this by saying that any value inserted into the `mgr_id` column must already exist in the `emp_id` column.

## Table-level or column-level referential integrity constraints

You can define referential integrity constraints at the column level or the table level. The referential integrity constraints in the preceding examples were defined at the column level, using the `references` keyword in the `create table` statement.

When you define table-level referential integrity constraints, include the `foreign key` clause and a list of one or more column names. `foreign key` specifies that the listed columns in the current table are foreign keys whose target keys are the columns listed the following `references` clause. For example:

```
constraint sales_detail_constr  
    foreign key (stor_id, ord_num)  
        references my_salesdetail(stor_id, ord_num)
```

The foreign key syntax is permitted only for table-level constraints, and not for column-level constraints. For more information, see “Specifying table-level or column-level constraints” on page 252.

After defining referential integrity constraints at the column level or the table level, you can use sp\_primarykey, sp\_foreignkey, and sp\_commonkey to define the keys in the syskeys system table.

## Maximum number of references allowed for a table

The maximum number of references allowed for a table is 192. You can check a table’s references by using sp\_helpconstraint, described under “Using sp\_helpconstraint to find a table’s constraint information” on page 297.

## Using *create schema* for cross-referencing constraints

You cannot create a table that references a table that does not yet exist. To create two or more tables that reference each other, use *create schema*.

A **schema** is a collection of objects owned by a particular user, and the permissions associated with those objects. If any of the statements within a *create schema* statement fail, the entire command is rolled back as a unit, and none of the commands take effect.

The *create schema* syntax is:

```
create schema authorization authorization_name  
create_object_statement  
    [ create_object_statement ... ]  
    [ permission_statement ... ]
```

For example:

```
create schema authorization dbo  
    create table list1  
        (col_a char(10) primary key,  
         col_b char(10) null  
         references list2(col_A))  
    create table list2  
        (col_A char(10) primary key,  
         col_B char(10) null  
         references list1(col_a))
```

## General rules for creating referential integrity constraints

When you define referential integrity constraints in a table:

- Make sure you have references permission on the referenced table. For information about permissions, see the *System Administration Guide*.
- Make sure that the referenced columns are constrained by a unique index in the referenced table. You can create that unique index using either the unique or primary key constraint or the create index statement. For example, the referenced column in the stores table is defined as:

```
stor_id char(4) primary key
```

- Make sure the columns used in the references definition have matching datatypes. For example, the stor\_id columns in both my\_stores and store\_employees were created using the char(4) datatype. The mgr\_id and emp\_id columns in store\_employees were created with the id datatype.
- You can omit column names in the references clause only if the columns in the referenced table are designated as a primary key through a primary key constraint.
- You cannot delete rows or update column values from a referenced table that match values in a referencing table. Delete or update from the referencing table first, and then delete it from the referenced table.

Similarly, you cannot use truncate table on a referenced table. Truncate the referencing table first, and then truncate the referenced table.

- You must drop the referencing table before you drop the referenced table; otherwise, a constraint violation occurs.
- Use sp\_helpconstraint to find a table's referenced tables.

Referential integrity constraints provide a simpler way to enforce data integrity than triggers. However, triggers provide additional capabilities to enforce referential integrity between tables. For more information, see Chapter 16, “Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity.”

## Specifying check constraints

You can declare a check constraint to limit the values users insert into a column in a table. Check constraints are useful for applications that check a limited, specific range of values. A check constraint specifies a *search\_condition* that any value must pass before it is inserted into the table. A *search\_condition* can include:

- A list of constant expressions introduced with `in`
- A range of constant expressions introduced with `between`
- A set of conditions introduced with `like`, which may contain wildcard characters

An expression can include arithmetic operations and Transact-SQL built-in functions. The *search\_condition* cannot contain subqueries, a set function specification, or a target specification.

For example, this statement ensures that only certain values can be entered for the `pub_id` column:

```
create table my_new_publishers
(pub_id      char(4)
     check (pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877",
                        "1622", "1756")
            or pub_id like "99[0-9][0-9]"),
pub_name    varchar(40),
city        varchar(20),
state       char(2))
```

Column-level check constraints can reference only the column on which the constraint is defined; they cannot reference other columns in the table. Table-level check constraints can reference any columns in the table. `create table` allows multiple check constraints in a column definition.

Because check constraints do not override column definitions, you cannot use a check constraint to prohibit null values if the column definition permits them. If you declare a check constraint on a column that allows null values, you can insert `NULL` into the column, implicitly or explicitly, even though `NULL` is not included in the *search\_condition*. For example, suppose you define the following check constraint on a table column that allows null values:

```
check (pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877", "1622",
                  "1756"))
```

You can still insert NULL into that column. The column definition overrides the check constraint because the following expression always evaluates to true:

```
col_name != null
```

## Designing applications that use referential integrity

When you design applications that use referential integrity features:

- Do not create unnecessary referential constraints. The more referential constraints a table has, the slower a statement requiring referential integrity runs on that table.
- Use as few self-referencing constraints on a table as possible.
- Use the check constraint rather than the references constraint for applications that check a limited, specific range of values. Using the check constraint eliminates the need for Adaptive Server to scan other tables to complete the query, since there are no references. Therefore, queries on such tables run faster than on tables using references.

For example, this table uses a check constraint to limit the authors to California:

```
create table cal_authors
(au_id id not null,
 au_lname varchar(40) not null,
 au_fname varchar(20) not null,
 phone char(12) null,
 address varchar(40) null,
 city varchar(20) null,
 state char(2) null
    check(state = "CA"),
 country varchar(12) null,
 postalcode char(10) null)
```

- Bind commonly scanned foreign key indexes to their own caches, to optimize performance. Unique indexes are created automatically on columns declared as primary keys. These indexes are usually selected to scan the referenced table when their corresponding foreign keys are updated or inserted.
- Keep multi-row updates of candidate keys at a minimum.

- Put referential integrity queries into procedures that use constraint checks. Constraint checks are compiled into the execution plan; when a referential constraint is altered, the procedure that has the constraint compiled is automatically recompiled when that procedure is executed.
- If you cannot embed referential integrity queries in a procedure and you frequently have to run referential integrity queries in an ad hoc batch, bind the system catalog sysreferences to its own cache. This improves performance when Adaptive Server needs to recompile referential integrity queries.
- After you create a table that has referential constraints, test it by using set showplan, noexec on before running a query using the table. The showplan output indicates the number of auxiliary scan descriptors required to run the query; scan descriptors manage the scan of a table whenever queries are run on it. If the number of auxiliary scan descriptors is very high, either redesign the table so it uses fewer scan descriptors, or increase the value of the number of auxiliary scan descriptors configuration parameter.

## How to design and create a table

This section gives an example of a create table statement you can use to create a practice table of your own. If you do not have create table permission, see a System Administrator or the owner of the database in which you are working.

Creating a table usually implies creating indexes, defaults, and rules to go with it. Custom datatypes, triggers, and views are frequently involved, too.

Of course, you can create a table, input some data, and work with it for a while before you create indexes, defaults, rules, triggers, or views. This allows you to see what kind of transactions are most common and what kind of data is frequently entered.

On the other hand, it is often most efficient to design a table and all the components that go with it at once. Here is an outline of the steps you go through. You might find it easiest to sketch your plans on paper before you actually create a table and its accompanying objects.

First, plan the table's design:

- 1 Decide what columns you need in the table, and the datatype, length, precision, and scale, for each.
- 2 Create any new user-defined datatypes *before* you define the table where they are to be used.
- 3 Decide which column, if any, should be the IDENTITY column.
- 4 Decide which columns should and which should not accept null values.
- 5 Decide what integrity constraints or column defaults, if any, you need to add to the columns in the table. This includes deciding when to use column constraints and defaults instead of defaults, rules, indexes, and triggers to enforce data integrity.
- 6 Decide whether you need defaults and rules, and if so, where and what kind. Consider the relationship between the NULL and NOT NULL status of a column and defaults and rules.
- 7 Decide what kind of indexes you need and where. Indexes are discussed in Chapter 11, “Creating Indexes on Tables.”

Now, create the table and its associated objects:

- 1 Create the table and its indexes using `create table` and `create index`.
- 2 Create the defaults and rules you need with the `create default` and `create rule`. These commands are discussed in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”
- 3 Bind any defaults and rules you need with `sp_bindefault` and `sp_bindrule`. If there were any defaults or rules on a user-defined datatype that you used in a `create table` statement, they are automatically in force. These system procedures are discussed in Chapter 14, “Using Stored Procedures.”
- 4 Create triggers using `create trigger`. Triggers are discussed in Chapter 16, “Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity.”
- 5 Create views using `create view`. Views are discussed in Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data.”

## Make a design sketch

The table called friends\_etc is used in this chapter and subsequent chapters to illustrate how to create indexes, defaults, rules, triggers, and so forth. It can hold names, addresses, telephone numbers, and personal information about your friends. It does not define any column defaults or integrity constraints, so as to not conflict with those objects.

If another user has already created the friends\_etc table, check with a System Administrator or the Database Owner if you plan to follow the examples and create the objects that go with friends\_etc. The owner of friends\_etc will need to drop its indexes, defaults, rules, and triggers so that there will be no conflict when you create these objects.

Table 7-4 shows the proposed structure of the friends\_etc table and the indexes, defaults, and rules that go with each column.

**Table 7-4: Sample table design**

Column	Datatype	Null?	Index	Default	Rule
pname	nm	NOT NULL	nmind(composite)		
sname	nm	NOT NULL	nmind(composite)		
address	varchar(30)	NULL			
city	varchar(30)	NOT NULL		citydflt	
state	char(2)	NOT NULL		statedflt	
zip	char(5)	NULL	zipind	zipdflt	ziprule
phone	p#	NULL			phonerule
age	tinyint	NULL			agerule
bday	datetime	NOT NULL		bdflt	
gender	bit	NOT NULL		gndrdflt	
debt	money	NOT NULL		gndrdflt	
notes	varchar(255)	NULL			

## Create the user-defined datatypes

The first two columns are for the personal (first) name and surname. They are defined as nm datatype. Before you create the table, you need to create the datatype. The same is true of the p# datatype for the phone column:

```
execute sp_addtype nm, "varchar(30)"
execute sp_addtype p#, "char(10)"
```

The nm datatype allows for a variable-length character entry with a maximum of 30 bytes. The p# datatype allows for a char datatype with a fixed-length size of 10 bytes.

## Choose the columns that accept null values

Except for columns that are assigned user-defined datatypes, each column has an explicit NULL or NOT NULL entry. You do not need to specify NOT NULL in the table definition, because it is the default. This table design specifies NOT NULL explicitly, for readability.

The NOT NULL default means that an entry is required for that column, for example, for the two name columns in this table. The other data is meaningless without the names. In addition, the gender column must be NOT NULL because you cannot use NULL with bit columns.

If a column is designated NULL and a default is bound to it, the default value, rather than NULL, is entered when no other value is given on input. If a column is designated NULL and a rule is bound to it that does not specify NULL, the column definition overrides the rule when no value is entered for the column. Columns can have both defaults and rules. The relationship between these two is discussed in Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

## Define the table

Now, write the create table statement:

```
create table friends_etc
  (pname      nm          not null,
   sname      nm          not null,
   address    varchar(30)  null,
   city       varchar(30)  not null,
   state      char(2)     not null,
   postalcode char(5)     null,
   phone      p#
   age        tinyint     null,
   bday       datetime    not null,
   gender     bit         not null,
   debt       money       not null,
   notes      varchar(255) null)
```

You have now defined columns for the personal name and surname, address, city, state, postal code, telephone number, age, birthday, gender, debt information, and notes. Later, you will create the rules, defaults, indexes, triggers, and views for this table.

## **Creating new tables from query results: *select into***

The *select into* command lets you create a new table based on the columns specified in the *select* statement's *select* list and the rows chosen in the *where* clause. The *into* clause is useful for creating test tables, new tables as copies of existing tables, and for making several smaller tables out of one large table. You can use *select into* on a permanent table only if the *select into/bulkcopy/pllsort* database option is set to on. A System Administrator can turn on this option using *sp\_dboption*. Use *sp\_helpdb* to see if this option is on.

Here is what *sp\_helpdb* and its results look like when the *select into/bulkcopy/pllsort* database option is set to on:

```
sp_helpdb pubs2
name      db_size owner    dbid     created      status
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
-----  -----
pubs      2 MB    sa        5       Jun 5 1997  select
into

/bulkcopy/pllsort

(1 row affected)

device          size      usage
-----  -----
master          2 MB    data and log

(1 row affected)
```

*sp\_helpdb* output indicates whether the option is set to on or off. Only the System Administrator or the Database Owner can set the database options.

If the select into/bulkcopy/plisort database option is on, you can use the select into clause to build a new permanent table without using a create table statement. You can select into a temporary table, even if the select into/bulkcopy/plisort option is not on.

---

**Note** Because select into is a minimally logged operation, use dump database to back up your database following a select into. You cannot dump the transaction log following a minimally logged operation.

---

Unlike a view that displays a portion of a table, a table created with select into is a separate, independent entity. See Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data,” for more information.

The new table is based on the columns you specify in the select list, the tables you name in the from clause, and the rows you choose in the where clause. The name of the new table must be unique in the database and must conform to the rules for identifiers.

A select statement with an into clause allows you to define a table and put data into it, based on existing definitions and data, without going through the usual data definition process.

The following example shows a select into statement and its results. A table called newtable is created, using two of the columns in the four-column table publishers. Because this statement includes no where clause, data from all the rows (but only the two specified columns) of publishers is copied into newtable.

```
select pub_id, pub_name  
into newtable  
from publishers  
(3 rows affected)
```

“3 rows affected” refers to the three rows inserted into newtable. Here’s what newtable looks like:

```
select *  
from newtable  
pub_id  pub_name  
-----  
0736    New Age Books  
0877    Binnet & Hardley  
1389    Algodata Infosystems  
(3 rows affected)
```

The new table contains the results of the select statement. It becomes part of the database, just like its parent table.

You can create a skeleton table with no data by putting a false condition in the where clause. For example:

```
select *
into newtable2
from publishers
where 1=2
(0 rows affected)
select *
from newtable2
pub_id      pub_name          city      state
-----  -----  -----  -----
(0 rows affected)
```

No rows are inserted into the new table, because 1 never equals 2.

You can also use select into with aggregate functions to create tables with summary data:

```
select type, "Total_amount" = sum(advance)
into #whatspent
from titles
group by type
(6 rows affected)
select * from #whatspent
type            Total_amount
-----
UNDECIDED           NULL
business           25,125.00
mod_cook            15,000.00
popular_comp        15,000.00
psychology          21,275.00
trad_cook           19,000.00
(6 rows affected)
```

Always supply a name for any column in the select into result table that results from an aggregate function or any other expression. Examples are:

- Arithmetic aggregates, for example, *amount \* 2*
- Concatenation, for example, *lname + fname*
- Functions, for example, *lower(lname)*

Here is an example of using concatenation:

```
select au_id,
      "Full_Name" = au_fname + ' ' + au_lname
  into #g_authortemp
   from authors
 where au_lname like "G%"
 (3 rows affected)
select * from #g_authortemp
    au_id      Full_Name
-----
213-46-8915 Marjorie Green
472-27-2349 Burt Gringlesby
527-72-3246 Morningstar Greene

(3 rows affected)
```

Because functions allow null values, any column in the table that results from a function other than convert() or isnull() allows null values.

## Checking for errors

select into is a two-step operation. The first step creates the new table and the second step inserts the specified rows into the table.

Because select into operations are not logged, they cannot be issued within user-defined transactions and cannot be rolled back.

If a select into statement fails after creating a new table, Adaptive Server does *not* automatically drop the table or deallocate its first data page. This means that any rows inserted on the first page before the error occurred remain on the page. Check the value of the @@error global variable after a select into statement to be sure that no error occurred.

If an error occurs from a select into operation, drop table to remove the new table, then reissue the select into statement.

## Using **select into** with IDENTITY columns

This section describes special rules for using the select into command with tables containing IDENTITY columns.

## Selecting an IDENTITY column into a new table

To select an existing IDENTITY column into a new table, include the column name (or the `syb_identity` keyword) in the `select` statement's `column_list`:

```
select column_list
      into table_name
        from table_name
```

The following example creates a new table, `stores_cal_pay30`, based on columns from the `stores_cal` table:

```
select record_id, stor_id, stor_name
      into stores_cal_pay30
        from stores_cal
       where payterms = "Net 30"
```

The new column inherits the IDENTITY property, unless any of the following conditions is true:

- The IDENTITY column is selected more than once.
- The IDENTITY column is selected as part of an expression.
- The select statement contains a group by clause, aggregate function, union operator, or join.

## Selecting the IDENTITY column more than once

A table cannot have more than one IDENTITY column. If an IDENTITY column is selected more than once, it is defined as NOT NULL in the new table. It does not inherit the IDENTITY property.

In the following example, the `record_id` column, which is selected once by name and once by the `syb_identity` keyword, is defined as NOT NULL in `stores_cal_pay60`:

```
select syb_identity, record_id, stor_id, stor_name
      into stores_cal_pay60
        from stores_cal
       where payterms = "Net 60"
```

## Adding a new IDENTITY column with `select into`

To define a new IDENTITY column in a `select into` statement, add the column definition before the `into` clause. The definition includes the column's precision but not its scale:

```
select column_list
      identity_column_name = identity(precision)
    into table_name
     from table_name
```

The following example creates a new table, *new\_discounts*, from the *discounts* table and adds a new IDENTITY column, *id\_col*:

```
select *, id_col=identity(5)
  into new_discounts
   from discounts
```

If the *column\_list* includes an existing IDENTITY column, and you add a description of a new IDENTITY column, the select into statement fails.

## Defining a column whose value must be computed

IDENTITY column values are generated by Adaptive Server. New columns that are based on IDENTITY columns, but whose values must be computed rather than generated, cannot inherit the IDENTITY property.

If a table's select statement includes an IDENTITY column as part of an expression, the resulting column value must be computed. The new column is created as NULL if any column in the expression allows a NULL value. Otherwise, it is NOT NULL.

In the following example, the *new\_id* column, which is computed by adding 1000 to the value of *record\_id*, is created NOT NULL:

```
select new_id = record_id + 1000, stor_name
  into new_stores
   from stores_cal
```

Column values are also computed if the select statement contains a group by clause or aggregate function. If the IDENTITY column is the argument of the aggregate function, the resulting column is created NULL. Otherwise, it is NOT NULL.

## IDENTITY columns selected into tables with unions or joins

The value of the IDENTITY column uniquely identifies each row in a table. However, if a table's select statement contains a union or join, individual rows can appear multiple times in the result set. An IDENTITY column that is selected into a table with a union or join does not retain the IDENTITY property. If the table contains the union of the IDENTITY column and a NULL column, the new column is defined as NULL. Otherwise, it is NOT NULL.

For more information, see “Using IDENTITY columns” on page 235 and “Updating IDENTITY columns” on page 332. See also select in the *Reference Manual*.

## Altering existing tables

Use the alter table command to change the structure of an existing table.

You can:

- Add columns and constraints
- Change column default values
- Add either null or non-null columns
- Drop columns and constraints
- Change locking scheme
- Partition or unpartition tables
- Convert column datatypes
- Convert the null default value of existing columns
- Increase or decrease column length

alter table includes the following syntax for modifying tables:

```
alter table table_name
  [add column_name datatype [identity | null |
    not null] [, column_name datatype [identity
    | null | not null]]]
  [drop column_name [, column_name]
    [modify column_name {[data_type]
      [[null] | [not null]]}
    [, column_name datatype [null | not null]]]]
```

Where:

- *table\_name* is the table you are altering.
- *datatype* is the datatype of the altered column.

You must have the *sa\_role* or be the object owner to run alter table. See the *Reference Manual* for the complete alter table syntax.

For example, by default, the *au\_lname* column of the authors table uses a *varchar(50)* datatype. To alter the *au\_lname* to use a *varchar(60)*, enter:

```
alter table authors  
modify au_lname varchar(60)
```

---

**Note** A variable cannot be used as the argument to a default that is part of an alter table statement.

---

Dropping, modifying, and adding non-null columns may perform a data copy, which has implications for required space and the locking scheme. See “Data copying” on page 284.

The modified table’s page chains inherits the table’s current configuration options (for example, if fillfactor is set to 50 percent, the new pages have this same fillfactor).

---

**Note** Adaptive Server does partial logging (of page allocations) for alter table operations. However, because alter table is performed as a transaction, you cannot dump the transaction log after running alter table; you must dump the database to ensure it is recoverable. If the server encounters any problems during the alter table operation, Adaptive Server rolls back the transaction.

---

alter table acquires an exclusive table lock while it is modifying the table schema. This lock is released as soon as the command is done.

alter table does not fire any triggers.

## Objects using *select \** do not list changes to table

If a database has any objects (stored procedures, triggers, and so on) that perform a select \* on a table from which you have dropped a column, an error message lists the missing column. This occurs even if you create the objects using the with recompile option. For example, if you dropped the postalcode column from the authors table, any stored procedure that performed a select \* on this table issues this error message:

```
Msg 207, Level 16, State 4:  
Procedure 'columns', Line 2:  
Invalid column name 'postalcode'.  
(return status = -6)
```

This message does not appear if you add a new column and then run an object containing a select \*; in this case, the new column does not appear in the output.

You must drop and re-create any objects that reference a dropped column.

## Using *alter table* on remote tables

You can use *alter table* to modify a remote table using Component Integration Services (CIS). Before you modify a remote table, make sure that CIS is running by entering:

```
sp_configure "enable cis"
```

If CIS is enabled, the output of this command is “1.” By default, CIS is enabled when you install Adaptive Server.

See the *System Administration Guide* for information about enabling configuration parameters. See the *Component Integration Services User’s Guide* for information about using CIS.

## Adding columns

To add a column to an existing table, use:

```
alter table table_name
  add column_name datatype
    [default {constant_expression} | user | null}]
    [{{identity | null | not null}} | [constraint constraint_name
      {constraint_clause}]
    [, column_name]]
```

Where:

- *table\_name* is the table to which you are adding a column.
- *column\_name* is the column you are adding.
- *constant\_expression* is the constant you want placed in the row if a user does not specify a value (this value must be in quotes, unless the character type is int, tinyint, smallint, numeric, or decimal).
- *constraint\_name* is the constraint you are adding to the table.
- *constraint\_clause* is the full text of the constraint you are adding. You can add any number of columns using a single *alter table* statement.

For example, the following adds a non-null column named `author_type`, which includes the constant “`primary_author`” as the default value, and a null column named `au_publisher` to the `authors` table:

```
alter table authors
add author_type varchar(20)
default "primary_author" not null,
au_publisher varchar(40) null
```

## Adding columns appends column IDs

`alter table` adds a column to the table with a column ID that is one greater than the current maximum column ID. For example, Table 7-5 lists the default column IDs of the `salesdetail` table:

**Table 7-5: Column IDs of the salesdetail table**

Column name	stor_id	ord_num	title_id	qty	discount
Col ID	1	2	3	4	5

This command appends the `store_name` column to the end of the `salesdetail` table with a column ID of 6:

```
alter table salesdetail
add store_name varchar(40)
default "unknown" not null
```

If you add another column, it will have a column ID of 7.

---

**Note** Because a table’s column IDs change as columns are added and dropped, your applications should never rely on them.

---

## Adding NOT NULL columns

You can add a NOT NULL column to a table. This means that a constant expression, and not a null value, is placed in the column when the column is added. This also ensures that, for all existing rows, the new column is populated with the specified constant expression when the table is created.

Adaptive Server issues an error message if a user fails to enter a value for a NOT NULL column.

The following adds the column `owner` to the `stores` table with a default value of “`unknown`”:

```
alter table stores
add owner_lname varchar(20)
default "unknown" not null
```

The default value can be a constant expression when adding NULL columns, but it can be a constant value only when adding a NOT NULL column (as in the example above).

## Adding constraints

To add a constraint to an existing column, use:

```
alter table table_name
add constraint constraint_name {constraint_clause}
```

Where:

- *table\_name* is the name of the table to which you are adding a constraint.
- *constraint\_name* is the constraint you are adding.
- *constraint\_clause* is the rule the constraint enforces.

For example, to add a constraint to the titles table that does not allow an advance in excess of 10,000:

```
alter table titles
add constraint advance_chk
check (advance < 10000)
```

If a user attempts to insert a value greater than 10,000 into the titles table, Adaptive Server produces an error message similar to this:

```
Msg 548, Level 16, State 1:
Line 1:Check constraint violation occurred,
dbname = 'pubs2',table name= 'titles',
constraint name = 'advance_chk'.
Command has been aborted.
```

Adding a constraint does not affect the existing data. Also, if you add a new column with a default value and specify a constraint on that column, the default value is not validated against the constraint.

For information about dropping a constraint, see “Dropping constraints” on page 278.

## Dropping columns

Drop a column from an existing table using:

```
alter table table_name
    drop column_name [, column_name]
```

Where:

- *table\_name* is the table that contains the column you are dropping.,
- *column\_name* is the column you are dropping.

You can drop any number of columns using a single alter table statement. However, you cannot drop the last remaining column from a table (for example, if you drop four columns from a five-column table, you cannot then drop the remaining column).

For example, to drop the advance and the contract columns from the titles table:

```
alter table titles
    drop advance, contract
```

alter table rebuilds all indexes on the table when it drops a column.

## Dropping columns renames the column ID

alter table renames column IDs when you drop a column from a table. Columns with IDs above the number of the dropped column move up one column ID to fill the gap that the dropped column leaves behind. For example, the titleauthor table contains these column names and column IDs:

**Table 7-6: titleauthor column IDs**

Column Name	au_id	title_id	au_ord	royaltyper
Column ID	1	2	3	4

If you drop the au\_ord column from the table:

```
alter table titleauthor drop au_ord
```

titleauthor now has these column names and column IDs:

**Table 7-7: Column IDs after dropping au\_ord**

Column Name	au_id	title_id	royaltyper
Column ID	1	2	3

The royaltyper column now has the column ID of 3. The nonclustered index on both title\_id and royaltyper are also rebuilt when au\_ord is dropped. Also, all instances of column IDs in different system catalogs are renumbered.

You will not generally notice the renumbering of column IDs.

---

**Note** Because a table's column IDs are renumbered as columns are added and dropped, your applications should never rely on them. If you have stored procedures or applications that depend on column IDs, you must rewrite these so they access the correct column IDs.

---

## Dropping constraints

To drop a constraint, use:

```
alter table table_name
drop constraint constraint_name
```

*table\_name* and *constraint\_name* have the same values as described in Adding constraints above.

For example, to drop the constraint created above:

```
alter table titles
drop constraint advance_chk
```

To find detailed information about a table's constraints, see “Using sp\_helpconstraint to find a table's constraint information” on page 297.

## Modifying columns

To modify an existing column, use:

```
alter table table_name
modify column column_name datatype [null | not null]
[null | not null]
[, column_name...]
```

Where:

- *table\_name* is the table that contains the column you are modifying.
- *column\_name* is the column you are modifying.
- *data\_type* is the datatype to which you are modifying the column.

You can modify any number of columns in a single alter table statement.

For example, this command changes the datatype of the type column in the titles table from char(12) to varchar(20) and makes it nullable:

```
alter table titles  
modify type varchar(20) null
```

---

**Warning!** You may have objects (stored procedures, triggers, and so on) that depend on a column having a particular datatype. Before you modify a column, make sure that any objects that reference it will be able to run successfully after the modification. Use sp\_depends to determine a table's dependent objects.

---

## Which datatypes can I convert?

You can only convert datatypes that are either implicitly or explicitly convertible to the new datatype, or if there is an explicit conversion function in Transact-SQL. See “Supported conversions” on page HIDDEN for a list of the supported datatype conversions. If you attempt an illegal datatype modification, Adaptive Server raises an error message and the operation is aborted.

---

**Note** You cannot convert an existing column datatype to the timestamp datatype, nor can you modify a column that uses the timestamp datatype to any other datatype.

---

If you issue the same alter table command more than once, Adaptive Server issues a message similar to this:

```
Warning: ALTER TABLE operation did not affect column  
'au_lname'.  
Msg 13905, Level 16, State 1:  
Server 'SYBASE1', Line 1:  
Warning: no columns to drop, add or modify. ALTER  
TABLE 'authors' was aborted.
```

## **Modifying tables may prevent successful bulk copy of previous dump**

Modifying either the length or datatype of a column may prevent you from successfully using bulk copy to copy in older dumps of the table. The older table schema may not be compatible with the new table schema. Before you modify a column's length or datatype, verify that it will not prevent you from copying in a previous dump of the table.

## **Decreasing column length may truncate data**

If you decrease the length of a column, make sure the reduced column length does not result in truncated data. For example, you could use alter table to reduce the length of the title column of the titles table from a varchar(80) to a varchar(2), but the data is meaningless:

```
select title from titles
title
-----
Bu
Co
Co
Em
Fi
Is
Li
Ne
On
Pr
Se
Si
St
Su
Th
Th
Th
Yo
```

Adaptive Server issues error messages about truncating the column data only if the set string\_r truncation option is turned on. If you need to truncate character data, set the appropriate string-truncation option and modify the column to decrease its length.

## Modifying datetime columns

If you modify a column from a char datatype to datetime or smalldatetime, you cannot specify the order that the month, day, and year appear in the output. Nor can you specify the language used in the output. Instead, both of these settings are given a default value. However, you can use set dateformat or set language to alter the output to match the setting of the information stored in the column. Also, Adaptive Server does not support modifying a column from smalldatetime to char datatype. See the *Reference Manual* for more information.

## Modifying the NULL default value of a column

If you are changing only the NULL default value of a column, you do not need to specify a column's datatype. For example, this command modifies the address column in the authors table from NULL to NOT NULL:

```
alter table authors  
modify address not null
```

If you modify a column and specify the datatype as NOT NULL, the operation succeeds as long as none of the rows have NULL values. If, however, any of the rows have a NULL value, the operation fails and any incomplete transactions are rolled back. For example, the following statement fails because the titles table contains NULL values for the *The Psychology of Computer Cooking*:

```
alter table titles  
modify advance numeric(15,5) not null  
Attempt to insert NULL value into column 'advance',  
table 'pubs2.dbo.titles';  
column does not allow nulls. Update fails.  
Command has been aborted.
```

To run this command successfully, update the table to change all NULL values of the modified column to NOT NULL, then reissue the command.

## Modifying columns that have precision or scale

Check the length of your data before you modify the column's scale.

If an alter table command causes a column value to lose precision (say from numeric(10,5) to numeric(5,5)), Adaptive Server aborts the statement. If this statement is part of a batch, the batch is aborted if the option is turned on.

If an alter table command causes a column value to lose scale (say from numeric(10, 5) to numeric(10,3), the rows are truncated without warning. This occurs whether or not arithabort numeric\_truncation is on or off.

If arithignore arith\_overflow is on and alter table causes a numeric overflow, Adaptive Server issues a warning. However, if arithignore arith\_overflow is off, Adaptive Server does not issue a warning if alter table causes a numeric overflow. By default, arithignore arith\_overflow is off when you install Adaptive Server.

---

**Note** Make sure you review the data truncation rules and fully understand their implications before issuing commands that may truncate the length of the columns in your production environment. You should first perform the commands on a set of test columns.

---

## Modifying *text* and *image* columns

text columns can only be converted to:

- nchar
- varchar

image columns can only be converted to:

- varbinary
- binary

You cannot modify char or varchar datatype columns to text columns. If you are converting from text to char or varchar, the maximum length of the column is governed by page size. If you do not specify a column length, alter table uses the default length of one byte. If you are modifying a multibyte character text or image column, and you do not specify a column length that is sufficient to contain the data, Adaptive Server truncates the data to fit the column length.

## Adding, dropping, and modifying IDENTITY columns

This section describes adding, dropping, and modifying IDENTITY columns using alter table. For a general discussion of IDENTITY columns, see “Using IDENTITY columns” on page 235.

## Adding IDENTITY columns

You can add IDENTITY columns only with a default value of NOT NULL. You cannot specify a default clause for a new IDENTITY column.

To add an IDENTITY column to a table, specify the identity keyword in the alter table statement:

```
alter table table_name add column_name
    numeric(precision,0) identity not null
```

The following example adds an IDENTITY column, record\_id, to the stores table:

```
alter table stores
    add record_id numeric(5,0) identity not null
```

When you add an IDENTITY column to a table, Adaptive Server assigns a unique sequential value, beginning with the value 1, to each row. If the table contains a large number of rows, this process can be time consuming. If the number of rows exceeds the maximum value allowed for the column (in this case,  $10^5 - 1$ , or 99,999), the alter table statement fails.

## Dropping IDENTITY columns

You can drop IDENTITY columns just like any other column. For example, to drop the IDENTITY column created in the previous section:

```
alter table stores
    drop record_id
```

However, the following restrictions apply to dropping an identity column:

- If sp\_dboption “identity in nonunique index” is turned on in the database. You must first drop all indexes, then drop the IDENTITY column, and then re-create the indexes.  
If the IDENTITY column is hidden, you must first identify it using the syb\_identity keyword. See “Referring to IDENTITY columns with syb\_identity” on page 238.
- To drop an IDENTITY column from a table that has set identity\_insert turned on, first issue sp\_helpdb to determine if set identity\_insert is turned on.

You must turn off the set identity\_insert option by issuing:

```
set identity_insert table_name off
```

Drop the IDENTITY column, then add the new IDENTITY column, and turn on the set identity\_insert option by entering:

```
set identity_insert table_name on
```

## Modifying IDENTITY columns

You can modify the size of an IDENTITY column to increase its range. This might be necessary if either your current range is too small, or the range was used up because of a server shutdown.

For example, you can increase the range of record\_id by entering:

```
alter table stores
modify record_id numeric(9,0)
```

You can decrease the range by specifying a smaller precision for the target datatype. Note that if the IDENTITY value in the table is too large for the range of the target IDENTITY column, an arithmetic conversion is raised and alter table aborts the statement.

You cannot add a non-null IDENTITY column to a partitioned table using alter table commands that require a data copy. Data copy is done in parallel for partitioned tables, and cannot guarantee unique IDENTITY values.

## Data copying

Adaptive Server performs a data copy only if it must temporarily copy data out of a table before it changes the table's schema. If the table has any indexes, Adaptive Server rebuilds the indexes when the data copy finishes.

---

**Note** If alter table is performing a data copy, the database that contains the table must have select into/bulkcopy/pllsort turned on. See the *Reference Manual* for information about this option.

---

Adaptive Server performs a data copy when:

- You drop a column.
- You modify any of these properties of a column:
  - The datatype (except when you increase the length of varchar, varbinary, or NULL char or NULL binary columns).
  - From NULL to NOT NULL, or vice-versa.

- Decrease length. If you decrease a column's length, you may not know beforehand if all the data will fit in the reduced column length. For example, if you decrease au\_lname to a varchar(30), it may contain a name that requires a varchar(35). When you decrease a column's data length, Adaptive Server first performs a data copy to ensure that the change in the column length is successful.
- You increase the length of a number column (for example, from tinyint to int). Adaptive Server performs data copying in case one row has a NOT NULL value for this column.
- You add a NOT NULL column.

`alter table` does not perform a data copy when:

- You change the length of either a varchar or a varbinary column.
- You change the user-defined datatype ID but the physical datatype does not change. For example, if your site has two datatypes mychar1 and mychar2 that have different user-defined datatypes but the same physical datatype, data copy does not happen if you change mychar1 to mychar2.
- You change the NULL default value of a variable length column from NOT NULL to NULL.

To identify if `alter table` performs a data copy:

- 1 Set `showplan on` to report whether Adaptive Server will perform a data copy.
- 2 Set `noexec on` to ensure that no work will be performed.
- 3 Perform the `alter table` command if no data copy is required, only catalog updates are performed to reflect the changes made by the `alter table` command.

## Changing `exp_row_size`

If you perform a data copy, you can also change the `exp_row_size`, which allows you to specify how much space to allow per row. You can change the `exp_row_size` only if the modified table schema contains variable length columns, and only to within the range specified by the `maxlen` and `minlen` values in `sysindexes` for the modified table schema.

If the column has fixed-length columns, you can change the `exp_row_size` to only 0 or 1. If you drop all the variable-length columns from a table, you must specify an `exp_row_size` of 0 or 1. Also, if you do not supply an `exp_row_size` with the alter table command, the old `exp_row_size` is used. Adaptive Server raises an error if the table contains only fixed-length columns and the old `exp_row_size` is not compatible with the modified schema.

You cannot use the `exp_row_size` clause with any of the other alter table subclauses (for example, defining a constraint, changing the locking scheme, and so on). You can also use `sp_chgattribute` to change the `exp_row_size`. For more information about changing the `exp_row_size` for both alter table and `sp_chgattribute`, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Modifying locking schemes and table schema

If `alter table` performs a data copy, you can also include a command to change the locking scheme of a table. For example, to modify the `au_lname` column of the `authors` table and change the locking scheme of the table from `allpages` locking to `datarows` locking:

```
alter table authors
  modify au_lname varchar(10)
  lock datarows
```

However, you cannot use `alter table` to change table schema and the locking scheme of a table that has a clustered index. If a table has a clustered index you can:

- 1 Drop the index.
- 2 Modify the table schema and change the locking scheme in the same statement (if the change in the table schema also includes a data copy).
- 3 Rebuild the clustered index.

Alternately, you can issue an `alter table` command to change the locking scheme, then issue another `alter table` command to change the table's schema.

## Altering columns with user defined datatypes

You can use alter table to add, drop, or modify columns that use user-defined datatypes.

### Adding a column with user-defined datatypes

Use the same syntax to add a column with a user-defined datatype as with a system-defined datatype. For example, to add a column to the authors table of pubs2 using the usertype datatype:

```
alter table titles  
add newcolumn usertype not null
```

The NULL or NOT NULL default you specify takes precedence over the default specified by the user-defined datatype. That is, if you add a column and specify NOT NULL as the default, the new column has a default of NOT NULL even if the user-defined datatype specifies NULL. If you do not specify NULL or NOT NULL, the default specified by the user-defined datatype is used.

You must supply a default clause when you add columns that are not null, unless the user-defined datatype already has a default bound to it.

If the user-defined datatype specifies IDENTITY column properties (precision and scale), the column is added as an IDENTITY column.

### Dropping a column with user-defined datatypes

Drop a column with a user-defined datatype the same as you drop a column with a system-defined datatype.

### Modifying a column with user-defined datatypes

The syntax to modify a column to include user-defined datatypes is the same as modifying a column to include system-defined datatypes. For example, to modify the au\_lname of the authors table to use the user-defined newtype datatype:

```
alter table authors  
modify au_lname newtype(60) not null
```

If you do not specify either NULL or NOT NULL as the default, columns use the default specified by the user-defined datatype.

Modifying the table does not affect any current rules or defaults bound to the column. However, if you specify new rules or defaults, any old rules or defaults bound to the user-defined datatype are dropped. If there are no previous rules or defaults bound to the column, any user-defined rules and defaults are applied.

You cannot modify an existing column to an IDENTITY column. You can only modify an existing IDENTITY column with user-defined datatypes that have IDENTITY column properties (precision and scale).

## Errors and warnings from *alter table*

Most errors you encounter when running alter table inform you of schema constructs that prevent the requested command (for example, if you try to drop a column that is part of an index). You must fix the errors or warnings that refer to schema objects that depend on the affected column before you reissue the command. To report error conditions:

- 1 Set showplan on.
- 2 Set noexec on.
- 3 Perform the alter table command.

After you have changed the command to address any reported errors, set showplan and noexec to off so that Adaptive Server actually performs the work.

*alter table* detects and reports certain errors when actually running the command (for example, if you are dropping a column, the presence of a referential constraint). All runtime data-dependent errors (for example, errors of numeric overflow, character truncation, and so on) can be identified only when the statement is executed. You must change the command to fit the data available, or fix the data value(s) to work with the required target datatypes the statement specifies. To identify these errors, you will have to run the command with noexec turned off.

## Errors and warnings generated by *alter table modify*

Certain errors are generated only by the alter table modify command. Although alter table modify is used to convert columns to compatible datatypes, alter table may issue errors if the columns you are converting have certain restrictions.

---

**Note** Make sure you understand the implications of modifying a datatype before you issue the command. Generally, use alter table modify only to implicitly convert between convertible datatypes. This ensures that any hidden conversions required during processing of insert and update statements do not fail because of datatype incompatibility.

---

For example, if you add a second\_advance column to the titles table with a datatype of int, and create a clustered index on second\_advance, you cannot then modify this column to a char datatype. This would cause the int values to be converted from integers (1, 2, 3) to strings ('1', '2', '3'). When the index is rebuilt with sorted data, the data values are expected to be in sorted order. But in this example, the datatype has changed from int to char and is no longer in sorted order for the char datatype's ordering sequence. So, the alter table command fails during the index rebuild phase.

Be very cautious when choosing a new datatype for columns that are part of index key columns of clustered indexes. alter table modify must specify a target datatype that will not violate the ordering sequence of the modified data values after its data copy phase.

alter table modify also issues a warning message if you modify the datatype to an incompatible datatype in a column that contains a constraint. For example, if you try to modify from datatype char to datatype int, and the column includes a constraint, alter table modify issues this warning:

```
Warning: a rule or constraint is defined on column  
'new_col' being modified. Verify the validity of  
rules and constraints after this ALTER TABLE  
operation.
```

This warning indicates that there might be some datatype inconsistency in the value that the constraint expects and the modified datatype of the column new\_col:

```
Warning: column 'new_col' is referenced by one or  
more rules or constraints. Verify the validity of the  
rules/constraints after this ALTER TABLE operation.
```

If you attempt to insert data that is a datatype char into this table, it fails with this message:

```
Msg 257, Level 16, State 1: Line 1: Implicit  
conversion from datatype 'CHAR' to 'INT' is not  
allowed. Use the CONVERT function to run this query.
```

The check constraint was defined to expect the column to be a datatype int, but the data being inserted is a datatype char.

Furthermore, you cannot insert the data as type int because column now uses a datatype of char. The insert returns this message:

```
Msg 257, Level 16, State 1: Line 1: Implicit  
conversion from datatype 'INT' to 'CHAR' is not  
allowed. Use the CONVERT function to run this query.
```

The modify operation is very flexible, but must be used with caution. In general, modifying to an implicitly convertible datatype works without errors. Modifying to an explicitly convertible datatype may lead to inconsistencies in the tables schema. Use sp\_depends to identify all column-level dependencies before modifying a column's datatype.

## Scripts generated by *if exists()...alter table*

Scripts that include constructs like the following may produce errors if the table described in the script does not include the specified column:

```
if exists (select 1 from syscolumns  
          where id = object_id("some_table")  
            and name = "some_column")  
begin  
    alter table some_table drop some_column  
end
```

In this example, *some\_column* *must* exist in *some\_table* for the batch to succeed.

If *some\_column* exists in *some\_table*, the first time you run the batch, alter table drops the column. On subsequent executions, the batch will not compile.

Adaptive Server raises these errors while preprocessing this batch, which are similar to those that are raised when a normal select tries to access a nonexistent column. These errors are raised when you modify a table's schema using clauses that require a data copy. If you add a null column, and use the above construct, Adaptive Server does not raise these errors.

To avoid such errors when you modify a table's schema, include alter table in an execute immediate command:

```
if exists (select 1 from syscolumns  
          where id = object_id("some_table")  
            and name = "some_column")  
begin  
    exec ("alter table some_table drop  
          some_column")  
end
```

Because the execute immediate statement is run only if the if exists() function succeeds, Adaptive Server does not raise any errors when it compiles this script.

You also need to use the execute immediate construct for other uses of alter table, for example, to change the locking scheme, and for any other cases when the command does not require data copy.

## Renaming tables and other objects

To rename tables and other database objects—columns, constraints, datatypes, views, indexes, rules, defaults, procedures, and triggers—use sp\_rename.

You must own an object to rename it. You cannot change the name of system objects or system datatypes. The Database Owner can change the name of any user's objects. Also, the object whose name you are changing must be in the current database.

To rename the database, use sp\_renamedb. See sp\_renamedb in the *Reference Manual*.

The syntax of sp\_rename is:

```
sp_rename objname, newname
```

For example, to change the name of friends\_etc to infotable:

```
sp_rename friends_etc, infotable
```

To rename a column, use:

```
sp_rename "table.column", newcolumnname
```

You must leave off the table name prefix from the new column name, or the new name will not be accepted.

To change the name of an index, use:

```
sp_rename "table.index", newindexname
```

Do not include the table name in the new name.

To change the name of the user datatype tid to t\_id, use:

```
exec sp_rename tid, "t_id"
```

## Renaming dependent Objects

When you rename objects, you must also change the text of any dependent procedure, trigger, or view to reflect the new object name. The original object name continues to appear in query results until you change the name of, and compile the procedure, trigger, or view. The safest course is to change the definitions of any **dependent** objects when you execute sp\_rename. You can get a list of dependent objects using sp\_depends.

You can use the defncopy utility program to copy the definitions of procedures, triggers, rules, defaults, and views into an operating system file. Edit this file to correct the object names, then use defncopy to copy the definition back into Adaptive Server. For more information on defncopy, refer to The *Utility Guide*.

# Dropping tables

Use drop table to remove a table from a database.

```
drop table [[database.]owner.] table_name  
[, [[database.]owner.] table_name]...
```

This command removes the specified tables from the database, together with their contents and all indexes and privileges associated with them. Rules or defaults bound to the table are no longer bound, but are otherwise not affected.

You must be the owner of a table in order to drop it. However, no one can drop a table while it is being read or written to by a user or a front-end program. You cannot use drop table on any system tables, either in the master database or in a user database.

You can drop a table in another database as long as you are the table owner.

If you delete all the rows in a table or use truncate table on it, the table exists until you drop it.

drop table and truncate table permission cannot be transferred to other users.

## Assigning permissions to users

The grant and revoke commands control the Adaptive Server command and object protection system. You can give various kinds of permissions to users, groups, and roles with the grant command and rescind them with the revoke command including:

- Creating databases
- Creating objects in a database
- Accessing tables, views, and columns
- Executing stored procedures

Some commands can be used at any time by any user, with no permissions required. Others can be used only by users of certain status (for example, a System Administrator) and cannot be transferred.

The ability to assign permissions for commands that can be granted and revoked is determined by each user's status (as System Administrator, Database Owner, or database object owner) and by whether a particular user has been granted a permission with the option to grant that permission to other users.

Database owners do not automatically receive permissions on objects that are owned by other users. But a Database Owner or System Administrator can acquire any permission by using the setuser command to temporarily assume the identity of the object owner, and then writing the appropriate grant or revoke statement.

You can assign two kinds of permissions with grant and revoke: **object access permissions** and **object creation permissions**.

Object access permissions regulate the use of certain commands that access certain database objects. For example, you must be granted permission to use the select command on the authors table. Object access permissions are granted and revoked by object owners.

To grant Mary and Joe the object access permission to insert into and delete from the titles table:

```
grant insert, delete  
on titles  
to mary, joe
```

Object creation permissions regulate the use of commands that create objects. These permissions can be granted only by a System Administrator or Database Owner.

For example, to revoke from Mary permission to create tables and rules in the current database:

```
revoke create table, create rule  
from mary
```

For complete information about using grant and revoke, see the *System Administration Guide*.

A System Security Officer can also use roles to simplify the task of granting and revoking access permissions.

For example, instead of having object owners grant privileges on each object individually to each employee, the System Security Officer can create roles, request object owners to grant privileges to each role, and grant these user-defined roles to individual employees, based on the functions they perform in the organization. The System Security Officer can also revoke user-defined roles granted to the employee.

For complete information about user-defined roles, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Getting information about databases and tables

Adaptive Server includes several procedures and functions you can use to get information about databases, tables, and other database objects. This section describes some of them. For complete information, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Getting help on databases

sp\_helpdb can report information about a specified database or about all Adaptive Server databases. It reports the name, size, and usage of each fragment you have assigned to the database.

```
sp_helpdb [dbname]
```

For example, to display a report on pubs2:

```
sp_helpdb pubs2
name      db_size    owner   dbid created           status
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
pubs2     2 MB       sa      4      Jun 18 1997      no
options set

(1 row affected)

device          size        usage
-----  -----  -----
pubsdev         2 MB       data + log

(1 row affected)
```

`sp_databases` lists all the databases on a server. For example:

```
sp_databases
database_name      database_size  remarks
-----  -----  -----
master             5120        NULL
model              2048        NULL
pubs2              2048        NULL
pubs3              2048        NULL
sybsecurity        5120        NULL
sybsystemprocs    30720       NULL
tempdb             2048        NULL

(7 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

To find out who owns a database, use `sp_helpuser`:

```
sp_helpuser dbo
Users_name      ID_in_db Group_name   Login_name
-----  -----  -----
dbo              1 public      sa

(return status = 0)
```

Use `db_id()` and `db_name()` to identify the current database. For example:

```
select db_name(), db_id()
-----
master                      1
```

## Getting help on database objects

Adaptive Server provides system procedures, catalog stored procedures, and built-in functions that return helpful information about database objects such as tables, columns, and constraints.

### Using `sp_help` on database objects

Use `sp_help` to display information about a specified database object (that is, any object listed in `sysobjects`), a specified datatype (listed in `systypes`), or all objects and datatypes in the current database.

`sp_help [objname]`

Here is the output for the publishers table:

Name	Owner	Type
publisher	dbo	user table

(1 row affected)

Data_located_on_segment	When_created
default	Jul 7 1997 1:43PM

Column_name	Type	Length	Prec	Scale
pub_id	char	4	NULL	NULL
pub_name	varchar	40	NULL	NULL
city	varchar	20	NULL	NULL
state	char	2	NULL	NULL

Nulls	Default_name	Rule_name	Identity
0	NULL	pub_idrule	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0

index_name	index_description	index_keys
index_max_rows_per_page		

pubind	clustered, unique	pub_id	0
	located on default		

```
(1 row affected)

keytype    object      related_object   related_keys
-----  -----
primary    publishers  -- none --       pub_id, *, *
*, *, *
foreign   titles      publishers      pub_id, *, *
*, *, *

(1 row affected)

Object is not partitioned.

(return status = 0)
```

If you execute `sp_help` without supplying an object name, the resulting report shows each object in `sysobjects`, along with its name, owner, and object type. Also shown is each user-defined datatype in `systypes` and its name, storage type, length, whether null values are allowed, and any defaults or rules bound to it. The report also notes if any primary or **foreign key** columns have been defined for a table or view.

`sp_help` lists any indexes on a table, including those created by defining unique or primary key constraints. However, it does not describe any information about the integrity constraints defined for a table. Use `sp_helpconstraint` to display information about any integrity constraints.

## Using `sp_helpconstraint` to find a table's constraint information

`sp_helpconstraint` reports information about the declarative referential integrity constraints specified for a table, including the constraint name and definition of the default, unique or primary key constraint, referential, or check constraint. `sp_helpconstraint` also reports the number of references associated with the specified tables.

Its syntax is:

```
sp_helpconstraint [objname] [, detail]
```

*objname* is the name of the table being queried. If you do not include a table name, `sp_helpconstraint` displays the number of references associated with each table in the current database. With a table name, `sp_helpconstraint` reports the name, definition, and number of integrity constraints associated with the table. The `detail` option also returns information about the constraint's user or error messages.

For example, suppose you run `sp_helpconstraint` on the `store_employees` table in `pubs3`.

```
name          defn
-----
-----  
store_empl_stor_i_272004000  store_employees  
FOREIGN KEY  
                               (stor_id) REFERENCES  
stores(stor_id)  
store_empl_mgr_id_288004057  store_employees  
FOREIGN KEY  
                               (mgr_id) SELF REFERENCES  
store_employees(emp_id) :  
UNIQUE INDEX( emp_id ) :  
NONCLUSTERED, FOREIGN  
REFERENCE  
  
( 3 rows affected)
```

Total Number of Referential Constraints: 2

Details:

- Number of references made by this table: 2
- Number of references to this table: 1
- Number of self references to this table: 1

Formula for Calculation:

Total Number of Referential Constraints  
= Number of references made by this table  
+ Number of references made to this table  
- Number of self references within this table

To find the largest number of referential constraints associated with any table in the current database, run `sp_helpconstraint` without specifying a table name, for example:

```
sp_helpconstraint  
id      name  
Num_referential_constraints
-----
-----  
-----  
80003316 titles  
4  
16003088 authors  
3  
176003658 stores  
3
```

```
256003943 salesdetail
3
208003772 sales
2
336004228 titleauthor
2
896006223 store_employees
2
48003202 publishers
1
128003487 roysched
1
400004456 discounts
1
448004627 au_pix
1
496004798 blurbs
1

(11 rows affected)
```

In this report, the titles table has the largest number of referential constraints in the pubs3 database.

## Finding out how much space a table uses

Use sp\_spaceused to find out how much space a table uses:

```
sp_spaceused [objname]
```

sp\_spaceused computes and displays the number of rows and data pages used by a table or a clustered or nonclustered index.

To display a report on the space used by the titles table:

```
sp_spaceused titles
name      rows   reserved   data   index_size   unused
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
titles    18      48 KB      6 KB     4 KB      38 KB

(0 rows affected)
```

If you do not include an object name, sp\_spaceused displays a summary of space used by all database objects.

## **Listing tables, columns, and datatypes**

Catalog stored procedures retrieve information from the system tables in tabular form. You can supply wildcard characters for some parameters.

`sp_tables` lists all user tables in a database when used in the following format:

```
sp_tables @table_type = "TABLE"
```

`sp_columns` returns the datatype of any or all columns in one or more tables in a database. You can use wildcard characters to get information about more than one table or column.

For example, the following command returns information about all columns that includes the string “id” in all the tables with “sales” in their name:

```
      salesdetail      title_id
      12      varchar      6      6      NULL  NULL 0
      NULL

      39          3

(3 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

## Finding an object name and ID

Use `object_id()` and `object_name()` to identify the ID and name of an object. For example:

```
select object_id("titles")
-----
208003772
```

Object names and IDs are stored in the `sysobjects` system table.



# Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data

After you create a database, tables, and indexes, you can put data into the tables and work with it—adding, changing, and deleting data as necessary.

This chapter covers the following topics:

Topic	Page
Introduction	303
Datatype entry rules	306
Adding new data	315
Changing existing data	327
Changing text and image data	332
Deleting data	333
Deleting all rows from a table	336

## Introduction

The commands you use to add, change, or delete data are called **data modification statements**. These commands are:

- `insert` – adds new rows to a table.
- `update` – changes existing rows in a table.
- `writetext` – adds or changes text and image data without writing lengthy changes in the system’s transaction log.
- `delete` – removes specific rows from a table.
- `truncate table` – removes all rows from a table.

For information about these commands, see the *Reference Manual*.

You can also add data to a table by transferring it from a file using the bulk copy utility program `bcp`. See the *Utility Guide* for your platform for more information.

You can use insert, update, or delete to modify data in one table per statement. A Transact-SQL enhancement to these commands is that you can base modifications on data in other tables, and even other databases.

The data modification commands also work on views, with some restrictions. See Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data.”

## Permissions

Data modification commands are not necessarily available to everyone. The Database Owner and the owners of database objects can use the grant and revoke commands to specify the users who have data modification functions.

Permissions or privileges can be granted to individual users, groups, or the public for any combination of the data modification commands. Permissions are discussed in the *System Administration Guide*.

## Referential integrity

insert, update, delete, writetext, and truncate table allow you to change data without changing related data in other tables, however, disparities may develop.

For example, if you change the au\_id entry for Sylvia Panteley in the authors table, you must also change it in the titleauthor table and in any other table in the database that has a column containing that value. If you do not, you cannot find information such as the names of Ms. Panteley’s books, because you cannot make joins on her au\_id column.

Keeping data modifications consistent throughout all tables in a database is called **referential integrity**. One way to manage it is to define referential integrity constraints for the table. Another way is to create special procedures called triggers that take effect when you give insert, update, and delete commands for particular tables or columns (the truncate table command is not caught by triggers or referential integrity constraints). See Chapter 16, “Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity”; and Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”

To delete data from referential integrity tables, change the referenced tables first and then the referencing table.

## Transactions

A copy of the old and new state of each row affected by each data modification statement is written to the transaction log. This means that if you begin a transaction by issuing the begin transaction command, realize you have made a mistake, and roll the transaction back, the database is restored to its previous condition.

---

**Note** You cannot roll back changes made on a remote Adaptive Server by means of a remote procedure call (RPC).

---

An exception is writetext, when the select/into bulkcopy database option is set to false.

The default mode of operation for writetext does *not* log the transactions. This avoids filling up the transaction log with the extremely long blocks of data that text and image fields may contain. The with log option to the writetext command must be used to log changes made with this command.

A more complete discussion of transactions appears in Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

## Using the sample databases

If you follow the examples in this chapter, Sybase suggests that you start with a clean copy of the pubs2 or pubs3 database and return it to that state when you are finished. See a System Administrator for help in getting a clean copy of either of these databases.

You can prevent any changes you make from becoming permanent by enclosing all the statements you enter inside a transaction, and then aborting the transaction when you are finished with this chapter. For example, start the transaction by typing:

```
begin tran modify_pubs2
```

This transaction is named modify\_pubs2. You can cancel the transaction at any time and return the database to the condition it was in before you began the transaction by typing:

```
rollback tran modify_pubs2
```

## Datatype entry rules

Several of the Adaptive Server-supplied datatypes have special rules for entering and searching for data. For more information on datatypes, see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”

### ***char, nchar, unichar, univarchar, varchar, nvarchar, and text***

All character, text, and datetime data must be enclosed in single or double quotes when you enter it as a literal. Use single quotes if the quoted\_identifier option of the set command is set on. If you use double quotes, Adaptive Server treats the text as an identifier.

Character literals may be any length, whatever the logical page size of the database. If the literal is wider than 16 kilobytes (16384 bytes), Adaptive Server treats it as text data, which has restrictive rules regarding implicit and explicit conversion to other datatypes. See the Reference Manual for a discussion of the different behavior of character and text datatypes.

When you insert character data into a char, nchar, unichar, univarchar, varchar, or nvarchar column whose specified length is less than the length of the data, the entry is truncated. Set the string\_rtruncation option on to receive a warning message when this occurs.

---

**Note** This truncation rule applies to all character data, whether it resides in a column, a variable, or a literal string.

---

There are two ways to specify literal quotes within a character entry:

- Use two quotes. For example, if you begin a character entry with a single quote and you want to include a single quote as part of the entry, use two single quotes: 'I don't 'understand.' For double quotes: "He said, ""It's not really confusing."""
- Enclose the quoted material in the opposite kind of quotation mark. In other words, surround an entry containing a double quote with single quotes, or vice versa. For example: 'George said, "There must be a better way." '

To enter a character string that is longer than the width of your screen, enter a backslash () before going to the next line.

Use the `like` keyword and wildcard characters described in Chapter 2, “Queries: Selecting Data from a Table,” to search for character, text, and datetime data.

See the *Reference Manual* for details on inserting text data and information about trailing blanks in character data.

## ***datetime* and *smalldatetime***

Display and entry formats for datetime data provide a wide range of date output formats, and recognize a variety of input formats. The display and entry formats are controlled separately. The default display format provides output that looks like “Apr 15 1997 10:23PM”. The `convert` command provides options to display seconds and milliseconds and to display the date with other date-part ordering. See Chapter 10, “Using the Built-In Functions in Queries,” for more information on displaying date values.

Adaptive Server recognizes a wide variety of data entry formats for dates. Case is always ignored, and spaces can occur anywhere between date parts. When you enter `datetime` and `smalldatetime` values, always enclose them in single or double quotes. Use single quotes if the `quoted_identifier` option is on; if you use double quotes, Adaptive Server treats the entry as an identifier.

Adaptive Server recognizes the two date and time portions of the data separately, so the time can precede or follow the date. Either portion can be omitted, in which case Adaptive Server uses the default. The default date and time is January 1, 1900, 12:00:00:000AM.

For `datetime`, the earliest date you can use is January 1, 1753; the latest is December 31, 9999. For `smalldatetime`, the earliest date you can use is January 1, 1900; the latest is June 6, 2079. Dates earlier or later than these dates must be entered, stored, and manipulated as `char`, or `unichar`; or `varchar` or `univarchar` values. Adaptive Server rejects all values it cannot recognize as dates between those ranges.

## Entering times

The order of time components is significant for the time portion of the data. First, enter the hours; then minutes; then seconds; then milliseconds; then AM (or am) or PM (pm). 12AM is midnight; 12PM is noon. To be recognized as time, a value must contain either a colon or an AM or PM signifier. smalldatetime is accurate only to the minute.

Milliseconds can be preceded by either a colon or a period. If preceded by a colon, the number means thousandths of a second. If preceded by a period, a single digit means tenths of a second, two digits mean hundredths of a second, and three digits mean thousandths of a second.

For example, “12:30:20:1” means 20 and one-thousandth of a second past 12:30; “12:30:20.1” means 20 and one-tenth of a second past 12:30.

Among the acceptable formats for time data are:

```
14:30  
14:30[:20:999]  
14:30[:20.9]  
4am  
4 PM  
[0]4[:30:20:500]AM
```

## Entering dates

The set dateformat command specifies the order of the date parts (month, day, and year) when dates are entered as strings of numbers with separators. set language can also affect the format for dates, depending on the default date format for the language you specify. The default language is us\_english, and the default date format is *mdy*. See the set command in the *Reference Manual* for more information.

---

**Note** dateformat affects only the dates entered as numbers with separators, such as “4/15/90” or “20.05.88”. It does not affect dates where the month is provided in alphabetic format, such as “April 15, 1990” or where there are no separators, such as “19890415”.

---

## Date formats

Adaptive Server recognizes three basic date formats, as described below. Each format must be enclosed in quotes and can be preceded or followed by a time specification, as described under “Entering times” on page 308.

- The month is entered in alphabetic format.
- Valid formats for specifying the date alphabetically are:

```
Apr[il] [15][,] 1997  
Apr[il] 15[,] [19]97  
Apr[il] 1997 [15]  
[15] Apr[il][,] 1997  
15 Apr[il][,] [19]97  
15 [19]97 apr[il]  
[15] 1997 apr[il]  
1997 APR[IL] [15]  
1997 [15] APR[IL]
```

- Month can be a three-character abbreviation, or the full month name, as given in the specification for the current language.
- Commas are optional.
- Case is ignored.
- If you specify only the last two digits of the year, values of less than 50 are interpreted as “20yy”, and values of 50 or more are interpreted as “19yy”.
- Type the century only when the day is omitted or when you need a century other than the default.
- If the day is missing, Adaptive Server defaults to the first day of the month.
- When you specify the month in alphabetic format, the *dateformat* setting is ignored (see the *set* command in the *Reference Manual*).
- The month is entered in numeric format, in a string with a slash (/), hyphen (-), or period (.) separator.
  - The month, day, and year must be specified.
  - The strings must be in the form:

<num> <sep> <num> <sep> <num> [ <time spec> ]

or:

[ <time spec> ] <num> <sep> <num> <sep> <num>

- The interpretation of the values of the date parts depends on the `dateformat` setting. If the ordering does not match the setting, either the values will not be interpreted as dates, because the values are out of range, or the values will be misinterpreted. For example, “12/10/08” could be interpreted as one of six different dates, depending on the `dateformat` setting. See the `set` command in the *Reference Manual* for more information.
- To enter “April 15, 1997” in *mdy* `dateformat`, you can use these formats:

```
[0]4/15/[19]97  
[0]4-15-[19]97  
[0]4.15.[19]97
```

- The other entry orders are shown below with “/” as a separator; you can also use hyphens or periods:

```
15/[0]4/[19]97 (dmy)  
1997/[0]4/15 (ymd)  
1997/15/[0]4 (ydm)  
[0]4/[19]97/15 (myd)  
15/[19]97/[0]4 (dym)
```

- The date is given as an unseparated four-, six-, or eight-digit string, or as an empty string, or only the time value, but no date value, is given.
  - The `dateformat` is always ignored with this entry format.
  - If four digits are given, the string is interpreted as the year, and the month is set to January, the day to the first of the month. The century cannot be omitted.
  - Six- or eight-digit strings are always interpreted as *ymd*; the month and day must always be two digits. This format is recognized: [19]960415.
  - An empty string (“”) or missing date is interpreted as the base date, January 1, 1900. For example, a time value like “4:33” without a date is interpreted as “January 1, 1900, 4:33AM”.

The set datefirst command specifies the day of the week (Sunday, Monday, and so on) when weekday or dw is used with datename, and a corresponding number when used with datepart. Changing the language with set language can also affect the format for dates, depending on the default first day of the week value for the language. For the default language of us\_english, the default datefirst setting is Sunday=1, Monday=2, and so on; others produce Monday=1, Tuesday=2, and so on. The default behavior can be changed on a per-session basis with set datefirst. See the set command in the *Reference Manual* for more information.

## Searching for dates and times

You can use the like keyword and wildcard characters with datetime and smalldatetime data as well as with char, unichar, nchar, varchar, univarchar, nvarchar, and text. When you use like with datetime or smalldatetime values, Adaptive Server first converts the dates to the standard datetime format and then converts them to varchar or univarchar. Since the standard display format does not include seconds or milliseconds, you cannot search for seconds or milliseconds with like and a match pattern. Use the type conversion function, convert, to search for seconds and milliseconds.

It is a good idea to use like when you search for datetime or smalldatetime values, because datetime or smalldatetime entries may contain a variety of date parts. For example, if you insert the value “9:20” into a column named arrival\_time, the following clause would not find it because Adaptive Server converts the entry to “Jan 1, 1900 9:20AM”:

```
where arrival_time = "9:20"
```

However, this clause would find it:

```
where arrival_time like "%9:20%"
```

If you are using like, and the day of the month is less than 10, you must insert two spaces between the month and day to match the varchar conversion of the datetime value. Similarly, if the hour is less than 10, the conversion places two spaces between the year and the hour. The clause like May 2%, with one space between “May” and “2”, will find all dates from May 20 through May 29, but not May 2. You do not need to insert the extra space with other date comparisons, only with like, since the datetime values are converted to varchar only for the like comparison.

## ***binary, varbinary, and image***

When you enter binary, varbinary, or image data as literals, you must precede the data by “0x”. For example, to enter “FF”, type “0xFF”. Do not, however, enclose data beginning with “0x” with quotation marks.

Binary literals may be any length, whatever the logical page size of the database. If the length of the literal is less than 16 kilobytes (16384 bytes), Adaptive Server treats the literal as varbinary data. If the length of the literal is greater than 16 kilobytes, Adaptive Server treats it as image data. See the Reference Manual for the different behaviors of binary datatypes and image datatypes.

When you insert binary data into a column whose specified length is less than the length of the data, the entry is truncated without warning.

A length of 10 for a binary or varbinary column means 10 bytes, each storing 2 hexadecimal digits.

When you create a default on a binary or varbinary column, precede it with “0x”.

See the *Reference Manual* for information on trailing zeros in hexadecimal values.

## ***money and smallmoney***

Monetary values entered with the E notation are interpreted as float. This may cause an entry to be rejected or to lose some of its precision when it is stored as a money or smallmoney value.

money and smallmoney values can be entered with or without a preceding currency symbol such as the dollar sign (\$), yen sign (¥) or pound sterling sign (£). To enter a negative value, place the minus sign after the currency symbol. Do not include commas in your entry.

You cannot enter money or smallmoney values with commas, although the default print format for money or smallmoney data places a comma after every three digits. When money or smallmoney values are displayed, they are rounded up to the nearest cent. All the arithmetic operations except modulo are available with money.

## **float, real, and double precision**

You enter the approximate numeric types—float, real, and double precision—as a **mantissa** followed by an optional exponent. The mantissa can include a positive or negative sign and a decimal point. The exponent, which begins after the character “e” or “E”, can include a sign but not a decimal point.

To evaluate approximate numeric data, Adaptive Server multiplies the mantissa by 10 raised to the given exponent. Table 8-1 shows examples of float, real, and double precision data:

**Table 8-1: Evaluating numeric data**

Data Entered	Mantissa	Exponent	Value
10E2	10	2	$10 * 10^2$
15.3e1	15.3	1	$15.3 * 10^1$
-2.e5	-2	5	$-2 * 10^5$
2.2e-1	2.2	-1	$2.2 * 10^{-1}$
+56E+2	56	2	$56 * 10^2$

The column’s binary precision determines the maximum number of binary digits allowed in the mantissa. For float columns, you can specify a precision of up to 48 digits; for real and double precision columns, the precision is machine-dependent. If a value exceeds the column’s binary precision, Adaptive Server flags the entry as an error.

## **decimal and numeric**

The exact numeric types—dec, decimal, and numeric—begin with an optional positive or negative sign and can include a decimal point. The value of exact numeric data depends on the column’s decimal *precision* and *scale*, which you specify using this syntax:

*datatype* [(*precision* [, *scale* ])]

Adaptive Server treats each combination of precision and scale as a distinct datatype. For example, numeric (10,0) and numeric (5,0) are two separate datatypes. The precision and scale determine the range of values that can be stored in a decimal or numeric column:

- The precision specifies the maximum number of decimal digits that can be stored in the column. It includes all digits to the right and left of the decimal point. You can specify a precision ranging from 1 to 38 digits or use the default precision of 18 digits.

- The scale specifies the maximum number of digits that can be stored to the right of the decimal point. The scale must be less than or equal to the precision. You can specify a scale ranging from 0 to 38 digits or use the default scale of 0 digits.

If a value exceeds the column's precision or scale, Adaptive Server flags the entry as an error. Here are some examples of valid dec and numeric data:

**Table 8-2: Valid precision and scale for numeric data**

Data Entered	Datatype	Precision	Scale	Value
12.345	numeric(5,3)	5	3	12.345
-1234.567	dec(8,4)	8	4	-1234.567

The following entries result in errors because they exceed the column's precision or scale:

**Table 8-3: Invalid precision and scale for numeric data**

Data Entered	Datatype	Precision	Scale
1234.567	numeric(3,3)	3	3
1234.567	decimal(6)	6	1

## ***int, smallint, and tinyint***

You can insert numeric values into int, smallint, and tinyint columns with the E notation, as described in the preceding section.

## ***timestamp***

You cannot insert data into a timestamp column. You must either insert an explicit null by typing “NULL” in the column or use an implicit null by providing a column list that skips the timestamp column. Adaptive Server updates the timestamp value after each insert or update. See “Inserting data into specific columns” on page 316 for more information.

## Adding new data

You can use the `insert` command to add rows to the database in two ways; with the `values` keyword or with a `select` statement:

- The `values` keyword specifies values for some or all of the columns in a new row. A simplified version of the syntax for the `insert` command using the `values` keyword is:

```
insert table_name
      values (constant1, constant2, ...)
```

- You can use a `select` statement in an `insert` statement to pull values from one or more tables (up to a limit of 16 tables, including the table into which you are inserting). A simplified version of the syntax for the `insert` command using a `select` statement is:

```
insert table_name
      select column_list
            from table_list
              where search_conditions
```

### ***insert* syntax**

Here is the full syntax for the `insert` command:

```
insert [into] [database.[owner.]] {table_name |
    view_name} [(column_list)]
      {values (constant_expression
        [, constant_expression]...)} | select_statement}
```

---

**Note** When you add text or image values with `insert`, all the data is written to the transaction log. You can use the `writetext` command to add these values without logging the long chunks of data that may comprise text or image values. See “Inserting data into specific columns” on page 316 and “Changing text and image data” on page 332.

---

## Adding new rows with `values`

This `insert` statement adds a new row to the `publishers` table, giving a value for every column in the row:

```
insert into publishers
      values ("1622", "Jardin, Inc.", "Camden", "NJ")
```

Notice that the data values are typed in the same order as the column names in the original create table statement, that is, first the ID number, then the name, then the city, and, finally, the state. The values data is surrounded by parentheses and all character data is enclosed in single or double quotes.

Use a separate insert statement for each row you add.

## Inserting data into specific columns

You can add data to some columns in a row by specifying only those columns and their data. All other columns that are not included in the column list must be defined to allow null values. The skipped columns can accept defaults. If you skip a column that has a default bound to it, the default is used.

You may especially want to use this form of the insert command to insert all of the values in a row except the text or image values, and then use writetext to insert the long data values so that these values are not stored in the transaction log. You can also use this form of the command to skip over timestamp data.

Adding data in only two columns, for example, pub\_id and pub\_name, requires a command like this:

```
insert into publishers (pub_id, pub_name)
values ("1756", "The Health Center")
```

The order in which you list the column names must match the order in which you list the values. The following example produces the same results as the previous one:

```
insert publishers (pub_name, pub_id)
values("The Health Center", "1756")
```

Either of the insert statements places “1756” in the identification number column and “The Health Center” in the publisher name column. Since the pub\_id column in publishers has a unique index, you cannot execute both of these insert statements; the second attempt to insert a pub\_id value of “1756” produces an error message.

The following select statement shows the row that was added to publishers:

```
select *
from publishers
where pub_name = "The Health Center"
```

pub_id	pub_name	city	state
1756	The Health Center	NULL	NULL

Adaptive Server enters null values in the city and state columns because no value was given for these columns in the insert statement, and the publisher table allows null values in these columns.

## Restricting column data: rules

You can create a rule and bind it to a column or user-defined datatype. Rules govern the kind of data that can or cannot be added.

The pub\_id column of the publishers table is an example. A rule called pub\_idrule, which specifies acceptable publisher identification numbers, is bound to the column. The acceptable IDs are “1389”, “0736”, “0877”, “1622”, and “1756” or any four-digit number beginning with “99”. If you enter any other number, you get an error message.

When you get this kind of error message, you may want to use sp\_helptext to look at the definition of the rule:

```
sp_helptext pub_idrule
-----
1

(1 row affected)

text
-----
create rule pub_idrule
as @pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877", "1622",
"1756")
or @pub_id like "99[0-9][0-9]"

(1 row affected)
```

For more general information on a specific rule, use sp\_help. Or use sp\_help with a table name as a parameter to find out if any of the columns has a rule. See Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data.”

## Using the NULL character string

Only columns for which NULL was specified in the create table statement and into which you have explicitly entered NULL (no quotes), or into which no data has been entered, contain null values. Avoid entering the character string “NULL” (with quotes) as data for a character column. It can only lead to confusion. Use “N/A” or “none” or a similar value instead. When you want to enter the value NULL explicitly, do *not* use single or double quotes.

To explicitly insert NULL into a column:

```
values({expression | null}
      [, {expression | null}]...)
```

The following example shows two equivalent insert statements. In the first statement, the user explicitly inserts a NULL into column t1. In the second, Adaptive Server provides a NULL value for t1 because the user has not specified an explicit column value:

```
create table test
  (t1 char(10) null, t2 char(10) not null)
insert test
values (null, "stuff")
insert test (t2)
values ("stuff")
```

## NULL is not an empty string

The empty string (“ ”or ‘ ’) is always stored as a single space in variables and column data. This concatenation statement is equivalent to “abc def”, not “abcdef”:

```
"abc" + " " + "def"
```

The empty string is never evaluated as NULL.

## Inserting NULLs into columns that do not allow them

To insert data with select from a table that has null values in some fields into a table that does not allow null values, you must provide a substitute value for any NULL entries in the original table. For example, to insert data into an advances table that does not allow null values, this example substitutes “0” for the NULL fields:

```
insert advances
select pub_id, isnull(advance, 0) from titles
```

Without the `isnull` function, this command inserts all the rows with non-null values into `advances` and produces error messages for all the rows where the `advance` column in `titles` contains `NULL`.

If you cannot make this kind of substitution for your data, you cannot insert data containing null values into columns with a NOT NULL specification.

## Adding rows without values in all columns

When you specify values for only some of the columns in a row, one of four things can happen to the columns with no values:

- If a default value exists for the column or user-defined datatype of the column it is entered. See Chapter 12, “Defining Defaults and Rules for Data,” or `create default` in the *Reference Manual* for details.
- If `NULL` was specified for the column when the table was created and no default value exists for the column or datatype, `NULL` is entered. See also `create table` in the *Reference Manual*.
- If the column has the IDENTITY property, a unique, sequential value is entered.
- If `NULL` was not specified for the column when the table was created and no default exists, Adaptive Server rejects the row and displays an error message.

Table 8-4 shows what you would see under these circumstances:

**Table 8-4: Columns with no values**

Default Exists for Column or Datatype	Column Defined NOT NULL	Column Defined to Allow NULL	Column Is IDENTITY
Yes	The default	The default	Next sequential value
No	Error message	NULL	Next sequential value

You can use `sp_help` to get a report on a specified table or default or on any other object listed in the system table `sysobjects`. To see the definition of a default, use `sp_helptext`.

## Changing a column’s value to NULL

To set a column value to `NULL`, use the `update` statement:

```
set column_name = {expression | null}
[, column_name = {expression | null}]...
```

For example, to find all rows in which the title\_id is TC3218 and replace the advance with NULL:

```
update titles
set advance = null
where title_id = "TC3218"
```

## Adaptive Server-generated values for IDENTITY columns

When you insert a row into a table with an IDENTITY column, Adaptive Server automatically generates the column value. Do not include the name of the IDENTITY column in the column list or its value in the values list.

This insert statement adds a new row to the sales\_daily table. Notice that the column list does not include the IDENTITY column, row\_id:

```
insert sales_daily (stor_id)
values ("7896")
```

The following statement shows the row that was added to sales\_daily. Adaptive Server automatically generated the next sequential value, 2, for row\_id:

```
select * from sales_daily
where stor_id = "7896"
sale_id      stor_id
-----      -----
1            7896
```

(1 row affected)

## Explicitly inserting data into an IDENTITY column

At times, you may want to insert a specific value into an IDENTITY column, rather than accept a server-generated value. For example, you may want the first row inserted into the table to have an IDENTITY value of 101, rather than 1. Or you may need to reinsert a row that was deleted by mistake.

The table owner can explicitly insert a value into an IDENTITY column. The Database Owner and System Administrator can explicitly insert a value into an IDENTITY column if they have been granted explicit permission by the table owner or if they are acting as the table owner through the setuser command.

Before inserting the data, set the `identity_insert` option on for the table. You can set `identity_insert` on for only one table at a time in a database within a session.

This example specifies a “seed” value of 101 for the `IDENTITY` column:

```
set identity_insert sales_daily on
insert sales_daily (syb_identity, stor_id)
values (101, "1349")
```

The `insert` statement lists each column, including the `IDENTITY` column, for which a value is specified. When the `identity_insert` option is set to on, each `insert` statement for the table must specify an explicit column list. The `values` list must specify an `IDENTITY` column value, since `IDENTITY` columns do not allow null values.

After you set `identity_insert` off, you can insert `IDENTITY` column values automatically, without specifying the `IDENTITY` column, as before.

Subsequent insertions use `IDENTITY` values based on the value explicitly specified after you set `identity_insert` on. For example, if you specify 101 for the `IDENTITY` column, subsequent insertions would be 102, 103, and so on.

---

**Note** Adaptive Server does not enforce the uniqueness of the inserted value. You can specify any positive integer within the range allowed by the column’s declared precision. To ensure that only unique column values are accepted, create a unique index on the `IDENTITY` column before inserting any rows.

---

## Retrieving `IDENTITY` column values with `@@identity`

Use the `@@identity` global variable to retrieve the last value inserted into an `IDENTITY` column. The value of `@@identity` changes each time an `insert`, `select into`, or `bcp` statement attempts to insert a row into a table.

`@@identity` does not revert to its previous value if the `insert`, `select into`, or `bcp` statement fails or if the transaction that contains it is rolled back. If the statement affects a table without an `IDENTITY` column, `@@identity` is set to 0.

- If the statement inserts multiple rows, `@@identity` reflects the last value inserted into the `IDENTITY` column.

The value for `@@identity` within a stored procedure or trigger does not affect the value outside the stored procedure or trigger. For example:

```
select @@identity
-----
101
create procedure reset_id as
    set identity_insert sales_daily on
        insert into sales_daily (syb_identity, stor_id)
            values (102, "1349")
    select @@identity
select @@identity
execute reset_id
-----
102
select @@identity
-----
101
```

## Reserving a block of IDENTITY column values

The identity grab size configuration parameter allows each Adaptive Server process to reserve a block of IDENTITY column values for inserts into tables that have an IDENTITY column. This configuration parameter reduces the number of times an Adaptive Server engine must hold an internal synchronization structure when inserting implicit identity values. For example, to set the number of reserved values to 20:

```
sp_configure "identity grab size", 20
```

When a user performs an insert into a table containing an IDENTITY column, Adaptive Server reserves a block of 20 IDENTITY column values for that user. Therefore, during the current session, the next 20 rows the user inserts into the table will have sequential IDENTITY column values. If a second user inserts rows into the same table while the first user is performing inserts, Adaptive Server will reserve the next block of 20 IDENTITY column values for the second user.

For example, suppose the following table containing an IDENTITY column has been created and the identity grab size is set to 10:

```
create table my_titles
(title_id    numeric(5,0)    identity,
 title       varchar(30)     not null)
```

User 1 inserts these rows into the my\_titles table:

```
insert my_titles (title)
values ("The Trauma of the Inner Child")
insert my_titles (title)
```

```
values ("A Farewell to Angst")
insert my_titles (title)
values ("Life Without Anger")
```

Adaptive Server allows user 1 a block of 10 sequential IDENTITY values, for example, title\_id numbers 1–10.

While user 1 is inserting rows to my\_titles, user 2 begins inserting rows into my\_titles. Adaptive Server grants user 2 the next available block of reserved IDENTITY values, that is, values 11–20.

If user 1 enters only three titles and then logs off Adaptive Server, the remaining seven reserved IDENTITY values are lost. The result is a gap in the table's IDENTITY values. Avoid setting the identity grab size too high, because this can cause gaps in the IDENTITY column numbering.

## Reaching the IDENTITY column's maximum value

The maximum value that you can insert into an IDENTITY column is 10 precision - 1. If you do not specify a precision for the IDENTITY column, Adaptive Server uses the default precision (18 digits) for numeric columns.

Once an IDENTITY column reaches its maximum value, insert statements return an error that aborts the current transaction. When this happens, use *one* of the following methods to remedy the problem.

### Create a new table with a larger precision

If the table contains IDENTITY columns that are used for referential integrity, you need to retain the current numbers for the IDENTITY column values.

- 1 Use create table to create a new table that is identical to the old one except with a larger precision value for the IDENTITY column.
- 2 Use insert into to copy the data from the old table into to the new one.

### Renumber the table's IDENTITY columns with bcp

If the table does not contain IDENTITY columns used for referential integrity, and if there are gaps in the numbering sequence, you can renumber the IDENTITY column to eliminate gaps, which allows more room for insertions.

To sequentially renumber IDENTITY column values and remove the gaps, use the bcp utility:

- 1 From the operating system command line, use bcp to copy out the data. For example:

```
bcp pubs2..mytitles out mytitles_file -N -c
```

The -N instructs bcp not to copy the IDENTITY column values from the table to the host file. The -c instructs bcp to use character mode.

- 2 In Adaptive Server, create a new table that is identical to the old table.
- 3 From the operating system command line, use bcp to copy the data into the new table:

```
bcp pubs2..mynewtitles in mytitles_file -N -c
```

The -N instructs bcp to have Adaptive Server assign the IDENTITY column values when loading data from the host file. The -c instructs bcp to use character mode.

- 4 In Adaptive Server, drop the old table, and use sp\_rename to change the new table name to the old table name.

If the IDENTITY column is a primary key for joins, you may need to update the foreign keys in other tables.

By default, when you bulk copy data into a table with an IDENTITY column, bcp assigns each row a temporary IDENTITY column value of 0. As it inserts each row into the table, the server assigns it a unique, sequential IDENTITY column value, beginning with the next available value. To enter an explicit IDENTITY column value for each row, specify the -E (UNIX) or /identity (OpenVMS) flag. Refer to the *Utility Guide* for your platform for more information on bcp options that affect IDENTITY columns.

## Adding new rows with `select`

To pull values into a table from one or more other tables, use a `select` clause in the `insert` statement. The `select` clause can insert values into some or all of the columns in a row.

Inserting values for only some columns can come in handy when you want to take some values from an existing table. Then, you can use `update` to add the values for the other columns.

Before inserting values for some, but not all, columns in a table, make sure that a default exists or that NULL has been specified for the columns for which you are not inserting values. Otherwise, Adaptive Server returns an error message.

When you insert rows from one table into another, the two tables must have compatible structures—that is, the matching columns must be either the same datatypes or datatypes between which Adaptive Server automatically converts.

---

**Note** You cannot insert data from a table that allows null values into a table that does not, if any of the data being inserted is null.

---

If the columns are in the same order in their `create table` statements, you do not need to specify column names in either table. Suppose you have a table named `newauthors` that contains some rows of author information in the same format as in `authors`. To add to `authors` all the rows in `newauthors`:

```
insert authors
select *
from newauthors
```

To insert rows into a table based on data in another table, the columns in the two tables do not have to be listed in the same sequence in their respective `create table` statements. You can use either the `insert` or the `select` statement to order the columns so that they match.

For example, suppose the `create table` statement for the `authors` table contained the columns `au_id`, `au_fname`, `au_lname`, and `address`, in that order, and `newauthors` contained `au_id`, `address`, `au_lname`, and `au_fname`. You would have to make the column sequence match in the `insert` statement. You could do this in either of two ways:

```
insert authors (au_id, address, au_lname, au_fname)
select * from newauthors
```

or

```
insert authors
select au_id, au_fname, au_lname, address
      from newauthors
```

If the column sequence in the two tables fails to match, Adaptive Server either cannot complete the `insert` operation, or completes it incorrectly, putting data in the wrong column. For example, you might get `address` data in the `au_lname` column.

## Computed columns

You can use computed columns in a select statement inside an insert statement. For example, imagine that a table named tmp contains some new rows for the titles table, which contains some out-of-date data—the price figures need to be doubled. A statement to increase the prices and insert the tmp rows into titles looks like:

```
insert titles
select title_id, title, type, pub_id, price*2,
       advance, total_sales, notes, pubdate, contract
from tmp
```

When you perform computations on a column, you cannot use the select \* syntax. Each column must be named individually in the select list.

## Inserting data into some columns

You can use the select statement to add data to some, but not all, columns in a row just as you do with the values clause. Simply specify the columns to which you want to add data in the insert clause.

For example, some authors in the authors table do not have titles and, therefore, do not have entries in the titleauthor table. To pull their au\_id numbers out of the authors table and insert them into the titleauthor table as placeholders, try this statement:

```
insert titleauthor (au_id)
select au_id
      from authors
     where au_id not in
          (select au_id from titleauthor)
```

This statement is not legal, because a value is required for the title\_id column. Null values are not permitted and no default is specified. You can enter the dummy value “xx1111” for titles\_id by using a constant, as follows:

```
insert titleauthor (au_id, title_id)
select au_id, "xx1111"
      from authors
     where au_id not in
          (select au_id from titleauthor)
```

The titleauthor table now contains four new rows with entries for the au\_id column, dummy entries for the title\_id column, and null values for the other two columns.

## Inserting data from the same table

You can insert data into a table based on other data in the same table. Essentially, this means copying all or part of a row.

For example, you can insert a new row in the publishers table that is based on the values in an existing row in the same table. Make sure you follow the rule on the pub\_id column:

```
insert publishers
select "9999", "test", city, state

from publishers
where pub_name = "New Age Books"

(1 row affected)
select * from publishers

pub_id    pub_name          city      state
-----  -----
0736      New Age Books    Boston    MA
0877      Binnet & Hardley Washington DC
1389      Algodata Infosystems Berkeley CA
9999      test              Boston    MA

(4 rows affected)
```

The example inserts the two constants (“9999” and “test”) and the values from the city and state columns in the row that satisfied the query.

## Changing existing data

Use the update command to change single rows, groups of rows, or all rows in a table. As in all data modification statements, you can change the data in only one table at a time.

update specifies the row or rows you want changed and the new data. The new data can be a constant or an expression that you specify or data pulled from other tables.

If an update statement violates an integrity constraint, the update does not take place and an error message is generated. The update is canceled, for example, if it affects the table’s IDENTITY column, or if one of the values being added is the wrong datatype, or if it violates a rule that has been defined for one of the columns or datatypes involved.

Adaptive Server does not prevent you from issuing an update command that updates a single row more than once. However, because of the way that update is processed, updates from a single statement do not accumulate. That is, if an update statement modifies the same row twice, the second update is not based on the new values from the first update but on the original values. The results are unpredictable, since they depend on the order of processing.

See Chapter 9, “Views: Limiting Access to Data,” for restrictions on updating views.

---

**Note** The update command is logged. If you are changing large blocks of text or image data, try using the writetext command, which is not logged. Also, you are limited to approximately 125K per update statement. See the discussion of writetext in “Changing text and image data” on page 332.

---

## update syntax

A simplified version of the update syntax for updating specified rows with an expression is:

```
update table_name
      set column_name = expression
          where search_conditions
```

For example, if Reginald Blotchet-Halls decides to change his name, here is how to change his row in the authors table:

```
update authors
      set au_lname = "Health", au_fname = "Goodbody"
          where au_lname = "Blotchet-Halls"
```

This statement updates a table based on data from another table:

```
update table_name
      set column_name = expression
          from table_name
              where search_conditions
```

You can set variables in an update statement with:

```
update table_name
      set variable_name = expression
          where search_conditions
```

The full syntax for update is:

```
update [[database.]owner.]{table_name | view_name}
    set [[[database.]owner.]{table_name. | view_name.}]
        column_name1 =
            {expression1 | null | (select_statement)} |
            variable_name1 =
            {expression1 | null | (select_statement)}
            [, column_name2 = {expression2 | null |
                (select_statement)}]{...} |
                variable_name2 = {expression1 | null |
                    (select_statement)}
        [from [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}
        [, [[database.]owner.] {table_name |
            view_name}]]{...}
    [where search_conditions]
```

## Using the `set` clause with `update`

The `set` clause specifies the columns and the changed values. The `where` clause determines which row or rows are to be updated. If you do not have a `where` clause, the specified columns of *all* the rows are updated with the values given in the `set` clause.

---

**Note** Before trying the examples in this section, make sure you know how to reinstall the `pubs2` database. See the installation and configuration guide for your platform for instructions on installing the `pubs2` database.

---

For example, if all the publishing houses in the `publishers` table move their head offices to Atlanta, Georgia, this is how you update the table:

```
update publishers
    set city = "Atlanta", state = "GA"
```

In the same way, you can change the names of all the publishers to `NULL` with:

```
update publishers
    set pub_name = null
```

You can also use computed column values in an update. To double all the prices in the `titles` table, use:

```
update titles
    set price = price * 2
```

Since there is no `where` clause, the change in prices is applied to every row in the table.

## Assigning variables in the `set` clause

You can assign variables in the `set` clause of an update statement, in the same way you can assign them in a `select` statement. Using variables with `update` reduces lock contention and CPU consumption that can occur when extra `select` statements are used in conjunction with `update`.

This example uses a declared variable to update the `titles` table:

```
declare @price money
select @price = 0
update titles
    set total_sales = total_sales + 1,
        @price = price
    where title_id = "BU1032"
select @price, total_sales
    from titles
    where title_id = "BU1032"
                                total_sales
-----
                           19.99      4096
(1 row affected)
```

For details on assigning variables in an `update` statement, see the *Reference Manual*. For more information on declared variables, see “Local variables” on page 472.

## Using the `where` clause with `update`

The `where` clause specifies which rows are to be updated. For example, in the unlikely event that Northern California is renamed Pacifica (abbreviated PC) and the people of Oakland vote to change the name of their city to Big Bad Bay City, here is how you can update the `authors` table for all former Oakland residents whose addresses are now out of date:

```
update authors
set state = "PC", city = "Big Bad Bay City"
where state = "CA" and city = "Oakland"
```

You need to write another statement to change the name of the state for residents of other cities in Northern California.

## Using the *from* clause with *update*

Use the from clause to pull data from one or more tables into the table you are updating.

For example, earlier in this chapter, an example was given for inserting some new rows into the titleauthor table for authors without titles, filling in the au\_id column, and using dummy or null values for the other columns. When one of these authors, Dirk Stringer, writes a book, *The Psychology of Computer Cooking*, a title identification number is assigned to his book in the titles table. You can modify his row in the titleauthor table by adding a title identification number for him:

```
update titleauthor
set title_id = titles.title_id
from titleauthor, titles, authors
where titles.title =
      "The Psychology of Computer Cooking"
and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and au_lname = "Stringer"
```

Note that an update without the au\_id join changes all the title\_ids in the titleauthor table so that they are the same as *The Psychology of Computer Cooking*'s identification number. If two tables are identical in structure except that one has NULL fields and some null values and the other has NOT NULL fields, it is impossible to insert the data from the NULL table into the NOT NULL table with a select. In other words, a field that does not allow NULL cannot be updated by selecting from a field that does, if any of the data is NULL.

As an alternative to the from clause in the update statement, you can use a subquery, which is ANSI-compliant.

## Updates with joins

The following example joins columns from the *titles* and *publishers* tables, doubling the price of all books published in California:

```
update titles
set price = price * 2
from titles, publishers
where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
and publishers.state = "CA"
```

Although a join can usually be done with up to 16 tables, if a join is part of an update or delete statement, the query can only refer to 15 tables.

## Updating IDENTITY columns

You can use the `syb_identity` keyword, qualified by the table name, where necessary, to update an IDENTITY column. For example, this update statement finds the row in which the IDENTITY column equals 1 and changes the name of the store to “Barney’s”:

```
update stores_cal  
set stor_name = "Barney's"  
where syb_identity = 1
```

## Changing *text* and *image* data

Use `writetext` to change text or image values when you do not want to store long text values in the database transaction log. Do not use the `update` command, which can also be used for text or image columns, because `update` commands are always logged. In its default mode, `writetext` commands are not logged.

---

**Note** To use `writetext` in its default, non-logged state, a System Administrator must use `sp_dboption` to set `select into/bulkcopy/pllsort on`. This permits the insertion of non-logged data. After using `writetext`, it is necessary to dump the database. You cannot use `dump transaction` after making unlogged changes to the database.

---

The `writetext` command completely overwrites any data in the column it affects. The column must already contain a valid text pointer.

You can use the `textvalid()` function to check for a valid pointer:

```
select textvalid("blurbs.copy", textptr(copy))  
from blurbs
```

There are two ways to create a text pointer:

- insert actual data into the text or image column
- update the column with data or a NULL

An “initialized” text column uses 2K of storage, even to store a couple of words. Adaptive Server saves space by not initializing text columns when explicit or implicit null values are placed in text columns with insert. The following code fragment inserts a value with a null text pointer, checks for the existence of a text pointer, and then updates the blurbs table.

Explanatory comments are embedded in the text:

```
/* Insert a value with a text pointer. This could
** be done in a separate batch session. */
insert blurbs (au_id) values ("267-41-2394")
/* Check for a valid pointer in an existing row.
** Use textvalid in a conditional clause; if no
** valid text pointer exists, update 'copy' to null
** to initialize the pointer. */
if (select textvalid("blurbs.copy", textptr(copy))
    from blurbs
    where au_id = "267-41-2394") = 0
begin
    update blurbs
        set copy = NULL
        where au_id = "267-41-2394"
end
/*
** use writetext to insert the text into the
** column. The next statements put the text
** into the local variable @val, then writetext
** places the new text string into the row
** pointed to by @val. */
declare @val varbinary(16)
select @val = textptr(copy)
    from blurbs
    where au_id = "267-41-2394"
writetext blurbs.copy @val
    "This book is a must for true data junkies."
```

For more information on batch files and the control-of-flow language used in this example, see Chapter 13, “Using Batches and Control-of-Flow Language.”

## Deleting data

`delete` works for both single-row and multiple-row operations.

A simplified version of delete syntax is:

```
delete table_name
      where column_name = expression
```

Here is the complete syntax statement, which shows that you can remove rows either on the basis of specified expressions or based on data from other tables:

```
delete [from]
      [[database.]owner.]{view_name | table_name}
      [where search_conditions]

delete [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}
      [from [[database.]owner.]{view_name | table_name
          [(index {index_name | table_name} |
             [prefetch size ] [| lru | mru])]}
          [, [[database.]owner.] {view_name | table_name
              (index {index_name | table_name} |
                 [prefetch size ] [|lru | mru])}]...]
      [where search_conditions]

delete [from]
      [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}
      where current of cursor_name
```

The where clause specifies which rows are to be removed. When no where clause is given in the delete statement, *all* rows in the table are removed.

## Using the *from* clause with *delete*

The optional from immediately after the delete keyword is included for compatibility with other versions of SQL. The from clause in the second position of a delete statement is a special Transact-SQL feature that allows you to select data from a table or tables and delete corresponding data from the first-named table. The rows you select in the from clause specify the conditions for the delete.

Suppose that a complex corporate deal results in the acquisition of all the Big Bad Bay City (formerly Oakland) authors and their books by another publisher. You need to remove all these books from the titles table right away, but you do not know their titles or identification numbers. The only information you have is the author's names and addresses.

You can delete the rows in titles by finding the author identification numbers for the rows that have Big Bad Bay City as the town in the authors table and using these numbers to find the title identification numbers of the books in the titleauthor table. In other words, a three-way join is required to find the rows to delete in the titles table.

The three tables are all included in the from clause of the delete statement. However, only the rows in the titles table that fulfill the conditions of the where clause are deleted. You would have to use separate delete statements to remove relevant rows in tables other than titles.

Here is the statement you need:

```
delete titles
  from authors, titles, titleauthor
 where titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
   and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
   and city = "Big Bad Bay City"
```

The deltitle trigger in the pubs2 database prevents you from actually performing this deletion, because it does not allow you to delete any titles that have sales recorded in the sales table.

## Deleting from IDENTITY columns

You can use the syb\_identity keyword in a delete statement on tables containing an IDENTITY column. For example, this statement removes the row for which row\_id equals 1:

```
delete sales_monthly
  where syb_identity = 1
```

After you delete IDENTITY column rows, you may want to eliminate gaps in the table's IDENTITY column numbering sequence. See “Renumber the table's IDENTITY columns with bcp” on page 323.

## Deleting all rows from a table

Use truncate table to delete all rows in a table. It is almost always faster than a delete statement with no conditions, because the delete logs each change, while truncate table just logs the deallocation of entire data pages. truncate table immediately frees all the space that the table's data and indexes had occupied. The freed space can then be used by any object. The distribution pages for all indexes are also deallocated. Run update statistics after adding new rows to the table.

As with delete, a table emptied with truncate table remains in the database, along with its indexes and other associated objects, unless you enter a drop table command.

You cannot use truncate table if another table has rows that reference it through a referential integrity constraint. Delete the rows from the foreign table, or truncate the foreign table and then truncate the primary table. See “General rules for creating referential integrity constraints” on page 259.

### ***truncate table* syntax**

The syntax of truncate table is:

```
truncate table [[database.]owner.]table_name
```

For example, to remove all the data in sales, type:

```
truncate table sales
```

Permission to use truncate table, like drop table, defaults to the table owner and cannot be transferred.

A truncate table command is not caught by a delete trigger. See Chapter 16, “Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity.”

# Views: Limiting Access to Data

A **view** is a named select statement that is stored in a database as an object. It allows you to view a subset of rows or columns in one or more tables. You use the view by invoking its name in other Transact-SQL statements. You can use views to focus, simplify, and customize each user's perception of the tables in a particular database. Views also provide a security mechanism by allowing users access only to the data they require.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How views work	337
Creating views	342
Retrieving data through views	350
Modifying data through views	354
Dropping views	359
Using views as security mechanisms	359
Getting information about views	360

## How views work

A view is an alternative way of looking at the data in one or more tables.

For example, suppose you are working on a project that is specific to the state of Utah. You can create a view that lists only the authors who live in Utah:

```
create view authors_ut
as select * from authors
where state = "UT"
```

To display the authors\_ut view, enter:

```
select * from authors_ut
```

When the authors who live in Utah are added to or removed from the authors table, the authors\_ut view reflects the updated authors table.

A view is derived from one or more real tables whose data is physically stored in the database. The tables from which a view is derived are called its base tables or underlying tables. A view can also be derived from another view.

The definition of a view, in terms of the base tables from which it is derived, is stored in the database. No separate copies of data are associated with this stored definition. The data that you view is stored in the underlying tables.

A view looks exactly like any other database table. You can display it and operate on it almost exactly as you can any other table. There are no restrictions at all on querying through views and fewer than usual on modifying them. The exceptions are explained later in this chapter.

When you modify the data in a view, you are actually changing the data in the underlying base tables. Conversely, changes to data in the underlying base tables are automatically reflected in the views that are derived from them.

## **Advantages of views**

You can use views to focus, simplify, and customize each user's perception of the database; they also provide an easy-to-use security measure. Views can also be helpful when changes have been made to the structure of a database, but users prefer to work with the structure of the database they are accustomed to.

You can use views to:

- Focus on the data that interests them and on the tasks for which they are responsible. Data that is not of interest to a user can be left out of the view.
- Define frequently used joins, projections, and selections as views so that users do not have to specify all the conditions and qualifications each time an operation is performed on that data.
- Display different data for different users, even when they are using the same data at the same time. This advantage is particularly important when users of many different interests and skill levels share the same database.

## Security

Through a view, users can query and modify only the data they can see. The rest of the database is neither visible nor accessible.

With the grant and revoke commands, each user's access to the database can be restricted to specified database objects—including views. If a view and all the tables and other views from which it is derived are owned by the same user, that user can grant permission to others to use the view while denying permission to use its underlying tables and views. This is a simple but effective security mechanism. See the *System Administration Guide* for details on the grant and revoke commands.

By defining different views and selectively granting permissions on them, users can be restricted to different subsets of data. For example:

- Access can be restricted to a subset of the rows of a base table, that is, a value-dependent subset. For example, you might define a view that contains only the rows for business and psychology books, in order to keep information about other types of books hidden from some users.
- Access can be restricted to a subset of the columns of a base table, that is, a value-independent subset. For example, you might define a view that contains all the rows of the titles table, except the royalty and advance columns.
- Access can be restricted to a row-and-column subset of a base table.
- Access can be restricted to the rows that qualify for a join of more than one base table. For example, you might define a view that joins the titles, authors, and titleauthor to display the names of the authors and the books they have written. This view would hide personal data about authors and financial information about the books.
- Access can be restricted to a statistical summary of data in a base table. For example, through the view category\_price a user can access only the average price of each type of book.
- Access can be restricted to a subset of another view or a combination of views and base tables. For example, through the view hiprice\_computer a user can access the title and price of computer books that meet the qualifications in the view definition of hiprice.

To create a view, a user must be granted create view permission by the Database Owner, and must have appropriate permissions on any tables or views referenced in the view definition.

If a view references objects in different databases, users of the view must be valid users or guests in each of the databases.

If you own an object on which other users have created views, you must be aware of who can see what data through what views. For example: the Database Owner has granted “harold” create view permission, and “maude” has granted “harold” permission to select from a table she owns. Given these permissions, “harold” can create a view that selects all columns and rows from the table owned by “maude.” If “maude” revokes permission for “harold” to select from her table, he can still look at her data through the view he has created.

## Logical data independence

Views can shield users from changes in the structure of the real tables if such changes become necessary.

For example, suppose you restructure the database by using `select into` to split the `titles` table into these two new base tables and then dropping the `titles` table:

```
titletext (title_id, title, type, notes)
titlenumbers (title_id, pub_id, price, advance,
royalty, total_sales, pub_date)
```

The old `titles` table can be “regenerated” by joining on the `title_id` columns of the two new tables. You can create a view that is a join of the two new tables. You can even name it `titles`.

Any query or stored procedure that previously referred to the base table `titles` now refers to the view `titles`. As far as the users are concerned, `select` operations work exactly as before. Users who retrieve only from the new view need not even know that the restructuring has occurred.

Unfortunately, views provide only partial logical independence. Some data modification statements on the new `titles` are not allowed because of certain restrictions.

## View examples

The first example is a view derived from the `titles` table. Suppose you are interested only in books priced higher than \$15 and for which an advance of more than \$5000 was paid. This straightforward `select` statement finds the rows that qualify:

```
select *
from titles
where price > $15
    and advance > $5000
```

Now, suppose you have a lot of retrieval and update operations to do on this collection of data. You could, of course, combine the conditions shown in the previous query with any command that you issue. However, for convenience, you can create a view that displays only the records of interest:

```
create view hiprice
as select *
from titles
where price > $15
    and advance > $5000
```

When Adaptive Server receives this command, it does not actually execute the `select` statement that follows the keyword `as`. Instead, it stores the `select` statement, which is the definition of the view `hiprice`, in the system table `syscomments`. Entries are also made in `sysobjects` and in `syscolumns` for each column included in the view.

Now, when you display or operate on `hiprice`, Adaptive Server combines your statement with the stored definition of `hiprice`. For example, you can change all the prices in `hiprice` just as you can change any other table:

```
update hiprice
set price = price * 2
```

Adaptive Server finds the view definition in the system tables and converts the `update` command into the statement:

```
update titles
set price = price * 2
where price > $15
    and advance > $5000
```

In other words, Adaptive Server knows from the view definition that the data to be updated is in `titles`. It also knows that it should increase the prices only in the rows that meet the conditions on the `price` and `advance` columns given in the view definition and those in the `update` statement.

Having issued the update to `hiprice`, you can see its effect either in the view or in the `titles` table. Conversely, if you had created the view and then issued the second update statement, which operates directly on the base table, the changed prices would also be visible through the view.

Updating a view's underlying table in such a way that different rows qualify for the view affects the view. For example, suppose you increase the price of the book *You Can Combat Computer Stress* to \$25.95. Since this book now meets the qualifying conditions in the view definition statement, it is considered part of the view.

However, if you alter the structure of a view's underlying table by adding columns, the new columns will *not* appear in a view that is defined with a `select *` clause unless the view is dropped and redefined. This is because the asterisk in the original view definition considers only the original columns.

## **Creating views**

View names must be unique for each user among the already existing tables and views. If you have set `quoted_identifier` on, you can use a delimited identifier for the view. Otherwise, the view name must follow the rules for identifiers given in “Identifiers” on page 7.

You can build views on other views and procedures that reference views. You can define primary, foreign, and common keys on views. However, you cannot associate rules, defaults, or triggers with views or build indexes on them. You cannot create temporary views or views on temporary tables.

### **create view syntax**

Here is the full syntax for `create view`:

```
create view [owner .]view_name  
[(column_name [, column_name ]...)]  
as select [distinct] select_statement  
[with check option]
```

As illustrated in the `create view` example in “View examples” on page 340, you need not specify any column names in the `create` clause of a view definition statement. Adaptive Server gives the columns of the view the same names and datatypes as the columns referred to in the `select` list of the `select` statement. The `select` list can be designated by the asterisk (\*), as in the example, or it can be a full or partial list of the column names in the base tables.

To build views that do not contain duplicate rows, use the `distinct` keyword of the `select` statement to ensure that each row in the view is unique. However, you cannot update `distinct` views.

You can always specify column names. However, if any of the following are true, you *must* specify column names in the `create` clause for *every* column in the view:

- One or more of the view's columns are derived from an arithmetic expression, an aggregate, a built-in function, or a constant.
- Two or more of the view's columns would otherwise have the same name. This usually happens because the view definition includes a join, and the columns being joined have the same name.
- You want to give a column in the view a different name than the column from which it is derived.

You can also rename columns in the `select` statement. Whether or not you rename a view column, it inherits the datatype of the column from which it is derived.

Here is a view definition statement that makes the name of a column in the view different from its name in the underlying table:

```
create view pub_view1 (Publisher, City, State)
as select pub_name, city, state
from publishers
```

Here is an alternate method of creating the same view but renaming the columns in the `select` statement:

```
create view pub_view2
as select Publisher = pub_name,
City = city, State = state
from publishers
```

The examples of view definition statements in the next section illustrate the rest of the rules for including column names in the `create` clause.

---

**Note** Local variables cannot be used in view definitions.

---

## Using the **select** statement with **create view**

The select statement in the create view statement defines the view. You must have permission to select from any objects referenced in the select statement of a view you are creating.

You can create a view using more than one table and other views by using a select statement of any complexity.

There are a few restrictions on the select statements in a view definition:

- You cannot include order by or compute clauses.
- You cannot include the into keyword.
- You cannot reference a temporary table.

### View definition with projection

To create a view with all the rows of the titles table, but with only a subset of its columns, enter:

```
create view titles_view
  as select title, type, price, pubdate
    from titles
```

Note that no column names are included in the create view clause. The view titles\_view inherits the column names given in the select list.

### View definition with a computed column

Here is a view definition statement that creates a view with a computed column generated from the columns price, royalty, and total\_sales:

```
create view accounts (title, advance, amt_due)
  as select titles.title_id, advance,
    (price * royalty /100) * total_sales
      from titles, roysched
        where price > $15
          and advance > $5000
            and titles.title_id = roysched.title_id
              and total_sales between lorange and hirange
```

There is no name that can be inherited by the column computed by multiplying together price, royalty, and total\_sales, so you must include the list of columns in the create clause. The computed column is named amt\_due. It must be listed in the same position in the create clause as the expression from which it is computed is listed in the select clause.

## View definition with an aggregate or built-in function

A view definition that includes an aggregate or built-in function must include column names in the `create` clause. For example:

```
create view categories1 (category, average_price)
as select type, avg(price)
from titles
group by type
```

If you create a view for security reasons, be careful when using aggregate functions and the `group by` clause. The Transact-SQL extension that does not restrict the columns you can include in the `select` with `group by` may also cause the view to return more information than required. For example:

```
create view categories2 (category, average_price)
as select type, avg(price)
from titles
where type = "business"
```

In the above case, you may have wanted the view to restrict its results to “business” categories, but the results have information about other categories. For more information about `group by` and this `group by` Transact-SQL extension, see “Organizing query results into groups: the `group by` clause” on page 87.

## View definition with a join

You can create a view derived from more than one base table. Here is an example of a view derived from both the `authors` and the `publishers` tables. The view contains the names and cities of the authors that live in the same city as a publisher, along with each publisher’s name and city.

```
create view cities (authorname, acity,
publishername, pcity)
as select au_lname, authors.city, pub_name,
publishers.city
from authors, publishers
where authors.city = publishers.city
```

## Views used with outer joins

If you define a view with an outer join, and then query the view with a qualification on a column from the inner table of the outer join, the query behaves as though the qualification were part of the WHERE clause of the view, not part of the ON clause of the outer join in the view. Thus the qualification operates only on rows AFTER the outer join is complete. For example, the qualification operates on NULL extended rows if the outer join condition is met, and eliminates rows accordingly.

The following rules determine what types of updates you can make to columns through join views:

- delete statements are not allowed on join views.
- insert statements are not allowed on join views created with check option.
- update statements are allowed on join views with check option. The update fails if any of the affected columns appears in the where clause, in an expression that includes columns from more than one table.
- If you insert or update a row through a join view, all affected columns must belong to the same base table.

## Views derived from other views

You can define a view in terms of another view, as in this example:

```
create view hiprice_computer
as select title, price
from hiprice
where type = "popular_comp"
```

## *distinct* views

You can ensure that the rows contained in a view are unique, as in this example:

```
create view author_codes
as select distinct au_id
from titleauthor
```

A row is a duplicate of another row if all of its column values match the same column values contained in another row. Two null values are considered to be identical.

Adaptive Server applies the distinct requirement to the view's definition when it accesses the view for the first time, before it does any projecting or selecting. Views look and act like any database table. If you select a projection of the distinct view (that is, you select only some of the view's columns, but all of its rows), you can get results that appear to be duplicates. However, each row in the view itself is still unique. For example, suppose that you create a distinct view, myview, with three columns, a, b, and c , that contains these values:

a	b	c
1	1	2
1	2	3
1	1	0

When you enter this query:

```
select a, b from myview
```

the results look like this:

a	b
---	---
1	1
1	2
1	1

```
(3 rows affected)
```

The first and third rows appear to be duplicates. However, the underlying view's rows are still unique.

## Views that include IDENTITY columns

You can define a view that includes an IDENTITY column by listing the column name, or the `syb_identity` keyword, in the view's `select` statement. For example:

```
create view sales_view
as select syb_identity, stor_id
from sales_daily
```

However, you cannot add a new IDENTITY column to a view by using the `identity_column_name = identity(precision)` syntax.

You can select the IDENTITY column from the view using the `syb_identity` keyword, unless the view:

- Selects the IDENTITY column more than once
- Computes a new column from the IDENTITY column
- Includes an aggregate function
- Joins columns from multiple tables
- Includes the IDENTITY column as part of an expression

If any of these conditions is true, Adaptive Server does not recognize the column as an IDENTITY column with respect to the view. When you execute `sp_help` on the view, the column displays an “Identity” value of 0.

In the following example, the `row_id` column is not recognized as an IDENTITY column with respect to the `store_discounts` view because `store_discounts` joins columns from two tables:

```
create view store_discounts
as
select stor_name, discount
from stores, new_discounts
where stores.stor_id = new_discounts.stor_id
```

When you define the view, the underlying column retains the IDENTITY property. When you update a row through the view, you cannot specify a new value for the IDENTITY column. When you insert a row through the view, Adaptive Server generates a new, sequential value for the IDENTITY column. Only the table owner, Database Owner, or System Administrator can explicitly insert a value into the IDENTITY column after setting `identity_insert` on for the column’s base table.

## After creating a view

After you create a view, the **source text** describing the view is stored in the `text` column of the `syscomments` system table. *Do not remove this information from syscomments*. Instead, encrypt the text in `syscomments` by using `sp_hidetext`, which is described in the *Reference Manual*. For more information, see “Compiled objects” on page 4.

## Validating a view's selection criteria using *with check option*

Normally, Adaptive Server does not check insert and update statements on views to determine whether the affected rows are within the scope of the view. A statement can insert a row into the underlying base table, but not into the view, or change an existing row so that it no longer meets the view's selection criteria.

When you create a view using the *with check option* clause, each insert and update through the view, is validated against the view's selection criteria. All rows inserted or updated through the view must remain visible through the view, or the statement fails.

Here is an example of a view, *stores\_ca*, created using *with check option*. This view includes information about stores located in California, but excludes information about stores located in any other state. The view is created by selecting all rows from the *stores* table for which state has a value of "CA":

```
create view stores_ca
as select * from stores
where state = "CA"
with check option
```

When you try to insert a row through *stores\_ca*, Adaptive Server verifies that the new row falls within the scope of the view. The following insert statement fails because the new row would have a state value of "NY", rather than "CA":

```
insert stores_ca
values ("7100", "Castle Books", "351 West 24 St.",
"New York", "NY", "USA", "10011", "Net 30")
```

When you try to update a row through *stores\_ca*, Adaptive Server verifies that the update will not cause the row to disappear from the view. The following update statement fails because it would change the value of state from "CA" to "MA". After the update, the row would no longer be visible through the view.

```
update stores_ca
set state = "CA"
where stor_id = "7066"
```

## Views derived from other views

When a view is created using with check option, all views derived from the “base” view must satisfy its check option. Each row inserted through the derived view must be visible through the base view. Each row updated through the derived view must remain visible through the base view.

Consider the view stores\_cal30, which is derived from stores\_cal. The new view includes information about stores in California with payment terms of “Net 30”:

```
create view stores_cal30  
as select * from stores_ca  
where payterms = "Net 30"
```

Because stores\_cal was created using with check option, all rows inserted or updated through stores\_cal30 must be visible through stores\_cal. Any row with a state value other than “CA” is rejected.

Notice that stores\_cal30 does not have a with check option clause of its own. This means that it is possible to insert or update a row with a payterms value other than “Net 30” through stores\_cal30. The following update statement would be successful, even though the row would no longer be visible through stores\_cal30:

```
update stores_cal30  
set payterms = "Net 60"  
where stor_id = "7067"
```

## Retrieving data through views

When you retrieve data through a view, Adaptive Server checks to make sure that all the database objects referenced anywhere in the statement exist and that they are valid in the context of the statement. If the checks are successful, Adaptive Server combines the statement with the stored definition of the view and translates it into a query on the view’s underlying tables. This process is called **view resolution**.

Consider the following view definition statement and a query against it:

```
create view hiprice  
as select *  
from titles  
where price > $15  
and advance > $5000
```

```
select title, type  
from hiprice  
where type = "popular_comp"
```

Internally, Adaptive Server combines the query of hiprice with its definition, converting the query to:

```
select title, type  
from titles  
where price > $15  
and advance > $5000  
and type = "popular_comp"
```

In general, you can query any view in any way just as if it were a real table. You can use joins, group by clauses, subqueries, and other query techniques on views, in any combination. Note, however, that if the view is defined with an outer join or aggregate function, you may get unexpected results when you query the view. See “Views derived from other views” on page 346.

---

**Note** You can use select on text and image columns in views. However, you cannot use readtext and writetext in views.

---

## View resolution

When you define a view, Adaptive Server verifies that all the tables or views listed in the from clause exist. Similar checks are performed when you query through the view.

Between the time a view is defined and the time it is used in a statement, things can change. For example, one or more of the tables or views listed in the from clause of the view definition may have been dropped. Or one or more of the columns listed in the select clause of the view definition may have been renamed.

To fully resolve a view, Adaptive Server verifies that:

- All the tables, views, and columns from which the view was derived still exist.
- The datatype of each column on which a view column depends has not been changed to an incompatible type.

- If the statement is an update, insert, or delete, it does not violate the restrictions on modifying views. These are discussed under “Modifying data through views” on page 354.

If any of these checks fails, Adaptive Server issues an error message.

## Redefining views

Adaptive Server allows you to redefine a view without forcing you to redefine other views that depend on it, unless the redefinition makes it impossible for Adaptive Server to translate the dependent view.

For example, the authors table and three possible views are shown below. Each succeeding view is defined using the view that preceded it: view2 is created from view1, and view3 is created from view2. In this way, view2 depends on view1 and view3 depends on both the preceding views.

Each view name is followed by the select statement used to create it.

view1:

```
create view view1
as select au_lname, phone
from authors
where postalcode like "94%"
```

view2:

```
create view view2
as select au_lname, phone
from view1
where au_lname like "[M-Z]%"
```

view3:

```
create view view3
as select au_lname, phone
from view2
where au_lname = "MacFeather"
```

The authors table on which these views are based consists of these columns: au\_id, au\_lname, au\_fname, phone, address, city, state, and postalcode.

You can drop view2 and replace it with another view, also named view2, that contains slightly different selection criteria, such as:

```
create view view2
```

```
as select au_lname, phone  
from view3  
where au_lname like "[M-P]"
```

view3, which depends on view2, is still valid and does not need to be redefined. When you use a query that references either view2 or view3, view resolution takes place as usual.

If you redefine view2 so that view3 cannot be derived from it, view3 becomes invalid. For example, if another new version of view2 contains a single column, au\_lname, rather than the two columns that view3 expects, view3 can no longer be used because it cannot derive the phone column from the object on which it depends.

However, view3 still exists and you can use it again by dropping view2 and re-creating view2 with both the au\_lname and the phone columns.

In short, you can change the definition of an intermediate view without affecting dependent views as long as the select list of the dependent views remains valid. If this rule is violated, a query that references the invalid view produces an error message.

## Renaming views

You can rename a view using `sp_rename`:

```
sp_rename objname , newname
```

For example, to rename titleview to bookview, enter:

```
sp_rename titleview, bookview
```

Follow these conventions when renaming views:

- Make sure the new name follows the rules used for identifiers discussed under “Identifiers” on page 7.
- You can change the name only of views that you own. The Database Owner can change the name of any user’s view.
- Make sure the view is in the current database.

## Altering or dropping underlying objects

You can change the name of a view's underlying objects. For example, if a view references a table entitled `new_sales`, and you rename that table to `old_sales`, the view will work on the renamed table.

However, if a table referenced by a view has been dropped, and someone tries to use the view, Adaptive Server produces an error message. If a new table or view is created to replace the one that was dropped, the view again becomes usable.

If you define a view with a `select *` clause, and then alter the structure of its underlying tables by adding columns, the new columns do not appear. This is because the asterisk shorthand is interpreted and expanded when the view is first created. To see the new columns, drop the view and re-create it.

## Modifying data through views

Although Adaptive Server places no restrictions on retrieving data through views, and although Transact-SQL places fewer restrictions on modifying data through views than other versions of SQL, the following rules apply to various data modification operations:

- update, insert, or delete operations that refer to a computed column or a built-in function in a view are not allowed.
- update, insert, or delete operations that refer to a view that includes aggregates or row aggregates are not allowed.
- insert, delete, and update operations that refer to a distinct view are not allowed.
- insert statements are not allowed unless all NOT NULL columns in the underlying tables or views are included in the view through which you are inserting new rows. Adaptive Server has no way to supply values for NOT NULL columns in the underlying objects.
- If a view has a `with check option` clause, all rows inserted or updated through the view (or through any derived views) must satisfy the view's selection criteria.
- delete statements are not allowed on multitable views.

- insert statements are not allowed on multitable views created with the with check option clause.
- update statements are allowed on multitable views where with check option is used. The update fails if any of the affected columns appears in the where clause, in an expression that includes columns from more than one table.
- insert and update statements are not allowed on multitable distinct views.
- update statements cannot specify a value for an IDENTITY column. The table owner, Database Owner, or a System Administrator can insert an explicit value into an IDENTITY column after setting identity\_insert on for the column's base table.
- If you insert or update a row through a multitable view, all affected columns must belong to the same base table.
- writetext is not allowed on the text and image columns in a view.

When you attempt an update, insert, or delete for a view, Adaptive Server checks to make sure that none of the above restrictions is violated and that no data integrity rules are violated.

## Restrictions on updating views

Restrictions on updated views apply to these areas:

- Computed columns in a view definition
- group by or compute in a view definition
- Null values in underlying objects
- Views created using with check option
- Multitable views
- Views with IDENTITY columns

## Computed columns in a view definition

This restriction applies to columns of views that are derived from computed columns or built-in functions. For example, the amt\_due column in the view accounts is a computed column.

```
create view accounts (title_id, advance, amt_due)
as select titles.title_id, advance,
(price * royalty/100) * total_sales
from titles, roysched
where price > $15
    and advance > $5000
and titles.title_id = roysched.title_id
and total_sales between lorange and hirange
```

The rows visible through accounts are:

```
select * from accounts
title_id      advance      amt_due
-----        -----        -----
PC1035        7,000.00     32,240.16
PC8888        8,000.00     8,190.00
PS1372        7,000.00     809.63
TC3218        7,000.00     785.63
```

(4 rows affected)

updates and inserts to the amt\_due column are not allowed because there is no way to deduce the underlying values for price, royalty, or year-to-date sales from any value you might enter in the amt\_due column. delete operations do not make sense because there is no underlying value to delete.

### **group by or compute in a view definition**

This restriction applies to all columns in views that contain aggregate values—that is, views whose definition includes a group by or compute clause. Here is a view defined with a group by clause and the rows seen through it:

```
create view categories (category, average_price)
as select type, avg(price)
from titles
group by type
select * from categories
category      average_price
-----        -----
UNDECIDED      NULL
business       13.73
mod_cook       11.49
popular_comp   21.48
psychology     13.50
trad_cook      15.96
```

```
(6 rows affected)
```

It does not make sense to insert rows into the view categories. To what group of underlying rows would an inserted row belong? Updates on the average\_price column are not allowed because there is no way to know from any value you might enter there how the underlying prices should be changed.

## NULL values in underlying objects

This restriction applies to insert statements when some NOT NULL columns are contained in the tables or views from which the view is derived.

For example, suppose null values are not allowed in a column of a table that underlies a view. Normally, when you insert new rows through a view, any columns in underlying tables that are not included in the view are given null values. If null values are not allowed in one or more of these columns, no inserts can be allowed through the view.

For example, in this view:

```
create view business_titles
as select title_id, price, total_sales
from titles
where type = "business"
```

Null values are not allowed in the title column of the underlying table titles, so no insert statements can be allowed through business\_view. Although the title column does not even exist in the view, its prohibition of null values makes any inserts into the view illegal.

Similarly, if the title\_id column has a unique index, updates or inserts that would duplicate any values in the underlying table are rejected, even if the entry does not duplicate any value in the view.

## Views created using *with check option*

This restriction determines what types of modifications you can make through views with check options. If a view has a with check option clause, each row inserted or updated through the view must be visible within the view. This is true whether you insert or update the view directly or indirectly, through another derived view.

## Multitable views

This restriction determines what types of modifications you can make through views that join columns from multiple tables. Adaptive Server prohibits delete statements on multitable views, but allows update and insert statements that would not be allowed in other systems.

You can insert or update a multitable view if:

- The view has no with check option clause.
- All columns being inserted or updated belong to the same base table.

For example, consider the following view, which includes columns from both titles and publishers and has no with check option clause:

```
create view multitable_view
as select title, type, titles.pub_id, state
from titles, publishers
where titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
```

A single insert or update statement can specify values *either* for the columns from titles *or* for the column from publishers:

```
update multitable_view
set type = "user_friendly"
where type = "popular_comp"
```

However, this statement fails because it affects columns from both titles and publishers:

```
update multitable_view
set type = "cooking_trad",
state = "WA"
where type = "trad_cook"
```

## Views with IDENTITY columns

This restriction determines what types of modifications you can make to views that include IDENTITY columns. By definition, IDENTITY columns are not updatable. Updates through a view cannot specify an IDENTITY column value.

Inserts to IDENTITY columns are restricted to:

- The table owner
- The Database Owner or the System Administrator if the table owner has granted them permission

- The Database Owner or the System Administrator if impersonating the table owner by using the setuser command.

To enable such inserts through a view, use set identity\_insert on for the column's base table. It is not sufficient to use set identity\_insert on for the view through which you are inserting.

## Dropping views

To delete a view from the database, use drop view:

```
drop view [owner.]view_name [, [owner.]view_name]...
```

As indicated, you can drop more than one view at a time. Only its owner (or the database owner) can drop a view.

When you issue drop view, information about the view is deleted from sysprocedures, sysobjects, syscolumns, syscomments, sysprotects, and sysdepends. All privileges on that view are also deleted.

If a view depends on a table or on another view that has been dropped, Adaptive Server returns an error message if anyone tries to use the view. If a new table or view is created to replace the one that has been dropped, and if it has the same name as the dropped table or view, the view again becomes usable, as long as the columns referenced in the view definition exist.

## Using views as security mechanisms

Permission to access the subset of data in a view must be explicitly granted or revoked, regardless of the permissions in force on the view's underlying tables. Data in an underlying table that is not included in the view is hidden from users who are authorized to access the view but not the underlying table.

For example, you may not want some users to access the columns that have to do with money and sales in the titles table. You can create a view of the titles table that omits those columns, and then give all users permission on the view, and give only the Sales Department permission on the table. For example:

```
revoke all on titles to public
grant all on bookview to public
grant all on titles to sales
```

For information about how to grant or revoke permissions, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Getting information about views

System procedures, catalog stored procedures, and Adaptive Server built-in functions provide information from the system tables about views.

For complete information about system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Getting help on views with *sp\_help*

You can get a report on a view with *sp\_help*. For example:

```
sp_help hiprice
Name           Owner      type
-----         -----      -----
hiprice        dbo        view

(1 row affected)
Data_located_on_segment      When_created
-----                         -----
not applicable                July 7 1997 11:57AM

Column_name    Type     Length   Precision  Scale
-----          -----    -----    -----      -----
title_id       tid      6        NULL      NULL
title          varchar  80       NULL      NULL
type           char     12       NULL      NULL
pub_id         char     4        NULL      NULL
price          money    8        NULL      NULL
advance        money    8        NULL      NULL
total_sales    int      4        NULL      NULL
notes          varchar  200      NULL      NULL
pubdate        datetime 8        NULL      NULL
contract       bit      1        NULL      NULL
```

Nulls	Default_name	Rule_name	Identity
0	NULL	NULL	0
0	NULL	NULL	0
0	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
1	NULL	NULL	0
0	NULL	NULL	0
0	NULL	NULL	0

No defined keys for this object.

(return status = 0)

## Using `sp_helptext` to display view information

The System Security Officer must reset the allow select on syscomments.text column configuration parameter, in the evaluated configuration. (See **evaluated configuration** in the Glossary for more information.) When this happens, you must be the creator of the view or a System Administrator to view the text of a view through `sp_helptext`.

To display the text of the create view statement, execute `sp_helptext`:

```
sp_helptext hiprice
-----
1

(1 row affected)

text
-----
create view hiprice
as select *
from titles
where price > $15 and advance > $5000

(1 row affected, return status = 0)
```

If the source text of a view was encrypted using sp\_hidetext, Adaptive Server displays a message advising you that the text is hidden. For information about hiding source text, see sp\_hidetext in the *Reference Manual*.

## Using **sp\_depends** to list dependent objects

sp\_depends lists all the objects that the view or table references in the current database, and all the objects that reference that view or table.

```
sp_depends titles
Things inside the current database that reference
the object.
object          type
-----
dbo.history_proc    stored procedure
dbo.title_proc     stored procedure
dbo.titleid_proc   stored procedure
dbo.deltitle       trigger
dbo.totalsales_trig trigger
dbo.accounts        view
dbo.bookview        view
dbo.categories      view
dbo.hiprice         view
dbo.multitable_view view
dbo.titleview       view

(return status = 0)
```

## Listing all views in a database

sp\_tables lists all views in a database when used in the following format:

```
sp_tables @table_type = "'VIEW'"
```

## Finding an object name and ID

The system functions object\_id() and object\_name() identify the ID and name of a view. For example:

```
select object_id("titleview")
-----
480004741
```

Object names and IDs are stored in the sysobjects table.



# Using the Built-In Functions in Queries

Built-in functions are a Transact-SQL extension to SQL that return information from the database.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
System functions that return database information	365
String functions used for character strings or expressions	371
Text functions used for text and image data	382
Aggregate functions	384
Mathematical functions	386
Date functions	389
Datatype conversion functions	396
Security functions	406

For reference material on the built-in functions, see the *Reference Manual*.

## System functions that return database information

The system functions return special information from the database. Many of them provide a shorthand way of querying the system tables.

The general syntax of the system functions is:

```
select function_name(argument[s])
```

You can use the system functions in the select list, in the where clause, and anywhere an expression is allowed.

For example, to find the user identification number of your coworker who logs in as “harold,” type:

```
select user_id( "harold" )
```

Assuming that “harold” has user ID 13, the result is:

-----  
13

(1 row affected)

Generally, the name of the function tells you what kind of information is returned.

The system function `user_name` takes an ID number as its argument and returns the user's name:

```
select user_name(13)
-----
harold
```

(1 row affected)

To find the name of the current user, that is, your name, omit the argument:

```
select user_name()
-----
dbo
```

(1 row affected)

Adaptive Server handles user IDs as follows:

- The System Administrator becomes the Database Owner in any database he or she is using by assuming the **server user ID 1**.
- A “guest” user is always given the server user ID 1.
- Inside a database, the `user_name` of the Database Owner is always “dbo”; his or her user ID is 1.
- Inside a database, the “guest” user ID is always 2.

Table 10-1 lists the name of each system function, the argument it takes, and the result it returns.

**Table 10-1: System functions, arguments, and results**

Function	Argument	Result
<code>col_name</code>	<code>(object_id, column_id [, database_id ])</code>	Returns the column name.
<code>col_length</code>	<code>(object_name, column_name)</code>	Returns the defined length of column. Use <code>datalength</code> to see the actual data size.

Function	Argument	Result
curunreservedpgs	( <i>dbid, lstart, unreservedpgs</i> )	Returns the number of free pages in a disk piece. If the database is open, the value is taken from memory; if the database is not in use, the value is taken from the <i>unreservedpgs</i> column in <i>sysusages</i> .
data_pgs	([ <i>dbid</i> ,] <i>object_id</i> , { <i>doampg</i>   <i>ioampg</i> })	Returns the number of pages used by the table ( <i>doampg</i> ) or index ( <i>ioampg</i> ). The result does not include pages used for internal structures. Use the function in a query run against the <i>sysindexes</i> table.
datalength	( <i>expression</i> )	Returns the length of <i>expression</i> in bytes. <i>expression</i> is usually a column name. If <i>expression</i> is a character constant, it must be enclosed in quotes.
db_id	([ <i>database_name</i> ])	Returns the database ID number. <i>database_name</i> must be a character expression; if it is a constant expression, it must be enclosed in quotes. If no <i>database_name</i> is supplied, <i>db_id</i> returns the ID number of the current database.
db_name	([ <i>database_id</i> ])	Returns the database name. <i>database_id</i> must be a numeric expression. If no <i>database_id</i> is supplied, <i>db_name</i> returns the name of the current database.
host_id	( )	Returns the host process ID of the client process (not the Adaptive Server process).
host_name	( )	Returns the current host computer name of the client process (not the Adaptive Server process).
index_col	( <i>object_name, index_id, key_ #[, user_id ]</i> )	Returns the name of the indexed column; returns NULL if <i>object_name</i> is not a table or view name.
isnull	( <i>expression1, expression2</i> )	Substitutes the value specified in <i>expression2</i> when <i>expression1</i> evaluates to NULL. The datatypes of the expressions must convert implicitly, or you must use the convert function.

Function	Argument	Result
lct_admin	({ "lastchance"   "logfull"   "unsuspend" } , <i>database_id</i> }   "reserve", <i>log_pages</i> })	Manages the log segment's last-chance threshold.  lastchance creates a last-chance threshold in the specified database.  logfull returns 1 if the last-chance threshold has been crossed in the specified database, or 0 if it has not.  unsuspend awakens suspended tasks in the database and disables the last-chance threshold if that threshold has been crossed.  reserve returns the number of free log pages required to successfully dump a transaction log of the specified size.
object_id	( <i>object_name</i> )	Returns the object ID.
object_name	( <i>object_id</i> [, <i>database_id</i> ])	Returns the object name.
reserved_pgs	( <i>object_id</i> , { <i>doampg</i>   <i>ioampg</i> })	Returns the number of pages allocated to table or index, including report pages used for internal structures.
rowcnt	( <i>doampg</i> )	Returns the number of rows in a table (estimate).
suser_id	([ <i>server_user_name</i> ])	Returns the server user's ID number from syslogins. If no <i>server_user_name</i> is supplied, it returns the server ID of the current user.
suser_name	([ <i>server_user_id</i> ])	Returns the server user's name. Server user's IDs are stored in syslogins. If no <i>server_user_id</i> is supplied, it returns the name of the current user.
tsequal	( <i>timestamp</i> , <i>timestamp2</i> )	Compares <i>timestamp</i> values to prevent update on a row that has been modified since it was selected for browsing. <i>timestamp</i> is the timestamp of the browsed row; <i>timestamp2</i> is the timestamp of the stored row. Allows you to use browse mode without calling DB-Library.
used_pgs	( <i>object_id</i> , <i>doampg</i> , <i>ioampg</i> )	Returns the total number of pages used by a table and its clustered index.
user		Returns the user's name.

Function	Argument	Result
user_id	( <i>[user_name]</i> )	Returns the user's ID number. Reports the number from sysusers in the current database. If no <i>user_name</i> is supplied, it returns the ID of the current user.
user_name	( <i>[user_id]</i> )	Returns the user's name, based on the user's ID in the current database. If no <i>user_id</i> is supplied, it returns the name of the current user.
valid_name	( <i>character_expression</i> )	Returns 0 if the <i>character_expression</i> is not a valid identifier (illegal characters or more than 30 bytes long), or a number other than 0 if it is a valid identifier.
valid_user	( <i>server_user_id</i> )	Returns 1 if the specified ID is a valid user or alias in at least one database on this Adaptive Server. You must have the sa_role or sso_role role to use this function on a <i>server_user_id</i> other than your own.

When the argument to a system function is optional, the current database, host computer, server user, or database user is assumed. With the exception of user, built-in functions are always used with parentheses, even if the argument is NULL.

## Examples of using system functions

The examples in this section use these system functions:

- col\_length
- datalength
- isnull
- user\_name

### ***col\_length***

This query finds the length of the title column in the titles table (the “x=” is included so that the result has a column heading):

```
select x = col_length("titles", "title")
      x
      -----
      
```

80

(1 row affected)

### ***datalength***

In contrast to col\_length, which finds the defined length of a column, datalength reports the actual length, in bytes, of the data stored in each row. Use this function on varchar, nvarchar, varbinary, text, and image datatypes, since they can store variable lengths and do not store trailing blanks. datalength of any NULL data returns NULL. When a char value is declared to allow NULLS, Adaptive Server stores it internally as a varchar. All other datatypes report their defined length. Here is an example that finds the length of the pub\_name column in the publishers table:

```
select Length = datalength(pub_name), pub_name
from publishers
Length  pub_name
-----  -----
13      New Age Books
16      Binnet & Hardley
20      Algodata Infosystems
```

(3 rows affected)

### ***isnull***

This query finds the average of the prices of all titles, substituting the value “\$10.00” for all NULL entries in price:

```
select avg(isnull(price,$10.00))
from titles
-----
14.24
```

(1 row affected)

### ***user\_name***

This query finds the row in sysusers where the name is equal to the result of applying the system function user\_name to user ID 1:

```
select name
from sysusers
where name = user_name(1)
```

```
name
-----
dbo

(1 row affected)
```

## String functions used for character strings or expressions

String functions are used for various operations on character strings or expressions. A few string functions can be used on binary data as well as on character data. You can also concatenate binary data or character strings or expressions.

String built-in functions return values commonly needed for operations on character data. String function names are not keywords.

The syntax for string functions takes the general form:

```
select function_name(arguments)
```

You can concatenate binary or character expressions like this:

```
select (expression + expression [+ expression]...)
```

When concatenating noncharacter, nonbinary expressions, you must use the convert function:

```
select "The price is " + convert(varchar(12),price)
from titles
```

Most string functions can be used only on char, nchar, unichar , varchar, univarchar, and nvarchar datatypes and on datatypes that implicitly convert to char, unichar, or varchar, univarchar. A few string functions can also be used on binary and varbinary data. patindex can be used on text, char, nchar, varchar, and nvarchar columns.

You can concatenate binary and varbinary columns and char, unichar, nchar, varchar, univarchar, and nvarchar columns. If you concatenate unichar and univarchar with char, nchar, nvarchar, and varchar, the result is unichar or univarchar. However, you *cannot* concatenate text or image columns.

You can nest string functions and use them anywhere an expression is allowed. When you use constants with a string function, enclose them in single or double quotes.

Each function also accepts arguments that can be implicitly converted to the specified type. For example, functions that accept approximate numeric expressions also accept integer expressions. Adaptive Server automatically converts the argument to the desired type.

Table 10-2 lists the arguments used in string functions. If a function takes more than one expression of the same type, the arguments are numbered *char\_expr1*, *char\_expr2*, and so on.

**Table 10-2: Arguments used in string functions**

Argument type	Can be replaced by
<i>char_expr</i>	A character-type column name, variable, or constant expression of char, unichar, varchar, univarchar, nchar, or nvarchar type. Functions that accept text column names are noted in the explanation. Constant expressions must be enclosed in quotation marks.
<i>uchar_expr</i>	A character-type column name, variable, or constant expression of unichar or univarchar type. Functions that accept text column names are noted in the explanation. Constant expressions must be enclosed in quotation marks.
<i>expression</i>	A binary or character column name, variable or constant expression. Can be char, varchar, nchar, nvarchar, unichar or univarchar data, as for <i>char_expr</i> , plus binary or varbinary.
<i>pattern</i>	A character expression of char, nchar, varchar, or nvarchar datatype that may include any of the pattern-matching wildcards supported by Adaptive Server.
<i>approx_numeric</i>	Any approximate numeric ( <i>float</i> , <i>real</i> , or <i>double precision</i> ) column name, variable, or constant expression.
<i>integer_expr</i>	Any integer (such as tinyint, smallint or int), column name, variable, or constant expression. Maximum size ranges are noted, as they apply.
<i>start</i>	An <i>integer_expr</i> .
<i>length</i>	An <i>integer_expr</i> .

Table 10-3 lists function names, arguments, and results.

**Table 10-3: String functions, arguments and results**

Function	Argument	Result
ascii	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Returns the ASCII code for the first character in the expression.
char	( <i>integer_expr</i> )	Converts a single-byte integer value to a character value. char is usually used as the inverse of ascii. <i>integer_expr</i> must be between 0 and 255. Returns a char datatype. If the resulting value is the first byte of a multibyte character, the character may be undefined.
charindex	( <i>expression1</i> , <i>expression2</i> )	Searches <i>expression2</i> for the first occurrence of <i>expression1</i> and returns an integer representing its starting position. If <i>expression1</i> is not found, it returns 0. If <i>expression1</i> contains wildcard characters, charindex treats them as literals.

Function	Argument	Result
char_length	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Returns an integer representing the number of characters in a character expression or text value. For variable-length data in a table column, <i>char_length</i> returns the number of characters. For fixed-length data, it returns the defined length of the column. For multibyte character sets, the number of characters in the expression is usually less than the number of bytes; use the system function <i>datalength</i> to determine the number of bytes.
difference	( <i>char_expr1</i> , <i>char_expr2</i> )	Returns an integer representing the difference between two soundex values. See <i>soundex</i> , below.
lower	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Converts uppercase to lowercase. Returns a character value.
ltrim	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Removes leading blanks from the character expression. Only values equivalent to the space character in the SQL special character specification are removed.
patindex	("%" <i>pattern</i> "%, <i>char_expr</i> [using {bytes   chars   characters}])	Returns an integer representing the starting position of the first occurrence of <i>pattern</i> in the specified character expression; returns 0 if <i>pattern</i> is not found. By default, <i>patindex</i> returns the offset in characters. To return the offset in bytes, that is, multibyte character strings, specify <i>using bytes</i> . The % wildcard character must precede and follow <i>pattern</i> , except when searching for first or last characters. See “Character strings in query results” on page 48 for a description of the wildcard characters that can be used in <i>pattern</i> . <i>patindex</i> can be used on text data.
replicate	( <i>char_expr</i> , <i>integer_expr</i> )	Returns a string with the same datatype as <i>char_expr</i> , containing the same expression repeated the specified number of times or as many times as will fit into a 255-byte space, whichever is less.
reverse	( <i>expression</i> )	Returns the reverse of the character or binary expression; if <i>expression</i> is “abcd”, it returns “dcba”; if <i>expression</i> is 0x12345000, returns 0x00503412.
right	( <i>expression</i> , <i>integer_expr</i> )	Returns the part of the character or binary expression starting at the specified number of characters from the right. Return value has the same datatype as the character expression.
rtrim	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Removes trailing blanks. Only values equivalent to the space character in the SQL special character definition are removed.
soundex	( <i>char_expr</i> )	Returns a four-character soundex code for character strings that are composed of a contiguous sequence of valid single- or double-byte Roman letters.
space	( <i>integer_expr</i> )	Returns a string with the indicated number of single-byte spaces.

Function	Argument	Result
str	(approx_numeric [, length [, decimal] ])	Returns a character representation of the floating point number. <i>length</i> sets the number of characters to be returned (including the decimal point, all digits to the right and left of the decimal point, and blanks); <i>decimal</i> sets the number of decimal digits to be returned.  <i>length</i> and <i>decimal</i> are optional. If given, they must be nonnegative. Default <i>length</i> is 10; default <i>decimal</i> is 0. str rounds the decimal portion of the number so that the results fit within the specified <i>length</i> .
stuff	(char_expr1, start, length, char_expr2)	Delete <i>length</i> characters from <i>char_expr1</i> at <i>start</i> , and then insert <i>char_expr2</i> into <i>char_expr1</i> at <i>start</i> . To delete characters without inserting other characters, <i>char_expr2</i> should be NULL, not "", which indicates a single space.
substring	(expression, start, length)	Returns part of a character or binary string. <i>start</i> specifies the character position at which the substring begins. <i>length</i> specifies the number of characters in the substring.
to_unichar	(integer_expr)	Returns a unichar expression having the value of the integer expression. If the integer expression is in the range 0xD800..0xDFFF, a <i>sqlstate</i> exception is raised, an error is printed, and the operation is aborted. If the integer expression is in the range 0..0xFFFF, a single Unicode value is returned. If the integer expression is in the range 0x10000..0x10FFFF, a surrogate pair is returned.
upper	(char_expr)	Converts lowercase to uppercase. Returns a character value.
uhighsurr	(uchar_expr, start )	Returns 1 if the Unicode value at <i>start</i> is the high half of a surrogate pair (which should appear first in the pair). Otherwise, returns 0. This function allows you to write explicit code for surrogate handling. Particularly, if a substring starts on a Unicode character where uhightsurr() is true, extract a substring of at least 2 Unicode values, as substr() does not extract just 1. substr() does not extract half of a surrogate pair.
ulowsurr	(uchar_expr, start)	Returns 1 if the Unicode value at <i>start</i> is the low half of a surrogate pair (which should appear second in the pair). Otherwise, returns 0. This function allows you to explicitly code around the adjustments performed by substr(), stuff(), and right(). Particularly, if a substring ends on a Unicode value where ulowsurr() is true, extract a substring of 1 less characters (or 1 more), since substr() does not extract a string that contains an unmatched surrogate pair.

Function	Argument	Result
uscalar	( <i>uchar_expr</i> )	Returns the Unicode scalar value for the first Unicode character in an expression. If the first character is <i>not</i> the high-order half of a surrogate pair, then the value is in the range 0..0xFFFF. If the first character <i>is</i> the high-order half of a surrogate pair, a second value must be a low-order half, and the return value is in the range 0x10000..0x10FFFF. If this function is called on a <i>uchar_expr</i> containing an unmatched surrogate half, an SQLSTATE exception is raised, an error printed, and the operation aborted.

## Examples of using string functions

The examples in this section use these system functions:

- charindex, patindex
- str
- stuff
- soundex, difference
- substring

### ***charindex, patindex***

The *charindex* and *patindex* functions return the starting position of a pattern you specify. Both take two arguments, but they work slightly differently, since *patindex* can use wildcard characters, but *charindex* cannot. *charindex* can be used only on *char*, *nchar*, *unichar*, *univarchar*, *varchar*, *nvarchar*, *binary*, and *varbinary* columns; *patindex* works on *char*, *nchar*, *unichar*, *univarchar*, *varchar*, *nvarchar*, and *text* columns.

Both functions take two arguments. The first is the pattern whose position you want. With *patindex*, you must include percent signs before and after the pattern, unless you are looking for the pattern as the first (omit the preceding %) or last (omit the trailing %) characters in a column. For *charindex*, the pattern cannot include wildcard characters. The second argument is a character expression, usually a column name, in which Adaptive Server searches for the specified pattern.

To find the position at which the pattern “wonderful” begins in a certain row of the *notes* column of the *titles* table, using both functions, enter:

```
select charindex( "wonderful" , notes ),
```

```
      patindex("%wonderful%", notes)
      from titles
      where title_id = "TC3218"
-----
          46           46
(1 row affected)
```

If you do not restrict the rows to be searched, the query returns all rows in the table and reports zero values for those rows that do not contain the pattern. In the following example, patindex finds all the rows in sysobjects that start with “sys” and whose fourth character is “a”, “b”, “c”, or “d”:

```
select name
from sysobjects
where patindex("sys[a-d]%", name) > 0
name
-----
sysalternates
sysattributes
syscolumns
syscomments
sysconstraints
sysdepends

(6 rows affected)
```

## **str**

The str function converts numbers to characters, with optional arguments for specifying the length of the number (including sign, decimal point, and digits to the right and left of the decimal point), and the number of places after the decimal point.

Set length and decimal arguments to str positive. The default length is 10. The default decimal is 0. The length should be long enough to accommodate the decimal point and the number’s sign. The decimal portion of the result is rounded to fit within the specified length. If the integer portion of the number does not fit within the length, however, str returns a row of asterisks of the specified length.

For example:

```
select str(123.456, 2, 4)

-- 
**
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

A short *approx\_numeric* is right-justified in the specified length, and a long *approx\_numeric* is truncated to the specified number of decimal places.

### **stuff**

The *stuff* function inserts a string into another string. It deletes a specified length of characters in *expr1* at the start position. It then inserts *expr2* string into *expr1* string at the start position. If the start position or the length is negative, a NULL string is returned.

If the start position is longer than *expr1*, a NULL string is returned. If the length to delete is longer than *expr1*, it is deleted through the last character in *expr1*. For example:

```
select stuff("abc", 2, 3, "xyz")
-----
axyz

(1 row affected)
```

To use *stuff* to delete a character, replace *expr2* with NULL, not with empty quotation marks. Using “ ” to specify a null character replaces it with a space.

```
select stuff("abcdef", 2, 3, null)
---
aef

(1 row affected)
select stuff("abcdef", 2, 3, " ")
-----
a ef

(1 row affected)
```

### **soundex, difference**

The *soundex* function converts a character string to a four-digit code for use in a comparison. It ignores vowels in the comparison. Nonalphanumeric characters terminate the *soundex* evaluation. This function always returns some value. These two names have identical *soundex* codes:

```
select soundex ("smith") , soundex ( "smythe" )
-----
S530  S530
```

The difference function compares the soundex values of two strings and evaluates the similarity between them, returning a value from 0 to 4. A value of 4 is the best match. For example:

```
select difference("smithers" , "smothers" )
-----
4

(1 row affected)
select difference("smothers" , "brothers" )
-----
2

(1 row affected)
```

## ***substring***

The following example uses the substring function. It displays the last name and first initial of each author, for example, “Bennet A”.

```
select au_lname, substring(au_fname, 1, 1)
      from authors
```

substring returns a portion of a character or binary string.

substring always takes three arguments. The first can be a character or binary string, a column name, or a string-valued expression that includes a column name. The second argument specifies the position at which the substring should begin. The third specifies the length, in number of characters, of the string to be returned.

The syntax of substring looks like this:

substring(*expression, start, length*)

For example, here is how to specify the second, third, and fourth characters of the string constant “abcdef”:

```
select x = substring("abcdef" , 2, 3)
      x
-----
bcd

(1 row affected)
```

The following example shows how to extract the lower four digits from a binary field, where each position represents two binary digits:

```
select substring(xactid,5,2) from syslogs
-----
0x0000
0x0001
(11 rows affected)
```

## Examples of other string functions

Most of the remaining string functions are easy to use and understand.

**Table 10-4: String function examples**

Statement	Result
select right("abcde", 3)	cde
select right("abcde", 6)	abcde
select right(0x12345000, 3)	0x345000
select right(0x12345000, 6)	0x12345000
select upper("torso")	TORSO
select ascii("ABC")	65

## Concatenation

You can concatenate binary or character expressions—combine two or more character or binary strings, character or binary data, or a combination of them—with the + string concatenation operator. The maximum length of a concatenated string is 16384 bytes.

When you concatenate character strings, enclose each character expression in single or double quotes.

The concatenation syntax is:

```
select (expression + expression [+ expression]...)
```

Here is how to combine two character strings:

```
select ("abc" + "def")
-----
abcdef

(1 row affected)
```

This query displays California authors' names under the column heading *Moniker* in last name-first name order, with a comma and space after the last name:

```
select Moniker = (au_lname + ", " + au_fname)
from authors
where state = "CA"
Moniker
-----
White, Johnson
Green, Marjorie
Carson, Cheryl
O'Leary, Michael
Straight, Dick
Bennet, Abraham
Dull, Ann
Gringlesby, Burt
Locksley, Chastity
Yokomoto, Akiko
Stringer, Dirk
MacFeather, Stearns
Karsen, Livia
Hunter, Sheryl
McBadden, Heather

(15 rows affected)
```

To concatenate numeric or datetime datatypes, you must use the convert function:

```
select "The due date is " + convert(varchar(30),
    pubdate)
from titles
where title_id = "BU1032"
-----
The due date is Jun 12 1986 12:00AM

(1 row affected)
```

## Concatenation and the empty string

Adaptive Server evaluates the empty string ("“ or “) as a single space. This statement:

```
select "abc" + " " + "def"
```

produces:

```
abc def
```

## Nested string functions

You can nest string functions. For example, to display the last name and the first initial of each author, with a comma after the last name and a period after the first name, type:

```
select (au_lname + "," + " " + substring(au_fname,
1, 1) + ".")
from authors
where city = "Oakland"
-----
Green, M.
Straight, D.
Stringer, D.
MacFeather, S.
Karsen, L.
```

(5 rows affected)

To display the pub\_id and the first two characters of each title\_id for books priced more than \$20, type:

```
select substring(pub_id + title_id, 1, 6)
from titles
where price > $20
-----
1389PC
0877PS
0877TC
```

(3 rows affected)

## Text functions used for **text** and **image** data

Text built-in functions are used for operations on text and image data.

Table 10-5 lists text function names, arguments, and results:

**Table 10-5: Built-in text functions for text and image data**

Function	Argument	Result
patindex	(“% <i>pattern</i> %”, <i>char_expr</i> [using {bytes   chars   characters} ])	Returns an integer value representing the starting position of the first occurrence of <i>pattern</i> in the specified character expression; returns 0 if <i>pattern</i> is not found. By default, patindex returns the offset in characters; to return the offset in bytes for multibyte character strings, specify using bytes. The % wildcard character must precede and follow <i>pattern</i> , except when you are searching for first or last characters. See “Character strings in query results” on page 48 for a description of the wildcard characters that can be used in <i>pattern</i> .
textptr	( <i>text_columnname</i> )	Returns the text pointer value, a 16-byte varbinary value.
textvalid	(“ <i>table_name..col_name</i> ”, <i>textpointer</i> )	Checks that a given text pointer is valid. Note that the identifier for a text or image column must include the table name. Returns 1 if the pointer is valid, 0 if the pointer is invalid.

`datalength` also works on text columns. See “System functions that return database information” on page 365 for information about `datalength`.

The `set textszie` command specifies the limit, in bytes, of the text or image data to be returned with a `select` statement. For example, this command sets the limit on text or image data returned with a `select` statement to 100 bytes:

```
set textszie 100
```

The current setting is stored in the `@@textsize` global variable. The default setting is controlled by the client program. To reset the default, issue:

```
set textszie 0
```

You can also use the `@@textcolid`, `@@textdbid`, `@@textobjid`, `@@textptr`, and `@@textsize` global variables to manipulate text and image data.

## Readtext

The readtext command provides a way to retrieve text and image values if you want to retrieve only a selected portion of a column's data. readtext requires the name of the table and column, the text pointer, a starting offset within the column, and the number of characters or bytes to retrieve.

The full syntax of readtext is:

```
readtext [[database.]owner.]table_name.column_name  
text_pointer offset size  
[holdlock | noholdlock] [readpast]  
[using {bytes | chars | characters}]  
[at isolation {  
    [read uncommitted | 0] |  
    [read committed | 1] |  
    [repeatable read | 2] |  
    [serializable | 3]}]
```

The holdlock flag locks the text value for reads until the end of the transaction. Other users can read the value but cannot modify it. The at isolation clause is described in Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

If you are using a multibyte character set, the using option allows you to choose whether you want readtext to interpret the offset and size as bytes or as characters. Both chars and characters specify characters. This option has no effect when used with a single-byte character set or with image values (readtext reads image values only on a byte-by-byte basis). If the using option is not given, readtext returns the value as if bytes were specified.

Adaptive Server has to determine the number of bytes to send to the client in response to a readtext command. When the offset and size are in bytes, determining the number of bytes in the returned text is simple. When the offset and size are in characters, Adaptive Server must calculate the number of bytes being returned to the client. As a result, performance may be slower when using characters as the offset and size. using characters is useful only when Adaptive Server is using a multibyte character set. This option ensures that readtext does not return partial characters.

When using bytes as the offset, Adaptive Server may find partial characters at the beginning or end of the text data to be returned. If it does, the server replaces each partial character with question marks before returning the text to the client.

You cannot use readtext on text and image columns in views.

## Examples of using text functions

This example uses the `textptr` function to locate the text column, `copy`, associated with `title_id` BU7832 in table `blurbs`. The text pointer, a 16-byte binary string, is put into a local variable, `@val`, and supplied as a parameter to the `readtext` command. `readtext` returns 5 bytes starting at the second byte, with an offset of 1.

```
declare @val binary(16)
select @val = textptr(copy) from blurbs
where au_id = "486-29-1786"
readtext blurbs.copy @val 1 5
```

`textptr` returns a 16-byte varbinary string. Sybase suggests that you put this string into a local variable, as in the preceding example, and use it by reference.

An alternative to using `textptr` in the preceding `declare` example is the `@@textptr` global variable:

```
readtext texttest.blurb @@textptr 1 5
```

The value of `@@textptr` is set from the last insert or update to any *text* or *image* field by the current Adaptive Server process. Inserts and updates by other processes do not affect the current process.

Explicit conversion using the `convert` function is supported from *text* to *char*, *nchar*, *unichar*, *varchar*, *univarchar*, or *nvarchar*, and from *image* to *varbinary* or *binary*, but *text* or *image* data is truncated to the server page size. Conversion of *text* or *image* to datatypes other than these is not supported, implicitly or explicitly.

# Aggregate functions

The aggregate functions generate summary values that appear as new columns in the query results. Table 10-6 lists the aggregate functions, their arguments, and the results they return.

**Table 10-6: Aggregate functions**

Function	Argument	Result
avg	(all   distinct) <i>expression</i>	Returns the numeric average of all (distinct) values
count	(all   distinct) <i>expression</i>	Returns the number of (distinct) non-null values or the number of rows

Function	Argument	Result
max	( <i>expression</i> )	Returns the highest value in an expression
min	( <i>expression</i> )	Returns the lowest value in a column
sum	(all   distinct) <i>expression</i>	Returns the total of the values

Examples are as follows:

```

select avg(advance), sum(total_sales)
from titles
where type = "business"
-----
6281.25      30,788

(1 row affected)
select count(distinct city) from authors
-----
16

(1 row affected)
select discount from salesdetail
compute max(discount)
discount
-----
40.000000
...
46.700000

Compute Result:
-----
62.200000

(117 rows affect)
select min(au_lname) from authors
-----
Bennet

(1 row affected)

```

# Mathematical functions

Mathematical built-in functions return values commonly needed for operations on mathematical data.

The mathematical functions take the general form:

*function\_name(arguments)*

The chart below lists the types of arguments that are used in the built-in mathematical functions:

**Table 10-7: Arguments used in mathematical functions**

Argument type	Can be replaced by
<i>approx_numeric</i>	Any approximate numeric (float, real, or double precision) column name, variable, constant expression, or a combination of these
<i>integer</i>	Any integer (tinyint, smallint or, int) column name, variable, constant expression, or a combination of these
<i>numeric</i>	Any exact numeric (numeric, dec, decimal, tinyint, smallint, or int), approximate numeric (float, real, or double precision), or money column, variable, constant expression, or a combination of these
<i>power</i>	Any exact numeric, approximate numeric, or money column, variable, or constant expression, or a combination of these

Each function also accepts arguments that can be implicitly converted to the specified type. For example, functions that accept approximate numeric types also accept integer types. Adaptive Server converts the argument to the desired type.

If a function takes more than one expression of the same type, the expressions are numbered (for example, *approx\_numeric1*, *approx\_numeric2*).

Table 10-8 lists the mathematical functions, their arguments, and the results they return:

**Table 10-8: Mathematical functions**

Function	Argument	Result
<i>abs</i>	( <i>numeric</i> )	Returns the absolute value of a given expression. Results are of the same type, and have the same precision and scale, as the numeric expression.
<i>acos</i>	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the angle (in radians) whose cosine is the specified value.
<i>asin</i>	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the angle (in radians) whose sine is the specified value.
<i>atan</i>	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the angle (in radians) whose tangent is the specified value.
<i>atn2</i>	( <i>approx_numeric1</i> , <i>approx_numeric2</i> )	Returns the angle (in radians) whose tangent is ( <i>approx_numeric1</i> / <i>approx_numeric2</i> ).

Function	Argument	Result
ceiling	(numeric)	Returns the smallest integer greater than or equal to the specified value. Results are of the same type as the numeric expression. For numeric and decimal expressions, the results have a precision equal to that of the expression and a scale of 0.
cos	(approx_numeric)	Returns the trigonometric cosine of the specified angle (in radians).
cot	(approx_numeric)	Returns the trigonometric cotangent of the specified angle (in radians).
degrees	(numeric)	Converts radians to degrees. Results are of the same type as the numeric expression. For numeric and decimal expressions, the results have an internal precision of 77 and a scale equal to that of the expression. When the money datatype is used, internal conversion to float may cause loss of precision.
exp	(approx_numeric)	Returns the exponential value of the specified value.
floor	(numeric)	Returns the largest integer that is less than or equal to the specified value. Results are of the same type as the numeric expression. For expressions of type numeric or decimal, the results have a precision equal to that of the expression and a scale of 0.
log	(approx_numeric)	Returns the natural logarithm of the specified value.
log10	(approx_numeric)	Returns the base 10 logarithm of the specified value.
pi	()	Returns the constant value of 3.1415926535897931.
power	(numeric, power)	Returns the value of numeric to the power of power. Results are of the same type as numeric. For expressions of type numeric or decimal, the results have a precision of 77 and a scale equal to that of the expression.
radians	(numeric_expr)	Converts degrees to radians. Results are of the same type as numeric. For expressions of type numeric or decimal, the results have an internal precision of 77 and a scale equal to that of the numeric expression. When the money datatype is used, internal conversion to float may cause loss of precision.
rand	([integer])	Returns a random float value between 0 and 1, using the optional integer as a seed value.
round	(numeric, integer)	Rounds the numeric so that it has <i>integer</i> significant digits. A positive <i>integer</i> determines the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point; a negative <i>integer</i> , the number of significant digits to the left of the decimal point. Results are of the same type as the numeric expression and, for numeric and decimal expressions, have an internal precision equal to the precision of the first argument plus 1 and a scale equal to that of the numeric expression.
sign	(numeric)	Returns the sign of numeric: positive (+1), zero (0), or negative (-1). Results are of the same type and have the same precision and scale as the numeric expression.

Function	Argument	Result
sin	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the trigonometric sine of the specified angle (measured in radians).
sqrt	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the square root of the specified value. Value must be positive or 0.
tan	( <i>approx_numeric</i> )	Returns the trigonometric tangent of the specified angle (measured in radians).

## Examples of using mathematical functions

The mathematical built-in functions operate on numeric data. Certain functions require integer data and others approximate numeric data. A number of functions operate on exact numeric, approximate numeric, money, and float types. The precision of built-in operations on float type data is six decimal places by default.

Error traps are provided to handle domain or range errors of the mathematical functions. Users can set the arithabort and arithignore options to determine how domain errors are handled. For more information about these options, see “Conversion errors” on page 402.

Table 10-9 displays some simple examples of mathematical functions:

**Table 10-9: Examples of mathematical functions**

Statement	Result
select floor(123)	123
select floor(123.45)	123.000000
select floor(1.2345E2)	123.000000
select floor(-123.45)	-124.000000
select floor(-1.2345E2)	-124.000000
select floor(\$123.45)	123.00
select ceiling(123.45)	124.000000
select ceiling(-123.45)	-123.000000
select ceiling(1.2345E2)	124.000000
select ceiling(-1.2345E2)	-123.000000
select ceiling(\$123.45)	124.00
select round(123.4545, 2)	123.4500
select round(123.45, -2)	100.00
select round(1.2345E2, 2)	123.450000
select round(1.2345E2, -2)	100.000000

The `round(numeric, integer)` function always returns a value. If `integer` is negative and exceeds the number of significant digits in `numeric`, Adaptive Server rounds only the most significant digit. For example, this returns a value of 100.00:

```
select round(55.55, -3)
```

The number of zeros to the right of the decimal point is equal to the scale of the first argument's precision plus 1.

## Date functions

The date built-in functions perform arithmetic operations and display information about `datetime` and `smalldatetime` values.

Adaptive Server stores values with the `datetime` datatype internally as two four-byte integers. The first four bytes store the number of days before or after the base date, January 1, 1900. The base date is the system's reference date. `datetime` values earlier than January 1, 1753 are not permitted. The other four bytes of the internal `datetime` representation store the time of day to an accuracy of 1/300 second.

The smalldatetime datatype stores dates and times of day with less precision than datetime. smalldatetime values are stored as two two-byte integers. The first two bytes store the number of days after January 1, 1900. The other two bytes store the number of minutes since midnight. Dates range from January 1, 1900 to June 6, 2079, with accuracy to the minute.

The default display format for dates looks like this:

Apr 15 1997 10:23PM

See “Using the general purpose conversion function: convert” on page 398 for information on changing the display format for datetime or smalldatetime. When you enter datetime or smalldatetime values, enclose them in single or double quotes. Adaptive Server may round or truncate millisecond values.

Adaptive Server recognizes a wide variety of datetime data entry formats. For more information about datetime and smalldatetime values, see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables,” and Chapter 8, “Adding, Changing, and Deleting Data.”

Table 10-10 lists the date functions and the results they produce:

**Table 10-10: Date functions**

Function	Argument	Result
getdate	()	Current system date and time
datename	( <i>datepart, date</i> )	Part of a datetime or smalldatetime value as an ASCII string
datepart	( <i>datepart, date</i> )	Part of a datetime or smalldatetime value (for example, the month) as an integer
datediff	( <i>datepart, date, date</i> )	The amount of time between the second and first of two dates, converted to the specified date part (for example, months, days, hours)
dateadd	( <i>datepart, number, date</i> )	A date produced by adding date parts to another date

The datename, datepart, datediff, and dateadd functions take as arguments a **date part**—the year, month, hour, and so on. The datename function produces ASCII values where appropriate, such as for the day of the week.

`datepart` returns a number that follows ISO standard 8601, which defines the first day of the week and the first week of the year. Depending on whether the `datepart` function includes a value for `calweekofyear`, `calyearofweek`, or `caldayofweek`, the date returned may be different for the same unit of time. For example, if Adaptive Server is configured to use US English as the default language:

```
datepart(cyr, "1/1/1989")
```

returns 1988, but:

```
datepart(yy, "1/1/1989")
```

returns 1989.

This disparity occurs because the ISO standard defines the first week of the year as the first week that includes a Thursday *and* begins with Monday.

For servers using US English as their default language, the first day of the week is Sunday, and the first week of the year is the week that contains January 4th.

Table 10-11 lists each date part, its abbreviation (if there is one), and the possible integer values for that date part.

**Table 10-11: Date parts**

Date Part	Abbreviation	Values
year	yy	1753–9999
quarter	qq	1–4
month	mm	1–12
week	wk	1–54
day	dd	1–31
dayofyear	dy	1–366
weekday	dw	1– 7 (Sunday–Saturday)
hour	hh	0–23
minute	mi	0–59
second	ss	0–59
millisecond	ms	0–999

```
select datename(mm, "1997/06/16")
```

```
-----
```

```
June
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

```
select datediff (yy, "1984", "1997")
-----
13

(1 row affected)

select dateadd (dd, 16, "1997/06/16")
-----
Jul 2 1997 12:00AM

(1 row affected)
```

Note that the values of `weekday` are affected by the language setting.

Some examples of the week date part:

```
select datepart(cwk,"1997/01/31")
-----
5

(1 row affected)
select datepart(cyr,"1997/01/15")
-----
1997

(1 row affected)
select datepart(cdw,"1997/01/24")
-----
5

(1 row affected)
```

Table 10-12 lists the week number date parts, their abbreviations, and values

**Table 10-12: Week number date parts**

Date part	Abbreviation	Values
calweekofyear	cwk	1–52
calyearofweek	cyr	1753–9999
caldayofweek	cdw	1–7 (1 is Monday in us_english)

## Get current date: `getdate`

The `getdate` function produces the current date and time in Adaptive Server internal format for `datetime` values. `getdate` takes the NULL argument, () .

To find the current system date and time, type:

```
select getdate()
-----
Aug 19 1997 12:45PM
(1 row affected)
```

You might use `getdate` in designing a report so that the current date and time are printed every time the report is produced. `getdate` is also useful for functions such as logging the time a transaction occurred on an account.

To display the date using milliseconds, use the `convert` function. For example:

```
select convert(char(26), getdate(), 109)
-----
Aug 19 1997 12:45:59:650PM
(1 row affected)
```

See “Changing the display format for dates” on page 405 for more information.

## Find date parts as numbers or names

The datepart and datename functions produce the specified part of a datetime or smalldatetime value—the year, quarter, day, hour, and so on—as either an integer or an ASCII string. Since smalldatetime is accurate only to the minute, when a smalldatetime value is used with either of these functions, seconds and milliseconds are always 0.

The following examples assume an August 12 date:

```
select datepart(month, getdate())
-----
8

(1 row affected)
select datename(month, getdate())
-----
August

(1 row affected)
```

## Calculate intervals or increment dates

The datediff function calculates the amount of time in date parts between the first and second of the two dates you specify—in other words, it finds the interval between the two dates. The result is a signed integer value equal to *date2 - date1* in date parts.

This query uses the date November 30, 1990 and finds the number of days that elapsed between pubdate and that date:

```
select pubdate, newdate = datediff(day, pubdate,
    "Nov 30 1990")
from titles
```

For the rows in the titles table having a pubdate of October 21, 1990, the result produced by the previous query is 40, the number of days between October 21 and November 30. To calculate an interval in months, the query is:

```
select pubdate, interval = datediff(month, pubdate,
    "Nov 30 1990")
from titles
```

This query produces a value of 1 for the rows with a pubdate in October 1990 and a value of 5 for the rows with a pubdate in June 1990. When the first date in the datediff function is later than the second date, the resulting value is negative. Since two of the rows in titles have values for pubdate that are assigned using the getdate function as a default, these values are set to the date that your pubs database was created and return negative values (-65) in the two preceding queries.

If one or both of the date arguments is a smalldatetime value, they are converted to datetime values internally for the calculation. Seconds and milliseconds in smalldatetime values are automatically set to 0 for the purpose of calculating the difference.

## Add date interval: *dateadd*

The *dateadd* function adds an interval (specified as a integer) to a date you specify. For example, if the publication dates of all the books in the *titles* table slipped three days, you could get the new publication dates with this statement:

```
select dateadd(day, 3, pubdate)
from titles
-----
Jun 15 1986 12:00AM
Jun 12 1988 12:00AM
Jul 3 1985 12:00AM
Jun 25 1987 12:00AM
Jun 12 1989 12:00AM
Jun 21 1985 12:00AM
Jul 6 1997 1:43PM
Jul 3 1986 12:00AM
Jun 15 1987 12:00AM
Jul 6 1997 1:43PM
Oct 24 1990 12:00AM
Jun 18 1989 12:00AM
Oct 8 1990 12:00AM
Jun 15 1988 12:00AM
Jun 15 1988 12:00AM
Oct 24 1990 12:00AM
Jun 15 1985 12:00AM
Jun 15 1987 12:00AM

(18 rows affected)
```

If the date argument is given as a smalldatetime, the result is also a smalldatetime. You can use dateadd to add seconds or milliseconds to a smalldatetime, but it is meaningful only if the result date returned by dateadd changes by at least one minute.

## Datatype conversion functions

Datatype conversions change an expression from one datatype to another and reformat date and time information. Adaptive Server provides three datatype conversion functions, convert, inttohex, and hexToInt.

Adaptive Server performs certain datatype conversions automatically. These are called **implicit conversions**. For example, if you compare a char expression and a datetime expression, or a smallint expression and an int expression, or char expressions of different lengths, Adaptive Server automatically converts one datatype to another.

You must request other datatype conversions explicitly, using one of the built-in datatype conversion functions. For example, before concatenating numeric expressions, you must convert them to character expressions.

Adaptive Server does not allow you to convert certain datatypes to certain other datatypes, either implicitly or explicitly. For example, you cannot convert smallint data to datetime or datetime data to smallint. Unsupported conversions result in error messages.

## Supported conversions

Table 10-13 summarizes the datatype conversions supported by Adaptive Server.

**Table 10-13: Explicit, implicit, and unsupported datatype conversions**

From:	To:	tinyint	smallint	int	decimal	numeric	real	float	[n]char	[n]varchar	unichar	univarchar	text	smallmoney	money	bit	smalldatetime	datetime	binary	varbinary	image
tinyint	–	I	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
smallint	I	–	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
int	I	I	–	I	I	I	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
decimal	I	I	I	I/E	I/E	I	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
numeric	I	I	I	I/E	I/E	I	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
real	I	I	I	I	I	–	I	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U	
float	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	–	E	E	E	U	I	I	I	I	U	U	I	I	U
[n]char	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	I	
[n]varchar	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	
unichar	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	–	I	I	E	E	E	I	I	
univarchar	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	I	I	I	I	–	I	E	E	E	E	I	I	
text	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	E	E	E	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	
smallmoney	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	U	–	I	I	U	U	I	I	U
money	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	U	I	–	I	U	U	I	I	U
bit	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	E	E	U	I	I	–	U	U	I	I	U
smalldatetime	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	I	I	E	E	U	U	U	U	–	I	I	I	U
datetime	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	I	I	E	E	U	U	U	U	I	–	I	I	U
binary	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	U	I	I	I	I	I	–	I	I
varbinary	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	U	I	I	I	I	I	I	–	I
image	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	E	E	U	U	U	U	U	E	E	E	U

Key:

E Explicit datatype conversion is required.

I Conversion can be done either implicitly or with an explicit datatype conversion function.

I/E Explicit datatype conversion function required when there is loss of precision or scale and arithabort numeric\_truncation is on; otherwise, implicit conversion is allowed.

U Unsupported conversion.

– Conversion of a datatype to itself. These conversions are allowed but are meaningless.

## Using the general purpose conversion function: `convert`

The general conversion function, `convert`, converts between a variety of datatypes and specifies a new display format for date and time information. Its syntax is:

```
convert(datatype, expression [, style])
```

Here is an example that uses `convert` in the select list:

```
select title, convert(char(5), total_sales)
from titles
where type = "trad_cook"
title
-----
Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking
    Secrets of the Mediterranean      375
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace
    Kitchens                         15096
Sushi, Anyone?                      4095

(3 rows affected)
```

In the following example, the `total_sales` column, an int column, is converted to a `char(5)` column so that it can be used with the `like` keyword:

```
select title, total_sales
from titles
where convert(char(5), total_sales) like "15%"
    and type = "trad_cook"
title
-----
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace
    Kitchens                         15096

(1 row affected)
```

Certain datatypes expect either a length or a precision and scale. If you do not specify a length, Adaptive Server uses the default length of 30 for character and binary data. If you do not specify a precision or scale, Adaptive Server uses the defaults of 18 and 0, respectively.

## Conversion rules

The following sections describe the rules Adaptive Server observes when converting different types of information.

## Converting character data to a noncharacter type

Character data can be converted to a noncharacter type—such as a money, date and time, exact numeric, or approximate numeric type—if it consists entirely of characters that are valid for the new type. Leading blanks are ignored. However, if a char expression that consists of a blank or blanks is converted to a datetime expression, Adaptive Server converts the blanks into the Sybase default datetime value of “Jan 1, 1900”.

Adaptive Server generates syntax errors if the data includes unacceptable characters. The following types of characters cause syntax errors:

- Commas or decimal points in integer data
- Commas in monetary data
- Letters in exact or approximate numeric data or bit-stream data
- Misspelled month names in date and time data

## Converting from one character type to another

When you convert from a multibyte character set to a single-byte character set, characters with no single-byte equivalent are converted to blanks.

text columns can be explicitly converted to char, nchar, unichar, varchar, univarchar, or nvarchar. You are limited to the maximum length of the character datatypes, the page size. If you do not specify the length, the converted value has a default length of 30 bytes.

## Converting numbers to a character type

You can convert exact and approximate numeric data to a character type. If the new type is too short to accommodate the entire string, an insufficient space error is generated. For example, the following conversion tries to store a five-character string in a one-character type:

```
select convert(char(1), 12.34)
```

It fails because the char datatype is limited to one character, and the numeric 12.34 requires five characters for the conversion to be successful.

## Rounding during conversion to or from money types

The money and smallmoney types store four digits to the right of the decimal point, but round up to the nearest hundredth (.01) for display purposes. When data is converted to a money type, it is rounded up to four decimal places.

Data converted from a money type follows the same rounding behavior if possible. If the new type is an exact numeric with less than 3 decimal places, the data is rounded to the scale of the new type. For example, when \$4.50 is converted to an integer, it yields 5:

```
select convert(int, $4.50)
-----
      5
(1 row affected)
```

Adaptive Server assumes that data converted to money or smallmoney is in full currency units, such as dollars, rather than in fractional units, such as cents. For example, the integer value of five is converted to the money equivalent of five dollars, not five cents, in us\_english.

## Converting date and time information

Data that is recognizable as a date can be converted to datetime or smalldatetime. Incorrect month names lead to syntax errors. Dates that fall outside the acceptable range for the datatype lead to arithmetic overflow errors.

When datetime values are converted to smalldatetime, they are rounded up to the nearest minute.

## Converting between numeric types

Data can be converted from one numeric type to another. If the new type is an exact numeric whose precision or scale is not sufficient to hold the data, errors can occur. Use the arithabort and arithignore options to determine how these errors are handled.

---

**Note** The arithabort and arithignore options were redefined in SQL Server release 10.0. If you use these options in your applications, examine them to make sure they are still functioning correctly.

---

## Converting binary-like data

Adaptive Server binary and varbinary data is platform-specific; the type of hardware you are using determines how the data is stored and interpreted. Some platforms consider the first byte after the “0x” prefix to be the most significant; others consider the first byte to be the least significant.

The convert function treats Sybase binary data as a string of characters, rather than as numeric information. convert takes no account of byte order significance when converting a binary expression to an integer or an integer expression to a binary value. Because of this, conversion results can vary from one platform to another.

Before converting a binary string to an integer, convert strips it of its “0x” prefix. If the string consists of an odd number of digits, Adaptive Server inserts a leading zero. If the data is too long for the integer type, convert truncates it. If the data is too short, convert adds leading zeros to make it even, and then pads it with zeros on the right.

Suppose you want to convert the string 0x00000100 to an integer. On some platforms, this string represents the number 1; on others, the number 256. Depending on which platform executes the function, convert returns either 1 or 256.

## Converting hexadecimal data

For conversion results that are reliable across platforms, use the hexoint and inttohex functions.

hexoint accepts literals or variables consisting of digits and the uppercase and lowercase letters A–F, with or without a “0x” prefix. The following are all valid uses of hexoint:

```
select hexoint( "0x00000100FFFF" )
select hexoint( "0x00000100" )
select hexoint( "100" )
```

hexoint strips it of the “0x” prefix. If the data exceeds 8 digits, hexoint truncates it. If the data is less than 8 digits, hexoint right-justifies and pads it with zeros. Then hexoint returns the platform-independent integer equivalent. The above expressions all return the same value, 256, regardless of the platform that executes the hexoint function.

The inttohex function accepts integer data and returns an 8-character **hexadecimal string** without a “0x” prefix. inttohex always returns the same results, regardless of which platform you are using.

## Converting *image* data to *binary* or *varbinary*

Use the convert function to convert an image column to binary or varbinary. You are limited to the maximum length of the binary datatypes, which is the page size of the server. If you do not specify the length, the converted value has a default length of 30 characters.

## Converting between binary and numeric or decimal types

In binary and varbinary data strings, the first two digits after “0x” represent the binary type: “00” represents a positive number and “01” represents a negative number. When you convert a binary or varbinary type to numeric or decimal, be sure to specify the “00” or “01” values after the “0x” digit; otherwise, the conversion will fail.

For example, here is how to convert the following binary data to numeric:

```
select convert(numeric  
(38,  
18),0x00000000000000000000000000000000  
0000000000000000)  
-----  
123.4560000000000000000000
```

This example converts the same numeric data back to binary:

```
select convert(binary,convert(numeric(38, 18),  
123.456))  
-----  
-----  
0x00000000000000000000000000000000  
000000000000
```

## Conversion errors

This section describes the types of errors that can occur during datatype conversions.

## Arithmetic overflow and divide-by-zero errors

Divide-by-zero errors occur when Adaptive Server tries to divide a numeric value by zero. Arithmetic overflow errors occur when the new type has too few decimal places to accommodate the results. This happens during:

- Explicit or implicit conversions to exact types with a lower precision or scale
- Explicit or implicit conversions of data that falls outside the acceptable range for a money or datetime type
- Conversions of strings longer than 4 bytes using hextoint

Both arithmetic overflow and divide-by-zero errors are considered serious, whether they occur during implicit or explicit conversions. Use the arithabort arith\_overflow option to determine how Adaptive Server handles these errors. The default setting, arithabort arith\_overflow on, rolls back the entire transaction in which the error occurs. If you set arithabort arith\_overflow off, Adaptive Server aborts the statement that causes the error but continues to process other statements in the transaction or batch. You can use the @@error global variable to check statement results.

Use the arithignore arith\_overflow option to determine whether Adaptive Server displays a message after these errors. The default setting, off, displays a warning message when a divide-by-zero error or a loss of precision occurs. Setting arithignore arith\_overflow on suppresses warning messages after these errors. The optional arith\_overflow keyword can be omitted without any effect.

## Scale errors

When an explicit conversion results in a loss of scale, the results are truncated without warning. For example, when you explicitly convert a float, numeric, or decimal type to an integer, Adaptive Server assumes you really want the result to be an integer and truncates all numbers to the right of the decimal point.

During implicit conversions to numeric or decimal types, loss of scale generates a scale error. Use the arithabort numeric\_truncation option to determine how serious such an error is considered. The default setting, arithabort numeric\_truncation on, aborts the statement that causes the error but continues to process other statements in the transaction or batch. If you set arithabort numeric\_truncation off, Adaptive Server truncates the query results and continues processing.

## Domain errors

The convert function generates a domain error when the function's argument falls outside the range over which the function is defined. This should happen very rarely.

## Conversions between binary and integer types

The binary and varbinary types store hexadecimal-like data consisting of a "0x" prefix followed by a string of digits and letters. These strings are interpreted differently by different platforms. For example, the string 0x0000100 represents 65,536 on machines that consider byte 0 most significant and 256 on machines that consider byte 0 least significant.

## The convert function and implicit conversions

Binary types can be converted to integer types either explicitly, with the convert function, or implicitly. The data is stripped of its "0x" prefix and then zero-padded if it is too short for the new type or truncated if it is too long.

Both convert and the implicit datatype conversions evaluate binary data differently on different platforms. Therefore, the results may vary from one platform to another. Use the hexoint function for platform-independent conversion of hexadecimal strings to integers and the inttohex function for platform-independent conversion of integers to hexadecimal values.

## The hexoint function

Use the hexoint function for platform-independent conversions of hexadecimal data to integers. hexoint accepts a valid hexadecimal string, with or without the "0x" prefix, enclosed in quotes, or the name of a character-type column or variable.

hexoint returns the integer equivalent of the hexadecimal string. The function always returns the same integer equivalent for a given hexadecimal string, regardless of the platform on which it is executed.

## The inttohex function

Use the inttohex function for platform-independent conversions of integers to hexadecimal strings. inttohex accepts any expression that evaluates to an integer. It always returns the same hexadecimal equivalent for a given expression, regardless of the platform on which it is executed.

## Converting image columns to binary types

You can use the convert function to convert an image column to binary or varbinary. You are limited to the maximum length of the binary datatypes, or the page size of the server. If you do not specify the length, the converted value has a default length of 30 characters.

## Converting other types to bit types

Exact and approximate numeric types can be converted to the bit type implicitly. Character types require an explicit convert function.

The expression being converted must consist only of digits, a decimal point, a currency symbol, and a plus or minus sign. The presence of other characters generates syntax errors.

The bit equivalent of 0 is 0. The bit equivalent of any other number is 1.

## Changing the display format for dates

The *style* parameter of convert provides a variety of date display formats for converting datetime or smalldatetime data to char or varchar. The number argument you supply as the *style* parameter determines how the data is displayed. The year can be displayed in either 2 digits or 4 digits. Add 100 to a *style* value to get a 4-digit year, including the century (yyyy).

Table 10-14 shows the possible values for *style* and the variety of date formats you can use. When you use *style* with smalldatetime, the styles that include seconds or milliseconds will show zeros in those positions.

**Table 10-14: Converting date formats with the style parameter**

Without century (yy)	With century (yyyy)	Standard	Output
-	0 or 100	Default	<i>mon dd yyyy hh:mm AM (or PM)</i>
1	101	USA	<i>mm/dd/yy</i>
2	2	SQL standard	<i>yy.mm.dd</i>
3	103	English/French	<i>dd/mm/yy</i>
4	104	German	<i>dd.mm.yy</i>
5	105		<i>dd-mm-yy</i>
6	106		<i>dd mon yy</i>
7	107		<i>mon dd, yy</i>
8	108		<i>hh:mm:ss</i>
-	9 or 109	Default + milliseconds	<i>mon dd yyyy hh:mm:sss AM (or PM)</i>

Without century (yy)	With century (yyyy)	Standard	Output
10	110	USA	mm-dd-yy
11	111	Japan	yy/mm/dd
12	112	ISO	yymmdd

The default values, style 0 or 100, and 9 or 109, always return the century (yyyy).

Here is an example of the use of convert's *style* parameter:

```
select convert(char(12), getdate(), 3)
```

This converts the current date to style 3, *dd/mm/yy*.

## Security functions

The security functions return information about security services and user-defined roles. Table 10-15 lists the name of each security function, the argument it takes, and the result it returns.

**Table 10-15: Security functions**

Function	Argument	Result
is_sec_service_on	( <i>security_service_nm</i> )	Determines whether a particular security service is enabled. Returns 1 if the service is enabled. Otherwise, returns 0.
mut_excl_roles	(" <i>role_1</i> " , " <i>role_2</i> " [, "membership"   "activation"])	Returns information about the level of mutual exclusivity between two roles.
proc_role	(" <i>role_name</i> " )	Returns 0 if the invoking user does not possess or has not activated the specified role; 1 if the invoking user has activated the specified role; and 2 if the user possesses the specified role directly or indirectly, but has not activated the role.
role_contain	([" <i>role1</i> ", " <i>role2</i> "])	Returns 1 if the first role specified is contained by the second.
role_id	(" <i>role_name</i> ")	Returns the role ID of the specified role name.
role_name	( <i>role_id</i> )	Returns the role name of the specified role ID.
show_role	( )	Returns the login's current active roles, if any ( <i>sa_role</i> , <i>sso_role</i> , <i>oper_role</i> , <i>replication_role</i> , or <i>role_name</i> ). If the login has no roles, returns NULL.
show_sec_services	( )	Returns a list of the available security services that are enabled for the current session

For more information about security features and user-defined roles, see the *System Administration Guide*.



# Creating Indexes on Tables

An **index** provides quick access to data in a table, based on the values in specified columns. A table can have more than one index. Indexes are transparent to users accessing data from that table; Adaptive Server automatically decides when to use the indexes created for tables.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How indexes work	409
Creating indexes	412
Using clustered or nonclustered indexes	417
Specifying index options	419
Dropping indexes	422
Determining what indexes exist on a table	423
Updating statistics about indexes	425

For information on how you can design indexes to improve performance, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## How indexes work

Indexes help Adaptive Server locate data. They speed up data retrieval by pointing to the location of a table column's data on disk. For example, suppose you need to run frequent queries using the identification numbers of stores in the stores table. To prevent Adaptive Server from having to search through each row in the table—which can be time-consuming if the stores table contains millions of rows—you could create the following index, entitled stor\_id\_ind:

```
create index stor_id_ind
on stores (stor_id)
```

The stor\_id\_ind index goes into effect automatically the next time you query the stor\_id column in stores. In other words, indexes are transparent to users. SQL includes no syntax for referring to an index in a query. You can only create or drop indexes from a table; Adaptive Server decides whether to use the indexes for each query submitted for that table. As the data in a table changes over time, Adaptive Server may change the table's indexes to reflect those changes. Again, these changes are transparent to users; Adaptive Server handles this task on its own.

Adaptive Server supports the following types of indexes:

- **Composite indexes** – these indexes involve more than one column. Use this type of index when two or more columns are best searched as a unit because of their logical relationship.
- **Unique indexes** – these indexes do not permit any two rows in the specified columns to have the same value. Adaptive Server checks for duplicate values when the index is created (if data already exists) and each time data is added.
- **Clustered or nonclustered indexes** – clustered indexes force Adaptive Server to continually sort and re-sort the rows of a table so that their physical order is always the same as their logical (or indexed) order. You can have only one clustered index per table. Nonclustered indexes do not require the physical order of rows to be the same as their indexed order. Each nonclustered index can provide access to the data in a different sort order.

These types of indexes are described in more detail later in this chapter.

## Comparing the two ways to create indexes

You can create indexes on tables either by using the `create index` statement (described in this chapter) or by using the unique or primary key integrity constraints of the `create table` command. However, integrity constraints are limited in the following ways:

- You cannot create nonunique indexes.
- You cannot use the options provided by the `create index` command to tailor how indexes work.
- You can only drop these indexes as a constraint using the `alter table` statement.

If your application requires these features, you should create your indexes using `CREATE INDEX`. Otherwise, the unique or primary key integrity constraints offer a simpler way to define an index for a table. For information about the unique and primary key constraints, see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”

## Guidelines for using indexes

Indexes speed the retrieval of data. Putting an index on a column often makes the difference between a quick response to a query and a long wait.

However, building an index takes time and storage space. For example, nonclustered indexes are automatically re-created when a clustered index is rebuilt.

Additionally, inserting, deleting, or updating data in indexed columns takes longer than in unindexed columns. However, this cost is usually outweighed by the extent to which indexes improve retrieval performance.

## When to index

Use the following general guidelines:

- If you plan to do manual insertions into the `IDENTITY` column, create a unique index to ensure that the inserts do not assign a value that has already been used.
- A column that is often accessed in sorted order, that is, specified in the `ORDER BY` clause, probably should be indexed so that Adaptive Server can take advantage of the indexed order.
- Columns that are regularly used in joins should always be indexed, since the system can perform the join faster if the columns are in sorted order.
- The column that stores the primary key of the table often has a clustered index, especially if it is frequently joined to columns in other tables. Remember, there can be only one clustered index per table.

- A column that is often searched for ranges of values might be a good choice for a clustered index. Once the row with the first value in the range is found, rows with subsequent values are guaranteed to be physically adjacent. A clustered index does not offer as much of an advantage for searches on single values.

## When not to index

In some cases, indexes are not useful:

- Columns that are seldom or never referenced in queries do not benefit from indexes, since the system seldom has to search for rows on the basis of values in these columns.
- Columns that can have only two or three values, for example, “male” and “female” or “yes” and “no”, get no real advantage from indexes.

If the system does have to search an unindexed column, it does so by looking at the rows one by one. The length of time it takes to perform this kind of scan is directly proportional to the number of rows in the table.

# Creating indexes

The simplest form of the create index command is:

```
create index index_name
on table_name(column_name)
```

To create an index on the au\_id column of the authors table, the command is:

```
create index au_id_ind
on authors(au_id)
```

The index name must conform to the rules for identifiers. The column and table name specify the column you want indexed and the table that contains it.

You cannot create indexes on columns with bit, text, or image datatypes.

You must be the owner of a table to create or drop an index. The owner of a table can create or drop an index at any time, whether or not there is data in the table. Indexes can be created on tables in another database by qualifying the table name.

## create index syntax

The complete syntax of the create index command is:

```
create [unique] [clustered | nonclustered]
      index index_name
      on [[database.]owner.] table_name (column_name
          [, column_name]...)
      [with {{fillfactor | max_rows_per_page} = x,
             ignore_dup_key, sorted_data,
             [ignore_dup_row | allow_dup_row]}]
      [on segment_name] [with consumers = x]
```

The following sections explain the various options to this command.

---

**Note** The *on segment\_name* extension to *create index* allows you to place your index on a segment that points to a specific database device or a collection of database devices. Before creating an index on a segment, see a System Administrator or the Database Owner for a list of segments that you can use. Certain segments may already be allocated to specific tables or indexes for performance reasons or for other considerations.

---

## Indexing more than one column: composite indexes

You have to specify two or more column names to create a composite index on the combined values in all the specified columns.

Use composite indexes when two or more columns are best searched as a unit, for example, the first and last names of authors in the *authors* table. List the columns to be included in the composite index in sort-priority order, inside the parentheses after the table name, like this:

```
create index auth_name_ind
      on authors(au_fname, au_lname)
```

The columns in a composite index do not have to be in the same order as the columns in the *create table* statement. For example, the order of *au\_lname* and *au\_fname* could be reversed in the preceding index creation statement.

You can specify up to 31 columns in a single composite index in Adaptive Server 11.9.2 and later. All the columns in a composite index must be in the same table. The maximum allowable size of the combined index values is 600 bytes. That is, the sum of the lengths of the columns that make up the composite index cannot exceed 600.

## Using the *unique* option

A unique index permits no two rows to have the same index value, including NULL. The system checks for duplicate values when the index is created, if data already exists, and checks each time data is added or modified with an insert or update.

Specifying a unique index makes sense only when uniqueness is a characteristic of the data itself. For example, you would not want a unique index on a `last_name` column because there is likely to be more than one “Smith” or “Wong” in tables of even a few hundred rows.

On the other hand, a unique index on a column holding social security numbers is a good idea. Uniqueness is a characteristic of the data—each person has a different social security number. Furthermore, a unique index serves as an integrity check. For instance, a duplicate social security number probably reflects some kind of error in data entry or on the part of the government.

If you try to create a unique index on data that includes duplicate values, the command is aborted, and Adaptive Server displays an error message that gives the first duplicate. You cannot create a unique index on a column that contains null values in more than one row; these are treated as duplicate values for indexing purposes.

If you try to change data on which there is a unique index, the results depend on whether you have used the `ignore_dup_key` option. See “Using the `ignore_dup_key` option” on page 420 for more information.

You can use the `unique` keyword on composite indexes.

## Including IDENTITY columns in nonunique indexes

The identity in nonunique index database option automatically includes an IDENTITY column in a table’s index keys so that all indexes created on the table are unique. This option makes logically nonunique indexes internally unique and allows them to process updatable cursors and isolation level 0 reads.

To enable identity in nonunique indexes, enter:

```
sp_dboption pubs2, "identity in nonunique index",
true
```

The table must already have an IDENTITY column for the identity in nonunique index database option to work, either from a create table statement or by setting the auto identity database option to true before creating the table.

Use identity in nonunique index if you plan to use cursors and isolation level 0 reads on tables with nonunique indexes. A unique index ensures that the cursor is positioned at the correct row the next time a fetch is performed on that cursor.

For example, after setting identity in nonunique index and auto identity to true, suppose you create the following table, which has no indexes:

```
create table title_prices
(title varchar(80) not null,
 price money      null)
```

`sp_help` shows that the table contains an IDENTITY column, `SYB_IDENTITY_COL`, which is automatically created by the auto identity database option. If you create an index on the title column, use `sp_helpindex` to verify that the index automatically includes the IDENTITY column.

## Ascending and descending index-column values

You can use the `asc` (ascending) and `desc` (descending) keywords to assign a sort order to each column in an index. By default, sort order is ascending.

Creating indexes so that columns are in the same order specified in the order by clauses of queries eliminates sorting the columns during query processing. The following example creates an index on the Orders table. The index has two columns, the first is `customer_ID`, in ascending order, the second is `date`, in descending order, so that the most recent orders are listed first:

```
create index nonclustered cust_order_date
    on Orders
    (customer_ID asc,
     date desc)
```

## Using *fillfactor*, *max\_rows\_per\_page*, and *reservepagegap*

*fillfactor*, *max\_rows\_per\_page*, and *reservepagegap* are space-management properties that apply to tables and indexes and affect the way physical pages are filled with data. For a detailed discussion of setting space-management properties for indexes, see *create index* in the *Reference Manual*. Table 11-1 summarizes information about the space-management properties for indexes.

**Table 11-1: Summary of space-management properties for indexes**

Property	Description	Use	Comments
<i>fillfactor</i>	<p>Specifies the percent of space on a page that can be filled when the index is created. A <i>fillfactor</i> under 100% leaves space for inserts into a page without immediately causing page splits.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initially, fewer page splits.</li> <li>• Reduced contention for pages, because there are more pages and fewer rows on a page.</li> </ul>	Applies only to a clustered index on a data-only-locked table	<p>The <i>fillfactor</i> percentage is used only when an index is created on a table with existing data. It does not apply to pages and inserts after a table is created.</p> <p>If no <i>fillfactor</i> is specified, the system-wide default <i>fillfactor</i> is used. Initially, this is set to 100%, but can be changed using <i>sp_configure</i>.</p>
<i>max_rows_per_page</i>	<p>Specifies the maximum number of rows allowed per page.</p> <p>Benefit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can reduce contention for pages by limiting the number of rows per page and increasing the number of pages.</li> </ul>	<p>Applies only to allpages-locked tables.</p> <p>The maximum value that you can set this property to is 256.</p>	<p><i>max_rows_per_page</i> applies at all times, from the creation of an index, onward. If not specified, the default is as many rows as will fit on a page.</p>
<i>reservepagegap</i>	<p>Determines the number of pages left empty when extents are allocated. For example, a <i>reservepagegap</i> of 16 means that 1 page of the 16 pages in 2 extents is left empty when the extents are allocated.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can reduce row forwarding and lessen the frequency of maintenance activities such as running <i>reorg rebuild</i> and re-creating indexes.</li> </ul>	Applies to pages in all locking schemes.	If <i>reservepagegap</i> is not specified, no pages are left empty when extents are allocated.

This statement sets the fillfactor for an index to 65% and sets the reservepagegap to one empty page for each extent allocated:

```
create index postalcode_ind2  
    on authors (postalcode)  
    with fillfactor = 10, reservepagegap = 8
```

## Using clustered or nonclustered indexes

With a clustered index, Adaptive Server sorts rows on an ongoing basis so that their physical order is the same as their logical (indexed) order. The bottom or **leaf level** of a clustered index contains the actual data pages of the table. Create the clustered index before creating any nonclustered indexes, since nonclustered indexes are automatically rebuilt when a clustered index is created.

There can be only one clustered index per table. It is often created on the **primary key**—the column or columns that uniquely identify the row.

Logically, the database's design determines a primary key. You can specify primary key constraints with the `create table` or `alter table` statements to create an index and enforce the primary key attributes for table columns. You can display information about constraints with `sp_helpconstraint`.

Also, you can explicitly define primary keys, foreign keys, and common keys (pairs of keys that are frequently joined) by using `sp_primarykey`, `sp_foreignkey`, and `sp_commonkey`. However, these procedures do not enforce the key relationships.

You can display information about defined keys with `sp_helpkey` and about columns that are likely join candidates with `sp_helpjoins`.

For a definition of primary and foreign keys, see Chapter 16, “Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity.” For complete information on system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.

With a nonclustered index, the physical order of the rows is not the same as their indexed order. The leaf level of a nonclustered index contains pointers to rows on data pages. More precisely, each leaf page contains an indexed value and a pointer to the row with that value. In other words, a nonclustered index has an extra level between the index structure and the data itself.

Each of the up to 249 nonclustered indexes permitted on a table can provide access to the data in a different sorted order.

Finding data using a clustered index is almost always faster than using a nonclustered index. In addition, a clustered index is advantageous when many rows with contiguous key values are being retrieved—that is, on columns that are often searched for ranges of values. Once the row with the first **key value** is found, rows with subsequent indexed values are guaranteed to be physically adjacent, and no further searches are necessary.

If neither the clustered nor the nonclustered keyword is used, Adaptive Server creates a nonclustered index.

Here is how the titleidind index on the title\_id column of the titles table is created. If you want to try this command, you must first drop the index:

```
drop index titles.titleidind
```

Then, create the clustered index:

```
create clustered index titleidind  
on titles(title_id)
```

If you think you will often want to sort the people in the friends\_etc table, which you created in Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables,” by postal code, create a nonclustered index on the postalcode column:

```
create nonclustered index postalcodeind  
on friends_etc(postalcode)
```

A unique index does not make sense here, since some of your contacts are likely to have the same postal code. A clustered index would not be appropriate either, since the postal code is not the primary key.

The clustered index in friends\_etc should be a composite index on the personal name and surname columns, for example:

```
create clustered index nmind  
on friends_etc(pname, sname)
```

## Creating clustered indexes on segments

The `CREATE INDEX` command allows you to create the index on a specified segment. Since the leaf level of a clustered index and its data pages are the same by definition, creating a clustered index and using the `ON segment_name` extension moves a table from the device on which it was created to the named segment.

See a System Administrator or the Database Owner before creating tables or indexes on segments; certain segments may be reserved for performance reasons.

## Creating clustered indexes on partitioned tables

You can create a clustered index on a partitioned table if all of the following conditions are true:

- The server is configured to run in parallel,
- The `SELECT INTO/BULKCOPY/PIRSORT` database option is set to true, and
- As many worker threads are available as the number of partitions.

However, to speed recovery, dump the database after creating the clustered index.

For more information about partitioned tables and creating clustered indexes on them, see the *System Administration Guide*. See a System Administrator or the Database Owner before creating a clustered index on a partitioned table.

## Specifying index options

The index options `IGNORE_DUP_KEY`, `IGNORE_DUP_ROW`, and `ALLOW_DUP_ROW` control what happens when a duplicate key or duplicate row is created with `INSERT` or `UPDATE`. Table 11-2 shows which option to use, based on the type of index.

**Table 11-2: Index options**

Index type	Options
Clustered	ignore_dup_row   allow_dup_row
Unique clustered	ignore_dup_key
Nonclustered	None
Unique nonclustered	ignore_dup_key
Unique nonclustered	ignore_dup_row

## Using the *ignore\_dup\_key* option

If you try to insert a duplicate value into a column that has a unique index, the command is canceled. You can avoid this situation by including the *ignore\_dup\_key* option with a unique index.

The unique index can be either clustered or nonclustered. When you begin data entry, any attempt to insert a duplicate key is canceled with an error message. After the cancellation, any transaction that was active at the time may continue as though the update or insert had never taken place. Nonduplicate keys are inserted normally.

You cannot create a unique index on a column that already includes duplicate values, whether or not *ignore\_dup\_key* is set. If you attempt to do so, Adaptive Server prints an error message and a list of the duplicate values. You must eliminate duplicates before you create a unique index on the column.

Here is an example of using the *ignore\_dup\_key* option:

```
create unique clustered index phone_ind
on friends_etc(phone)
with ignore_dup_key
```

## Using the *ignore\_dup\_row* and *allow\_dup\_row* options

*ignore\_dup\_row* and *allow\_dup\_row* are options for creating a nonunique, clustered index. These options are not relevant when creating a nonunique, nonclustered index. Since an Adaptive Server nonclustered index attaches a unique row identification number internally, it never worries about duplicate rows—even for identical data values.

*ignore\_dup\_row* and *allow\_dup\_row* are mutually exclusive.

A nonunique clustered index allows duplicate keys, but does not allow duplicate rows unless you specify `allow_dup_row`.

If `allow_dup_row` is set, you can create a new nonunique, clustered index on a table that includes duplicate rows, and you can subsequently insert or update duplicate rows.

If any index in the table is unique, the requirement for uniqueness—the most stringent requirement—takes precedence over the `allow_dup_row` option. Thus, `allow_dup_row` applies only to tables with nonunique indexes. You cannot use this option if a unique clustered index exists on any column in the table.

The `ignore_dup_row` option eliminates duplicates from a batch of data. When you enter a duplicate row, Adaptive Server ignores that row and cancels that particular insert or update with an informational error message. After the cancellation, any transaction that may have been active at the time continues as though the insert or update had never taken place. Non-duplicate rows are inserted normally.

The `ignore_dup_row` applies only to tables with nonunique indexes: you cannot use this keyword if a unique index exists on any column in the table.

Table 11-3 illustrates how `allow_dup_row` and `ignore_dup_row` affect attempts to create a nonunique, clustered index on a table that includes duplicate rows, and to enter duplicate rows into a table.

**Table 11-3: Duplicate row options in indexes**

Option	Has duplicates	Enter duplicates
Neither option set	create index command fails.	Command fails.
<code>allow_dup_row</code> set	Command completes.	Command completes.
<code>ignore_dup_row</code> set	Index created but duplicate rows deleted; error message.	Duplicates not inserted/updated; error message; transaction completes.

## Using the `sorted_data` option

The `sorted_data` option of `create index` speeds creation of an index when the data in the table is already in sorted order, for example, when you have used `bcp` to copy data that has already been sorted into an empty table. The speed increase becomes significant on large tables and increases to several times faster in tables larger than 1GB.

If sorted\_data is specified but data is not in sorted order, an error message displays and the command is aborted.

This option speeds indexing only for clustered indexes or unique nonclustered indexes. Creating a nonunique nonclustered index will, however, be successful unless there are rows with duplicate keys. If there are rows with duplicate keys, an error message displays and the command is aborted.

Certain other create index options require a sort even if sorted\_data is specified. See the create index description in the *Reference Manual*.

## Using the *on segment\_name* option

The on segment\_name clause specifies a database segment name on which the index is to be created. A nonclustered index can be created on a different segment than the data pages. For example:

```
create index titleind  
on titles(title)  
on seg1
```

If you use segment\_name when creating a clustered index, the table containing the index moves to the segment you specify. See a System Administrator or the Database Owner before creating tables or indexes on segments; certain segments may be reserved for performance reasons.

## Dropping indexes

The drop index command removes an index from the database. Its syntax is:

```
drop index table_name.index_name  
[, table_name.index_name]...
```

When you use this command, Adaptive Server removes the specified indexes from the database, reclaiming their storage space.

Only the owner of the index can drop it. drop index permission cannot be transferred to other users. The drop index command cannot be used on any of the system tables in the master database or in the user database.

You might want to drop an index if it is not used for most or all of your queries.

To drop the index phone\_ind in the friends\_etc table, the command is:

```
drop index friends_etc.phone_ind
```

## Determining what indexes exist on a table

To see the indexes that exist on a table, you can use sp\_helpindex. Here is a report on the friends\_etc table:

```
sp_helpindex friends_etc
index_name      index_description          index_keys
index_max_rows_per_page
-----
nmind           clustered located on default    pname, sname
                0
postalcodeind   nonclustered located on default postalcode
                0

(2 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

sp\_help runs sp\_helpindex at the end of its report.

sp\_statistics returns a list of indexes on a table. For example:

```
sp_statistics friends_etc
table_qualifier          table_owner
table_name                non_unique
indexQualifier            index_name
type  seq_in_index column_name
collation
cardinality pages
-----
-----
-----
-----
pubs2                   dbo
friends_etc               NULL
```

## Determining what indexes exist on a table

---

```
          NULL           NULL           NULL
          0           NULL NULL
NULL
          0           1
pubs2      friends_etc      dbo
          friends_etc      nmind
          1   1  pname      A
          0           1
          dbo
pubs2      friends_etc      nmind
          friends_etc      A
          1   2  sname      1
          0           1
          dbo
pubs2      friends_etc      postalcodeind
          friends_etc      A
          3   1  postalcode
          NULL        NULL
```

( 4 rows affected, return status = 0 )

In addition, if you follow the table name with “1”, sp\_spaceused reports the amount of space used by a table and its indexes. For example:

```
sp_spaceused friends_etc, 1
index_name      size      reserved      unused
-----
nmind          2 KB       32 KB       28 KB
postalcodeind  2 KB       16 KB       14 KB

name      rowtotal      reserved      data      index_size      unused
-----
friends_etc  1           48 KB        2 KB      4 KB          42 KB

(return status = 0)
```

## Updating statistics about indexes

The update statistics command helps Adaptive Server make the best decisions about which indexes to use when it processes a query, by keeping it up to date about the distribution of the key values in the indexes. Use update statistics when a large amount of data in an indexed column has been added, changed, or deleted.

When Component Integration Services is enabled, update statistics can generate accurate distribution statistics for remote tables. For more information, see the *Component Integration Services User's Guide*.

Permission to issue the update statistics command defaults to the table owner and is not transferable. Its syntax is:

```
update statistics table_name [index_name]
```

If you do not specify an index name, the command updates the distribution statistics for all the indexes in the specified table. Giving an index name updates statistics for that index only.

You can find the names of indexes by using sp\_helpindex. Here is how to list the indexes for the authors table:

```
sp_helpindex authors
index_name index_description index_keys index_max_rows_per_page
-----
auidind    clustered, unique   au_id        0
aunmind    nonclustered       au_lname,    0
              au_fname
```

(2 rows affected, return status = 0)

To update the statistics for all of the indexes, type:

```
update statistics authors
```

To update the statistics only for the index on the au\_id column, type:

```
update statistics authors auidind
```

Because Transact-SQL does not require index names to be unique in a database, you must give the name of the table with which the index is associated. Adaptive Server runs update statistics automatically when you create an index on existing data.

## Updating partition statistics

Like the update statistics command for unpartitioned tables, the update partition statistics command helps Adaptive Server make the best decisions when it processes a query, by keeping it up to date about the number of pages within the partitions. Use update partition statistics when a large amount of data in a partitioned table has been added, changed, or deleted.

Permission to issue the update partition statistics command defaults to the table owner and is not transferable. Its syntax is:

```
update partition statistics table_name
```

For example, suppose the authors table was partitioned as follows:

```
alter table authors partition 3
```

Then you run sp\_helppartition to see how the partitions were distributed:

```
sp_helppartition authors
partitionid firstpage controlpage ptn_data_pages
-----
1          553      554      1
2          817      816      1
3          1009    1008      1

(3 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

Afterwards, you update the statistics for authors as follows:

```
update partition statistics authors
```

Using sp\_helppartition on authors shows the following update:

```
partitionid firstpage controlpage ptn_data_pages
-----
1          553      554      10
2          817      816      1
3          1009    1008      1

(3 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

Dropping and re-creating a clustered index automatically redistributes the data within partitions and updates the partition statistics.

# Defining Defaults and Rules for Data

A **default** is a value that Adaptive Server inserts into a column if the user does not explicitly enter a value for that column. In database management, a **rule** specifies what you are or are not allowed to enter in a particular column or in any column with a given user-defined datatype. You can use defaults and rules to help maintain the integrity of data across the database.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How defaults and rules work	427
Creating defaults	428
Dropping defaults	434
Creating rules	434
Dropping rules	439
Getting information about defaults and rules	440

## How defaults and rules work

You can define a value for a table column or user-defined datatype that will be automatically inserted if a user does not explicitly enter a value. For example, you can create a default that has the value “????” or the value “fill in later.” You can also define rules for that table column or datatype to restrict the types of values users can enter for it.

In a relational database management system, every data element must contain some value, even if that value is null. As discussed in Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables,” some columns do not accept the null value. For those columns, some other value must be entered, either a value explicitly entered by the user or a default entered by Adaptive Server.

Rules enforce the integrity of data in ways not covered by a column's datatype. A rule can be connected to a specific column, to several specific columns or to a specified, user-defined datatype.

Every time a user enters a value, Adaptive Server checks it against the most recent rule that has been bound to the specified column. Data entered prior to the creation and binding of a rule is not checked.

As an alternative to using defaults and rules, you can use the `default` clause and the `check integrity` constraint of the `create table` statement to accomplish some of the same tasks. However, they are specific for that table and cannot be bound to columns of other tables or to user-defined datatypes. For more information about integrity constraints, see Chapter 7, "Creating Databases and Tables."

## **Creating defaults**

You can create or drop defaults at any time, before or after data has been entered in a table. In general, to create defaults you:

- 1 Define the default, using `create default`.
- 2 Bind the default to the appropriate table column or user-defined datatype using `sp_bindefault`.
- 3 Test the bound default by inserting data.

You can drop defaults using `drop default` and remove their association using `sp_unbinddefault`.

When you create and bind defaults:

- Make sure the column is large enough for the default. For example, a `char(2)` column will not hold a 17-byte string like "Nobody knows yet."
- Be careful when you put a default on a user-defined datatype and a different default on an individual column of that type. If you bind the datatype default first and then the column default, the column default replaces the user-defined datatype default for the named column only. The user-defined datatype default is bound to all the other columns having that datatype.

However, once you bind another default to a column that has a default because of its type, that column ceases to be influenced by defaults bound to its datatype. This issue is discussed in more detail under “Binding defaults” on page 430.

- Watch for conflicts between defaults and rules. Be sure the default value is allowed by the rule; otherwise, the default may be eliminated by the rule.

For example, if a rule allows entries between 1 and 100, and the default is set to 0, the rule rejects the default entry. Either change the default or change the rule.

## ***create default syntax***

The syntax of create default is:

```
create default [owner.]default_name  
as constant_expression
```

Default names must follow the rules for identifiers. You can create a default in the current database only.

Within a database, default names must be unique for each user. For example, you cannot create two defaults called phonedflt. However, as “guest,” you can create a phonedflt even if dbo.phonedflt already exists because the owner names make each one distinct.

Another example: suppose you want to create a default value of “Oakland” that can be used with the city column of friends\_etc and possibly with other columns or user datatypes. To create the default, enter:

```
create default citydflt  
as "Oakland"
```

As you continue to follow this example, you can use any city name that works for the people you are going to enter in your personal table.

Enclose character and date constants in quotes; money, integer, and floating point constants do not require them. Binary data must be preceded by “0x”, and money data should be preceded by a dollar sign (\$). The default value must be compatible with the datatype of the column. You cannot use “none,” for example, as a default for a numeric column, but 0 is appropriate.

If you specify NOT NULL when you create a column and do not associate a default with it, Adaptive Server produces an error message whenever anyone fails to make an entry in that column.

Usually, you will enter default values when you create a table. However, during a session in which you want to enter many rows having the same values in one or more columns, it may be convenient to create a default tailored to that session before you begin.

---

**Note** You cannot issue `create table` with a declarative default and then insert data into the table in the same batch or procedure. Either separate the `create` and `insert` statements into two different batches or procedures, or use `execute` to perform the actions separately.

---

## Binding defaults

After you have created a default, use `sp_bindefault` to bind the default to a column or user-defined datatype. For example, suppose you create the following default:

```
create default advancedflt as "UNKNOWN"
```

Now, bind the default to the appropriate column or user-defined datatype with `sp_bindefault`.

```
sp_bindefault advancedflt, "titles.advance"
```

The default takes effect only if the user does not add an entry to the `advance` column of the `titles` table. Not making an entry is different than entering a null value. A default can connect to a particular column, to a number of columns, or to all columns in the database that have a given user-defined datatype.

---

**Note** To get the default, you must issue an `insert` or `update` command with a column list that does not include the column that has the default.

---

The following restrictions apply to defaults:

- The default applies to new rows only. It does not retroactively change existing rows. Defaults take effect only when no entry is made. If you supply any value for the column, including `NULL`, the default has no effect.

- You cannot bind a default to a system datatype.
- You cannot bind a default to a timestamp column, because Adaptive Server generates values for timestamp columns.
- You cannot bind defaults to system tables.
- You can bind a default to an IDENTITY column or to a user-defined datatype with the IDENTITY property, but Adaptive Server ignores such defaults. When you insert a row into a table without specifying a value for the IDENTITY column, Adaptive Server assigns a value that is 1 greater than the last value assigned.
- If a default already exists on a column, you must remove it before binding a new default. Use `sp_unbinddefault` to remove defaults created with `sp_binddefault`. Use `alter table` to remove defaults created with `create table`.

To bind `citydflt` to the `city` column in `friends_etc`, type:

```
sp_binddefault citydflt, "friends_etc.city"
```

Notice that the table and column name are enclosed in quotes, because of the embedded punctuation (the period).

If you create a special datatype for all city columns in every table in your database, and bind `citydflt` to that datatype, “Oakland” appears only where city names are appropriate. For example, if the user datatype is called `citytype`, here is how to bind `citydflt` to it:

```
sp_binddefault citydflt, citytype
```

To prevent existing columns or a specific user datatype from inheriting the new default, use the `futureonly` parameter when binding a default to a user datatype. However, do not use `futureonly` when binding a default to a column. Here is how you create and bind the new default “Berkeley” to the datatype `citytype` for use by new table columns only:

```
create default newcitydflt as "Berkeley"  
sp_binddefault newcitydflt, citytype, futureonly
```

“Oakland” continues to appear as the default for any existing table columns using `citytype`.

If most of the people in your table live in the same zip code area, you can create a default to save data entry time. Here is one, along with its binding, that is appropriate for a section of Oakland:

```
create default zipdflt as "94609"  
sp_binddefault zipdflt, "friends_etc.postalcode"
```

Here is the complete syntax for `sp_bindefault`:

```
sp_bindefault defname, objname [, futureonly]
```

*defname* is the name of the default created with `create default`. *objname* is the name of the table and column, or of the user-defined datatype, to which the default is to be bound. If the parameter is not of the form *table.column*, it is assumed to be a user-defined datatype.

All columns of a specified user-defined datatype become associated with the specified default unless you use the optional `futureonly` parameter, which prevents existing columns of that user datatype from inheriting the default.

---

**Note** Defaults cannot be bound to columns and used during the same batch. `sp_bindefault` cannot be in the same batch as `insert` statements that invoke the default.

---

## Unbinding defaults

Unbinding a default means disconnecting it from a particular column or user-defined datatype. An unbound default is still stored in the database and is available for future use. Use `sp_unbindefault` to remove the binding between a default and a column or datatype.

Here is how you unbind the current default from the `city` column of the `friends_etc` table:

```
execute sp_unbindefault "friends_etc.city"
```

To unbind a default from the user-defined datatype `citytype`, use:

```
sp_unbindefault citytype
```

The complete syntax of `sp_unbindefault` is:

```
sp_unbindefault objname [, futureonly]
```

If the *objname* parameter you give is not of the form *table.column*, Adaptive Server assumes it is a user-defined datatype. When you unbind a default from a user-defined datatype, the default is unbound from all columns of that type unless you give the optional `futureonly` parameter, which prevents existing columns of that datatype from losing their binding with the default.

## How defaults affect NULL values

If you specify NOT NULL when you create a column and do not create a default for it, Adaptive Server produces an error message whenever anyone inserts a row and fails to make an entry in that column.

When you drop a default for a NULL column, Adaptive Server inserts NULL in that position each time you add rows without entering any value for that column. When you drop a default for a NOT NULL column, you get an error message when rows are added, without a value entered for that column.

Table 12-1 illustrates the relationship between the existence of a default and the definition of a column as NULL or NOT NULL.

**Table 12-1: Column definition and null defaults**

Column definition	User entry	Result
Null and default defined	No value	Default used
	NULL value	NULL used
Null defined, no default defined	No value	NULL used
	NULL value	NULL used
Not null, default defined	No value	Default used
	NULL value	NULL used
Not null, no default defined	No value	Error
	NULL value	Error

## After creating a default

After you create a default, the **source text** describing the default is stored in the text column of the syscomments system table. *Do not remove this information*; doing so may cause problems for future versions of Adaptive Server. Instead, encrypt the text in syscomments by using sp\_hidetext, described in the *Reference Manual*. For more information, see “Compiled objects” on page 4.

## Dropping defaults

To remove a default from the database entirely, use the drop default command. Unbind the default from all columns and user datatypes before you drop it. (See “Unbinding defaults” on page 432.) If you try to drop a default that is still bound, Adaptive Server displays an error message and the drop default command fails.

Here is how to remove citydflt. First, you unbind it:

```
sp_unbinddefault citydflt
```

Then you can drop citydflt:

```
drop default citydflt
```

The complete syntax of drop default is:

```
drop default [owner.]default_name  
[, [owner.]default_name] ...
```

A default can be dropped only by its owner. For more information about unbinding a default see sp\_unbinddefault and alter table in the *Reference Manual*.

## Creating rules

A rule lets you specify what users can or cannot enter into a particular column or any column with a user-defined datatype. In general, to create a rule you:

- 1 Create the rule using create rule.
- 2 Bind the rule to a column or user-defined datatype using sp\_bindrule.
- 3 Test the bound rule by inserting data. Many errors in creating and binding rules can be caught only by testing with an insert or update command.

You can unbind a rule from the column or datatype either by using sp\_unbindrule or by binding a new rule to the column or datatype.

## create rule syntax

The syntax of create rule is:

```
create rule [owner.]rule_name  
as condition_expression
```

Rule names must follow the rules for identifiers. You can create a rule in the current database only.

Within a database, rule names must be unique for each user. For example, a user cannot create two rules called socsecreule. However, two different users can create a rule named socsecreule, because the owner names make each one distinct.

Here is how the rule permitting five different pub\_id numbers and one dummy value (99 followed by any two digits) was created:

```
create rule pub_idrule  
as @pub_id in ("1389", "0736", "0877", "1622",  
"1756")  
or @pub_id like "99[0-9][0-9]"
```

The as clause contains the name of the rule's argument, prefixed with “@”, and the definition of the rule itself. The argument refers to the column value that is affected by the update or insert statement.

In the preceding example, the argument is @pub\_id, a convenient name, since this rule is to be bound to the pub\_id column. You can use *any* name for the argument, but the first character must be “@.” Using the name of the column or datatype to which the rule will be bound can help you remember what it is for.

The rule definition can contain any expression that is valid in a where clause, and can include arithmetic operators, comparison operators, like, in, between, and so on. However, the rule definition cannot reference any column or other database object directly. Built-in functions that do not reference database objects *can* be included.

The following example creates a rule that forces the values you enter to comply with a particular “picture.” In this case, each value entered in the column must begin with “415” and be followed by 7 more characters:

```
create rule phonerule  
as @phone like "415_____"
```

To make sure that the ages you enter for your friends are between 1 and 120, but never 17, try this:

```
create rule agerule
```

```
as @age between 1 and 120 and @age != 17
```

## Binding rules

After you have created a rule, use `sp_bindrule` to link the rule to a column or user-defined datatype.

Here is the complete syntax for `sp_bindrule`:

```
sp_bindrule rulename, objname [, futureonly]
```

The *rulename* is the name of the rule created with `create rule`. The *objname* is the name of the table and column, or of the user-defined datatype to which the rule is to be bound. If the parameter is not of the form *table.column*, it is assumed to be a user datatype.

Use the optional `futureonly` parameter only when binding a rule to a user-defined datatype. All columns of a specified user-defined datatype become associated with the specified rule unless you specify `futureonly`, which prevents existing columns of that user datatype from inheriting the rule. If the rule associated with a given user-defined datatype has previously been changed, Adaptive Server maintains the changed rule for existing columns of that user-defined datatype.

The following restrictions apply to rules:

- You cannot bind a rule to a text, image, or timestamp datatype column.
- Adaptive Server does not allow rules on system tables.

## Rules bound to columns

You bind a rule to a column by using `sp_bindrule` with the rule name and the quoted table name and column name. This is how `pub_idrule` was bound to `publishers.pub_id`:

```
sp_bindrule pub_idrule, "publishers.pub_id"
```

Here is a rule to ensure that all the postal codes entered will have 946 as the first 3 digits:

```
create rule postalcoderule946  
as @postalcode like "946[0-9][0-9]"
```

Bind it to the `postalcode` column in `friends_etc` like this:

```
sp_bindrule postalcoderule946,  
"friends_etc.postalcode"
```

Rules cannot be bound to columns and used during the same batch. sp\_bindrule cannot be in the same batch as insert statements that invoke the rule.

## Rules bound to user-defined datatypes

You cannot bind a rule to a system datatype, but you can bind one to a user-defined datatype. To bind phonerule to a user-defined datatype called p#, enter:

```
sp_bindrule phonerule, "p#"
```

## Precedence of rules

Rules bound to columns always take precedence over rules bound to user datatypes. Binding a rule to a column replaces a rule bound to the user datatype of that column, but binding a rule to a datatype does not replace a rule bound to a column of that user datatype.

A rule bound to a user-defined datatype is activated only when you attempt to insert a value into, or update, a database column of the user-defined datatype. Because rules do not test variables, do not assign a value to a user-defined datatype variable that would be rejected by a rule bound to a column of the same datatype.

Table 12-2 indicates the precedence when binding rules to columns and user datatypes where rules already exist:

**Table 12-2: Precedence of rules**

<b>New rule bound to</b>	<b>Old rule bound to</b>	
	<i>User Datatype</i>	<i>Column</i>
<i>User Datatype</i>	Replaces old rule	No change
<i>Column</i>	Replaces old rule	Replaces old rule

When you are entering data that requires special temporary constraints on some columns, you can create a new rule to help check the data. For example, suppose that you are adding data to the debt column of the friends\_etc table. You know that all the debts you want to record today are between \$5 and \$200. To avoid accidentally typing an amount outside those limits, create a rule like this one:

```
create rule debtrule  
as @debt = $0.00 or @debt between $5.00 and $200.00
```

The @debt rule definition allows for an entry of \$0.00 to maintain the default previously defined for this column.

Bind debtrule to the debt column like this:

```
sp_bindrule debtrule, "friends_etc.debt"
```

## Rules and NULL values

You cannot define a column to allow nulls, and then override this definition with a rule that prohibits null values. For example, if a column definition specifies NULL and the rule specifies the following, an implicit or explicit NULL does not violate the rule:

```
@val in (1,2,3)
```

The column definition overrides the rule, even a rule that specifies:

```
@val is not null
```

## After defining a rule

After you define a rule, the **source text** describing the rule is stored in the text column of the syscomments system table. *Do not remove this information*; doing so may cause problems for future versions of Adaptive Server. Instead, encrypt the text in syscomments by using sp\_hidetext, described in the *Reference Manual*. For more information, see “Compiled objects” on page 4.

## Unbinding rules

Unbinding a rule disconnects it from a particular column or user-defined datatype. An unbound rule’s definition is still stored in the database and is available for future use.

There are two ways to unbind a rule:

- Use sp\_unbindrule to remove the binding between a rule and a column or user-defined datatype.
- Use sp\_bindrule to bind a new rule to that column or datatype. The old one is automatically unbound.

Here is how to disassociate debrule (or any other currently bound rule) from friends\_etc.debt:

```
sp_unbindrule "friends_etc.debt"
```

The rule is still in the database, but it has no connection to friends\_etc.debt.

To unbind a rule from the user-defined datatype p#, use:

```
sp_unbindrule "p#"
```

The complete syntax of sp\_unbindrule is:

```
sp_unbindrule objname [, futureonly]
```

If the *objname* parameter you use is not of the form “*table.column*”, Adaptive Server assumes it is a user-defined datatype. When you unbind a rule from a user-defined datatype, the rule is unbound from all columns of that type unless:

- You give the optional futureonly parameter, which prevents existing columns of that datatype from losing their binding with the rule, or
- The rule on a column of that user-defined datatype has been changed so that its current value is different from the rule being unbound.

## Dropping rules

To remove a rule from the database entirely, use the drop rule command. Unbind the rule from all columns and user datatypes before you drop it. If you try to drop a rule that is still bound, Adaptive Server displays an error message, and drop rule fails. However, you need not unbind and then drop a rule to bind a new one. Simply bind a new one in its place.

To remove phonerule after unbinding it:

```
drop rule phonerule
```

The complete syntax for drop rule is:

```
drop rule [owner.]rule_name
[, [owner.]rule_name] ...
```

After you drop a rule, new data entered into the columns that previously were governed by it goes in without these constraints. Existing data is not affected in any way.

A rule can be dropped only by its owner.

## Getting information about defaults and rules

The system procedure `sp_help`, when used with a table name, displays the rules and defaults that are bound to columns. This example displays information about the authors table in the pubs2 database, including the rules and defaults:

```
sp_help authors
```

`sp_help` also reports on a rule bound to a user-defined datatype. To check whether a rule is bound to the user-defined datatype `p#`, use:

```
sp_help "p#"
```

`sp_helptext` reports the definition (the create statement) of a rule or default.

If the source text of a default or rule was encrypted using `sp_hidetext`, Adaptive Server displays a message advising you that the text is hidden. For information about hiding source text, see `sp_hidetext` in the *Reference Manual*.

If the System Security Officer has reset the `allow select on syscomments.text` column parameter with `sp_configure` (as required to run Adaptive Server in the evaluated configuration), you must be the creator of the default or rule or a System Administrator to view the text of a default or rule through `sp_helptext`. For more information, see **evaluated configuration** in the *Adaptive Server Glossary*.

# Using Batches and Control-of-Flow Language

Transact-SQL allows you to group a series of statements as a batch, either interactively or from an operating system file. You can also use Transact-SQL's control-of-flow language to connect the statements, using programming constructs.

A **variable** is an entity that is assigned a value. This value can change during the batch or stored procedure in which the variable is used.

Adaptive Server has two kinds of variables: **local** and **global**. Local variables are user-defined, whereas global variables are supplied by the system and are predefined.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
Introduction	441
Rules associated with batches	442
Using control-of-flow language	447
Local variables	472
Global variables	477

## Introduction

Up to this point, each example in the *Transact-SQL User's Guide* has consisted of an individual statement. You submit statements to Adaptive Server one at a time, entering the statement and receiving results interactively.

Adaptive Server can also process multiple statements submitted as a batch, either interactively or from a file. A batch or batch file is a set of Transact-SQL statements that are submitted together and executed as a group, one after the other. A batch is terminated by an end-of-batch signal. With the `isql` utility, this is the word “go” on a line by itself. For details on `isql`, see the Utility Programs manual for your platform.

Here is an example of a batch that contains two Transact-SQL statements:

```
select count(*) from titles  
select count(*) from authors  
go
```

Technically, a single Transact-SQL statement can constitute a batch, but it is more common to think of a batch as containing multiple statements. Frequently, a batch of statements is written to an operating system file before being submitted to isql.

Transact-SQL provides special keywords called control-of-flow language that allow the user to control the flow of execution of statements. Control-of-flow language can be used in single statements, in batches, in stored procedures, and in triggers.

Without control-of-flow language, separate Transact-SQL statements are performed sequentially, as they occur. Correlated subqueries, discussed in Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries,” are a partial exception. Control-of-flow language permits statements to connect and to relate to each other using programming-like constructs.

Control-of-flow language, such as if...else for conditional performance of commands and while for repetitive execution, lets you refine and control the operation of Transact-SQL statements. The Transact-SQL control-of-flow language transforms standard SQL into a very high-level programming language.

## Rules associated with batches

There are rules governing which Transact-SQL statements can be combined into a single batch. These batch rules are as follows:

- Before referencing objects in a database, issue a use statement for that database. For example:

```
use master  
go  
select count(*)  
from sysdatabases  
go
```

- You *cannot* combine the following database commands with other statements in a batch:

- create procedure
- create rule
- create default
- create trigger
- You *can* combine the following database commands with other Transact-SQL statements in a batch:
  - create database (except that you cannot create a database and create or access objects in the new database in a single batch)
  - create table
  - create index
  - create view
- You cannot bind rules and defaults to columns and use them in the same batch. sp\_bindrule and sp\_bindefault cannot be in the same batch as insert statements that invoke the rule or default.
- You cannot drop an object and then reference or re-create it in the same batch.
- If a table already exists, you cannot re-create it in a batch, even if you include a test in the batch for the table's existence.

Adaptive Server compiles a batch before executing it. During compilation, Adaptive Server makes no permission checks on objects, such as tables and views, that are referenced by the batch. Permission checks occur when Adaptive Server executes the batch. An exception to this is when Adaptive Server accesses a database other than the current one. In this case, Adaptive Server displays an error message at compilation time without executing any statements in the batch.

Assume that your batch contains these statements:

```
select * from taba
select * from tabb
select * from tabc
select * from tabd
```

If you have the necessary permissions for all statements except the third one (select \* from tabc), Adaptive Server returns an error message for that statement and returns results for all the others.

## Examples of using batches

The examples in this section illustrate batches using the format of the isql utility, which has a clear end-of-batch signal—the word “go” on a line by itself. Here is a batch that contains two select statements in a single batch:

```
select count(*) from titles
select count(*) from authors
go
-----
18
(1 row affected)
-----
23
(1 row affected)
```

You can create a table and reference it in the same batch. This batch creates a table, inserts a row into it, and then selects everything from it:

```
create table test
  (column1 char(10), column2 int)
insert test
  values ("hello", 598)
select * from test
go

(1 row affected)
column1  column2
-----  -----
hello      598

(1 row affected)
```

You can combine a use statement with other statements, as long as the objects you reference in subsequent statements are in the database in which you started. This batch selects from a table in the master database and then opens the pubs2 database. The batch begins by making the master database current; afterwards, pubs2 is the current database.

```
use master
go
select count(*) from sysdatabases
use pubs2
go
-----
6
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

You can combine a drop statement with other statements as long as you do not reference or re-create the dropped object in the same batch. This example combines a drop statement with a select statement:

```
drop table test
select count(*) from titles
go
-----
18
```

```
(1 row affected)
```

If there is a syntax error anywhere in the batch, none of the statements is executed. For example, here is a batch with a typing error in the last statement, and the results:

```
select count(*) from titles
select count(*) from authors
select count(*) from publishers
go
Msg 156, Level 15, State 1:
Line 3:
Incorrect syntax near the keyword 'count'.
```

Batches that violate a batch rule also generate error messages. Here are some examples of illegal batches:

```
create table test
    (column1 char(10), column2 int)
insert test
    values ("hello", 598)
select * from test
create procedure testproc as
    select column1 from test
go
Msg 111, Level 15, State 7:
Line 6:
CREATE PROCEDURE must be the first command in a
query batch.

create default phonedflt as "UNKNOWN"
sp_bindefault phonedflt, "authors.phone"
go
```

```
Msg 102, Level 15, State 1:  
Procedure 'phonedflt', Line 2:  
Incorrect syntax near 'sp_bindefault'.
```

The next batch will work if you are already in the database you specify in the `use` statement. If you try it from another database such as `master`, however, you will get an error message.

```
use pubs2  
select * from titles  
go  
Msg 208, Level 16, State 1:  
Server 'hq', Line 2:  
titles not found. Specify owner.objectname or use  
sp_help to check whether the object exists (sp_help  
may produce lots of output)
```

```
drop table test  
create table test  
(column1 char(10), column2 int)  
go
```

```
Msg 2714, Level 16, State 1:  
Server 'hq', Line 2:  
There is already an object named 'test' in the  
database.
```

## Batches submitted as files

You can submit one or more batches of Transact-SQL statements to `isql` from an operating system file. A file can include more than one batch, that is, more than one collection of statements, each terminated by the word “`go`.”

For example, an operating system file might contain the following three batches:

```
use pubs2  
go  
select count(*) from titles  
select count(*) from authors  
go  
create table hello  
(column1 char(10), column2 int)
```

```
insert hello
    values ("hello", 598)
select * from hello
go
```

Here are the results of submitting this file to the isql utility:

```
-----
18

(1 row affected)
-----
23

(1 row affected)
column1      column2
-----      -----
hello          598

(1 row affected)
```

See isql in the *Utility Guide* for environment-specific information about running batches stored in files.

## Using control-of-flow language

Use control-of-flow language with interactive statements, in batches, and in stored procedures. Table 13-1 lists the control-of-flow and related keywords and their functions.

**Table 13-1: Control-of-flow and related keywords**

Keyword	Function
if	Defines conditional execution.
...else	Defines alternate execution when the if condition is false.
case	Defines conditional expressions using when...then statements instead of if...else.
begin	Beginning of a statement block.
...end	End of a statement block.
while	Repeat performance of statements while condition is true.
break	Exit from the end of the next outermost while loop.
...continue	Restart while loop.
declare	Declare local variables.
goto label	Go to label:, a position in a statement block.
return	Exit unconditionally.
waitfor	Set delay for command execution.
print	Print a user-defined message or local variable on user's screen.
raiserror	Print a user-defined message or local variable on user's screen and set a system flag in the global variable @@error.
/* comment */ or --comment	Insert a comment anywhere in a Transact-SQL statement.

## **if...else**

The keyword **if**, with or without its companion **else**, introduces a condition that determines whether the next statement is executed. The Transact-SQL statement executes if the condition is satisfied, that is, if it returns TRUE.

The **else** keyword introduces an alternate Transact-SQL statement that executes when the if condition returns FALSE.

The syntax for **if** and **else** is:

```
if
    boolean_expression
    statement
[else
    [if boolean_expression]
    statement ]
```

A Boolean expression returns TRUE or FALSE. It can include a column name, a constant, any combination of column names and constants connected by arithmetic or bitwise operators, or a subquery, as long as the subquery returns a single value. If the Boolean expression contains a select statement, the select statement must be enclosed in parentheses, and it must return a single value.

Here is an example of using if alone:

```
if exists (select postalcode from authors  
           where postalcode = "94705")  
    print "Berkeley author"
```

If one or more of the zip codes in the authors table has the value “94705”, the message “Berkeley author” is printed. The select statement in this example returns a single value, either TRUE or FALSE, because it is used with the keyword exists. The exists keyword functions here just as it does in subqueries. See Chapter 5, “Subqueries: Using Queries Within Other Queries.”

Here is an example, using both if and else, that tests for the presence of user-created objects that have ID numbers greater than 50. If user objects exist, the else clause selects their names, types, and ID numbers.

```
if (select max(id) from sysobjects) < 50  
    print "There are no user-created objects in this  
          database."  
else  
    select name, type, id from sysobjects  
    where id > 50 and type = "U"  
(0 rows affected)
```

name	type	id
authors	U	16003088
publishers	U	48003202
roysched	U	80003316
sales	U	112003430
salesdetail	U	144003544
titleauthor	U	176003658
titles	U	208003772
stores	U	240003886
discounts	U	272004000
au_pix	U	304004114
blurbs	U	336004228
friends_etc	U	704005539
test	U	912006280

```
hello          U      1056006793  
(14 rows affected)
```

if...else constructs are frequently used in stored procedures where they test for the existence of some parameter.

if tests can nest within other if tests, either within another if or following an else. The expression in the if test can return only one value. Also, for each if...else construct, there can be one select statement for the if and one for the else. To include more than one select statement, use the begin...end keywords. The maximum number of if tests you can nest varies, depending on the complexity of the select statements (or other language constructs) you include with each if...else construct.

## case expression

case expression simplifies many conditional Transact-SQL constructs. Instead of using a series of if statements, case expression allows you to use a series of conditions that return the appropriate values when the conditions are met. case expression is ANSI SQL92 compliant.

With case expression, you can:

- Simplify queries and write more efficient code
- Convert data between the formats used in the database (such as int) and the format used in an application (such as char)
- Return the first non-null value in a list of columns
- Compare two values and return the first value if the values do not match, or a NULL value if the values do match
- Write queries that avoid division by 0

case expression includes the keywords case, when, then, coalesce, and nullif. coalesce and nullif are an abbreviated form of case expression. For details on case expression syntax, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Using case expression for alternative representation

Using case expression you can represent data in a manner that is more meaningful to the user. For example, the pubs2 database stores a 1 or a 0 in the contract column of the titles table to indicate the status of the book's contract. However, in your application code or for user interaction, you may prefer to use the words "Contract" or "No Contract" to indicate the status of the book. To select the type from the titles table using the alternative representation:

```

select title, "Contract Status" =
      case
          when contract = 1 then "Contract"
          when contract = 0 then "No Contract"
      end
   from titles
title                                Contract Status
-----                               -----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide    Contract
Cooking with Computers: Surreptitio  Contract
You Can Combat Computer Stress!      Contract
...
The Psychology of Computer Cooking     No Contract
...
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace     Contract
Sushi, Anyone?                      Contract

```

(18 rows affected)

## case and division by zero

case expression allows you to write queries that avoid division by zero (called exception avoidance). For example, if you attempt to divide the total\_sales column for each book by the advance column, the query results in division by zero when the query attempts to divide the total\_sales (2032) of title\_id MC2222 by the advance (0.00):

```

select title_id, total_sales, advance,
       total_sales/advance from titles
title_id    total_sales        advance
-----      -----           -----
BU1032      4095            5,000.00    0.82
BU1111      3876            5,000.00    0.78
BU2075      18722           10,125.00   1.85
BU7832      4095            5,000.00    0.82

```

Divide by zero occurred.

You can use a case expression to avoid this by not allowing the zero to figure in the equation. In this example, when the query comes across the zero, it returns a predefined value, rather than performing the division:

```
select title_id, total_sales, advance, "Cost Per Book" =
  case
    when advance != 0
      then convert(char, total_sales/advance)
    else "No Books Sold"
  end
from titles
title_id      total_sales      advance      Cost Per Book
-----      -----      -----
BU1032          4095      5,000.00      0.82
BU1111          3876      5,000.00      0.78
BU2075          18722     10,125.00      1.85
BU7832          4095      5,000.00      0.82
MC2222          2032        0.00      No Books Sold
MC3021          22246     15,000.00      1.48
MC3026          NULL        NULL      No Books Sold
...
TC3218          375       7,000.00      0.05
TC4203          15096     4,000.00      3.77
TC7777          4095      8,000.00      0.51

(18 rows affected)
```

The division by zero for title\_id MC2222 no longer prevents the query from running. Also, the null values for MC3021 do not prevent the query from running.

## Using rand() functions in case expressions

Expressions that reference the rand function, the getdate function, and so on, produce different values each time they are evaluated. This can yield unexpected results when you use these expressions in certain case expressions. For example, the SQL standard specifies that case expressions with the form:

```
case expression
  when value1 then result1
  when value2 then result2
  when value3 then result3
  ...
end
```

are equivalent to the following form of case expression:

```
case expression
    when expression=value1 then result1
    when expression=value2 then result2
    when expression=value3 then result3
    ...
end
```

This definition explicitly requires that the expression be evaluated repeatedly in each when clause that is examined. This definition of case expressions affects case expressions that reference functions such as the rand function. For example, the following case expression:

```
select
CASE convert(int, (RAND() * 3))
    when 0 then "A"
    when 1 then "B"
    when 2 then "C"
    when 3 then "D"
else "E"
end
```

is defined to be equivalent to the following according to the SQL standard:

```
select
CASE
    when convert(int, (RAND() * 3)) = 0 then "A"
    when convert(int, (RAND() * 3)) = 1 then "B"
    when convert(int, (RAND() * 3)) = 2 then "C"
    when convert(int, (RAND() * 3)) = 3 then "D"
else "E"
end
```

In this form, a new rand value is generated for each when clause, and the case expression frequently produce the result ‘E’.

## case expression results

The rules for determining the datatype of a case expression are based on the same rules that determine the datatype of a column in a union operation. A case expression has a series of alternative result expressions ( $R1, R2, \dots, Rn$  in the example below) which are specified by the then and else clauses. For example:

```
case
    when search_condition1 then R1
    when search_condition2 then R2
```

```
...  
else Rn  
end
```

The datatypes of the result expressions  $R1, R2, \dots, Rn$  are used to determine the overall datatype of case. The same rules that determine the datatype of a column of a union that specifies  $n$  tables, and has the expressions  $R1, R2, \dots, Rn$  as the  $i$ th column, also determine the datatype of a case expression. The datatype of case is determined in the same manner as would be determined by the following query:

```
select...R1...from ...  
union  
select...R2...from...  
union...  
...  
select...Rn...from...
```

Not all datatypes are compatible, and if you specify two datatypes that are incompatible (for example, *char* and *int*), your Transact-SQL query will fail. For more information about the union-datatype rules, see the *Reference Manual*.

## case expression requires at least one non-null result

At least one result from the case expression must return a value other than null. The following query:

```
select price,  
      case  
        when title_id like "%" then NULL  
        when pub_id like "%" then NULL  
      end  
   from titles
```

returns the error message:

```
All result expressions in a CASE expression must not  
be NULL
```

## case

Using case expression, you can test for conditions that determine the result set.

The syntax is:

```

case
when search_condition1 then result1
when search_condition2 then result2
...
when search_conditionn then resultn
else resultx
end

```

where *search\_condition* is a logical expression, and *result* is an expression.

If *search\_condition1* is true, the value of *case* is *result1*; if *search\_condition1* is not true, *search\_condition2* is checked. If *search\_condition2* is true, the value of *case* is *result2*, and so on. If none of the search conditions are true, the value of *case* is *resultx*. The *else* clause is optional. If it is not used, the default is *else* NULL. *end* indicates the end of the *case* expression.

The total sales of each book for each store are kept in the *salesdetail* table. If you want to show a series of ranges for the book sales, you could track how each book sold at each store, using the following ranges:

- Books that sold less than 1000 (low-selling books)
- Books that sold between 1000 and 3000 (medium-selling books)
- Books that sold more than 3000 (high-selling books)

You would write the following query:

```

select stor_id, title_id, qty, "Book Sales Catagory" =
case
when qty < 1000
    then "Low Sales Book"
when qty >= 1000 and qty <= 3000
    then "Medium Sales Book"
when qty > 3000
    then "High Sales Book"
end
from salesdetail
group by title_id
stor_id      title_id      qty      Book Sales Catagory
-----      -----      ----      -----
5023        BU1032       200      Low Sales Book
5023        BU1032       1000     Low Sales Book
7131        BU1032       200      Low Sales Book
...
7896        TC7777       75       Low Sales Book
7131        TC7777       80       Low Sales Book

```

```
5023      TC7777      1000      Low Sales Book
7066      TC7777      350       Low Sales Book
5023      TC7777      1500      Medium Sales Book
5023      TC7777      1090      Medium Sales Book
```

(116 rows affected)

The following example selects the titles from the titleauthor table according to the author's royalty percentage (*royaltyper*) and then assigns each title with a value of High, Medium, or Low royalty:

```
select title, royaltyper, "Royalty Category" =
  case
    when (select avg(royaltyper) from titleauthor tta
          where t.title_id = tta.title_id) > 60 then "High Royalty"
    when (select avg(royaltyper) from titleauthor tta
          where t.title_id = tta.title_id) between 41 and 59
      then "Medium Royalty"
      else "Low Royalty"
  end
from titles t, titleauthor ta
where ta.title_id = t.title_id
order by title
title                                royaltyper   royalty Category
-----                                -----
But Is It User Friendly?            100         High Royalty
Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Ind 25          Medium Royalty
Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Ind 75          Medium Royalty
Cooking with Computers: Surreptiti 40          Medium Royalty
Cooking with Computers: Surreptiti 60          Medium Royalty
Emotional Security: A New Algorith 100         High Royalty
...
Sushi, Anyone?                      40          Low Royalty
The Busy Executive's Database Guide 40          Medium Royalty
The Busy Executive's Database Guide 60          Medium Royalty
The Gourmet Microwave                75          Medium Royalty
You Can Combat Computer Stress!     100         High Royalty
```

(25 rows affected)

## **case and value comparisons**

This form of case is used for value comparisons. It allows only an equality check between two values; no other comparisons are allowed.

The syntax is:

```

case valueT
    when value1 then result1
    when value2 then result2
    ...
    when valuen then resultn
    else resultx
end

```

where *value* and *result* are expressions.

If *valueT* equals *value1*, the value of the case is *result1*. If *valueT* does not equal *value1*, *valueT* is compared to *value2*. If *valueT* equals *value2*, then the value of the case is *result2*, and so on. If *valueT* does not equal the value of *value1* through *valuen*, the value of the case is *resultx*.

At least one result must be non-null. All the result expressions must be compatible. Also, all values must be compatible.

The syntax described above is equivalent to:

```

case
    when valueT = value1 then result1
    when valueT = value2 then result2
    ...
    when valueT = valuen then resultn
    else resultx
end

```

This is the same format used for case and search conditions (see “case” on page 454 for more information about this syntax).

The following example selects the title and pub\_id from the titles table and specifies the publisher for each book based on the pub\_id:

```

select title, pub_id, "Publisher" =
    case pub_id
        when "0736" then "New Age Books"
        when "0877" then "Binnet & Hardley"
        when "1389" then "Algodata Infosystems"
        else "Other Publisher"
    end
from titles
order by pub_id
title                pub_id      Publisher
-----              -----
Life Without Fear      0736      New Age Books
Is Anger the Enemy?     0736      New Age Books
You Can Combat Computer 0736      New Age Books
...
Straight Talk About Computers 1389      Algodata Infosystems

```

The Busy Executive's Database	1389	Algodata Infosystems
Cooking with Computers: Surre	1389	Algodata Infosystems

(18 rows affected)

This is equivalent to the following query, which uses a case and search condition syntax:

```
select title, pub_id, "Publisher" =
       case
           when pub_id = "0736" then "New Age Books"
           when pub_id = "0877" then "Binnet & Hardley"
           when pub_id = "1389" then "Algodata Infosystems"
           else "Other Publisher"
       end
   from titles
   order by pub_id
```

## **coalesce**

coalesce examines a series of values (*value1*, *value2*, ..., *valuen*) and returns the first non-null value. The syntax of coalesce is:

coalesce(*value1*, *value2*, ..., *valuen*)

Where *value1*, *value2*, ..., *valuen* are expressions. If *value1* is non-null, the value of coalesce is *value1*; if *value1* is null, *value2* is examined, and so on. The examination continues until a non-null value is found. The first non-null value becomes the value of coalesce.

When you use coalesce, Adaptive Server translates it internally to the following format:

```
case
    when value1 is not NULL then value1
    when value2 is not NULL then value2
    . . .
    when valuen-1 is not NULL then valuen-1
    else valuen
end
```

*valuen-1* refers to the next to last value, before the final value, *valuen*.

The example below uses coalesce to determine whether a store orders a low quantity (more than 100 but less than 1000) or a high quantity of books (more than 1000):

```
select stor_id, discount, "Quantity" =
       coalesce(lowqty, highqty)
```

```

from discounts
stor_id discount      Quantity
----- ----- -----
NULL          10.500000    NULL
NULL          6.700000     100
NULL          10.000000    1001
8042          5.000000    NULL

( 4 rows affected)

```

**nullif**

`nullif` compares two values; if the values are equal, `nullif` returns a null value. If the two values are not equal, `nullif` returns the value of the first value. This is useful for finding any missing, unknown, or inapplicable information that is stored in an encoded form. For example, values that are unknown are sometimes historically stored as -1. Using `nullif`, you can replace the -1 values with null and get the null behavior defined by Transact-SQL. The syntax is:

```
nullif(value1, value2)
```

If *value1* equals *value2*, `nullif` returns `NULL`. If *value1* does not equal *value2*, `nullif` returns *value1*. *value1* and *value2* are expressions, and their datatypes must be comparable

When you use `nullif`, Adaptive Server translates it internally to the following format:

```

case
  when value1 = value2 then NULL
  else value1
end

```

For example, the titles table uses the value "UNDECIDED" to represent books whose type category is not yet determined. The following query performs a search on the titles table for book types; any book whose type is "UNDECIDED" is returned as type `NULL` (the following output is reformatted for display purposes):

```

select title, "type" =
       nullif(type, "UNDECIDED")
  from titles
title                           type
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide   business
Cooking with Computers: Surreptiti   business
You Can Combat Computer Stress!     business

```

```
    . . .
The Psychology of Computer Cooking      NULL
Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace K     trad_cook
Sushi, Anyone?                         trad_cook

(18 rows affected)
```

Notice that *The Psychology of Computing* is stored in the table as “UNDECIDED”, but the query returns it as type NULL.

## **begin...end**

The begin and end keywords enclose a series of statements so that they are treated as a unit by control-of-flow constructs like if...else. A series of statements enclosed by begin and end is called a **statement block**.

The syntax of begin...end is:

```
begin
    statement block
end
```

Here is an example:

```
if (select avg(price) from titles) < $15
begin
    update titles
    set price = price * 2

    select title, price
    from titles
    where price > $28
end
```

Without begin and end, the if condition applies only to the first Transact-SQL statement. The second statement executes independently of the first.

begin...end blocks can nest within other begin...end blocks.

## **while and break...continue**

while sets a condition for the repeated execution of a statement or statement block. The statements are executed repeatedly as long as the specified condition is true.

The syntax is:

```
while boolean_expression  
statement
```

In this example, the select and update statements are repeated, as long as the average price remains less than \$30:

```
while (select avg(price) from titles) < $30  
begin  
    select title_id, price  
    from titles  
    where price > $20  
    update titles  
    set price = price * 2  
end  
(0 rows affected)

title_id      price  
-----      -----  
PC1035        22.95  
PS1372        21.59  
TC3218        20.95

(3 rows affected)  
(18 rows affected)  
(0 rows affected)
title_id      price  
-----      -----  
BU1032        39.98  
BU1111        23.90  
BU7832        39.98  
MC2222        39.98  
PC1035        45.90  
PC8888        40.00  
PS1372        43.18  
PS2091        21.90  
PS3333        39.98  
TC3218        41.90  
TC4203        23.90  
TC7777        29.98

(12 rows affected)  
(18 rows affected)  
(0 rows affected)
```

break and continue control the operation of the statements inside a while loop. break causes an exit from the while loop. Any statements that appear after the end keyword that marks the end of the loop are executed. continue causes the while loop to restart, skipping any statements after continue but inside the loop. break and continue are often activated by an if test.

The syntax for break...continue is:

```
while boolean expression
begin
    statement
    [statement]...
    break
    [statement]...
    continue
    [statement]...
end
```

Here is an example using while, break, continue, and if that reverses the inflation caused in the previous examples. As long as the average price remains more than \$20, all the prices are cut in half. The maximum price is then selected. If it is less than \$40, the while loop is exited; otherwise, it will try to loop again. continue allows print to execute only when the average is more than \$20. After the while loop ends, a message and a list of the highest priced books print.

```
while (select avg(price) from titles) > $20
begin
    update titles
        set price = price / 2
    if (select max(price) from titles) < $40
        break
    else
        if (select avg(price) from titles) < $20
            continue
        print "Average price still over $20"
    end

    select title_id, price from titles
        where price > $20

    print "Not Too Expensive"
    (18 rows affected)
    (0 rows affected)
    (0 rows affected)
    Average price still over $20
    (0 rows affected)
    (18 rows affected)
```

```
(0 rows affected)

title_id      price
-----
PC1035        22.95
PS1372        21.59
TC3218        20.95

(3 rows affected)
Not Too Expensive
```

If two or more while loops are nested, break exits to the next outermost loop. First, all the statements after the end of the inner loop execute. Then, the outer loop restarts.

## **declare and local variables**

Local variables are declared, named, and typed with the declare keyword and are assigned an initial value with a select statement. They must be declared, assigned a value, and used within the same batch or procedure.

See “Local variables” on page 472 for more information.

## **goto**

The goto keyword causes unconditional branching to a user-defined label. goto and labels can be used in stored procedures and batches. A label’s name must follow the rules for identifiers and must be followed by a colon when it is first given. It is not followed by a colon when it is used with goto.

Here is the syntax:

```
label:
    goto label
```

Here is an example that uses goto and a label, a while loop, and a local variable as a counter:

```
declare @count smallint
select @count = 1
restart:
print "yes"
select @count = @count + 1
while @count <=4
```

```
      goto restart
```

goto is usually made dependent on a while or if test or some other condition, to avoid an endless loop between goto and the label.

## **return**

The return keyword exits from a batch or procedure unconditionally. It can be used at any point in a batch or a procedure. When used in stored procedures, return can accept an optional argument to return a status to the caller. Statements after return are not executed.

The syntax is:

```
return [int_expression]
```

Here is an example of a stored procedure that uses return as well as if...else and begin...end:

```
create procedure findrules @nm varchar(30) = null as
if @nm is null
begin
    print "You must give a user name"
    return
end
else
begin
    select sysobjects.name, sysobjects.id,
    sysobjects.uid
        from sysobjects, master..syslogins
        where master..syslogins.name = @nm
        and sysobjects.uid = master..syslogins.suid
        and sysobjects.type = "R"
end
```

If no user name is given as a parameter when `findrules` is called, the `return` keyword causes the procedure to exit after a message has been sent to the user's screen. If a user name is given, the names of the rules owned by the user are retrieved from the appropriate system tables.

`return` is similar to the `break` keyword used inside `while` loops.

Examples using `return` values are included in Chapter 14, “Using Stored Procedures.”

## print

The print keyword, used in the previous example, displays a user-defined message or the contents of a local variable on the user's screen. The local variable must be declared within the same batch or procedure in which it is used. The message itself can be up to 255 bytes long.

The syntax is:

```
print {format_string | @local_variable |
      @@global_variable} [,arg_list]
```

For example:

```
if exists (select postalcode from authors
           where postalcode = "94705")
    print "Berkeley author"
```

Here is how to use print to display the contents of a local variable:

```
declare @msg char(50)
select @msg = "What's up, doc?"
print @msg
```

print recognizes placeholders in the character string to be printed out. Format strings can contain up to 20 unique placeholders in any order. These placeholders are replaced with the formatted contents of any arguments that follow *format\_string* when the text of the message is sent to the client.

To allow reordering of the arguments when format strings are translated to a language with a different grammatical structure, the placeholders are numbered. A placeholder for an argument appears in this format: *%nn!*. The components are a percent sign, followed by an integer from 1 to 20, followed by an exclamation point. The integer represents the placeholder position in the string in the original language. “%1!” is the first argument in the original version, “%2!” is the second argument, and so on. Indicating the position of the argument in this way makes it possible to translate correctly even when the order in which the arguments appear in the target language is different from their order in the source language.

For example, assume the following is an English message:

```
%1! is not allowed in %2!.
```

The German version of this message is:

```
%1! ist in %2! nicht zulässig.
```

The Japanese version of the message is:

**Figure 13-1: Japanese message**

※! の中で ※! は許されません。

In this example, “%1!” in all three languages represents the same argument, and “%2!” also represents a single argument in all three languages. This example shows the reordering of the arguments that is sometimes necessary in the translated form.

You cannot skip placeholder numbers when using placeholders in a format string, although placeholders do not have to be used in numerical order. For example, you cannot have placeholders 1 and 3 in a format string without having placeholder 2 in the same string.

The optional *arg\_list* can be a series of either variables or constants. An argument can be any datatype except text or image; it is converted to the char datatype before it is included in the final message. If no argument list is provided, the format string must be the message to be printed, without any placeholders.

The maximum output string length of *format\_string* plus all arguments after substitution is 512 bytes.

## raiserror

`raiserror` both displays a user-defined error or local variable message on the user's screen and sets a system flag to record the fact that an error has occurred. As with `print`, the local variable must be declared within the same batch or procedure in which it is used. The message can be up to 255 characters long.

Here is the syntax for `raiserror`:

```
raiserror error_number
    [{format_string | @local_variable}] [, arg_list]
    [extended_value = extended_value [{,
        extended_value = extended_value}...]]
```

The *error\_number* is placed in the global variable `error@ @`, which stores the error number most recently generated by Adaptive Server. Error numbers for user-defined error messages must be greater than 17,000. If the *error\_number* is between 17,000 and 19,999, and *format\_string* is missing or empty ("’’), Adaptive Server retrieves error message text from the sysmessages table in the master database. These error messages are used chiefly by system procedures.

The length of the *format\_string* alone is limited to 255 bytes; the maximum output length of *format\_string* plus all arguments is 512 bytes. Local variables used for raiserror messages must be char or varchar. The *format\_string* or variable is optional; if you do not include one, Adaptive Server uses the message corresponding to the *error\_number* from sysusermessages in the default language. As with print, you can substitute variables or constants defined by *arg\_list* in the *format\_string*.

As an option, you can define extended error data for use by an Open Client™ application (when you include *extended\_values* with raiserror). For more information about extended error data, see your Open Client documentation or raiserror in the *Reference Manual*.

Use raiserror instead of print when you want an error number stored in *error@*@. For example, here is how you could use raiserror in the procedure findrules:

```
raiserror 99999 "You must give a user name"
```

The severity level of all user-defined error messages is 16, which indicates that the user has made a nonfatal mistake.

## Creating messages for *print* and *raiserror*

You can call messages from sysusermessages for use by either print or raiserror with sp\_getmessage. Use sp\_addmessage to create a set of messages.

The example that follows uses sp\_addmessage, sp\_getmessage, and print to install a message in sysusermessages in both English and German, retrieve it for use in a user-defined stored procedure, and print it.

```
/*
** Install messages
** First, the English (langid = NULL)
*/
set language us_english
go
sp_addmessage 25001,
    "There is already a remote user named '%1!' for
remote server '%2!'."
go
/* Then German*/
sp_addmessage 25001,
    "Remotebenutzername '%1!' existiert bereits"
```

```
auf dem Remoteserver '%2!'.", "german"
go
create procedure test_proc @remotename varchar(30),
                           @remoteserver varchar(30)
as
    declare @msg varchar(255)
    declare @arg1 varchar(40)
    /*
    ** check to make sure that there is not
    ** a @remotename for the @remoteserver.
    */
    if exists (select *
                from master.dbo.sysremotelogins l,
                     master.dbo.sysservers s
               where l.remoteuserid = s.srvid
                 and s.srvname = @remoteserver
                 and l.remoteusername = @remotename)
begin
    exec sp_getmessage 25001, @msg output
    select @arg1=isnull(@remotename, "null")
    print @msg, @arg1, @remoteserver
    return (1)
end
return(0)
go
```

You can also bind user-defined messages to constraints, as described in “Creating error messages for constraints” on page 253.

To drop a user-defined message, use `sp_dropmessage`. To change a message, drop it with `sp_dropmessage` and add it again with `sp_addmessage`.

## **waitfor**

The `waitfor` keyword specifies a specific time of day, a time interval, or an event at which the execution of a statement block, stored procedure, or transaction is to occur.

The syntax is:

```
waitfor {delay "time" | time "time" | errorexit | processexit |
          mirrorexit}
```

where *delay time* instructs Adaptive Server to wait until the specified period of time has passed. *time time* instructs Adaptive Server to wait until the specified time, given in one of the valid formats for datetime data.

However, you cannot specify dates—the date portion of the datetime value is not allowed. The time you specify with *waitfor time* or *waitfor delay* can include hours, minutes, and seconds—up to a maximum of 24 hours. Use the format “hh:mm:ss”.

For example, the following command instructs Adaptive Server to wait until 4:23 p.m.:

```
waitfor time "16:23"
```

This command instructs Adaptive Server to wait 1 hour and 30 minutes:

```
waitfor delay "01:30"
```

For a review of the formats for time values, see “Entering times” on page 308.

*errorexit* instructs Adaptive Server to wait until a process terminates abnormally. *processexit* waits until a process terminates for any reason. *mirrorexit* waits until a read or write to a mirrored device fails.

You can use *waitfor errorexit* with a procedure that kills the abnormally terminated process to free system resources that would otherwise be taken up by an infected process. To find out which process is infected, use *sp\_who* to check the *sysprocesses* table.

The following example instructs Adaptive Server to wait until 2:20 p.m. Then, it updates the chess table with the next move and executes a stored procedure called *sendmessage*, which inserts a message into one of Judy’s tables notifying her that a new move now exists in the chess table.

```
begin
  waitfor time "14:20"
  insert chess(next_move)
  values("Q-KR5")
  execute sendmessage "Judy"
end
```

To send the message to Judy after 10 seconds instead of waiting until 2:20, substitute this *waitfor* statement in the preceding example:

```
waitfor delay "0:00:10"
```

After you give the *waitfor* command, you cannot use your connection to Adaptive Server until the time or event that you specified occurs.

## Comments

Use the comment notation to attach comments to statements, batches, and stored procedures. Comments are not executed.

You can insert a comment on a line by itself or at the end of a command line. Two comment styles are available: the “slash-asterisk” style:

```
/* text of comment */
```

and the “double-hyphen” style:

```
-- text of comment
```

You cannot use the double hyphen style for multi-line comments.

There is no maximum length for comments.

### Slash-asterisk style comments

The /\* style comment is a Transact-SQL extension. Multiple-line comments are acceptable, as long as each comment starts with “/\*” and ends with “\*/”. Everything between “/\*” and “\*/” is treated as part of the comment. The /\* form permits nesting.

A stylistic convention often used for multiple-line comments is to begin the first line with “/\*” and subsequent lines with “\*\*”. The comment is ended with “\*/” as usual:

```
select * from titles
/* A comment here might explain the rules
** associated with using an asterisk as
** shorthand in the select list.*/
where price > $5
```

This procedure includes a couple of comments:

```
/* this procedure finds rules by user name*/
create procedure findmyrule @nm varchar(30) = null
as
if @nm is null
begin
    print "You must give a user name"
    return
    print "I have returned"
/* this statement follows return,
** so won't be executed */
end
else      /* print the rule names and IDs, and
            the user ID */
```

```
select sysobjects.name, sysobjects.id,
       sysobjects.uid
  from sysobjects, master..syslogins
 where master..syslogins.name = @nm
   and sysobjects.uid = master..syslogins.suid
   and sysobjects.type = "R"
```

## Double-hyphen style comments

This comment style begins with two consecutive hyphens followed by a space (--) and terminates with a newline character. Therefore, multiple-line comments are not possible.

Adaptive Server does not interpret two consecutive hyphens within a string literal or within a /\*-style comment as signaling the beginning of a comment.

To represent an expression that contains two consecutive minus signs (binary followed by unary), put a space or an opening parenthesis between the two hyphens.

Following are examples:

```
-- this procedure finds rules by user name
create procedure findmyrule @nm varchar(30) = null
as
if @nm is null
begin
    print "You must give a user name"
    return
    print "I have returned"
-- each line of a multiple-line comment
-- must be marked separately.
end
else      -- print the rule names and IDs, and
           -- the user ID
select sysobjects.name, sysobjects.id,
       sysobjects.uid
  from sysobjects, master..syslogins
 where master..syslogins.name = @nm
   and sysobjects.uid = master..syslogins.suid
   and sysobjects.type = "R"
```

## Local variables

Local variables are often used as counters for while loops or if...else blocks in a batch or stored procedure. When they are used in stored procedures, they are declared for automatic, non-interactive use by the procedure when it executes. You can use variables nearly anywhere the Transact-SQL syntax indicates that an expression can be used, such as *char\_expr*, *integer\_expression*, *numeric\_expr*, or *float\_expr*.

### Declaring local variables

To declare a local variable's name and datatype use:

```
declare @variable_name datatype  
[, @variable_name datatype]...
```

The variable name must be preceded by the @ sign and conform to the rules for identifiers. Specify either a user-defined datatype or a system-supplied datatype other than text, image, or sysname.

It is more efficient in terms of memory and performance to write:

```
declare @a int, @b char(20), @c float  
than to write:
```

```
declare @a int  
declare @b char(20)  
declare @c float
```

### Local variables and select statements

When you declare a variable, it has the value NULL. Assign values to local variables with a select statement. Here is the syntax:

```
select @variable_name = {expression |  
(select_statement)} [, @variable =  
{expression | (select_statement)}...]  
[from clause] [where clause] [group by clause]  
[having clause] [order by clause] [compute clause]
```

As with declare statements, it is more efficient to write:

```
select @a = 1, @b = 2, @c = 3
```

than to write:

```
select @a = 1  
select @b = 2  
select @c = 3
```

Do not use a single select statement to assign a value to one variable and then to another whose value is based on the first. Doing so can yield unpredictable results. For example, the following queries both try to find the value of @c2. The first query yields NULL, while the second query yields the correct answer, 0.033333:

```
/* this is wrong*/  
declare @c1 float, @c2 float  
select @c1 = 1000/1000, @c2 = @c1/30  
select @c1, @c2  
  
/* do it this way */  
declare @c1 float, @c2 float  
select @c1 = 1000/1000  
select @c2 = @c1/30  
select @c1 , @c2
```

You cannot use a select statement that assigns values to variables to also return data to the user. The first select statement in the following example assigns the maximum price to the local variable @veryhigh; the second select statement is needed to display the value:

```
declare @veryhigh money  
select @veryhigh = max(price)  
      from titles  
select @veryhigh
```

If the select statement that assigns values to a variable returns more than one value, the last value that is returned is assigned to the variable. The following query assigns the variable the last value returned by “select advance from titles”.

```
declare @m money  
select @m = advance from titles  
select @m  
(18 rows affected)  
-----  
8,000.00  
  
(1 row affected)
```

The assignment statement indicates how many rows were affected (returned) by the select statement.

If a select statement that assigns values to a variable fails to return any values, the variable is left unchanged by the statement.

Local variables can be used as arguments to print or raiserror.

If you are using variables in an update statement, see “Using the set clause with update” on page 329.

## Local variables and *update* statements

You can assign variables directly in an update statement. You do not need to use a select statement to assign a value to a variable. When you declare a variable, it has the value NULL. Here is the syntax:

```
update [[database.]owner.]{table_name | view_name}
      set [[[database.]owner.]{table_name. | view_name.}]
           column_name1 =
               {expression1 | null | (select_statement)} |
               variable_name1 = {expression1 | null} |
               [, column_name2 = {expression2 | null | (select_statement)}... | , variable_name2 = {expression2 | null}...]...
           [from [[database.]owner.]{table_name | view_name} |
            [, [[database.]owner.]{table_name | view_name}]]...
           [where search_conditions]
```

## Local variables and subqueries

A subquery that assigns a value to the local variable *must* return only one value. Here are some examples:

```
declare @veryhigh money
select @veryhigh = max(price)
      from titles
if @veryhigh > $20
      print "Ouch!"
declare @one varchar(18), @two varchar(18)
select @one = "this is one", @two = "this is two"
if @one = "this is one"
      print "you got one"
if @two = "this is two"
      print "you got two"
else print "nope"
declare @tcount int, @pcount int
```

```
select @tcount = (select count(*) from titles),
       @pcount = (select count(*) from publishers)
select @tcount, @pcount
```

## Local variables and **while** loops and **if...else** blocks

The following example uses local variables in a counter in a while loop, for doing matching in a where clause, in an if statement, and for setting and resetting values in select statements:

```
/* Determine if a given au_id has a row in au_pix*/
/* Turn off result counting */
set nocount on
/* declare the variables */
declare @c int,
        @min_id varchar(30)
/*First, count the rows*/
select @c = count(*) from authors
/* Initialize @min_id to " " */
select @min_id = ""
/* while loop executes once for each authors row */
while @c > 0
begin
    /*Find the smallest au_id*/
    select @min_id = min(au_id)
        from authors
        where au_id > @min_id
    /*Is there a match in au_pix?*/
    if exists (select au_id
                from au_pix
                where au_id = @min_id)
    begin
        print "A Match! %1!", @min_id
    end
    select @c = @c -1 /*decrement the counter */
end
```

## Variables and null values

Local variables are assigned the value NULL when they are declared, and may be assigned the null value by a select statement. The special meaning of NULL requires that the comparison between null-value variables and other null values follow special rules.

Table 13-2 shows the results of comparisons between null-value columns and null-value expressions using different comparison operators. An expression can be a variable, a literal, or a combination of variables and literals and arithmetic operators.

**Table 13-2: Comparing null values**

Type of comparison	Using the = operator	Using the <, >, <=, !=, !<, !>, or <> operator
Comparing <i>column_value</i> to <i>column_value</i>	FALSE	FALSE
Comparing <i>column_value</i> to <i>expression</i>	TRUE	FALSE
Comparing <i>expression</i> to <i>column_value</i>	TRUE	FALSE
Comparing <i>expression</i> to <i>expression</i>	TRUE	FALSE

For example, this test:

```
declare @v int, @i int
if @v = @i select "null = null, true"
if @v > @i select "null > null, true"
```

shows that only the first comparison returns true:

```
-----
null = null, true

(1 row affected)
```

This example returns all the rows from the titles table where the advance has the value NULL:

```
declare @m money
select title_id, advance
from titles
where advance = @m
title_id advance
-----
MC3026          NULL
PC9999          NULL

(2 rows affected)
```

## Global variables

Global variables are system-supplied, predefined variables. They are distinguished from local variables by the two @ signs preceding their names—for example, @@error. The two @ signs are considered part of the identifier used to define the global variable.

Users cannot create global variables and cannot update the value of global variables directly in a select statement. If a user declares a local variable that has the same name as a **global variable**, that variable is treated as a local variable.

## Transactions and global variables

Some global variables provide information to use in transactions.

### Checking for errors with @@error

The @@error global variable is commonly used to check the error status of the most recently executed batch in the current user session. @@error contains 0 if the last transaction succeeded; otherwise @@error contains the last error number generated by the system. A statement such as if @@error != 0 followed by return causes an exit on error.

Every Transact-SQL statement, including print statements and if tests, resets @@error, so the status check must immediately follow the batch whose success is in question.

The @@sqlstatus global variable has no effect on @@error output. See “Checking the status from the last fetch” on page 479 for details.

### Checking IDENTITY values with @@identity

@@identity contains the last value inserted into an IDENTITY column in the current user session. @@identity is set each time an insert, select into, or bcp attempts to insert a row into a table. The value of @@identity is not affected by the failure of an insert, select into, or bcp statement or the rollback of the transaction that contained it. @@identity retains the last value inserted into an IDENTITY column, even if the statement that inserted it fails to commit.

If a statement inserts multiple rows, `@@identity` reflects the IDENTITY value for the last row inserted. If the affected table does not contain an IDENTITY column, `@@identity` is set to 0.

### Checking the transaction nesting level with `@@trancount`

`@@trancount` contains the nesting level of transactions in the current user session. Each begin transaction in a batch increments the transaction count. When you query `@@trancount` in chained transaction mode, its value is never 0 because the query automatically initiates a transaction.

### Checking the transaction state with `@@transtate`

`@@transtate` contains the current state of a transaction after a statement executes in the current user session. However, unlike `@@error`, `@@transtate` does not get cleared for each batch. `@@transtate` may contain the values in Table 13-3:

**Table 13-3: `@@transtate` values**

Value	Meaning
0	Transaction in progress: an explicit or implicit transaction is in effect; the previous statement executed successfully.
1	Transaction succeeded: the transaction completed and committed its changes.
2	Statement aborted: the previous statement was aborted; no effect on the transaction.
3	Transaction aborted: the transaction aborted and rolled back any changes.

`@@transtate` only changes due to execution errors. Syntax and compile errors do not affect the value of `@@transtate`. See “Checking the state of transactions” on page 632 for examples showing `@@transtate` in transactions.

### Checking the nesting level with `@@nestlevel`

`@@nestlevel` contains the nesting level of current execution with the user session, initially 0. Each time a stored procedure or trigger calls another stored procedure or trigger, the nesting level is incremented. If the maximum of 16 is exceeded, the transaction aborts.

## Checking the status from the last *fetch*

`@@sqlstatus` contains status information resulting from the last *fetch* statement for the current user session. `@@sqlstatus` may contain the following values:

**Table 13-4: `@@sqlstatus` values**

Value	Meaning
0	The <i>fetch</i> statement completed successfully.
1	The <i>fetch</i> statement resulted in an error.
2	There is no more data in the result set. This warning occurs if the current cursor position is on the last row in the result set and the client submits a <i>fetch</i> command for that cursor.

`@@sqlstatus` has no effect on `@@error` output. For example, the following batch sets `@@sqlstatus` to 1 by causing the `fetch @@error` statement to result in an error. However, `@@error` reflects the number of the error message, not the `@@sqlstatus` output:

```

declare csrl cursor
for select * from sysmessages
for read only

open csrl

begin
    declare @xyz varchar(255)
    fetch csrl into @xyz
    select error = @@error
    select sqlstatus = @@sqlstatus
end
Msg 553, Level 16, State 1:
Line 3:
The number of parameters/variables in the FETCH INTO
clause does not match the number of columns in cursor
'csrl' result set.

```

At this point, the `@@error` global variable is set to 553, the number of the last generated error. `@@sqlstatus` is set to 1.

## Global variables affected by **set** options

set options can customize the display of results, show processing statistics, and provide other diagnostic aids for debugging your Transact-SQL programs.

Table 13-5 lists the global variables that contain information about the session options controlled by the set command.

**Table 13-5: Global variables containing session options**

Global variable	Description
<code>@@char_convert</code>	Contains 0 if character set conversion is not in effect. Contains 1 if character set conversion is in effect.
<code>@@isolation</code>	Contains the current isolation level of the Transact-SQL program. <code>@@isolation</code> takes the value of the active level (0, 1, or 3).
<code>@@options</code>	Contains a hexadecimal representation of the session's set options.
<code>@parallel_degree</code>	Contains the current maximum parallel degree setting.
<code>@@rowcount</code>	Contains the number of rows affected by the last query. <code>@@rowcount</code> is set to 0 by any command that does not return rows, such as an if, update, or delete statement. With cursors, <code>@@rowcount</code> represents the cumulative number of rows returned from the cursor result set to the client, up to the last fetch request.
<code>@scan_parallel_degree</code>	Contains the current maximum parallel degree setting for nonclustered index scans.
<code>@@textsize</code>	Contains the limit on the number of bytes of text or image data a select returns. Default limit is 32K bytes for isql; the default depends on the client software. Can be changed for a session with <code>set textsize</code> .
<code>@@tranchained</code>	Contains the current transaction mode of the Transact-SQL program. <code>@@tranchained</code> returns 0 for unchained or 1 for chained.

The `@@options` global variable contains a hexadecimal representation of the session's set options. Table 13-6 lists set options and values that work with `@@options`.

**Table 13-6: set options and values for @@options**

Numeric value	Hexidecimal value	set option
4	0x04	showplan
5	0x05	noexec
6	0x06	arithignore
8	0x08	arithabort
13	0x0D	control
14	0x0E	offsets
15	0x0F	statistics io and statistics time
16	0x10	parseonly
18	0x12	procid
20	0x14	rowcount
23	0x17	nocount

For more information on session options, see the `set` command in the *Reference Manual*.

## Language and character set information in global variables

Table 13-7 lists the global variables that contain information about languages and character sets. For more information on languages and character sets, see the *System Administration Guide*.

**Table 13-7: Global variables for language and character sets**

Global variable	Description
<code>@@char_convert</code>	Contains 0 if character set conversion is not in effect. Contains 1 if character set conversion is in effect.
<code>@@client_csid</code>	Contains client's character set ID. Set to -1 if the client character set has never been initialized; otherwise, it contains the most recently used client character set's <i>id</i> from syscharsets.
<code>@@client_csname</code>	Contains client's character set name. Set to NULL if the client character set has never been initialized; otherwise, it contains the name of the most recently used character set.
<code>@@langid</code>	Defines the local language ID of the language currently in use, as specified in syslanguages.langid.
<code>@@language</code>	Defines the name of the language currently in use, as specified in syslanguages.name.
<code>@@maxcharlen</code>	Contains the maximum length, in bytes, of multibyte characters in the default character set.
<code>@@ncharsize</code>	Contains the average length, in bytes, of a national character.
<code>@@char_convert</code>	Contains 0 if character set conversion is not in effect. Contains 1 if character set conversion is in effect.

## Global variables for monitoring system activity

Many global variables report on system activity occurring from the last time Adaptive Server was started. sp\_monitor displays the current values of some of the global variables.

Table 13-8 lists the global variables that monitor system activity, in the order returned by sp\_monitor. For complete information on sp\_monitor, see the *Reference Manual*.

**Table 13-8: Global variables that monitor system activity**

Global variable	Description
<code>@@connections</code>	Contains the number of logins or attempted logins.
<code>@@cpu_busy</code>	Contains the amount of time, in ticks, that the CPU has spent doing Adaptive Server work since the last time Adaptive Server was started.
<code>@@idle</code>	Contains the amount of time, in ticks, that Adaptive Server has been idle since it was last started.
<code>@@io_busy</code>	Contains the amount of time, in ticks, that Adaptive Server has spent doing input and output operations.
<code>@@packet_errors</code>	Contains the number of errors that occurred while Adaptive Server was sending and receiving packets.
<code>@@pack_received</code>	Contains the number of input packets read by Adaptive Server since it was last started.
<code>@@pack_sent</code>	Contains the number of output packets written by Adaptive Server since it was last started.
<code>@@total_errors</code>	Contains the number of errors that occurred while Adaptive Server was reading or writing.
<code>@@total_read</code>	Contains the number of disk reads by Adaptive Server since it was last started.
<code>@@total_write</code>	Contains the number of disk writes by Adaptive Server since it was last started.

## Server information stored in global variables

Table 13-9 lists the global variables that contain miscellaneous information about Adaptive Server.

**Table 13-9: Global variables containing Adaptive Server information**

<b>Global variable</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>@@cis_version</code>	Contains the date and version of Component Integration Services, if it is installed.
<code>@@guestuserid</code>	The guest user ID. The value is 2.
<code>@@invaliduserid</code>	The ID for an invalid user. The value is -1
<code>@@max_connections</code>	Contains the maximum number of simultaneous connections that can be made with Adaptive Server in the current computer environment. You can configure Adaptive Server for any number of connections less than or equal to the value of <code>@@max_connection</code> , using <code>number of user connections</code> configuration parameter.
<code>@@mingroupid</code>	Lowest group user ID. The lowest value is 16384.
<code>@@minuid</code>	Minimum server user ID. The lowest value is -32768.
<code>@@minuserid</code>	Lowest user ID. The lowest value is -32768.
<code>@@maxgroupid</code>	Highest group user ID. The highest value is 1048576
<code>@@maxuserid</code>	The highest user ID. The highest value is 2147483647
<code>@@probesuid</code>	The probe user ID. The value is 2.
<code>@@procid</code>	Contains the stored procedure ID of the currently executing procedure.
<code>@@servername</code>	Contains the name of this Adaptive Server. Define a server name with <code>sp_addserver</code> , and then restart Adaptive Server.
<code>@@spid</code>	Contains the server process ID number of the current process.
<code>@@thresh_hysteresis</code>	Contains the decrease in free space required to activate a threshold. This amount, also known as the hysteresis value, is measured in 2K database pages. It determines how closely thresholds can be placed on a database segment.
<code>@@timeticks</code>	Contains the number of microseconds per tick. The amount of time per tick is machine-dependent.
<code>@@version</code>	Contains the date of the current release of Adaptive Server.
<code>@@boottime</code>	Displays the time at which Adaptive Server was started.

## Global variables and *text* and *image* data

text and image values can be quite large. When the select list includes text and image values, the limit on the length of the data returned depends on the setting of the `@@textsize` global variable, which contains the limit on the number of bytes of text or image data a select returns. The default limit is 32K bytes for isql; the default depends on the client software. Change the value for a session with `set textsize`.

Table 13-10 lists the global variables that contain information about text pointers. Note that these global variables are session-based. For more information about text pointers, see “Changing text and image data” on page 332.

**Table 13-10: Text pointer information stored in global variables**

Global variable	Description
<code>@@textcolid</code>	Contains the column ID of the column referenced by <code>@@textptr</code> .
<code>@@textdbid</code>	Contains the database ID of a database containing an object with the column referenced by <code>@@textptr</code> .
<code>@@textobjid</code>	Contains the object ID of an object containing the column referenced by <code>@@textptr</code> .
<code>@@textptr</code>	Contains the text pointer of the last text or image column inserted or updated by a process. (Do not confuse this variable with the <code>textptr</code> function.)
<code>@@textts</code>	Contains the text timestamp of the column referenced by <code>@@textptr</code> .

# Using Stored Procedures

A **stored procedure** is a named collection of SQL statements or control-of-flow language. You can create stored procedures for commonly used functions and to increase performance. Adaptive Server also provides **system procedures** to perform administrative tasks and to update the system tables.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How stored procedures work	485
Creating and executing stored procedures	489
Returning information from stored procedures	503
Restrictions associated with stored procedures	511
Renaming stored procedures	513
Using stored procedures as security mechanisms	514
Dropping stored procedures	514
System procedures	514
Getting information about stored procedures	522

You can also create and use extended stored procedures to call procedural language functions from Adaptive Server. See Chapter 15, “Using Extended Stored Procedures.”

## How stored procedures work

When you run a stored procedure, Adaptive Server prepares an execution plan so that the procedure’s execution is very fast. Stored procedures can:

- Take parameters
- Call other procedures
- Return a status value to a calling procedure or batch to indicate success or failure and the reason for failure

- Return values of parameters to a calling procedure or batch
- Be executed on remote Adaptive Servers

The ability to write stored procedures greatly enhances the power, efficiency, and flexibility of SQL. Compiled procedures dramatically improve the performance of SQL statements and batches. In addition, stored procedures on other Adaptive Servers can be executed if both your server and the remote server are set up to allow remote logins. You can write triggers on your local Adaptive Server that execute procedures on a remote server whenever certain events, such as deletions, updates, or inserts, take place locally.

Stored procedures differ from ordinary SQL statements and from batches of SQL statements in that they are precompiled. The first time you run a procedure, Adaptive Server's query processor analyzes it and prepares an execution plan that is ultimately stored in a **system table**. Subsequently, the procedure is executed according to the stored plan. Since most of the query processing work has already been performed, stored procedures execute almost instantly.

Adaptive Server supplies a variety of stored procedures as convenient tools for the user. The procedures stored in the sysystemprocs database whose names begin with "sp\_" are known as **system procedures**, because they insert, update, delete and report on data in the system tables.

## Examples of creating and using stored procedures

The syntax for creating a simple stored procedure, without special features such as parameters, is:

```
create procedure procedure_name
    as SQL_statements
```

Stored procedures are database objects, and their names must follow the rules for identifiers.

Any number and kind of SQL statements can be included except for create statements. See "Restrictions associated with stored procedures" on page 511. A procedure can be as simple as a single statement that lists the names of all the users in a database:

```
create procedure namelist
    as select name from sysusers
```

To execute a stored procedure, use the keyword `execute` and the name of the stored procedure, or just use the procedure's name, as long as it is submitted to Adaptive Server by itself or is the first statement in a batch. You can execute `namelist` in any of these ways:

```
namelist  
execute namelist  
exec namelist
```

To execute a stored procedure on a remote Adaptive Server, you must give the server name. The full syntax for a remote procedure call is:

```
execute server_name.[database_name].[owner].procedure_name
```

The following examples execute the procedure `namelist` in the `pubs2` database on the GATEWAY server:

```
execute gateway.pubs2..namelist  
gateway.pubs2.dbo.namelist  
exec gateway...namelist
```

The last example works only if `pubs2` is your default database. For information on setting up remote procedure calls on Adaptive Server, see the *System Administration Guide*.

The database name is optional only if the stored procedure is located in your **default database**. The owner name is optional only if the Database Owner ("dbo") owns the procedure or if you own it. You must have **permission** to execute the procedure.

A procedure can include more than one statement.

```
create procedure showall as  
select count(*) from sysusers  
select count(*) from sysobjects  
select count(*) from syscolumns
```

When the procedure is executed, the results of each command are displayed in the order that the statement appears in the procedure.

```
showall  
-----  
5  
  
(1 row affected)  
  
-----  
88  
  
(1 row affected)
```

-----  
349

```
(1 row affected, return status = 0)
```

When a create procedure command is successfully executed, the procedure's name is stored in sysobjects, and its **source text** is stored in syscomments.

You can display the source text of a procedure with sp\_helptext:

```
sp_helptext showall  
# Lines of Text  
-----  
1  
  
(1 row affected)  
  
text  
-----  
create procedure showall as  
select count(*) from sysusers  
select count(*) from sysobjects  
select count(*) from syscolumns  
  
(1 row affected, return status = 0)
```

## Stored procedures and permissions

Stored procedures can serve as security mechanisms, since a user can be granted permission to execute a stored procedure, even if she or he does not have permissions on the tables or views referenced in it or permission to execute specific commands. For details, see the *System Administration Guide*.

You can protect the source text of a stored procedure against unauthorized access by restricting select permission on the text column of the syscomments table to the creator of the procedure and the System Administrator. This restriction is required to run Adaptive Server in the **evaluated configuration**. To enact this restriction, a System Security Officer must reset the allow select on syscomments.text column parameter using sp\_configure. For more information, see the *System Administration Guide*.

Another way to protect access to the source text of a stored procedure is to hide the source text using `sp_hidetext`. For information, see `sp_hidetext` in the *Reference Manual*.

## Stored Procedures and Performance

As a database changes, you can optimize original query plans used to access its tables by recompiling them with `sp_recompile`. This saves you from having to find, drop, and re-create every stored procedure and trigger. This example marks every stored procedure and trigger that accesses the table titles to be recompiled the next time it is executed.

```
sp_recompile titles
```

For detailed information about `sp_recompile`, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Creating and executing stored procedures

The complete syntax for create procedure is:

```
create procedure [owner.]procedure_name[;number]
    [[(]@parameter_name
        datatype [(length) | (precision [, scale ])]
        [= default] [output]
    [, @parameter_name
        datatype [(length) | (precision [, scale ])]
        [= default] [output]]...])]
    [with recompile]
    as {SQL_statements | external name dll_name}
```

You can create a procedure in the current database only.

Permission to issue create procedure defaults to the Database Owner, who can transfer it to other users.

Here is the complete syntax statement for execute:

```
[exec[ute]] [@return_status = ]
    [[[server .]database.]owner.]procedure_name[ ;number]
        [[@parameter_name =] value |
            [@parameter_name =] @variable [output]
        [, [@parameter_name =] value |
            [@parameter_name =] @variable [output]...]]
    [with recompile]
```

## Parameters

A **parameter** is an argument to a stored procedure. You can optionally declare one or more parameters in a create procedure statement. The value of each parameter named in a create procedure statement must be supplied by the user when the procedure is executed.

Parameter names must be preceded by an @ sign and must conform to the rules for identifiers, see “Identifiers” on page 7. Parameter names are local to the procedure that creates them; the same parameter names can be used in other procedures. Enclose any parameter value that includes punctuation (such as an object name qualified by a database name or owner name) in single or double quotes. Parameter names, including the @ sign, can be a maximum of 30 bytes long.

Parameters must be given a system datatype (except text or image) or a user-defined datatype, and (if required for the datatype) a length or precision and scale in parentheses.

Here is a stored procedure for the pubs2 database. Given an author’s last and first names, the procedure displays the names of any books written by that person and the name of each book’s publisher.

```
create proc au_info @lastname varchar(40),
    @firstname varchar(20) as
select au_lname, au_fname, title, pub_name
from authors, titles, publishers, titleauthor
where au_fname = @firstname
and au_lname = @lastname
and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
```

Now, execute au\_info:

```
au_info Ringer, Anne
au_lname au_fname title          pub_name
----- -----
Ringer   Anne      The Gourmet Microwave Binnet & Hardley
Ringer   Anne      Is Anger the Enemy?    New Age Books
(2 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

The following stored procedure queries the system tables. Given a table name as the parameter, the procedure displays the table name, index name, and index ID.

```
create proc showind @table varchar(30) as
select table_name = sysobjects.name,
```

```

index_name = sysindexes.name, index_id = indid
from sysindexes, sysobjects
where sysobjects.name = @table
and sysobjects.id = sysindexes.id

```

The column headings, for example, `table_name`, were added to improve the readability of the results. Here are acceptable syntax forms for executing this stored procedure:

```

execute showind titles
exec showind titles
execute showind @table = titles
execute GATEWAY.pubs2.dbo.showind titles
showind titles

```

The last syntax form, without `exec` or `execute`, is acceptable as long as the statement is the only one or the first one in a batch.

Here are the results of executing `showind` in the `pubs2` database when `titles` is given as the parameter:

table_name	index_name	index_id
titles	titleidind	0
titles	titleind	2

(2 rows affected, return status = 0)

If you supply the parameters in the form “`@parameter = value`” you can supply them in any order. Otherwise, you must supply parameters in the order of their create procedure statement. If you supply one value in the form “`@parameter = value`”, then supply all subsequent parameters this way.

This procedure displays the datatype of the `qty` column from the `salesdetail` table.

```

create procedure showtype @tabname varchar(18),
@colname varchar(18) as
select syscolumns.name, syscolumns.length,
systypes.name
from syscolumns, systypes, sysobjects
where sysobjects.id = syscolumns.id
and @tabname = sysobjects.name
and @colname = syscolumns.name
and syscolumns.type = systypes.type

```

When you execute this procedure you can give the `@tabname` and `@colname` in a different order from the create procedure statement if you specify them by name:

```
exec showtype  
    @colname = qty , @tabname = salesdetail
```

You can use case expressions in any stored procedure where you use a value expression. The following example checks the sales for any book in the titles table:

```
create proc booksales @titleid tid  
as  
select title, total_sales,  
case  
when total_sales != null then "Books sold"  
when total_sales = null then "Book sales not  
available"  
end  
from titles  
where @titleid = title_id
```

For example:

```
booksales MC2222  
title                               total_sales  
-----  
Silicon Valley Gastronomic Treats      2032 Books sold  
  
(1 row affected)
```

## Default parameters

You can assign a default value for the parameter in the create procedure statement. This value, which can be any constant, is used as the argument to the procedure if the user does not supply one.

Here is a procedure that displays the names of all the authors who have written a book published by the publisher given as a parameter. If no publisher name is supplied, the procedure shows the authors published by Algodata Infosystems.

```
create proc pub_info  
    @pubname varchar(40) = "Algodata Infosystems" as  
select au_lname, au_fname, pub_name  
from authors a, publishers p, titles t, titleauthor
```

```

ta
where @pubname = p.pub_name
and a.au_id = ta.au_id
and t.title_id = ta.title_id
and t.pub_id = p.pub_id

```

Note that if the default value is a character string that contains embedded blanks or punctuation, it must be enclosed in single or double quotes.

When you execute pub\_info, you can give any publisher's name as the parameter value. If you do not supply any parameter, Adaptive Server uses the default, Algodata Infosystems.

```

exec pub_info

au_lname      au_fname      pub_name
-----
Green          Marjorie     Algodata Infosystems
Bennet         Abraham     Algodata Infosystems
O'Leary        Michael     Algodata Infosystems
MacFeather    Stearns     Algodata Infosystems
Straight       Dick        Algodata Infosystems
Carson         Cheryl      Algodata Infosystems
Dull           Ann         Algodata Infosystems
Hunter         Sheryl      Algodata Infosystems
Locksley      Chastity   Algodata Infosystems

(9 rows affected, return status = 0)

```

This procedure, showind2, assigns “titles” as the default value for the *@table* parameter:

```

create proc showind2
@table varchar(30) = titles as
select table_name = sysobjects.name,
       index_name = sysindexes.name, index_id = indid
from sysindexes, sysobjects
where sysobjects.name = @table
and sysobjects.id = sysindexes.id

```

The column headings, for example, *table\_name*, clarify the result display. Here is what showind2 shows for the authors table:

```

showind2 authors
table_name      index_name      index_id
-----
authors         auidind        1
authors         aunmind        2

```

```
(2 rows affected, return status = 0)
```

If the user does not supply a value, Adaptive Server uses the default, *titles*.

```
showind2
table_name    index_name    index_id
-----  -----  -----
titles        titleidind      1
titles        titleind       2
```

```
(2 rows affected, return status =0)
```

If a parameter is expected but none is supplied, and a default value is not supplied in the create procedure statement, Adaptive Server displays an error message listing the parameters expected by the procedure.

## Using default parameters in stored procedures

If you create a stored procedure that uses defaults for parameters, and a user issues the stored procedure, but misspells the parameter name, Adaptive Server executes the store procedure using the default value and does not issue an error message. For example, if you create the following procedure:

```
create procedure test @x int = 1
as select @x
```

It returns the following:

```
exec test @x = 2
go
-----
2
```

However, if you pass this stored procedure an incorrect parameter, it returns an incorrect result set, but does not issue a error message:

```
exec test @z = 4
go
-----
1
(1 row affected)
(return status = 0)
```

## NULL as the default parameter

In the create procedure statement, you can declare null as the default value for individual parameters:

```
create procedure procedure_name
    @param datatype [ = null ]
    [, @param datatype [ = null ]]...
```

In this case, if the user does not supply a parameter, Adaptive Server executes the stored procedure without displaying an error message.

The procedure definition can specify an action be taken if the user does not give a parameter, by checking to see that the parameter's value is null. Here is an example:

```
create procedure showind3
@table varchar(30) = null as
if @table is null
    print "Please give a table name."
else
    select table_name = sysobjects.name,
           index_name = sysindexes.name,
           index_id = indid
    from sysindexes, sysobjects
    where sysobjects.name = @table
    and sysobjects.id = sysindexes.id
```

If the user does not give a parameter, Adaptive Server prints the message from the procedure on the screen.

For other examples of setting the default to null, examine the source text of system procedures using sp\_helptext.

## Wildcard characters in the default parameter

The default can include the wildcard characters (%, \_, [], and [^]) if the procedure uses the parameter with the like keyword.

For example, you can modify showind to display information about the system tables if the user does not supply a parameter, like this:

```
create procedure showind4
@table varchar(30) = "sys%" as
select table_name = sysobjects.name,
       index_name = sysindexes.name,
       index_id = indid
from sysindexes, sysobjects
where sysobjects.name like @table
and sysobjects.id = sysindexes.id
```

## Using more than one parameter

Here is a variant of au\_info that uses defaults with wildcard characters for both parameters:

```
create proc au_info2
    @lastname varchar(30) = "D%",
    @firstname varchar(18) = "%" as
select au_lname, au_fname, title, pub_name
from authors, titles, publishers, titleauthor
where au_fname like @firstname
and au_lname like @lastname
and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and titles.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
```

If you execute au\_info2 with no parameters, all the authors with last names beginning with “D” are displayed:

au_info2			
au_lname	au_fname	title	pub_name
Dull	Ann	Secrets of Silicon Valley	Algodata Infosystems
DeFrance	Michel	The Gourmet Microwave	Binnet & Hardley

(2 rows affected)

If defaults are available for parameters, parameters can be omitted at execution, beginning with the last parameter. You cannot skip a parameter unless NULL is its supplied default.

---

**Note** If you supply parameters in the form `@parameter = value`, you can supply parameters in any order. You can also omit a parameter for which a default has been supplied. If you supply one value in the form `@parameter = value`, then supply all subsequent parameters this way.

---

As an example of omitting the second parameter when defaults for two parameters have been defined, you can find the books and publishers for all authors with the last name “Ringer” like this:

au_info2 Ringer			
au_lname	au_fname	title	Pub_name
Ringer	Anne	The Gourmet Microwave	Binnet & Hardley
Ringer	Anne	Is Anger the Enemy?	New Age Books
Ringer	Albert	Is Anger the Enemy?	New Age Books
Ringer	Albert	Life Without Fear	New Age Books

```
(4 rows affected)
```

If a user executes a stored procedure and specifies more parameters than the number of parameters expected by the procedure, Adaptive Server ignores the extra parameters.

Remember that SQL is a free-form language. There are no rules about the number of words you can put on a line or where you must break a line. If you issue a stored procedure followed by a command, Adaptive Server attempts to execute the procedure and then the command. For example, if you issue:

```
sp_help checkpoint
```

Adaptive Server returns the output from `sp_help` and runs the `checkpoint` command. Using delimited identifiers for procedure parameters can produce unintended results.

## Procedure groups

The optional semicolon and integer number after the name of the procedure in the `create procedure` and `execute` statements allow you to group procedures of the same name so that they can be dropped together with a single drop procedure statement.

Procedures used in the same application are often grouped this way. For example, you might create a series of procedures called `orders;1`, `orders;2`, and so on. The following statement would drop the entire group:

```
drop proc orders
```

Once procedures have been grouped by appending a semicolon and number to their names, they cannot be dropped individually. For example, the following statement is not allowed:

```
drop proc orders;2
```

To run Adaptive Server in the evaluated configuration, you must prohibit grouping of procedures. This prohibition ensures that every stored procedure has a unique object identifier and can be dropped individually. To disallow procedure grouping, a System Security Officer must reset the `allow procedure grouping` configuration parameter. For information, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## **Using *with recompile* in *create procedure***

In the *create procedure* statement, the optional clause *with recompile* comes just before the SQL statements. It instructs Adaptive Server not to save a plan for this procedure. A new plan is created each time the procedure is executed.

In the absence of *with recompile*, Adaptive Server stores the execution plan that it created. Usually, this execution plan is satisfactory.

However, a change in the data or parameter values supplied for subsequent executions may cause Adaptive Server to create an execution plan that is different from the one it created when the procedure was first executed. In such situations, Adaptive Server needs a new execution plan.

Use *with recompile* in a *create procedure* statement when you think you need a new plan. See the *Reference Manual* for more information.

## **Using *with recompile* in *execute***

In the *execute* statement, the optional clause *with recompile* comes after any parameters. It instructs Adaptive Server to compile a new plan, which is used for subsequent executions.

Use *with recompile* when you execute a procedure if your data has changed a great deal, or if the parameter you are supplying is atypical—that is, if you have reason to believe that the plan stored with the procedure might not be optimal for this execution of it.

---

**Note** If you use *select \** in your *create procedure* statement, the procedure, even if you use the *with recompile* option to *execute*, does not pick up any new columns added to the table. You must drop the procedure and re-create it.

---

## Nesting procedures within procedures

Nesting occurs when one stored procedure or trigger calls another. The nesting level is incremented when the called procedure or trigger begins execution and it is decremented when the called procedure or trigger completes execution. Exceeding the maximum of 16 levels of nesting causes the procedure to fail. The current nesting level is stored in the `@@nestlevel` global variable.

You can call another procedure by name or by a variable name in place of the actual procedure name. For example:

```
create procedure test1 @proc_name varchar(30)
    as exec @proc_name
```

## Using temporary tables in stored procedures

You can create and use temporary tables in a stored procedure, but the temporary table exists only for the duration of the stored procedure that creates it. When the procedure completes, Adaptive Server automatically drops the temporary table. A single procedure can:

- Create a temporary table
- Insert, update, or delete data
- Run queries on the temporary table
- Call other procedures that reference the temporary table

Since the temporary table must exist to create procedures that reference it, here are the steps to follow:

- 1 Create the temporary table using a `create table` statement or a `select into` statement. For example:

```
create table #tempstores
    (stor_id char(4), amount money)
```

- 2 Create the procedures that access the temporary table (but not the one that creates it).

```
create procedure inv_amounts as
    select stor_id, "Total Due" = sum(amount)
        from #tempstores
        group by stor_id
```

- 3 Drop the temporary table:

```
drop table #tempstores
```

- 4 Create the procedure that creates the table and calls the procedures created in step 2:

```
create procedure inv_proc as  
create table #tempstores  
(stor_id char(4), amount money)
```

When you run the `inv_proc` procedure, it creates the table, but it only exists during the procedure's execution. Try inserting values into the `#tempstores` table or running the `inv_amounts` procedure:

```
insert #tempstores  
select stor_id, sum(qty*(100-  
discount)/100*price)  
from salesdetail, titles  
where salesdetail.title_id = titles.title_id  
group by stor_id, salesdetail.title_id  
exec inv_amounts
```

You cannot, because the `#tempstores` table no longer exists.

You can also create temporary tables without the `#` prefix, using `create table tempdb..tablename...` from inside a stored procedure. These tables do not disappear when the procedure completes, so they can be referenced by independent procedures. Follow the above steps to create these tables.

## Setting options in stored procedures

You can use some of the `set` command options inside a stored procedure. The `set` option remains in effect during the execution of the procedure and most options revert to the former setting at the close of the procedure. Only the `dateformat`, `datefirst`, and `language` options do not revert to their former settings.

However, if you use a `set` option (such as `identity_insert`) that requires the user to be the object owner, a user who is not the object owner cannot execute the stored procedure.

## Arguments for stored procedures

The maximum number of arguments for stored procedures is 2048. However, you may notice a performance degradation if you execute procedures with large numbers of arguments, because the query processing engine must process all the arguments and copy argument values to and from memory. Sybase recommends that you first test any stored procedures you write that include large numbers of arguments before you implement them in a production environment.

## Length of expressions, variables, and SP arguments

The maximum size for expressions, variables, and arguments passed to stored procedures is 16384 (16K) bytes, for any page size. This can be either character or binary data. You can insert variables and literals up to this maximum size into text columns without using the `writetext` command.

*When you upgraded Adaptive Server and the prior version used a lower maximum length:*

Earlier versions of Adaptive Server had a maximum size of 255 bytes for expressions, variables, and arguments for stored procedures.

Any scripts or stored procedures that you wrote for earlier versions of Adaptive Server that used this old maximum may now return larger string values because of the larger maximum page sizes.

Because of the larger value, Adaptive Server may truncate the string, or the string may cause overflow if it was stored in another variable or inserted into a column or string.

If columns of existing tables are modified to increase the length of character columns, you must change any stored procedures that operate data on these columns to reflect this new length.

```
select datalength(replicate("x", 500)),  
       datalength("abcdefg....255 byte long string.." +  
                  "xxyyzz ... another 255 byte long string")  
-----  
255 255
```

## After creating a stored procedure

After you create a stored procedure, the **source text** describing the procedure is stored in the `text` column of the `syscomments` system table. *Do not remove this information from syscomments*; doing so can cause problems for future upgrades of Adaptive Server. Instead, encrypt the text in `syscomments` by using `sp_hidetext`, described in the *Reference Manual*. For more information, see “Compiled objects” on page 4.

## Executing stored procedures

You can execute stored procedures after a time delay or remotely.

### Executing procedures after a time delay

The `waitfor` command delays execution of a stored procedure at a specified time or until a specified amount of time has passed.

For example, to execute the procedure `testproc` in half an hour:

```
begin
    waitfor delay "0:30:00"
    exec testproc
end
```

After issuing the `waitfor` command, you cannot use that connection to Adaptive Server until the specified time or event occurs.

### Executing procedures remotely

You can execute procedures on a remote Adaptive Server from your local Adaptive Server. Once both servers are properly configured, you can execute any procedure on the remote Adaptive Server simply by using the server name as part of the identifier. For example, to execute a procedure named `remoteproc` on a server named `GATEWAY`:

```
exec gateway.remotedb.dbo.remoteproc
```

See the *System Administration Guide* for information on how to configure your local and remote Adaptive Servers for remote execution of procedures. You can pass one or more values as parameters to a remote procedure from the batch or procedure that contains the `execute` statement for the remote procedure. Results from the remote Adaptive Server appear on your local terminal.

The return status from procedures can be used to capture and transmit information messages about the execution status of your procedures. For more information, see “Return status” on page 504.

---

**Warning!** If Component Integration Services is not enabled, Adaptive Server does not treat remote procedure calls (RPCs) as part of a transaction. Therefore, if you execute an RPC as part of a transaction, and then roll back the transaction, Adaptive Server does not roll back any changes made by the RPC. When Component Integration Services is enabled, use set transactional rpc and set cis rpc handling to use transactional RPCs. For more information on the transactional rpc and cis rpc handling options, see the set command in the *Reference Manual*.

---

## Returning information from stored procedures

Stored procedures can return the following types of information:

- Return status – indicates whether or not the stored procedure completed successfully.
- proc role function – checks whether the procedure was executed by a user with sa\_role, sso\_role, or ss\_oper privileges.
- Return parameters – report the parameter values back to the caller, who can then use conditional statements to check the returned value.

Return status and return parameters allow you to modularize your stored procedures. A set of SQL statements that are used by several stored procedures can be created as a single procedure that returns its execution status or the values of its parameters to the calling procedure. For example, many Adaptive Server system procedures execute a procedure that verifies that certain parameters are valid identifiers.

Remote procedure calls, which are stored procedures that run on a remote Adaptive Server, also return both kinds of information. All the examples below can be executed remotely if the syntax of the execute statement includes the server, database, and owner names, as well as the procedure name.

## Return status

Stored procedures report a **return status** that indicates whether or not they completed successfully, and if they did not, the reasons for failure. This value can be stored in a variable when a procedure is called, and used in future Transact-SQL statements. Adaptive Server-defined return status values for failure range from -1 through -99; users can define their own return status values outside this range.

Here is an example of a batch that uses the form of the execute statement that returns the status:

```
declare @status int  
execute @status = byroyalty 50  
select @status
```

The execution status of the byroyalty procedure is stored in the variable `@status`. “50” is the supplied parameter, based on the `royaltyper` column of the `titleauthor` table. This example prints the value with a select statement; later examples use this return value in conditional clauses.

## Reserved return status values

Adaptive Server reserves 0, to indicate a successful return, and negative values from -1 through -99, to indicate the reasons for failure. Numbers 0 and -1 through -14 are currently used in version 12, as shown in Table 14-1:

**Table 14-1: Reserved return status values**

<b>Value</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
0	Procedure executed without error
-1	Missing object
-2	Datatype error
-3	Process was chosen as deadlock victim
-4	Permission error
-5	Syntax error
-6	Miscellaneous user error
-7	Resource error, such as out of space
-8	Non-fatal internal problem
-9	System limit was reached
-10	Fatal internal inconsistency
-11	Fatal internal inconsistency
-12	Table or index is corrupt
-13	Database is corrupt
-14	Hardware error

Values -15 through -99 are reserved for future use by Adaptive Server.

If more than one error occurs during execution, the status with the highest absolute value is returned.

## User-generated return values

You can generate your own return values in stored procedures by adding a parameter to the return statement. You can use any integer outside the 0 through -99 range. The following example returns 1 when a book has a valid contract and returns 2 in all other cases:

```
create proc checkcontract @titleid tid
as
if (select contract from titles where
    title_id = @titleid) = 1
    return 1
else
    return 2
```

For example:

```
checkcontract MC2222
(return status = 1)
```

The following stored procedure calls checkcontract, and uses conditional clauses to check the return status:

```
create proc get_au_stat @titleid tid
as
declare @retval int
execute @retval = checkcontract @titleid
if (@retval = 1)
    print "Contract is valid."
else
    print "There is not a valid contract."
```

Here are the results when you execute get\_au\_stat with the title\_id of a book with a valid contract:

```
get_au_stat MC2222
Contract is valid
```

## Checking roles in procedures

If a stored procedure performs system administration or security-related tasks, you may want to ensure that only users who have been granted a specific role can execute it. The proc\_role function allows you to check roles when the procedure is executed. It returns 1 if the user possesses the specified role. The role names are sa\_role, sso\_role, and oper\_role.

Here is an example using proc\_role in the stored procedure test\_proc to require the invoker to be a System Administrator:

```
create proc test_proc
as
if (proc_role("sa_role") = 0)
begin
    print "You do not have the right role."
    return -1
end
else
    print "You have SA role."
    return 0
```

For example:

```
test_proc
You have SA role.
```

## Return parameters

Another way that stored procedures can return information to the caller is through *return parameters*. The caller can then use conditional statements to check the returned value.

When both a create procedure statement and an execute statement include the output option with a parameter name, the procedure returns a value to the caller. The caller can be a SQL batch or another stored procedure. The value returned can be used in additional statements in the batch or calling procedure. When return parameters are used in an execute statement that is part of a batch, the return values are printed with a heading before subsequent statements in the batch are executed.

This stored procedure performs multiplication on two integers (the third integer, `@result`, is defined as an output parameter):

```
create procedure mathtutor
@mult1 int, @mult2 int, @result int output
as
select @result = @mult1 * @mult2
```

To use `mathtutor` to figure a multiplication problem, you must declare the `@result` variable and include it in the `execute` statement. Adding the `output` keyword to the `execute` statement displays the value of the return parameters.

```
declare @result int
exec mathtutor 5, 6, @result output
(return status = 0)
```

Return parameters:

```
-----
30
```

If you wanted to guess at the answer and execute this procedure by providing three integers, you would not see the results of the multiplication. The `select` statement in the procedure assigns values, but does not print:

```
mathtutor 5, 6, 32
(return status = 0)
```

The value for the output parameter must be passed as a variable, not as a constant. This example declares the `@guess` variable to store the value to pass to `mathtutor` for use in `@result`. Adaptive Server prints the return parameters:

```
declare @guess int
select @guess = 32
exec mathtutor 5, 6,
@result = @guess output
(1 row affected)
(return status = 0)
```

Return parameters:

```
@result
-----
30
```

The value of the return parameter is always reported, whether or not its value has changed. Note that:

- In the example above, the output parameter *@result must* be passed as “*@parameter = @variable*”. If it were not the last parameter passed, subsequent parameters would have to be passed as “*@parameter = value*”.
- *@result* does not have to be declared in the calling batch; it is the name of a parameter to be passed to *mathtutor*.
- Although the changed value of *@result* is returned to the caller in the variable assigned in the *execute* statement, in this case *@guess*, it is displayed under its own heading, *@result*.

To use the initial value of *@guess* in conditional clauses after the *execute* statement, you must store it in another variable name during the procedure call. The following example illustrates the last two bulleted items, above, by using *@store* to hold the value of the variable during the execution of the stored procedure, and by using the “new” returned value of *@guess* in conditional clauses:

```
declare @guess int
declare @store int
select @guess = 32
select @store = @guess
execute mathtutor 5, 6,
@result = @guess output
select Your_answer = @store,
Right_answer = @guess
if @guess = @store
    print "Bingo!"
else
    print "Wrong, wrong, wrong!"
(1 row affected)
```

```

(1 row affected)
(return status = 0)

@result
-----
30

Your_answer Right_answer
-----
32           30

Wrong, wrong, wrong!

```

This stored procedure checks to determine whether new book sales would cause an author's royalty percentage to change (the @pc parameter is defined as an output parameter):

```

create proc roy_check @title tid, @newsales int,
                      @pc int output
as
declare @newtotal int
select @newtotal = (select titles.total_sales +
@newsales
from titles where title_id = @title)
select @pc = royalty from roysched
      where @newtotal >= roysched.lorange and
            @newtotal < roysched.hirange
      and roysched.title_id = @title

```

The following SQL batch calls the roy\_check after assigning a value to the *percent* variable. The return parameters are printed before the next statement in the batch is executed:

```

declare @percent int
select @percent = 10
execute roy_check "BU1032", 1050, @pc = @percent
output
select Percent = @percent
go
(1 row affected)
(return status = 0)

@pc
-----
12
Percent
-----
12

```

```
(1 row affected)
```

The following stored procedure calls `roy_check` and uses the return value for `percent` in a conditional clause:

```
create proc newsales @title tid, @newsales int
as
declare @percent int
declare @stor_pc int
select @percent = (select royalty from roysched,
titles
where roysched.title_id = @title
and total_sales >= roysched.lorange
and total_sales < roysched.hirange
and roysched.title_id = titles.title_id)
select @stor_pc = @percent
execute roy_check @title, @newsales, @pc = @percent
      output
if
      @stor_pc != @percent
begin
      print "Royalty is changed."
      select Percent = @percent
end
else
      print "Royalty is the same."
```

If you execute this stored procedure with the same parameters used in the earlier batch, you see:

```
execute newsales "BU1032", 1050
Royalty is changed
Percent
-----
```

12

```
(1 row affected, return status = 0)
```

In the two preceding examples that call `roy_check`, `@pc` is the parameter that is passed to `roy_check`, and `@percent` is the variable containing the output. When `newsales` executes `roy_check`, the value returned in `@percent` may change, depending on the other parameters that are passed. To compare the returned value of `percent` with the initial value of `@pc`, you must store the initial value in another variable. The preceding example saved the value in `stor_pc`.

## Passing values in parameters

To pass values in the parameters use this format:

`@parameter = @variable`

You cannot pass constants; there must be a variable name to “receive” the return value. The parameters can be of any Adaptive Server datatype except text or image.

---

**Note** If the stored procedure requires several parameters, either pass the return value parameter last in the execute statement or pass all subsequent parameters in the form `@parameter = value`.

---

## The `output` keyword

A stored procedure can return several values; each must be defined as an output variable in the stored procedure and in the calling statements. The `output` keyword can be abbreviated to `out`.

```
exec myproc @a = @myvara out, @b = @myvarb out
```

If you specify `output` while you are executing a procedure, and the parameter is not defined using `output` in the stored procedure, you get an error message. It is not an error to call a procedure that includes return value specifications without requesting the return values with `output`.

However, you will not get the return values. The stored procedure writer has control over the information users can access, and users have control over their variables.

## Restrictions associated with stored procedures

Here are some additional restrictions on creating stored procedures:

- You cannot combine `create procedure` statements with other statements in the same batch.
- The `create procedure` definition itself can include any number and kind of SQL statements, except `use` and these `create` statements:
  - `create view`
  - `create default`

- create rule
- create trigger
- create procedure
- You can create other database objects within a procedure. You can reference an object you created in the same procedure, as long as you create it before you reference it. The create statement for the object must come first in the actual order of the statements within the procedure.
- Within a stored procedure, you cannot create an object, drop it, and then create a new object with the same name.
- Adaptive Server creates the objects defined in a stored procedure when the procedure is executed, not when it is compiled.
- If you execute a procedure that calls another procedure, the called procedure can access objects created by the first procedure.
- You can reference temporary tables within a procedure.
- If you create a temporary table with the #prefix inside a procedure, the temporary table exists only for purposes of the procedure—it disappears when you exit the procedure. Temporary tables created using `create table tempdb..tablename` do not disappear unless you explicitly drop them.
- The maximum number of parameters in a stored procedure is 255.
- The maximum number of local and global variables in a procedure is limited only by available memory.

## Qualifying names inside procedures

Inside a stored procedure, object names used with `create table` and `dbcc` must be **qualified** with the object owner's name, if other users are to use the stored procedure. Object names used with other statements, like `select` and `insert`, inside a stored procedure need not be qualified because the names are resolved when the procedure is compiled.

For example, user “mary”, who owns table marytab, should qualify the name of her table when it is used with select or insert if she wants other users to execute the procedure in which the table is used. The reason for this rule is that object names are resolved when the procedure is run. If marytab is not qualified, and user “john” tries to execute the procedure, Adaptive Server looks for a table called marytab owned by John.

## Renaming stored procedures

Use `sp_rename` to rename stored procedures.

Its syntax is:

```
sp_rename objname, newname
```

For example, to rename showall to countall:

```
sp_rename showall, countall
```

The new name must follow the rules for identifiers. You can change the name only of stored procedures that you own. The Database Owner can change the name of any user’s stored procedure. The stored procedure must be in the current database.

## Renaming objects referenced by procedures

You must drop and re-create a procedure if you rename any of the objects it references. A stored procedure that references a table or view whose name has been changed may seem to work fine for a while. In fact, it works only until Adaptive Server recompiles it. Recompilation takes place for many reasons and without notification to the user.

Use `sp_depends` to get a report of the objects referenced by a procedure.

## Using stored procedures as security mechanisms

You can use stored procedures as security mechanisms to control access to information in tables and to control the ability to perform data modification. For example, you can deny other users permission to use the select command on a table that you own and create a stored procedure that allows them to see only certain rows or certain columns. You can also use stored procedures to limit update, delete, or insert statements.

The person who owns the stored procedure must own the table or view used in the procedure. Not even a System Administrator can create a stored procedure to perform operations on another user's tables, if the System Administrator has not been granted permissions on those tables.

For information about granting and revoking permissions of stored procedures and other database objects, see the *System Administration Guide*.

## Dropping stored procedures

Use drop procedure to remove stored procedures. Its syntax is:

```
drop proc[edure] [owner.]procedure_name  
[, [owner.]procedure_name] ...
```

If a stored procedure that was dropped is called by another stored procedure, Adaptive Server displays an error message. However, if a new procedure of the same name is defined to replace the one that was dropped, other procedures that reference the original procedure can call it successfully.

A procedure group, that is, more than one procedure with the same name but with different numbered suffixes, can be dropped with a single drop procedure statement. Once procedures have been grouped, procedures within the group cannot be dropped individually.

## System procedures

System procedures are:

- Shortcuts for retrieving information from the system tables
- Mechanisms for performing database administration and other tasks that involve updating system tables

Most of the time, system tables are updated *only* through stored procedures. A System Administrator can allow direct updates of system tables by changing a configuration variable and issuing the reconfigure with override command. See the *System Administration Guide* for details.

The names of system procedures begin with “sp\_”. They are created by the installmaster script in the sysystemprocs database during Adaptive Server installation.

## Executing system procedures

You can run system procedures from any database. If a system procedure is executed from a database other than the sysystemprocs database, any references to system tables are mapped to the database from which the procedure is being run. For example, if the Database Owner of pubs2 runs sp\_adduser from pubs2, the new user is added to pubs2..sysusers. To run a system procedure in a specific database, either open that database with the use command and execute the procedure, or qualify the procedure name with the database name.

When the parameter for a system procedure is an object name, and the object name is qualified by a database name or owner name, the entire name must be enclosed in single or double quotes.

## Permissions on system procedures

Since system procedures are located in the sysystemprocs database, their permissions are also set there. Some system procedures can be run only by Database Owners. These procedures ensure that the user executing the procedure is the owner of the database on which they are executed.

Other system procedures can be executed by any user who has been granted execute permission on them, but this permission must be granted in the sysystemprocs database. This situation has two consequences:

- A user can have permission to execute a system procedure either in all databases or in none of them.

- The owner of a user database cannot directly control permissions on the system procedures within his or her own database.

## Types of system procedures

System procedures can be grouped by function, such as auditing, security administration, data definition, and so on. The following sections list the types of system procedures.

For complete information about the system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.

### System procedures for auditing

These system procedures are used for:

- Controlling audit settings
- Creating and managing the tables which hold the audit queue

The procedures in this category are:

---

<code>sp_addauditrecord</code>	<code>sp_addaudittable</code>	<code>sp_audit</code>	<code>sp_displayaudit</code>
--------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------------

---

For more information on auditing, see the *Security Administration Guide*.

### System procedures used for security administration

These system procedures are used for:

- Adding, dropping, and reporting on logins on Adaptive Server
- Adding, dropping, and reporting on users, groups, roles, and aliases in a database
- Changing passwords and default databases
- Adding, dropping, and reporting on remote servers that can access the current Adaptive Server
- Adding the names of users from remote servers who can access the current Adaptive Server

The procedures in this category are:

sp_activeroles	sp_changegroup	sp_droplogin	sp_locklogin
sp_addalias	sp_displaylogin	sp_dropuser	sp_modifylogin
sp_addgroup	sp_displayroles	sp_helpgroup	sp_password
sp_addlogin	sp_dropalias	sp_helpprotect	sp_role
sp_adduser	sp_dropgroup	sp_helpuser	

Additional system procedures are available for Windows NT. The procedures in this category are:

sp_grantlogin	sp_logininfo	sp_revokelogin
sp_loginconfig	sp_processmail	

## System procedures used for remote servers

These system procedures are used for:

- Adding, dropping and reporting on remote servers that can access the current Adaptive Server
- Adding the names of users from remote servers who can access the current Adaptive Server

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addremotelogin	sp_dropserver	sp_remoteoption
sp_addserver	sp_helpremotelogin	sp_serveroption
sp_droptemotelogin	sp_helpserver	

Additional system procedures are available if you have Component Integration Services installed. The procedures in this category are:

sp_addexternlogin	sp_dropexternlogin	sp_passthru
sp_addobjectdef	sp_dropobjectdef	sp_remotesql
sp_autoconnect	sp_helpexternlogin	
sp_defaultloc	sp_helpobjectdef	

## System procedures for managing databases

These system procedures are used for:

- Changing the owner of a database
- Displaying and changing database options

The procedures in this category are:

sp_changedbowner	sp_dbremap	sp_renamedb
sp_dboption	sp_helpdb	

## **System procedures used for data definition and database objects**

These system procedures are used for:

- Binding and unbinding rules and defaults
- Adding, dropping, and reporting on primary keys, foreign keys, and common keys
- Adding, dropping, and reporting on user-defined datatypes
- Renaming database objects and user-defined datatypes
- Re-optimizing stored procedures and triggers
- Binding and unbinding objects to data caches
- Reporting on database objects, user-defined datatypes, dependencies among database objects, databases, indexes, and space used by tables and indexes
- Getting help on command syntax

The procedures in this category are

sp_addextendedproc	sp_dropkey	sp_HELPTEXT
sp_addtype	sp_droptype	sp_hidetext
sp_bindcache	sp_estspace	sp_poolconfig
sp_bindefault	sp_foreignkey	sp_primarykey
sp_bindrule	sp_freedll	sp_procxmode
sp_cacheconfig	sp_help	sp_recompile
sp_cachestrategy	sp_helppartition	sp_rename
sp_chgattribute	sp_helpcache	sp_spaceused
sp_checksOURCE	sp_helpconstraint	sp_unbindcache
sp_commonkey	sp_helpextendedproc	sp_unbindcache_all
sp_cursorinfo	sp_helpindex	sp_unbinddefault
sp_depends	sp_helpjoins	sp_unbindrule
sp_dropextendedproc	sp_helpkey	

## System procedures used for user-defined messages

These system procedures are used for:

- Adding user-defined messages to the sysusermessages table in a user database
- Dropping user-defined messages from sysusermessages
- Retrieving messages from either sysusermessages or sysmessages in the master database for use in print and raiserror statements

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addmessage	sp_bindmsg	sp_getmessage
sp_altermessage	sp_dropmessage	sp_unbindmsg

## System procedures for languages

These system procedures are used for:

- Managing character sets
- Adding and dropping alternate languages

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addlanguage	sp_HELPLANGUAGE	sp_SetLangAlias
sp_checknames	sp_helpsort	
sp_droplanguage	sp_indsuspect	

## System procedures used for device management

These system procedures are used for:

- Adding, dropping, and reporting on database and dump devices
- Adding, dropping, and extending database segments

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addsegment	sp_dropsegment	sp_HELPSEGMENT
sp_adddumpdevice	sp_extendsegment	sp_logdevice
sp_diskdefault	sp_helpdevice	sp_logiosize
sp_dropdevice	sp_helplog	sp_placeobject

## **System procedures used for backup and recovery**

These system procedures are used for:

- Creating and managing thresholds
- Displaying and setting recovery isolation mode
- Communicating with Backup Server™

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addthreshold	sp_helpthreshold	sp_setsuspect_granularity
sp_droptreshold	sp_listsuspect_db	sp_setsuspect_threshold
sp_forceonline_db	sp_listsuspect_page	sp_thresholdaction
sp_forceonline_page	sp_modifythreshold	sp_volchanged

## **System procedures used for configuration and tuning**

These system procedures are used for:

- Changing and reporting on configuration parameters
- Reporting on system usage
- Reporting performance behavior
- Monitoring Adaptive Server activity

The procedures in this category are:

sp_clearstats	sp_monitor
sp_configure	sp_monitorconfig
sp_countmetadata	sp_reportstats
sp_displaylevel	sp_showplan
sp_helpconfig	sp_sysmon

## **System procedures used for system administration**

These system procedures are used for:

- Reporting on locks and the users currently running processes
- Altering the lock promotion thresholds of a table or database
- Creating and reporting on resource limits and time ranges
- Creating and reporting on execution classes and engine groups
- Planning the layout of the dbccdb database

The procedures in this category are:

sp_addengine	sp_drop_resource_limit	sp_setpsexec
sp_addexeclass	sp_drop_time_range	sp_showcontrolinfo
sp_add_resource_limit	sp_familylock	sp_showexeclass
sp_add_time_range	sp_help_resource_limit	sp_showpsexec
sp_bindexeclass	sp_lock	sp_unbindexeclass
sp_clearpsexec	sp_modify_resource_limit	sp_setpsexec
sp_dropexeclass	sp_modify_time_range	sp_who
sp_dropengine	sp_setpglockpromote	
sp_droppglockpromote	sp_plan_dbccdb	

See the *System Administration Guide* for more information about the system procedures that accomplish these administrative tasks.

## System procedures for upgrade

These system procedures are used for:

- Checking for reserved words
- Remapping objects
- Checking the query processing mode of an object

The procedures in this category are:

sp_checkreswords	sp_remap	sp_procqmode
------------------	----------	--------------

## Other Sybase-supplied procedures

Sybase provides catalog stored procedures, system extended stored procedures (system ESPs) and dbcc procedures.

## Catalog stored procedures

Catalog stored procedures are system procedures which retrieve information from the system tables in tabular form. The catalog stored procedures are:

sp_column_privileges	sp_pkeys	sp_stored_procedures
sp_columns	sp_server_info	sp_table_privileges
sp_databases	sp_special_columns	sp_tables

sp_datatype_info	sp_sproc_columns
sp_fkeys	sp_statistics

## System extended stored procedures

Extended stored procedures (ESPs) call procedural language functions from Adaptive Server. The system extended stored procedures, created by installmaster at installation, are located in the sysbsystemprocs database and are owned by the System Administrator. They can be run from any database and their names begin with “xp\_”. The system extended stored procedures are:

xp_cmdshell	xp_findnextmsg	xp_sendmai
xp_deletemail	xp_logevent	xp_startmai
xp_enumgroups	xp_readmail	xp_stopmai

See Chapter 15, “Using Extended Stored Procedures,” for more information on creating and using ESPs.

## dbcc procedures

The dbcc procedures, created by *installdbccdb*, are stored procedures for generating reports on information created by dbcc checkstorage. These procedures reside in the dbccdb database or in the alternate database, dbccalt. The dbcc procedures are:

sp_dbcc.Alterws	sp_dbcc_differentialreport	sp_dbcc_statisticsreport
sp_dbcc_configreport	sp_dbcc_evaluatedb	sp_dbcc_summaryreport
sp_dbcc_createws	sp_dbcc_faultreport	sp_dbcc_updateconfig
sp_dbcc_deletedb	sp_dbcc_fullreport	
sp_dbcc_deletehistory	sp_dbcc_rncheck	

# Getting information about stored procedures

Several system procedures provide information from the system tables about stored procedures.

System procedures are briefly discussed in “System procedures” on page 514. For complete information about system procedures, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Getting a report with `sp_help`

You can get a report on a stored procedure using `sp_help`. For example, you can get information on the stored procedure `byroyalty`, which is part of the `pubs2` database, like this:

```
sp_help byroyalty

Name          Owner      type
-----
byroyalty     dbo        stored procedure

Data_located_on_segment      When_created
-----
not applicable               Jul 10, 1997 4:57PM

Parameter_name  Type      Length   Prec  Scale
Param_order
-----
-----
@percentage    int       4        NULL   NULL      1

(return status = 0)
```

You can get help on a system procedure by executing `sp_help` when using the `sybsystemprocs` database.

## Viewing the source text of a procedure with `sp_helptext`

To display the source text of the create procedure statement, execute `sp_helptext`:

```
sp_helptext byroyalty
# Lines of Text
-----
1

(1 row affected)

text
-----
create procedure byroyalty @percentage int
as
select au_id from titleauthor
where titleauthor.royaltyper = @percentage
```

```
(1 row affected, return status = 0)
```

You can view the source text of a system procedure by executing `sp_helptext` when using the `sybsystemprocs` database.

If the source text of a stored procedure was encrypted using `sp_hidetext`, Adaptive Server displays a message advising you that the text is hidden. For information about hiding source text, see `sp_hidetext` in the *Reference Manual*.

## Identifying dependent objects with `sp_depends`

`sp_depends` lists all the stored procedures that reference the object you specify or all the procedures that it is dependent upon.

For example, this command lists all the objects referenced by the user-created stored procedure `byroyalty`:

```
sp_depends byroyalty
Things the object references in the current
database.
object      type      updated      selected
-----
dbo.titleauthor  user table  no          no
(return status = 0)
```

The following statement uses `sp_depends` to list all the objects that reference the table `titleauthor`:

```
sp_depends titleauthor
Things inside the current database that reference
the object.
object      type
-----
dbo.byroyalty  stored procedure
dbo.titleview  view
(return status = 0)
```

You must drop and re-create the procedure if any of its referenced objects have been renamed.

## Identifying permissions with *sp\_helpprotect*

*sp\_helpprotect* reports permissions on a stored procedure (or any other database object). For example:

```
sp_helpprotect byroyalty
grantor      grantee      type    action      object      column      grantable
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
dbo          public       Grant   Execute   byroyalty  All        FALSE
(return status = 0)
```



# Using Extended Stored Procedures

**Extended stored procedures** (ESPs) provide a mechanism for calling external procedural language functions from within Adaptive Server. Users invoke ESPs using the same syntax as they use for stored procedures. The difference is that an ESP executes procedural language code rather than Transact-SQL statements.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
Overview	527
Creating functions for ESPs	533
Registering ESPs	544
Removing ESPs	546
Executing ESPs	546
System ESPs	547
Getting information about ESPs	548
ESP exceptions and messages	549
Starting XP Server manually	549

## Overview

Extended stored procedures provide a way to dynamically load and execute external procedural language functions from within Adaptive Server. Each ESP is associated with a corresponding function, which is executed when the ESP is invoked from Adaptive Server.

An ESP allows Adaptive Server to perform a task outside Adaptive Server in response to an event occurring within Adaptive Server. For example, you could create an ESP function to sell a security (a task performed outside Adaptive Server). This function is invoked in response to a trigger that is fired when the price of the security reaches a certain value. Or you could create an ESP function that sends an e-mail notification or a network-wide broadcast in response to an event occurring within the relational database system.

For the purposes of ESPs, “a procedural language” is a programming language that is capable of calling a C language function and manipulating C language datatypes.

After a function has been registered in a database as an ESP, it can be invoked just like a stored procedure from isql, from a trigger, from another stored procedure, or from a client application.

ESPs can:

- Take input parameters
- Return a status value indicating success or failure and the reason for the failure
- Return values of output parameters
- Return result sets

Adaptive Server supplies some system ESPs. For example, one system ESP, `xp_cmdshell`, executes an operating system command from within Adaptive Server. You can also write your own ESPs using a subset of the Open Server application programming interface (API).

## **XP Server**

Extended stored procedures are implemented by an Open Server application called XP Server, which runs on the same machine as Adaptive Server. Adaptive Server and XP Server communicate through remote procedure calls (RPCs). Running ESPs in a separate process protects Adaptive Server from a failure resulting from faulty ESP code. The advantage of using ESPs instead of RPCs is that the ESP runs in Adaptive Server the same way a stored procedure runs; you do not need to have Open Server to run the ESP.

XP Server is automatically installed when Adaptive Server is installed.

XP Server must be running for Adaptive Server to execute an ESP. Adaptive Server starts XP Server the first time an ESP is invoked and shuts down XP Server when Adaptive Server itself exits.

On Windows NT, if the start mail session configuration parameter is set to 1, XP Server automatically starts when Adaptive Server starts.

## Dynamic Link Library Support

The procedural functions that contain the ESP code are compiled and linked into dynamic link libraries (DLLs), which are loaded into XP Server memory in response to an ESP execution request. The library remains loaded unless one of the following occurs:

- XP Server exits
- The `sp_freedll` system procedure is invoked
- The `esp unload dll` configuration parameter is set using `sp_configure`

## Open Server API

Adaptive Server uses the Open Server API, which allows users to run the system ESPs provided with Adaptive Server. Users can also implement their own ESPs using the Open Server API.

Table 15-1 lists the Open Server routines required for ESP development. For complete documentation of these routines, see the *Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual*.

**Table 15-1: Open Server routines for ESP support**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<code>srv_bind</code>	Describes and binds a program variable to a parameter.
<code>srv_descfmt</code>	Describes a parameter.
<code>srv_numparams</code>	Returns the number of parameters in the ESP client request.
<code>srv_senddone</code>	Sends results completion message.
<code>srv_sendinfo</code>	Sends messages.
<code>srv_sendstatus</code>	Sends status value.
<code>srv_xferdata</code>	Sends and receives parameters or data.
<code>srv_yield</code>	Suspends execution of the current thread and allows another thread to execute.

## Example of creating and using ESPs

After an ESP function has been written, compiled, and linked into a DLL, you can create an ESP for the function using the `as external name` clause of the `create procedure` command:

```
create procedure procedure_name [parameter_list]
    as external name dll_name
```

*procedure\_name* is the name of the ESP, which must be the same as the name of its implementing function in the DLL. ESPs are database objects, and their names must follow the rules for identifiers.

*dll\_name* is the name of the DLL in which the implementing function is stored.

The following statement creates an ESP named `getmsgs`, which is in `msgs.dll`. The `getmsgs` ESP takes no parameters. This example is for a Windows NT Adaptive Server:

```
create procedure getmsgs
    as external name "msgs.dll"
```

On a Solaris Adaptive Server, the statement is:

```
create procedure getmsgs
    as external name "msgs.so"
```

This reflects the Solaris naming conventions.

The next statement creates an ESP named getonemsg, which is also in *msgs.dll*. The getonemsg ESP takes a message number as a single parameter.

```
create procedure getonemsg @msg int
as external name "msgs.dll"
```

The platform-specific naming conventions for the DLL extension are summarized in Table 15-2.

**Table 15-2: Naming conventions for DLL extensions**

Platform	DLL extension
Digital UNIX	.so
HP 9000/800 HP-UX	.sl
Sun Solaris	.so
Windows NT	.dll

When Adaptive Server creates an ESP, it stores the procedure's name in the sysobjects system table, with an object type of "XP" and the name of the DLL containing the ESP's function in the text column of the syscomments system table.

Execute an ESP as if it were a user-defined stored procedure or system procedure. You can use the keyword execute and the name of the stored procedure, or just give the procedure's name, as long as it is submitted to Adaptive Server by itself or is the first statement in a batch. For example, you can execute getmsgs in any of these ways:

```
getmsgs
execute getmsgs
exec getmsgs
```

You can execute getonemsg in any of these ways:

```
getonemsg 20
getonemsg @msg=20
execute getonemsg 20
execute getonemsg @msg=20
exec getonemsg 20
exec getonemsg @msg=20
```

## ESPs and Permissions

You can grant and revoke permissions on an ESP as you would on a regular stored procedure.

In addition to the normal Adaptive Server security, you can use the `xp_cmdshell` context configuration parameter to restrict execution permission of `xp_cmdshell` to users who have system administration privileges. Use this configuration parameter to prevent ordinary users from using `xp_cmdshell` to execute operating system commands that they would not have permission to execute directly from the command line. The behavior of the `xp_cmdshell` configuration parameter is platform-specific.

By default, a user must have the `sa_role` to execute `xp_cmdshell`. To grant permission to other users to use `xp_cmdshell`, use the `grant` command. You can revoke the permission with `revoke`. The `grant` or `revoke` permission is applicable whether `xp_cmdshell` context is set to 0 or 1.

## **ESPs and Performance**

Since both Adaptive Server and XP Server reside on the same machine, they can affect each other's performance when XP Server is executing a function that consumes significant resources.

You can use `sp_configure` to set two parameters, `esp execution priority` and `esp unload dll`, to control the impact of XP Server on Adaptive Server by setting priorities for ESP execution and by freeing XP Server memory.

## **Setting Priority**

Use `esp execution priority` to set the priority of the XP Server thread high, so the Open Server scheduler runs it before other threads on its run queue, or low, so the scheduler runs XP Server only when there are no other threads to run. The default value of `esp execution priority` is 8, but you can set it anywhere from 0 to 15. See the discussion of multithread programming in the *Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual* for information about scheduling Open Server threads.

## **Freeing Memory**

You can minimize the amount of memory XP Server uses by unloading a DLL from XP Server memory after the ESP request that loaded it terminates. To do so, set `esp unload dll` so that the DLLs are automatically unloaded when ESP execution finishes. If `esp unload dll` is not set, you can free DLLs explicitly by using `sp_freedll`.

You cannot unload DLLs that support system ESPs.

## Creating functions for ESPs

There are no restrictions on the contents of a function that implements an ESP. The only requirement is that it be written in a procedural programming language capable of:

- Calling a C language function
- Manipulating C language datatypes
- Linking with the Open Server API

By using the Open Client API, an ESP function can send requests to Adaptive Server, either to the one from which it was originally invoked or to another one.

An exception is that an ESP function should not call a C run-time signal routine on Windows NT. This can cause XP Server to fail, because Open Server does not support signal handling on Windows NT.

## Files for ESP Development

The header files needed for ESP development are in `$SYBASE/OCS-12_0/include`. To find these files in your source files, include the following in the source code:

- `ospublish.h`
- `oserror.h`

The Open Server library is in `$SYBASE/lib`.

The source for the sample program shown in “ESP function example” on page 535 is in `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASE/sample/esp`.

## Open Server data structures

Three data structures are useful for writing ESP functions:

- `SRV_PROC`

- CS\_SERVERMSG
- CS\_DATAFMT

## **SRV\_PROC**

All ESP functions are coded to accept a single parameter, a pointer to a SRV\_PROC structure. The SRV\_PROC structure passes information between the function and its calling process. ESP developers cannot manipulate this structure directly.

The ESP function passes the SRV\_PROC pointer to Open Server routines that get parameter types and data and return output parameters, status codes, and result sets.

## **CS\_SERVERMSG**

Open Server uses the CS\_SERVERMSG structure to send error messages to a client using the *srv\_sendinfo* routine. See the *Open Server-Library/C Reference Manual* for information about CS\_SERVERMSG.

## **CS\_DATAFMT**

Open Server uses the CS\_DATAFMT structure to describe data values and program variables.

## **Open Server return codes**

Open Server functions return a code of type CS RETCODE. The most common CS RETCODE values for ESP functions are:

- CS\_SUCCEED
- CS\_FAIL

## **Outline of a simple ESP function**

An ESP function should have the following basic structure with regard to its interaction with the Open Server API:

- 1 Get the number of parameters.

- 2 Get the values of the input/output parameters and bind them to local variables.
- 3 Perform the processing using the input parameter values and store the results in local variables.
- 4 Initialize any output parameters with appropriate values, bind them with local variables, and transfer them to the client.
- 5 Use `srv_sendinfo()` to send the returned row to the client.
- 6 Use `srv_sendstatus()` to send the status to the client.
- 7 Use `srv_senddone()` to inform the client that the processing is done.
- 8 If there is an error condition, use `srv_sendinfo()` to send the error message to the client.

See the *Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual* for documentation of the Open Server routines.

## Multithreading

Since Open Server is currently non-preemptive, all ESPs running on the same server must yield to one another, using the Open Server `srv_yield()` routine to suspend their XP Server thread and allow another thread to execute.

See the chapter on Multithread Programming in the *Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual* for more information.

## ESP function example

`xp_echo.c` has an ESP that accepts a user-supplied input parameter and echoes it to the ESP client, which is the process invoking the ESP. This example includes the `xp_message` function, which sends messages and status, and the `xp_echo` function which processes the input parameter and performs the echoing. You can use this example as a template for building your own ESP functions. The source is in `$SYBASE/$SYBASE_ASE/sample/esp`.

```
/*
** xp_echo.c
**
** Description:
**             The following sample program is generic in
```

```
**          nature. It echoes an input string which is
**          passed as the first parameter to the xp_echo
**          ESP. This string is retrieved into a buffer
**          and then sent back (echoed) to the ESP client.
*/
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <malloc.h>
/* Required Open Server include files.*/
#include <osppublic.h>
#include <oserror.h>
/*
** Constant defining the length of the buffer that receives the
** input string. All of the Adaptive Server parameters related
** to ESP may not exceed 255 char long.
*/
#define ECHO_BUF_LEN      255
/*
** Function:
**     xp_message
**     Purpose: Sends information, status and completion of the
**              command to the server.
** Input:
**     SRV_PROC *
**     char *  a message string.
** Output:
**     void
*/
void xp_message
(
    SRV_PROC *srvproc, /* Pointer to Open Server thread
                        control structure */
    char      *message_string /* Input message string */
)
{
    /*
    ** Declare a variable that will contain information
    ** about the message being sent to the SQL client.
    */
    CS_SERVERMSG      *errmsgp;
    /*
    ** Allocate memory for this variable.
    */
    errmsgp = (CS_SERVERMSG *) malloc((CS_INT
        sizeof(CS_SERVERMSG));
    if (errmsgp == NULL)
```

```

        return;
    /*
     * clean the structure */
    /*
     ** Put you rnumber in as the message number.
    */
    errmsgp->msgnumber = 25000;
    errmsgp->state = 0;
    /*
     **The message is fatal.
    */
    errmsgp->severity = SRV_FATAL_SERVER;
    /*
     ** Let's copy the string over.
    */
    errmsgp->textlen = strlen(message_string);
    if (errmsgp->textlen >= CS_MAX_MSG )
        return;
    strncpy(errmsgp->text, message_string, errmsgp->textlen);
    errmsgp->status = (CS_FIRST_CHUNK | CS_LAST_CHUNK);
    srv_sendinfo(srvproc, errmsgp, CS_TRAN_UNDEFINED);
    /* Send the status to the client. */
    srv_sendstatus(srvproc, 1);
    /*
     ** A SRV_DONE_MORE instead of a SRV_DONE_FINAL must
     ** complete the result set of an Extended Stored
     ** Procedure.
    */
    srv_senddone(srvproc, SRV_DONE_MORE, 0, 0);
    free(errmsgp);
}

/*
** Function: xp_echo
** Purpose:
**     Given an input string, this string is echoed as an output
**     string to the corresponding SQL (ESP) client.
** Input:
**     SRV_PROC *
** Output
**     SUCCESS or FAILURE
*/
CS RETCODE xp_echo
(
    SRV_PROC      *srvproc

```

```
)  
{  
    CS_INT          paramnum; /* number of parameters */  
    CS_CHAR         echo_str_buf[ECHO_BUF_LEN + 1];  
                    /* buffer to hold input string */  
    CS_RETCODE      result = CS_SUCCEED;  
    CS_DATAFMT     paramfmt; /* input/output param format */  
    CS_INT          len;      /* Length of input param */  
    CS_SMALLINT    outlen;  
/*  
** Get number of input parameters.*/  
*/  
    srv_numparams(srvproc, &paramnum);  
/*  
** Only one parameter is expected.*/  
*/  
    if (paramnum != 1)  
    {  
        /*  
        ** Send a usage error message.*/  
        */  
        xp_message(srvproc, "Invalid number of  
                    parameters");  
        result = CS_FAIL;  
    }  
    else  
    {  
        /*  
        ** Perform initializations.  
        */  
        outlen = CS_GOODDATA;  
        memset(&paramfmt, (CS_INT)0,  
               (CS_INT)sizeof(CS_DATAFMT));  
        /*  
        ** We are receiving data through an ESP as the  
        ** first parameter. So describe this expected  
        ** parameter.  
        */  
        if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&  
            srv_descfmt(srvproc, CS_GET  
                        SRV_RPCDATA, 1, &paramfmt) != CS_SUCCEED)  
        {  
            result = CS_FAIL;  
        }  
        /*  
        ** Describe and bind the buffer to receive the
```

```
    ** parameter.  
*/  
if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&  
    (srv_bind(srvproc, CS_GET, SRV_RPCDATA,  
              1, &paramfmt,(CS_BYTE *) echo_str_buf,  
              &len, &outlen) != CS_SUCCEED))  
{  
    result = CS_FAIL;  
}  
/* Receive the expected data.*/  
if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&  
    srv_xferdata(srvproc,CS_GET,SRV_RPCDATA)  
    != CS_SUCCEED)  
{  
    result = CS_FAIL;  
}  
/*  
** Now we have the input info and are ready to  
** send the output info.  
*/  
if (result == CS_SUCCEED)  
{  
    /*  
     ** Perform initialization.  
    */  
    if (len == 0)  
        outlen = CS_NULLDATA;  
    else  
        outlen = CS_GOODDATA;  
    memset(&paramfmt, (CS_INT)0,  
           (CS_INT)sizeof(CS_DATAFMT));  
    strcpy(paramfmt.name, "xp_echo");  
    paramfmt.namelen = CS_NULLTERM;  
    paramfmt.datatype = CS_CHAR_TYPE;  
    paramfmt.format = CS_FMT_NULLTERM;  
    paramfmt maxlen = ECHO_BUF_LEN;  
    paramfmt.locale = (CS_LOCALE *) NULL;  
    paramfmt.status |= CS_CANBENULL;  
    /*  
     ** Describe the data being sent.  
    */  
    if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&  
        srv_descfmt(srvproc, CS_SET,  
                    SRV_ROWDATA, 1, &paramfmt)  
        != CS_SUCCEED)  
{
```

```
        result = CS_FAIL;
    }
/*
** Describe and bind the buffer that
** contains the data to be sent.
*/
if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&
    (srv_bind(srvproc, CS_SET,
              SRV_ROWDATA, 1,
              &paramfmt, (CS_BYT* )
              echo_str_buf, &len, &outlen)
     != CS_SUCCEED))
{
    result = CS_FAIL;
}
/*
** Send the actual data.
*/
if ((result == CS_SUCCEED) &&
    srv_xferdata(srvproc, CS_SET,
                  SRV_ROWDATA)!= CS_SUCCEED)
{
    result = CS_FAIL;
}
/*
** Indicate to the ESP client how the
** transaction was performed.
*/
if (result == CS_FAIL)
    srv_sendstatus(srvproc, 1);
else
    srv_sendstatus(srvproc, 0);
/*
** Send a count of the number of rows sent to
** the client.
*/
srv_senddone(srvproc,(SRV_DONE_COUNT |
                     SRV_DONE_MORE), 0, 1);
}
return result;
}
```

## Building the DLL

You can use any compiler that can produce the required DLL on your server platform.

For general information about compiling and linking a function that uses the Open Server API, see the *Open Client/Server Supplement*.

## Search order for DLLs

Windows NT searches for a DLL in the following order:

- 1 The directory from which the application was invoked
- 2 The current directory
- 3 The system directory (SYSTEM32)
- 4 Directories listed in the PATH environment variable

UNIX searches for the library in the directories listed in the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable (on Solaris and Digital UNIX) or SH\_LIBRARY\_PATH (on HP) in the order in which they are listed.

If XP Server does not find the library for an ESP function in the search path, it attempts to load it from \$SYBASE/DLL on Windows NT or \$SYBASE/lib on other platforms.

Absolute path names for the DLL are not supported.

## Sample makefile (UNIX)

The following makefile, *make.unix*, was used to create the dynamically linked shared library for the *xp\_echo* program on UNIX platforms. It generates a file named *examples.so* on Solaris and Digital UNIX and *examples.sl* on HP. The source is in \$SYBASE/\$SYBASE\_ASE/sample/esp, so you can modify it for your own use.

To build the example library using this makefile, enter:

```
make /f make.unix
#
# This makefile creates a shared library.  It needs the open
# server header
# files usually installed in $SYBASE/include directory.
# This make file can be used for generating the template ESPs.
# It references the following macros:
```

```
#  
# PROGRAM is the name of the shared library you may want to create.  
PROGRAM      = example.so  
BINARY       = $(PROGRAM)  
EXAMPLEDLL   = $(PROGRAM)  
  
# Include path where ospublic.h etc reside. You may have them in  
# the standard places like /usr/lib etc.  
  
INCLUDEPATH   = $(SYBASE)/include  
  
# Place where the shared library will be generated.  
DLLDIR       = .  
  
RM           = /usr/bin/rm  
ECHO         = echo  
MODE         = normal  
  
# Directory where the source code is kept.  
SRCDIR       = .  
  
# Where the objects will be generated.  
OBJECTDIR    = .  
  
OBJS         = xp_echo.o  
  
CFLAGS        = -I$(INCLUDEPATH)  
LDFLAGS       = $(GLDFLAGS) -Bdynamic  
  
DLLDFLAGS    = -dy -G  
  
#=====  
$(EXAMPLEDLL) : $(OBJS)  
  -@$ (RM) -f $(DLLDIR)/$(EXAMPLEDLL)  
  -@$ (ECHO) "Loading $(EXAMPLEDLL)"  
  -@$ (ECHO) "  
  -@$ (ECHO) "      MODE:          $(MODE) "  
  -@$ (ECHO) "      OBJS:          $(OBJS) "  
  -@$ (ECHO) "      DEBUGOBJS:     $(DEBUGOBJS) "  
  -@$ (ECHO) "  
  
  cd $(OBJECTDIR); \  
  ld -o $(DLLDIR)/$(EXAMPLEDLL) $(DEBUGOBJS) $(DLLDFLAGS) $(OBJS)  
  -@$ (ECHO) "$(EXAMPLEDLL) done"  
  exit 0
```

```
=====
$(OBJS) : $(SRCDIR)/xp_echo.c
cd $(SRCDIR); \
$(CC) $(CFLAGS) -o $(OBJECTDIR)/$(OBJS) -c xp_echo.c
```

## Sample makefile (Windows NT)

The following makefile, *xp\_echo.mak*, was used to create the DLL for the *xp\_echo* program on Windows NT using Microsoft Visual C++. It generates a file named *xp\_echo.dll*. The source for the makefile is in *\$SYBASE%\SYBASE\_ASE%\sample\esp*, so you can modify it for your own use.

To build the example DLL using this makefile, enter:

```
nmake -f xp_echo.mak
# Nmake macros for building Windows 32-Bit apps
!include <ntwin32.mak>
all: xp_echo.dll

# Update the object file if necessary
xp_echo.obj: xp_echo.c
    $(cc) $(cflags) $(cvars) $(cdebug) xp_echo.c

# Update the xp_echo.dll if necessary
xp_echo.dll: xp_echo.obj
    $(link) $(linkdebug) -def:xp_echo.def -out:xp_echo.dll \
        xp_echo.obj shell32.lib libsrv.lib
```

## Sample definitions file

The following file, *xp\_echo.def*, must be in the same directory as *xp\_echo.mak*. It lists every function to be used as an ESP function in the EXPORTS section.

```
LIBRARY      examples

CODE         PRELOAD MOVEABLE DISCARDABLE
DATA         PRELOAD SINGLE

EXPORTS
    xp_echo .    1
```

# Registering ESPs

Once you have created an ESP function and linked it into a DLL, register it as an ESP in a database. This lets the user execute the function as an ESP.

Use either of these methods to register an ESP:

- The Transact-SQL `create procedure` command
- The `sp_addextendedproc` system procedure

## Using `create procedure`

The `create procedure` syntax for creating an ESP is compatible with proposed ANSI SQL3 syntax:

```
create procedure [owner.]procedure_name  
[([@parameter_name datatype [= default]] [output]  
[, @parameter_name datatype [= default]  
[output]]...[])] [with recompile]  
as external name dll_name
```

The *procedure\_name* is the name of the ESP as it is known in the database. It must be the same as the name of its supporting function.

The parameter declarations are the same as for stored procedures, as described in Chapter 14, “Using Stored Procedures.”

Adaptive Server ignores the `with recompile` clause if it is included in a `create procedure` command used to create an ESP.

The *dll\_name* is the name of the library containing the ESP’s supporting function.

The *dll\_name* can be specified as a name with no extension (for example, *msgs*) or a name with a platform-specific extension, such as *msgs.dll* on Windows NT or *msgs.so* on Solaris.

In either case, the platform-specific extension is assumed to be part of the library’s actual file name.

Since `create procedure` registers an ESP in a specific database, you should specify the database in which you are registering the ESP before invoking the command. From `isql`, specify the database with the `use database` command, if you are not already working in the target database.

The following statements register an ESP supported by the `xp_echo` routine described in the example in “ESP function example” on page 535, assuming that the function is compiled in a DLL named `examples.dll`. The ESP is registered in the `pubs2` database.

```
use pubs2
create procedure xp_echo @in varchar(255)
as external name "examples.dll"
```

See `create procedure` in the *Reference Manual* for more information.

## Using `sp_addextendedproc`

`sp_addextendedproc` is compatible with the syntax used by Microsoft SQL Server. You can use it as an alternative to `create procedure`. The syntax is:

```
sp_addextendedproc esp_name, dll_name
```

*esp\_name* is the name of the ESP. It must match the name of the function that supports the ESP.

*dll\_name* is the name of the DLL containing the ESP’s supporting function.

The `sp_addextendedproc` must be executed in the master database by a user who has the `sa_role`. Therefore, `sp_addextendedproc` always registers the ESP in the master database, unlike `create procedure`, which registers the ESP in the current database. Unlike `create procedure`, `sp_addextendedproc` does not allow for parameter checking in Adaptive Server or for default values for parameters.

The following statements register in the master database an ESP supported by the `xp_echo` routine described in the example in “ESP function example” on page 535, assuming that the function is compiled in a DLL named `examples.dll`:

```
use master
sp_addextendedproc "xp_echo", "examples.dll"
```

See the *Reference Manual* for a complete description of the `sp_addextendedproc` command.

## Removing ESPs

You can remove an ESP from the database using either drop procedure or `sp_dropextendedproc`.

The syntax for drop procedure is the same as for stored procedures:

```
drop procedure [owner.]procedure_name
```

The following command drops `xp_echo`:

```
drop procedure xp_echo
```

The syntax for `sp_dropextendedproc` is:

```
sp_dropextendedproc esp_name
```

For example:

```
sp_dropextendedproc xp_echo
```

Both methods drop the ESP from the database by removing references to it in the `sysobjects` and `syscomments` system tables. They have no effect on the underlying DLL.

## Renaming ESPs

Because an ESP name is bound to the name of its function, you cannot rename an ESP using `sp_rename`, as you can with a stored procedure. To change the name of an ESP:

- 1 Remove the ESP with drop procedure or `sp_dropextendedproc`.
- 2 Rename and recompile the supporting function.
- 3 Re-create the ESP with the new name using `create procedure` or `sp_addextendedproc`.

## Executing ESPs

Execute an ESP using the same `execute` command that you use to execute a regular stored procedure. See “Creating and executing stored procedures” on page 489 for syntax and other information about executing stored procedures.

You can also execute an ESP remotely. See “Executing procedures remotely” on page 502 for information about executing remote stored procedures.

Because the execution of any ESP involves a remote procedure call between Adaptive Server and XP Server, you cannot combine parameters by name and parameters by value in the same `execute` command. All the parameters must be passed by name, or all must be passed by value. This is the only way in which the execution of extended stored procedures differs from that of regular stored procedures.

ESPs can return:

- A status value indicating success or failure, and the reason for failure
- Values of output parameters
- Result sets

An ESP function reports the return status value with the `srv_sendstatus` Open Server routines. The return status values from `srv_sendstatus` are application-specific. However, a status of zero indicates that the request completed normally.

An ESP function returns the values of output parameters and result sets using the `srv_descfmt`, `srv_bind`, and `srv_xferdata` Open Server routine. See the “ESP function example” on page 535 and the *Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual* for more information about passing values from an ESP function. From the Adaptive Server side, returned values from an ESP are handled as they are for a regular stored procedure.

## System ESPs

In addition to `xp_cmdshell`, there are several system ESPs that support Windows NT features, such as the integration of Adaptive Server with the Windows NT Event Log or Mail System.

The names of all system ESPs begin with “`xp_`”. They are created in the `sybsystemprocs` database during Adaptive Server installation. Since system ESPs are located in the `sybsystemprocs` database, their permissions are set there. However, you can run system ESPs from any database. The system ESPs are:

- `xp_cmdshell`

- xp\_deletemail
- xp\_enumgroups
- xp\_findnextmsg
- xp\_logevent
- xp\_readmail
- xp\_sendmail
- xp\_startmail
- xp\_stopmail

See the *Reference Manual* for documentation of the system ESPs. In addition, *Configuring Adaptive Server for Windows NT* discusses some NT-specific features in more detail, such as MAPI and NT Event Log integration, which you implement using the NT-specific system ESPs.

## Getting information about ESPs

Use `sp_helpextendedproc` to get information about ESPs registered in the current database.

With no parameters, `sp_helpextendedproc` displays all the ESPs in the database, with the names of the DLLs containing their associated functions. With an ESP name as a parameter, it provides this information only for the specified ESP.

```
sp_helpextendedproc getmsgs
ESP Name      DLL
-----  -----
getmsgs      msgs.dll
```

Since the system ESPs are in the `sybsystemprocs` database, you must be using the `sybsystemprocs` database to display their names and DLLs:

```
use sybsystemprocs
sp_helpextendedproc
ESP Name      DLL
-----  -----
xp_freedll    sybyesp
xp_cmdshell   sybyesp
```

If the source text of an ESP was encrypted using `sp_hidetext`, Adaptive Server displays a message advising you that the text is hidden. For information about hiding source text, see `sp_hidetext` in the *Reference Manual*.

## ESP exceptions and messages

Adaptive Server handles all messages and exceptions from XP Server. It logs standard ESP messages in the log file in addition to sending them to the client. User-defined messages from user-defined ESPs are not logged, but they are sent to the client.

ESP-related messages may be generated by XP Server, by a system procedure that creates or manipulates ESPs, or by a system ESP. See the *Troubleshooting and Error Messages Guide* for the list of ESP-related messages.

A function for a user-defined ESP can generate a message using the `srv_sendinfo` Open Server routine. See the sample `xp_message` function in the “ESP function example” on page 535.

## Starting XP Server manually

Normally, there is no reason for a user to start XP Server manually, since Adaptive Server starts it when it receives the first ESP request of the session. However, if you are creating and debugging your own ESPs, you may find it necessary to start XP Server manually from the command line using the `xpserver` utility. See the the Utility Programs manual for your platform for the syntax of `xpserver`.



# Triggers: Enforcing Referential Integrity

This chapter discusses triggers, including:

Topic	Page
How triggers work	551
Creating triggers	553
Using triggers to maintain referential integrity	556
Multirow considerations	568
Rolling back triggers	572
Nesting triggers	574
Rules associated with triggers	577
Disabling triggers	581
Dropping triggers	582
Getting information about triggers	582

## How triggers work

A **trigger** is a stored procedure that goes into effect when you insert, delete, or update data in a table. You can use triggers to perform a number of automatic actions, such as cascading changes through related tables, enforcing column restrictions, comparing the results of data modifications, and maintaining the referential integrity of data across a database.

Triggers are *automatic*. They work no matter what caused the data modification—a clerk’s data entry or an application action. A trigger is specific to one or more of the data modification operations, update, insert, and delete and is executed once for each SQL statement.

For example, to prevent users from removing any publishing companies from the publishers table, you could use this trigger:

```
create trigger del_pub
```

```
on publishers
for delete
as
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "You cannot delete any publishers!"
end
```

The next time someone tries to remove a row from the publishers table, the del\_pub trigger cancels the deletion, rolls back the transaction, and prints a message to that effect.

A trigger “fires” only after the data modification statement has completed and Adaptive Server has checked for any datatype, rule, or integrity constraint violation. The trigger and the statement that fires it are treated as a single transaction that can be rolled back from within the trigger. If Adaptive Server detects a severe error, the entire transaction is rolled back.

Triggers are most useful in these situations:

- Triggers can cascade changes through related tables in the database. For example, a delete trigger on the title\_id column of the titles table can delete matching rows in other tables, using the title\_id column as a unique key to locating rows in titleauthor and roysched.
- Triggers can disallow, or roll back, changes that would violate referential integrity, canceling the attempted data modification transaction. Such a trigger might go into effect when you try to insert a foreign key that does not match its primary key. For example, you could create an insert trigger on titleauthor that rolled back an insert if the new titleauthor.title\_id value did not have a matching value in titles.title\_id.
- Triggers can enforce restrictions that are much more complex than those that are defined with rules. Unlike rules, triggers can reference columns or database objects. For example, a trigger can roll back updates that attempt to increase a book’s price by more than 1 percent of the advance.
- Triggers can perform simple “what if” analyses. For example, a trigger can compare the state of a table before and after a data modification and take action based on that comparison.

## Using triggers vs. integrity constraints

As an alternative to using triggers, you can use the referential integrity constraint of the create table statement to enforce referential integrity across tables in the database. However, referential integrity constraints *cannot*:

- Cascade changes through related tables in the database
- Enforce complex restrictions by referencing other columns or database objects
- Perform “what if” analyses

Also, referential integrity constraints do not roll back the current transaction as a result of enforcing data integrity. With triggers, you can either roll back or continue the transaction, depending on how you handle referential integrity. For information about transactions, see Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

If your application requires one of the above tasks, use a trigger. Otherwise, use a referential integrity constraint to enforce data integrity. Adaptive Server checks referential integrity constraints before it checks triggers so that a data modification statement that violates the constraint does not also fire the trigger. For more information about referential integrity constraints, see Chapter 7, “Creating Databases and Tables.”

## Creating triggers

A trigger is a database object. When you create a trigger, you specify the table and the data modification commands that should “fire” or activate the trigger. Then, you specify the action(s) the trigger is to take.

For example, this trigger prints a message every time anyone tries to insert, delete, or update data in the titles table:

```
create trigger t1
on titles
for insert, update, delete
as
print "Now modify the titleauthor table the same
```

way."

---

**Note** Except for the trigger named deltitle, the triggers discussed in this chapter are not included in the pubs2 database shipped with Adaptive Server. To work with the examples shown in this chapter, create each trigger example by typing in the create trigger statement. Each new trigger for the same operation—insert, update or delete—on a table or column overwrites the previous one without warning, and old triggers are dropped automatically.

---

## **create trigger syntax**

Here is the complete create trigger syntax:

```
create trigger [owner.]trigger_name  
    on [owner.]table_name  
    {for {insert, update, delete}  
        as SQL_statements}
```

Or, using the if update clause:

```
create trigger [owner.]trigger_name  
    on [owner.]table_name  
    for {insert, update}  
        as  
            [if update (column_name )  
                [{and | or} update (column_name)]...]  
                SQL_statements  
            [if update (column_name )  
                [{and | or} update (column_name )]...]  
                SQL_statement ]...
```

The create clause creates and names the trigger. A trigger's name must conform to the rules for identifiers.

The on clause gives the name of the table that activates the trigger. This table is sometimes called the **trigger table**.

A trigger is created in the current database, although it can reference objects in other databases. The owner name that qualifies the trigger name must be the same as the one in the table. Only a table owner can create a trigger on a table. If the table owner is given with the table name in the create trigger clause or the on clause, it must also be specified in the other clause.

The `for` clause specifies which data modification commands on the trigger table activate the trigger. In the earlier example, an insert, update, or delete to `titles` makes the message print.

The SQL statements specify **trigger conditions** and **trigger actions**. Trigger conditions specify additional criteria that determine whether insert, delete, or update causes the trigger actions to be carried out. You can group multiple trigger actions in an if clause with begin and end.

An if update clause tests for an insert or update to a specified column. For updates, the if update clause evaluates to true when the column name is included in the set clause of an update statement, even if the update does not change the value of the column. Do not use the if update clause with delete. You can specify more than one column, and you can use more than one if update clause in a create trigger statement. Since you specify the table name in the on clause, do not use the table name in front of the column name with if update.

## SQL statements that are not allowed in triggers

Since triggers execute as part of a transaction, the following statements are not allowed in a trigger:

- All create commands, including create database, create table, create index, create procedure, create default, create rule, create trigger, and create view
- All drop commands
- alter table and alter database
- truncate table
- grant and revoke
- update statistics
- reconfigure
- load database and load transaction
- disk init, disk mirror, disk refit, disk reinit, disk remirror, disk unmirror
- select into

## Using triggers to maintain referential integrity

Triggers are used to maintain referential integrity, which assures that vital data in your database—such as the unique identifier for a given piece of data—remains accurate and can be used as the database changes.

Referential integrity is coordinated through the use of primary and foreign keys.

The **primary key** is a column or combination of columns whose values uniquely identify a row. The value cannot be null and must have a unique index. A table with a primary key is eligible for joins with foreign keys in other tables. Think of the primary key table as the **master table** in a **master-detail relationship**. There can be many such master-detail groups in a database.

You can use `sp_primarykey` to mark a primary key. This marks the key for use with `sp_helpjoins` and adds it to the `syskeys` table.

For example, the `title_id` column is the primary key of `titles`. It uniquely identifies the books in `titles` and joins with `title_id` in `titleauthor`, `salesdetail`, and `roysched`. The `titles` table is the master table in relation to `titleauthor`, `salesdetail`, and `roysched`.

The “Diagram of the `pubs2` database” on page 699 shows how the `pubs2` tables are related. The “Diagram of the `pubs3` database” on page 733 provides the same information for the `pubs3` database.

The **foreign key** is a column or combination of columns whose values match the primary key. A foreign key does not have to be unique. It is often in a many-to-one relationship to a primary key. Foreign key values should be copies of the primary key values. That means no value in the foreign key should exist unless the same value exists in the primary key. A foreign key may be null; if any part of a composite foreign key is null, the entire foreign key must be null. Tables with foreign keys are often called **detail tables** or **dependent tables** to the master table.

You can use `sp_foreignkey` to mark foreign keys in your database. This flags them for use with `sp_helpjoins` and other procedures that reference the `syskeys` table.

The `title_id` columns in `titleauthor`, `salesdetail`, and `roysched` are foreign keys; the tables are detail tables.

In most cases, you can enforce referential integrity between tables using the referential constraints described under “Specifying referential integrity constraints” on page 256, because the maximum number of references allowed for a single table is 200. If a table exceeds that limit, or has special referential integrity needs, use referential integrity triggers.

Referential integrity triggers keep the values of foreign keys in line with those in primary keys. When a data modification affects a key column, triggers compare the new column values to related keys by using temporary work tables called **trigger test tables**. When you write your triggers, you base your comparisons on the data that is temporarily stored in the trigger test tables.

## Testing data modifications against the trigger test tables

Adaptive Server uses two special tables in trigger statements: the deleted table and the inserted table. These are temporary tables used in trigger tests. When you write triggers, you can use these tables to test the effects of a data modification and to set conditions for trigger actions. You cannot directly alter the data in the trigger test tables, but you can use the tables in select statements to detect the effects of an insert, update, or delete.

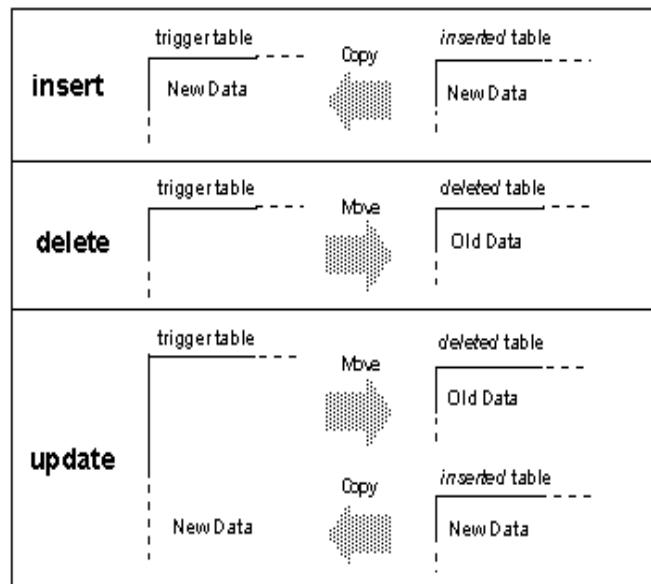
- The deleted table stores copies of the affected rows during delete and update statements. During the execution of a delete or update statement, rows are removed from the trigger table and transferred to the deleted table. The deleted and trigger tables ordinarily have no rows in common.
- The inserted table stores copies of the affected rows during insert and update statements. During an insert or an update, new rows are added to the inserted and trigger tables at the same time. The rows in inserted are copies of the new rows in the trigger table.

The following trigger fragment uses the inserted table to test for changes to the titles table title\_id column:

```
if (select count(*)
     from titles, inserted
     where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id) != @@rowcount
```

An update is, effectively, a delete followed by an insert; the old rows are copied to the deleted table first; then the new rows are copied to the trigger table and to the inserted table. The following illustration shows the condition of the trigger test tables during an insert, a delete, and an update:

**Figure 16-1: Trigger test tables during insert, delete, and update operations**



When setting trigger conditions, use the trigger test tables that are appropriate for the data modification. It is not an error to reference deleted while testing an insert or inserted while testing a delete; however, those trigger test tables will not contain any rows.

---

**Note** A given trigger fires only once per query. If trigger actions depend on the number of rows affected by a data modification, use tests, such as an examination of `@ @rowcount` for multirow data modifications, and take appropriate actions.

---

The following trigger examples accommodate multirow data modifications where necessary. The `@@rowcount` variable, which stores the “number of rows affected” by the most recent data modification operation, tests for a multirow insert, delete, or update. If any other select statement precedes the test on `@@rowcount` within the trigger, use local variables to store the value for later examination. All Transact-SQL statements that do not return values reset `@@rowcount` to 0.

## Insert trigger example

When you insert a new foreign key row, make sure the foreign key matches a primary key. The trigger should check for joins between the inserted rows (using the inserted table) and the rows in the primary key table, and then roll back any inserts of foreign keys that do not match a key in the primary key table.

The following trigger compares the `title_id` values from the inserted table with those from the `titles` table. It assumes that you are making an entry for the foreign key and that you are not inserting a null value. If the join fails, the transaction is rolled back.

```
create trigger forinsertrig1
on salesdetail
for insert
as
if (select count(*)
    from titles, inserted
    where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id) != @@rowcount
/* Cancel the insert and print a message.*/
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "No, the title_id does not exist in
          titles."
end
/* Otherwise, allow it. */
else
    print "Added! All title_id's exist in titles."
```

`@@rowcount` refers to the number of rows added to the salesdetail table. This is also the number of rows added to the inserted table. The trigger joins titles and inserted to determine whether all the title\_ids added to salesdetail exist in the titles table. If the number of joined rows, which is determined by the select count(\*) query, differs from `@@rowcount`, then one or more of the inserts is incorrect, and the transaction is canceled.

This trigger prints one message if the insert is rolled back and another if it is accepted. To test for the first condition, try this insert statement:

```
insert salesdetail  
values ("7066", "234517", "TC9999", 70, 45)
```

To test for the second condition, enter:

```
insert salesdetail  
values ("7896", "234518", "TC3218", 75, 80)
```

## Delete trigger examples

When you delete a primary key row, delete corresponding foreign key rows in dependent tables. This preserves referential integrity by ensuring that detail rows are removed when their master row is deleted. If you do not delete the corresponding rows in the dependent tables, you may end up with a database with detail rows that cannot be retrieved or identified. To properly delete the dependent foreign key rows, use a trigger that performs a cascading delete.

### Cascading delete example

When a delete statement on titles is executed, one or more rows leave the titles table and are added to deleted. A trigger can check the dependent tables—titleauthor, salesdetail, and roysched—to see if they have any rows with a title\_id that matches the title\_ids removed from titles and is now stored in the deleted table. If the trigger finds any such rows, it removes them.

```
create trigger delcascadetrig  
on titles  
for delete  
as  
delete titleauthor  
from titleauthor, deleted  
where titleauthor.title_id = deleted.title_id
```

```
/* Remove titleauthor rows that match deleted
** (titles) rows.*/

delete salesdetail
from salesdetail, deleted
where salesdetail.title_id = deleted.title_id
/* Remove salesdetail rows that match deleted
** (titles) rows.*/
delete roysched
from roysched, deleted
where roysched.title_id = deleted.title_id
/* Remove roysched rows that match deleted
** (titles) rows.*/
```

## Restricted delete examples

In practice, you may want to keep some of the detail rows, either for historical purposes (to check how many sales were made on discontinued titles while they were active) or because transactions on the detail rows are not yet complete. A well-written trigger should take these factors into consideration.

### Preventing primary key deletions

The deltitle trigger supplied with pubs2 prevents the deletion of a primary key if there are any detail rows for that key in the salesdetail table. This trigger preserves the ability to retrieve rows from salesdetail:

```
create trigger deltitle
on titles
for delete
as
if (select count(*)
    from deleted, salesdetail
    where salesdetail.title_id =
        deleted.title_id) > 0
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "You cannot delete a title with sales."
end
```

In this trigger, the row or rows deleted from titles are tested by being joined with the salesdetail table. If a join is found, the transaction is canceled.

Similarly, the following restricted delete prevents deletes if the primary table, titles, has dependent children in titleauthor. Instead of counting the rows from deleted and titleauthor, it checks to see if title\_id was deleted. This method is more efficient for performance reasons because it checks for the existence of a particular row rather than going through the entire table and counting all the rows.

### **Recording errors that occur**

The next example uses raiserror for error message 35003. raiserror sets a system flag to record that the error occurred. Before trying this example, add error message 35003 to the sysusermessages system table:

```
sp_addmessage 35003, "restrict_dtrig - delete
failed: row exists in titleauthor for this
title_id."
```

The trigger is:

```
create trigger restrict_dtrig
on titles
for delete as
if exists (select * from titleauthor, deleted where
           titleauthor.title_id = deleted.title_id)
begin
    rollback transaction
    raiserror 35003
    return
end
```

To test this trigger, try this delete statement:

```
delete titles
where title_id = "PS2091"
```

## **Update trigger examples**

The following example cascades an update from the primary table titles to the dependent tables titleauthor and roysched.

```
create trigger cascade_utrig
on titles
for update as
if update(title_id)
begin
    update titleauthor
```

```
        set title_id = inserted.title_id
        from titleauthor, deleted, inserted
        where deleted.title_id =
titleauthor.title_id
        update roysched
        set title_id = inserted.title_id
        from roysched, deleted, inserted
        where deleted.title_id = roysched.title_id
update salesdetail
        set title_id = inserted.title_id
        from salesdetail, deleted, inserted
        where deleted.title_id =
salesdetail.title_id
end
```

To test this trigger, suppose that the book *Secrets of Silicon Valley* was reclassified to a psychology book from popular\_comp. The following query updates the title\_id PC8888 to PS8888 in titleauthor, roysched, and titles.

```
update titles
set title_id = "PS8888"
where title_id = "PC8888"
```

## Restricted update triggers

A primary key is the unique identifier for its row and for foreign key rows in other tables. Generally, you should not allow updates to primary keys. An attempt to update a primary key should be taken very seriously. In this case, you need to protect referential integrity by rolling back the update unless specified conditions are met.

Sybase suggests that you prohibit any editing changes to a primary key, for example by revoking all permissions on that column. However, if you want to prohibit updates only under certain circumstances, use a trigger.

### Restricted update trigger using date functions

The following trigger prevents updates to titles.title\_id on the weekend. The if update clause in stopupdatetrig allows you to focus on a particular column, titles.title\_id. Modifications to the data in that column cause the trigger to go into action. Changes to the data in other columns do not. When this trigger detects an update that violates the trigger conditions, it cancels the update and prints a message. If you would like to test this one, substitute the current day of the week for “Saturday” or “Sunday”.

```
create trigger stopupdatetrig
on titles
for update
as
/* If an attempt is made to change titles.title_id
** on Saturday or Sunday, cancel the update. */
if update (title_id)
    and datename(dw, getdate())
    in ("Saturday", "Sunday")
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "We do not allow changes to "
    print "primary keys on the weekend."
end
```

### **Restricted update triggers with multiple actions**

You can specify multiple trigger actions on more than one column using if update. The following example modifies stopupdatetrig to include additional trigger actions for updates to titles.price or titles.advance. In addition to preventing updates to the primary key on weekends, it prevents updates to the price or advance of a title, unless the total revenue amount for that title surpasses its advance amount. You can use the same trigger name because the modified trigger replaces the old trigger when you create it again.

```
create trigger stopupdatetrig
on titles
for update
as
if update (title_id)
    and datename(dw, getdate())
    in ("Saturday", "Sunday")
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "We do not allow changes to"
    print "primary keys on the weekend!"
end
if update (price) or update (advance)
if exists (select * from inserted
    where (inserted.price * inserted.total_sales)
    < inserted.advance)
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "We do not allow changes to price or"
    print "advance for a title until its total"
```

```
        print "revenue exceeds its latest advance."
    end
```

The next example, created on titles, prevents update if any of the following conditions is true:

- The user tries to change a value in the primary key title\_id in titles
- The dependent key pub\_id is not found in publishers
- The target column does not exist or is null

Before you run this example make sure the following error messages exist in sysusermessages:

```
sp_addmessage 35004, "titles_utrg - Update Failed: update of primary keys %1!
is not allowed."
sp_addmessage 35005, "titles_utrg - Update Failed: %1! not found in authors."
```

The trigger is as follows:

```
create trigger title_utrg
on titles
for update as
begin
    declare @num_updated int,
            @coll_var varchar(20),
            @col2_var varchar(20)
    /* Determine how many rows were updated. */
    select @num_updated = @@rowcount
    if @num_updated = 0
        return
    /* Ensure that title_id in titles is not changed. */
    if update(title_id)
        begin
            rollback transaction
            select @coll_var = title_id from inserted
            raiserror 35004 , @coll_var
            return
        end
    /* Make sure dependencies to the publishers table are accounted for. */
    if update(pub_id)
        begin
            if (select count(*) from inserted, publishers
                where inserted.pub_id = publishers.pub_id
                and inserted.pub_id is not null) != @num_updated
            begin
                rollback transaction
                select @coll_var = pub_id from inserted
```

```
raiserror 35005, @coll_var
return
end
end
/* If the column is null, raise error 24004 and rollback the
** trigger. If the column is not null, update the roysched table
** restricting the update. */
if update(price)
begin
    if exists (select count(*) from inserted
               where price = null)
begin
    rollback trigger with
    raiserror 24004 "Update failed : Price cannot be null. "
end
else
begin
    update roysched
    set lorange = 0,
        hirange = price * 1000
    from inserted
    where roysched.title_id = inserted.title_id
end
end
end
end
```

To test for the first error message, 35004, enter:

```
update titles
set title_id = "BU7777"
where title_id = "BU2075"
```

To test for the second error message, 35005:

```
update titles
set pub_id = "7777"
where pub_id = "0877"
```

To test for the third error, which generates message 24004:

```
update titles
set price = 10.00
where title_id = "PC8888"
```

This query fails because the price column in titles is null. If it were not null, it would have updated the price for title PC8888 and performed the necessary recalculations for the roysched table. Error 24004 is not in sysusermessages but it is valid in this case. It demonstrates the “rollback trigger with raiserror” section of the code.

## Updating a foreign key

A change or an update to a foreign key by itself is probably an error. A foreign key is just a copy of the primary key. Never design the two to be independent. If you want to allow updates of a foreign key, you should protect integrity by creating a trigger that checks updates against the master table and rolls them back if they do not match the primary key.

In the following example, the trigger tests for two possible sources of failure: either the title\_id is not in the salesdetail table or it is not in the titles table.

This example uses nested if...else statements. The first if statement is true when the value in the where clause of the update statement does not match a value in salesdetail, that is, the inserted table will not contain any rows, and the select returns a null value. If this test is passed, the next if statement ascertains whether the new row or rows in the inserted table join with any title\_id in the titles table. If any row does not join, the transaction is rolled back, and an error message is printed. If the join succeeds, a different message is printed.

```
create trigger forupdatetrig
on salesdetail
for update
as
declare @row int
/* Save value of rowcount. */
select @row = @@rowcount
if update (title_id)
begin
    if (select distinct inserted.title_id
        from inserted) is null
    begin
        rollback transaction
        print "No, the old title_id must be in"
        print "salesdetail."
    end
    else
        if (select count(*)
            from titles, inserted
            where titles.title_id =
            inserted.title_id) != @row
        begin
            rollback transaction
            print "No, the new title_id is not in"
            print "titles."
        end
end
```

```
        else
            print "salesdetail table updated"
    end
```

## Multirow considerations

Multirow considerations are particularly important when the function of a trigger is to recalculate summary values, or provide ongoing tallies.

Triggers used to maintain summary values should contain group by clauses or subqueries that perform implicit grouping. This creates summary values when more than one row is being inserted, updated, or deleted. Since a group by clause imposes extra overhead, the following examples are written to test whether `@@rowcount = 1`, meaning that only one row in the trigger table was affected. If `@@rowcount = 1`, the trigger actions take effect without a group by clause.

## Insert trigger example using multiple rows

The following insert trigger updates the `total_sales` column in the `titles` table every time a new `salesdetail` row is added. It goes into effect whenever you record a sale by adding a row to the `salesdetail` table. It updates the `total_sales` column in the `titles` table so that `total_sales` is equal to its previous value plus the value added to `salesdetail.qty`. This keeps the totals up to date for inserts into `salesdetail.qty`.

```
create trigger intrig
on salesdetail
for insert as
    /* check value of @@rowcount */
    if @@rowcount = 1
        update titles
            set total_sales = total_sales + qty
            from inserted
            where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id
    else
        /* when @@rowcount is greater than 1,
           use a group by clause */
        update titles
            set total_sales =
                total_sales + (select sum(qty)
```

```
from inserted  
group by inserted.title_id  
having titles.title_id = inserted.title_id)
```

## Delete trigger example using multiple rows

The next example is a delete trigger that updates the total\_sales column in the titles table every time one or more salesdetail rows are deleted.

```
create trigger deltrig  
on salesdetail  
for delete  
as  
    /* check value of @@rowcount */  
if @@rowcount = 1  
    update titles  
        set total_sales = total_sales - qty  
        from deleted  
        where titles.title_id = deleted.title_id  
else  
    /* when rowcount is greater than 1,  
       use a group by clause */  
    update titles  
        set total_sales =  
            total_sales - (select sum(qty)  
                from deleted  
                group by deleted.title_id  
                having titles.title_id = deleted.title_id)
```

This trigger goes into effect whenever a row is deleted from the salesdetail table. It updates the total\_sales column in the titles table so that total\_sales is equal to its previous value minus the value subtracted from salesdetail.qty.

## Update trigger example using multiple rows

The following update trigger updates the total\_sales column in the titles table every time the qty field in a salesdetail row is updated. Recall that an update is an insert followed by a delete. This trigger references both the inserted and the deleted trigger test tables.

```
create trigger updtrig  
on salesdetail
```

```
for update
as
if update (qty)
begin
    /* check value of @@rowcount */
    if @@rowcount = 1
        update titles
            set total_sales = total_sales +
                inserted.qty - deleted.qty
            from inserted, deleted
            where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id
            and inserted.title_id = deleted.title_id
    else
        /* when rowcount is greater than 1,
           use a group by clause */
        begin
            update titles
                set total_sales = total_sales +
                    (select sum(qty)
                     from inserted
                     group by inserted.title_id
                     having titles.title_id =
                        inserted.title_id)
            update titles
                set total_sales = total_sales -
                    (select sum(qty)
                     from deleted
                     group by deleted.title_id
                     having titles.title_id =
                        deleted.title_id)
        end
    end
```

## Conditional insert trigger example using multiple rows

You do not have to roll back all data modifications simply because some of them are unacceptable. Using a correlated subquery in a trigger can force the trigger to examine the modified rows one by one. See “Using correlated subqueries” on page 194 for more information on correlated subqueries. The trigger can then take different actions on different rows.

The following trigger example assumes the existence of a table called junesales. Here is its create statement:

```
create table junesales
```

```
(stor_id      char(4)      not null,
ord_num      varchar(20)   not null,
title_id     tid          not null,
qty          smallint     not null,
discount     float        not null)
```

You should insert four rows in the junesales table, to test the conditional trigger. Two of the junesales rows have title\_ids that do not match any of those already in the titles table.

```
insert junesales values ("7066", "BA27619", "PS1372", 75, 40)
insert junesales values ("7066", "BA27619", "BU7832", 100, 40)
insert junesales values ("7067", "NB-1.242", "PSxxxx", 50, 40)
insert junesales values ("7131", "PSyyyy", "PSyyyy", 50, 40)
```

When you insert data from junesales into salesdetail, the statement looks like this:

```
insert salesdetail
select * from junesales
```

The trigger `conditionalinsert` analyzes the insert row by row and deletes the rows that do not have a `title_id` in `titles`:

```
create trigger conditionalinsert
on salesdetail
for insert as
if
(select count(*) from titles, inserted
where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id)
!= @@rowcount
begin
delete salesdetail from salesdetail, inserted
where salesdetail.title_id = inserted.title_id
and inserted.title_id not in
(select title_id from titles)
print "Only records with matching title_ids
added."
end
```

The trigger deletes the unwanted rows. This ability to delete rows that have just been inserted relies on the order in which processing occurs when triggers are fired. First, the rows are inserted into the table and the `inserted` table; then, the trigger fires.

## Rolling back triggers

You can roll back triggers using either the `rollback trigger` statement or the `rollback transaction` statement (if the trigger is fired as part of a transaction). However, `rollback trigger` rolls back only the effect of the trigger and the statement that caused the trigger to fire; `rollback transaction` rolls back the entire transaction. For example:

```
begin tran  
insert into publishers (pub_id) values ("9999")  
insert into publishers (pub_id) values ("9998")  
commit tran
```

If the second `insert` statement causes a trigger on `publishers` to issue a `rollback trigger`, only that `insert` is affected; the first `insert` is not rolled back. If that trigger issues a `rollback transaction` instead, both `insert` statements are rolled back as part of the transaction.

The syntax for `rollback trigger` is:

```
rollback trigger  
[with raiserror_statement]
```

The syntax for `rollback transaction` is described in Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery.”

*raiserror\_statement* is a statement that prints a user-defined error message and sets a system flag to record that an error condition has occurred. This provides the ability to raise an error to the client when the `rollback trigger` is executed, so that the transaction state in the error reflects the rollback. For example:

```
rollback trigger with raiserror 25002  
"title_id does not exist in titles table."
```

For more information about `raiserror`, see Chapter 13, “Using Batches and Control-of-Flow Language.”

The following example of an `insert` trigger performs a similar task to the trigger `forinsertrig1` described in “Insert trigger example” on page 559. However, this trigger uses a `rollback trigger` instead of a `rollback transaction` to raise an error when it rolls back the insertion but not the transaction.

```
create trigger forinsertrig2  
on salesdetail  
for insert  
as  
if (select count(*) from titles, inserted  
     where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id) !=
```

```
@@rowcount
rollback trigger with raiserror 25003
"Trigger rollback: salesdetail row not added
because a title_id does not exist in titles."
```

When the rollback trigger is executed, Adaptive Server aborts the currently executing command and halts execution of the rest of the trigger. If the trigger that issues the rollback trigger is nested within other triggers, Adaptive Server rolls back all the work done in these triggers up to and including the update that caused the first trigger to fire.

When triggers that include rollback transaction statements are executed from a batch, they abort the entire batch. In the following example, if the insert statement fires a trigger that includes a rollback transaction (such as forinsertrig1), the delete statement will not be executed, since the batch will be aborted:

```
insert salesdetail values ("7777", "JR123",
    "PS9999", 75, 40)
delete salesdetail where stor_id = "7067"
```

If triggers that include rollback transaction statements are fired from within a **user-defined transaction**, the rollback transaction rolls back the entire batch. In the following example, if the insert statement fires a trigger that includes a rollback transaction, the update statement will also be rolled back:

```
begin tran
update stores set payterms = "Net 30"
    where stor_id = "8042"
insert salesdetail values ("7777", "JR123",
    "PS9999", 75, 40)
commit tran
```

See Chapter 18, “Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery,” for information on user-defined transactions.

Adaptive Server ignores a rollback trigger executed outside of a trigger and does not issue a raiserror associated with the statement. However, a rollback trigger executed outside a trigger but inside a transaction generates an error that causes Adaptive Server to roll back the transaction and abort the current statement batch.

## Nesting triggers

Triggers can nest to a depth of 16 levels. The current nesting level is stored in the `@@nestlevel` global variable. Nesting is enabled at installation. A System Administrator can turn trigger nesting on and off with the `allow nested triggers` configuration parameter.

If nested triggers are enabled, a trigger that changes a table on which there is another trigger fires the second trigger, which can in turn fire a third trigger, and so forth. If any trigger in the chain sets off an infinite loop, the nesting level is exceeded and the trigger aborts. You can use nested triggers to perform useful housekeeping functions such as storing a backup copy of rows affected by a previous trigger.

For example, you can create a trigger on `titleauthor` that saves a backup copy of `titleauthor` rows that was deleted by the `delcascadetrig` trigger. With the `delcascadetrig` trigger in effect, deleting the `title_id` “PS2091” from `titles` also deletes the corresponding row(s) from `titleauthor`. To save the data, you can create a delete trigger on `titleauthor` that saves the deleted data in another table, `del_save`:

```
create trigger savedel
on titleauthor
for delete
as
insert del_save
select * from deleted
```

Sybase suggests that you use nested triggers in an order-dependent sequence. Use separate triggers to cascade data modifications, as in the earlier example of `delcascadetrig`, described under “Cascading delete example” on page 560.

---

**Note** When you put triggers into a transaction, a failure at any level of a set of nested triggers cancels the transaction and rolls back all data modifications. Use `print` or `raiserror` statements in your triggers to determine where failures occur.

---

A rollback transaction in a trigger at any nesting level rolls back the effects of each trigger and cancels the entire transaction. A rollback trigger affects only the nested triggers and the data modification statement that caused the initial trigger to fire.

## Trigger self-recursion

By default, a trigger does not call itself recursively. That is, an update trigger does not call itself in response to a second update to the same table within the trigger. If an update trigger on one column of a table results in an update to another column, the update trigger fires only once. However, you can turn on the `self_recursion` option of the `set` command to allow triggers to call themselves recursively. The `allow nested triggers` configuration variable must also be enabled for self-recursion to occur.

The `self_recursion` setting remains in effect only for the duration of a current client session. If the option is set as part of a trigger, its effect is limited by the scope of the trigger that sets it. If the trigger that sets `self_recursion` on returns or causes another trigger to fire, this option reverts to off. Once a trigger turns on the `self_recursion` option, it can repeatedly loop, if its own actions cause it to fire again, but it cannot exceed the limit of 16 nesting levels.

For example, assume that the following `new_budget` table exists in `pubs2`:

```
select * from new_budget
unit          parent_unit      budget
-----  -----  -----
one_department  one_division    10
one_division    company_wide   100
company_wide    NULL           1000

(3 rows affected)
```

You can create a trigger that recursively updates `new_budget` whenever its `budget` column is changed, as follows:

```
create trigger budget_change
on new_budget
for update as
if exists (select * from inserted
           where parent_unit is not null)
begin
    set self_recursion on
    update new_budget
    set new_budget.budget = new_budget.budget +
                           inserted.budget - deleted.budget
    from inserted, deleted, new_budget
    where new_budget.unit = inserted.parent_unit
          and new_budget.unit = deleted.parent_unit
end
```

If you update new\_budget.budget by increasing the budget of unit one\_department by 3, Adaptive Server behaves as follows (assuming that nested triggers are enabled):

- 1 Increasing one\_department from 10 to 13 fires the budget\_change trigger.
- 2 The trigger updates the budget of the parent of one\_department (in this case one\_division) from 100 to 103, which fires the trigger again.
- 3 The trigger updates the parent of one\_division (in this case company\_wide) from 1000 to 1003, which causes the trigger to fire for the third time.
- 4 The trigger attempts to update the parent of company\_wide, but since none exists (the value is “NULL”), the last update never occurs and the trigger is not fired, ending the self-recursion. You can query new\_budget to see the final results, as follows:

```
select * from new_budget
unit          parent_unit      budget
-----  -----  -----
one_department  one_division    13
one_division    company_wide   103
company_wide    NULL           1003
```

(3 rows affected)

A trigger can also be recursively executed in other ways. A trigger calls a stored procedure that performs actions that cause the trigger to fire again (it is reactivated only if nested triggers are enabled). Unless conditions within the trigger limit the number of recursions, the nesting level can overflow.

For example, if an update trigger calls a stored procedure that performs an update, the trigger and stored procedure execute only once if nested triggers is set to off. If nested triggers is set to on, and the number of updates exceeds 16 by some condition in the trigger or procedure, the loop continues until the trigger or procedure exceeds the 16-level maximum nesting value.

## Rules associated with triggers

Apart from anticipating the effects of a multirow data modification, trigger rollbacks, and trigger nesting, consider the following factors when you are writing triggers.

## Triggers and permissions

A trigger is defined on a particular table. Only the owner of the table has create trigger and drop trigger permissions for the table. These permissions cannot be transferred to others.

Adaptive Server will accept a trigger definition that attempts actions for which you do not have permission. The existence of such a trigger aborts any attempt to modify the trigger table because incorrect permissions will cause the trigger to fire and fail. The transaction will be canceled. You must rectify the permissions or drop the trigger.

For example, Jose owns salesdetail and creates a trigger on it. The trigger is supposed to update titles.total\_sales when salesdetail.qty is updated. However, Mary is the owner of titles, and has not granted Jose permission on titles. When Jose tries to update salesdetail, Adaptive Server detects the trigger and Jose's lack of permissions on titles, and rolls back the update transaction. Jose must either get update permission on titles.total\_sales from Mary or drop the trigger on salesdetail.

## Trigger restrictions

Adaptive Server imposes the following limitations on triggers:

- A table can have a maximum of three triggers: one update trigger, one insert trigger, and one delete trigger.
- Each trigger can apply to only one table. However, a single trigger can apply to all three user actions: update, insert, and delete.
- You cannot create a trigger on a view or on a temporary table, though triggers can reference views or temporary tables.
- The writetext statement will not activate insert or update triggers.

- Although a truncate table statement is, in effect, like a delete without a where clause, because it removes all rows, it cannot fire a trigger, because individual row deletions are not logged.
- You cannot create a trigger or build an index or a view on a temporary object (@object)
- You cannot create triggers on system tables. If you try to create a trigger on a system table, Adaptive Server returns an error message and cancels the trigger.
- You cannot use triggers that select from a text column or an image column of the inserted or deleted table.
- If Component Integration Services is enabled, triggers have limited usefulness on proxy tables because you cannot examine the rows being inserted, updated, or deleted (via the inserted and deleted tables). You can create a trigger on a proxy table, and it can be invoked. However, deleted or inserted data is not written to the transaction log for proxy tables because the insert is passed to the remote server. Hence, the inserted and deleted tables, which are actually views to the transaction log, contain no data for proxy tables.

## Implicit and explicit null values

The if update(*column\_name*) clause is true for an insert statement whenever the column is assigned a value in the select list or in the values clause. An *explicit* null or a default assigns a value to a column, and thus activates the trigger. An *implicit* null does not.

For example, suppose you create the following table:

```
create table junk
(a int null,
 b int not null)
```

and then write the following trigger:

```
create trigger junktrig
on junk
for insert
as
if update(a) and update(b)
    print "FIRING"
```

```
/*"if update" is true for both columns.
```

```
The trigger is activated.*/
insert junk (a, b) values (1, 2)

/*"if update" is true for both columns.
The trigger is activated.*/
insert junk values (1, 2)

/*Explicit NULL:
"if update" is true for both columns.
The trigger is activated.*/
insert junk values (NULL, 2)

/* If default exists on column a,
"if update" is true for either column a.
The trigger is activated.*/
insert junk (b) values (2)

/* If no default exists on column a,
"if update" is not true for column a.
The trigger is not activated.*/
insert junk (b) values (2)
```

The same results would be produced using only the clause:

```
if update(a)
```

To create a trigger that disallows the insertion of implicit nulls, you can use:

```
if update(a) or update(b)
```

SQL statements in the trigger can then test to see if *a* or *b* is null.

## Triggers and performance

In terms of performance, trigger overhead is usually very low. The time involved in running a trigger is spent mostly in referencing other tables, which may be either in memory or on the database device.

The deleted and inserted trigger test tables are always in active memory. The location of other tables referenced by the trigger determines the amount of time the operation takes.

For more information on how triggers affect performance, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## **set commands in triggers**

You can use the set command inside a trigger. The set option you invoke remains in effect during execution of the trigger. Then, the trigger reverts to its former setting.

## **Renaming and triggers**

If you change the name of an object referenced by a trigger, you must drop the trigger and re-create it so that its source text reflects the new name of the object being referenced. Use sp\_depends to get a report of the objects referenced by a trigger. The safest course of action is to not rename any tables or views that are referenced by a trigger.

## **Trigger tips**

Consider the following tips when creating triggers:

- Suppose you have an insert or update trigger that calls a stored procedure, which in turn updates the base table. If the nested triggers configuration parameter is set to true, the trigger will enter an infinite loop. Before executing an insert or update trigger, set sp\_configure “nested triggers” to false.
- When you execute drop table, any triggers dependent on that table are also dropped. If you want to preserve any such triggers, change their names with sp\_rename before dropping the table.
- Use sp\_depends to see a report on the tables and views referred to in a trigger.
- Use sp\_rename to rename a trigger.
- A trigger fires only once per query (a single data modification such as an insert or update). If the query is repeated in a loop, the trigger fires as many times as the query is repeated.

## Disabling triggers

bcp and insert fire any triggers they encounter while they copy data into a table, which increases the amount of time it takes to perform the copy (for example, bcp switches from fast mode to slow mode to fire the trigger). Use the disable trigger option of the alter table command to disable any triggers associated with a table before you copy in the data. You can use the disable trigger option to either disable all the triggers associated with the table, or you can specify a particular trigger to disable. However, any triggers you disable will not be fired after the copy is complete. If you require these triggers to insert, update, or delete any data, you will have to fire them manually.

alter table... disable trigger uses this syntax:

```
alter table [database_name].[owner_name].]table_name  
{enable | disable } trigger [trigger_name]
```

Where *table\_name* is the name of the table for which you are disabling triggers, and *trigger\_name* is the name of the trigger you are disabling. For example, to disable the *del\_pub* trigger in the *pubs2* database:

```
alter table pubs2  
disable del_pubs
```

If you do not specify a trigger, alter table disables all the triggers defined in the table.

Use alter table... enable trigger to reenable the triggers after the load database is complete. To reenable the *del\_pub* trigger, issue:

```
alter table pubs2  
enable del_pubs
```

---

**Note** You can use the disable trigger feature only if you are the table owner or database administrator.

---

If a trigger includes any insert, update, or delete statements, these statements will not run while the trigger is disabled, which may affect the referential integrity of a table.

---

## Dropping triggers

You can remove a trigger by dropping it or by dropping the trigger table with which it is associated.

The drop trigger syntax is:

```
drop trigger [owner.]trigger_name  
[, [owner.]trigger_name]...
```

When you drop a table, Adaptive Server drops any triggers associated with it. drop trigger permission defaults to the trigger table owner and is not transferable.

## Getting information about triggers

As database objects, triggers are listed in sysobjects by name. The type column of sysobjects identifies triggers with the abbreviation “TR”. This query finds the triggers that exist in a database:

```
select *  
from sysobjects  
where type = "TR"
```

The source text for each trigger is stored in syscomments. Execution plans for triggers are stored in sysprocedures. The system procedures described in the following sections provide information from the system tables about triggers.

### ***sp\_help***

You can get a report on a trigger using *sp\_help*. For example, you can get information on *delttitle* as follows:

```
sp_help delttitle  
Name          Owner      Type  
-----  
delttitle     dbo        trigger  
  
Data_located_on_segment  When_created  
-----  
not applicable           Jul 10 1997 3:56PM
```

```
(return status = 0)
```

You can also use sp\_help to report the status of a disabled or enabled trigger:

```
1> sp_help trig_insert
2> go
Name Owner
Type
-----
trig_insert dbo
trigger
(1 row affected)
data_located_on_segment When_created
-----
not applicable Aug 30 1998 11:40PM
Trigger enabled
(return status = 0)
```

## ***sp\_helptext***

To display the source text of a trigger, execute sp\_helptext, as follows:

```
sp_helptext deltitle
# Lines of Text
-----
1
text
-----
create trigger deltitle
on titles
for delete
as
if (select count(*) from deleted, salesdetail
where salesdetail.title_id = deleted.title_id) >0
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "You can't delete a title with sales."
end
```

If the source text of a trigger was encrypted using sp\_hidetext, Adaptive Server displays a message advising you that the text is hidden. For information about hiding source text, see *sp\_hidetext* in the *Reference Manual*.

If the System Security Officer has reset the allow select on syscomments.text column parameter with sp\_configure (as required to run Adaptive Server in the evaluated configuration), you must be the creator of the trigger or a System Administrator to view the source text of a trigger through sp\_helptext. (See **evaluated configuration** in the *Adaptive Server Glossary* for more information.)

## **sp\_depends**

sp\_depends lists the triggers that reference an object or all the tables or views that the trigger affects. This example shows how to use sp\_depends to get a list of all the objects referenced by the trigger deltitle:

```
sp_depends deltitle
Things the object references in the current
database.

object          type      updated  selected
-----
dbo.salesdetail    user table   no       no
dbo.titles        user table   no       no

(return status = 0)
```

This statement lists all the objects that reference the salesdetail table:

```
sp_depends salesdetail
Things inside the current database that reference
the object.

object          type
-----
dbo.delttitle      trigger
dbo.history_proc   stored procedure
dbo.insert_salesdetail_proc stored procedure
dbo.totalsales_trig trigger

(return status = 0)
```

# Cursors: Accessing Data Row by Row

A **cursor** accesses the results of a SQL select statement one or more rows at a time. Cursors allow you to modify or delete rows on an individual basis.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How cursors work	585
Declaring cursors	590
Opening cursors	598
Fetching data rows using cursors	598
Updating and deleting rows using cursors	602
Closing and deallocating cursors	604
An example using a cursor	605
Using cursors in stored procedures	607
Cursors and locking	609
Getting information about cursors	611
Using browse mode instead of cursors	612
Join cursor processing and data modifications	614

For information on how cursors affect performance, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## How cursors work

A cursor is a symbolic name associated with a select statement. It consists of the following parts:

- **Cursor result set** – the set (table) of rows resulting from the execution of a query that is associated with the cursor.
- **Cursor position** – a pointer to one row within the cursor result set.

The cursor position indicates the current row of the cursor. You can explicitly modify or delete that row using update or delete statements with a clause naming the cursor.

You can change the current cursor position through an operation called a **fetch**. The fetch command moves the current cursor position one or more rows down the cursor result set.

Figure 17-1 illustrates how the cursor result set and cursor position work when a fetch command is performed. In this example, the cursor is defined as follows:

```
declare cal_authors_crsr cursor  
for select au_id, au_lname, au_fname  
from authors  
where state = "CA"  
for update
```

**Figure 17-1: How the cursor result set and cursor position work for a fetch**

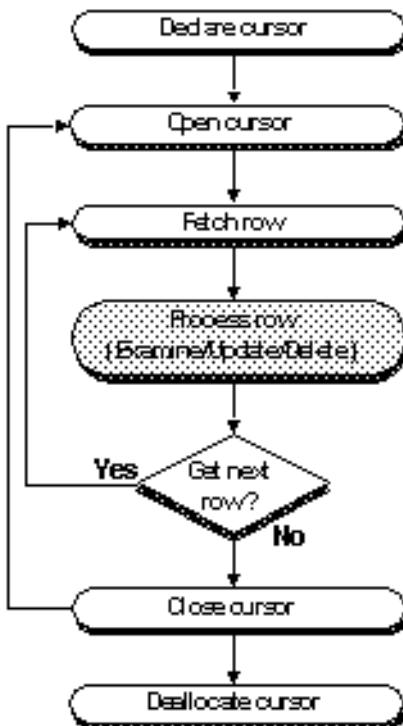
cal_authors_crsr cursor result set from the authors table		
172-32-1176	White	Johnson
213-46-8915	Green	Marjorie
...	...	...

◀- Cursor position when fetch is performed  
→- Next cursor position

You might think of a cursor as a “handle” on the result set of a select statement. It enables you to examine and possibly manipulate one row at a time. However, cursors support only forward (or sequential) movement through the query results. Once you fetch several rows, you cannot backtrack through the cursor result set to access them again.

## How Adaptive Server processes cursors

Figure 17-2 shows the steps in using cursors.

**Figure 17-2: Using cursors**

When accessing data using cursors, Adaptive Server divides the process into several operations:

- Declaring the cursor

If you declare the cursor within a stored procedure, Adaptive Server creates the cursor structure and compiles the query defined for that cursor. It stores the compiled query plan but does not execute it.

For example, the following cursor declaration, `business_crsr`, finds the titles and identification numbers of all business books in the `titles` table. It also allows you to update the price column in the future through the cursor:

```

declare business_crsr cursor
for select title, title_id
from titles
where type = "business"
for update of price
  
```

Use the `for update` clause when declaring a cursor, to ensure that Adaptive Server performs the positioned updates correctly.

- Opening the cursor

When a cursor that has been declared outside of a stored procedure is opened, Adaptive Server generates an optimized query plan and compiles the cursor. It then performs preliminary operations for executing the scan defined in the cursor and returning a result set. For example, when a cursor is opened, Adaptive Server may place a shared intent lock on a table or create a work table.

If a cursor has been declared within a stored procedure, it already exists in compiled form. When the cursor is opened, Adaptive Server only needs to perform preliminary operations for executing a scan and returning a result set.

- Fetching from the cursor

The `fetch` command executes the compiled cursor to return one or more rows meeting the conditions defined in the cursor. By default, a `fetch` returns only a single row. The first `fetch` returns the first row that meets the cursor's search conditions and stores the current position of the cursor. The second `fetch` uses the cursor position from the first `fetch`, returns the next row that meets the search conditions, and stores its current position. Each subsequent `fetch` uses the cursor position of the previous `fetch` to locate the next cursor result.

The number of rows returned by a `fetch` can be specified using the `set cursor rows` command. See “Getting multiple rows with each fetch” on page 600.

In the following example, the `fetch` command displays the title and identification number of the first row in the `titles` table containing a business book:

```
fetch business_crsr
title                      title_id
-----
The Busy Executive's Database Guide    BU1032
(1 row affected)
```

Running `fetch business_crsr` a second time displays the title and identification number of the next business book in `titles`.

- Processing the row by examining, updating, or deleting it through the cursor

Adaptive Server updates or deletes the data in the cursor result set (and corresponding base tables that derived the data) at the current cursor position after a fetch. This operation is optional.

The following update statement raises the price of business books by 5 percent; it affects only the book currently pointed to by the `business_crsr` cursor:

```
update titles  
set price = price * .05 + price  
where current of business_crsr
```

Updating a cursor row involves changing data in the row or deleting the row completely. You cannot use cursors to insert rows. All updates through a cursor affect the corresponding base tables included in the cursor result set.

- Closing the cursor

Adaptive Server closes the cursor result set, removes any remaining temporary tables, and releases the server resources held for the cursor structure. However, it keeps the query plan for the cursor so that it can be opened again. For example:

```
close business_crsr
```

When you close a cursor and then reopen it, Adaptive Server is ready to re-create the cursor result set. When you perform the fetch, Adaptive Server positions the cursor before the first valid row. This allows you to process a cursor result set as many times as necessary. You can close the cursor at any time; you do not have to go through the entire result set.

- Deallocating the cursor

Adaptive Server dumps the query plan from memory and eliminates all trace of the cursor structure. For example:

```
deallocate cursor business_crsr
```

You must declare the cursor again before using it.

# Declaring cursors

You must declare a cursor before you can use it. The declaration specifies the query that defines the cursor result set. You can explicitly define a cursor as updatable or read-only by using the `for update` or `for read only` keywords. If you omit either one, Adaptive Server determines whether the cursor is updatable based on the type of query that defines the cursor result set. However, Sybase suggests that you explicitly specify one or the other; for updates, this ensures that Adaptive Server performs the positioned updates correctly. You cannot use the `update` or `delete` statements on the result set of a read-only cursor.

## ***declare cursor syntax***

The syntax of the declare cursor statement is:

```
declare cursor_name cursor  
    for select_statement  
        [for {read only | update [of column_name_list]})]
```

The *cursor\_name* is the name of the cursor. It must be a valid Adaptive Server identifier containing no more than 30 characters, and it must start with a letter, a pound sign (#), or an underscore (\_).

The *select\_statement* is the query that defines the cursor result set. See `select` in the *Reference Manual* for information about its options. In general, *select\_statement* may use the full syntax and semantics of a Transact-SQL select statement, including the `holdlock` keyword. However, it cannot contain a `compute`, `for browse`, or `into` clause.

The `for read only` option specifies that the cursor result set cannot be updated. In contrast, the `for update` option specifies that the cursor result set is updatable. You can specify `of column_name_list` after `for update` with the list of columns from the *select\_statement* defined as updatable.

The declare cursor statement must precede any open statement for that cursor. You cannot combine declare cursor with other statements in the same Transact-SQL batch, except when using a cursor in a stored procedure.

For example, the following declare cursor statement defines a result set for the `authors_crsr` cursor that contains all authors that do not reside in California:

```
declare authors_crsr cursor
```

```
for select au_id, au_lname, au_fname  
from authors  
where state != "CA"  
for update
```

The *select\_statement* can contain references to Transact-SQL parameter names or local variables. However, the names can reference only the parameters and local variables defined in a stored procedure that contains the declare cursor statement. If the cursor is used in a trigger, the *select\_statement* can also reference the inserted and deleted temporary tables that are used in triggers. For information on using the select statement, see Chapter 2, “Queries: Selecting Data from a Table.”

## Types of cursors

There are four types of cursors:

- **Client cursors** – are declared through Open Client calls (or Embedded SQL). Open Client keeps track of the rows returned from Adaptive Server and buffers them for the application. Updates and deletes to the result set of client cursors can be done only through the Open Client calls.
- **Execute cursors** – are a subset of client cursors whose result set is defined by a stored procedure. The stored procedure can use parameters. The values of the parameters are sent through Open Client calls.
- **Server cursors** – are declared in SQL. If they are used in stored procedures, the client executing the stored procedure is not aware of them. Results returned to the client for a fetch are the same as the results from a normal select.
- **Language cursors** – are declared in SQL without using Open Client. As with server cursors, the client is not aware of the cursors, and the results are returned to the client in the same format as a normal select.

Client cursors, through the use of applications using Open Client calls or Embedded-SQL, are the most frequently used form of cursors. To simplify the discussion of cursors, the examples in this manual are for language and server cursors only. For examples of client or execute cursors, see your Open Client or Embedded-SQL documentation.

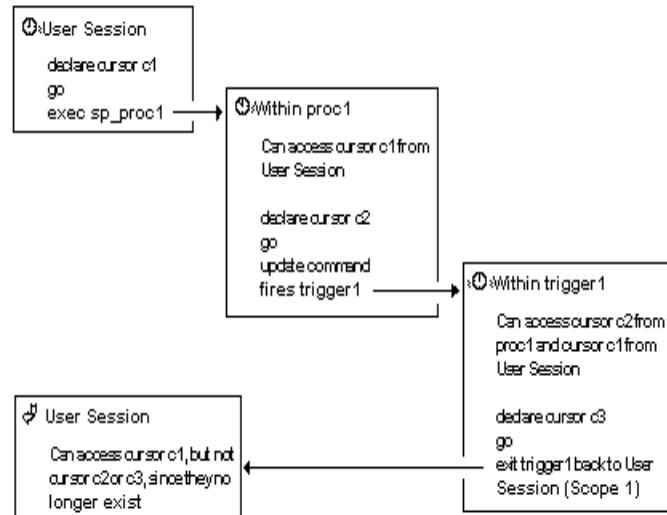
## Cursor scope

A cursor's existence depends on its **scope**. The scope refers to the context in which the cursor is used: within a user session, a stored procedure, or a trigger.

Within a user session, the cursor exists only until the user ends the session. The cursor does not exist for any additional sessions that other users start. After the user logs off, Adaptive Server deallocates the cursors created in that session.

If a declare cursor statement is part of a stored procedure or trigger, the cursor created within it applies to that scope and to the scope that launched the stored procedure or trigger. However, cursors declared inside a trigger on an inserted or a deleted table are not accessible to any nested stored procedures or triggers. Such cursors *are* accessible within the scope of that trigger. Once the stored procedure or trigger completes, Adaptive Server deallocates the cursors created within it.

Figure 17-3 illustrates how cursors operate between scopes.

**Figure 17-3: How cursors operate within scopes**

A cursor name must be unique within a given scope. Adaptive Server detects name conflicts within a particular scope only during runtime. A stored procedure or trigger can define two cursors with the same name if only one is executed. For example, the following stored procedure works because only one names\_crsr cursor is defined in its scope:

```

create procedure proc2 @flag int
as
if @flag > 0
    declare names_crsr cursor
    for select au_fname from authors
else
    declare names_crsr cursor
    for select au_lname from authors
return
  
```

## Cursor scans and the cursor result set

The method Adaptive Server uses to create the cursor result set depends on the type of query used. If the query does not require a worktable, Adaptive Server performs a fetch by cursoring down the base table using the table's index keys, much like a select statement, except that it returns the number of rows specified by the fetch. After the fetch, Adaptive Server positions the cursor at the next valid index key, until you fetch again or close the cursor.

Some queries use worktables to generate the cursor result set. To verify whether a particular cursor uses a worktable, check the output of a `set showplan, no exec` on statement.

Be aware that when a worktable is used, the rows retrieved with a cursor fetch statement may not reflect the values in the actual base table rows. For example, a cursor declared with an `order by` clause usually requires the creation of a worktable to order the rows for the cursor result set. Adaptive Server does not lock the rows in the base table that correspond to the rows in the worktable, which permits other clients to update these base table rows. Hence, the rows returned to the client from the cursor statement are different from the base table rows. See “Cursors and locking” on page 609 for more information on how locks work with cursors.

A cursor result set is generated as the rows are returned through a fetch of that cursor. This means that a cursor select query is processed like a normal select query. This process, known as **cursor scans**, provides a faster turnaround time and eliminates the need to read rows the application does not require.

Adaptive Server requires that cursor scans use a unique index of a table, particularly for isolation level 0 reads. If the table has an `IDENTITY` column and you need to create a nonunique index on it, use the `identity in nonunique index` database option to include an `IDENTITY` column in the table's index keys so that all indexes created on the table are unique. This database option makes logically nonunique indexes internally unique and allows the indexes to be used to process updatable cursors for isolation level 0 reads.

You can still use cursors that reference tables without indexes, if none of those tables are updated by another process that causes the current row position to move. For example:

```
declare storinfo_crsr cursor  
for select stor_id, stor_name, payterms  
      from stores
```

```
where state = "CA"
```

The table stores, specified with the above cursor, does not have any indexes. Adaptive Server allows the declaration of cursors on tables without unique indexes, as long as you have not specified for update in the declare cursor statement. If an update does not change the position of the row, the cursor position does not change until the next fetch.

## Making cursors updatable

You can update or delete a row returned by a cursor if the cursor is updatable. If the cursor is read-only, you can only read the data; you cannot update or delete it. By default, Adaptive Server attempts to determine whether a cursor is updatable before designating it as read-only.

You can explicitly specify whether a cursor is updatable by using the read only or update keywords in the declare statement. Specifying a cursor to be updatable ensures that Adaptive Server performs the positioned updates correctly. Make sure the table being updated has a unique index. If it does not, Adaptive Server rejects the declare cursor statement.

The following example defines an updatable result set for the `pubs_crsr` cursor:

```
declare pubs_crsr cursor
for select pub_name, city, state
from publishers
for update of city, state
```

The above example includes all the rows from the `publishers` table, but it explicitly defines only the `city` and `state` columns for update.

Unless you plan to update or delete rows through a cursor, you should declare a cursor as read-only. If you do not explicitly specify read only or update, the cursor is implicitly updatable when the `select` statement does *not* contain any of the following constructs:

- distinct option
- group by clause
- Aggregate function
- Subquery
- union operator
- at isolation read uncommitted clause

You cannot specify the `for update` clause if a cursor's *select\_statement* contains one of the above constructs. Adaptive Server also defines a cursor as read-only if you declare certain types of cursors that include an `order by` clause as part of their *select\_statement*. See “Types of cursors” on page 591 for information on the types of cursors Adaptive Server supports.

## Determining which columns can be updated

If you do not specify a *column\_name\_list* with the `for update` clause, all the specified columns in the query are updatable. Adaptive Server attempts to use unique indexes for updatable cursors when scanning the base table. For cursors, Adaptive Server considers an index containing an `IDENTITY` column to be unique, even if it is not so declared.

Adaptive Server allows you to update columns in the *column\_name\_list* that are not specified in the list of columns of the cursor's *select\_statement*, but that are part of the tables specified in the *select\_statement*. However, when you specify a *column\_name\_list* with `for update`, you can update only the columns in that list.

In the following example, Adaptive Server uses the unique index on the `pub_id` column of `publishers` (even though `pub_id` is not included in the definition of `newpubs_crsr`):

```
declare newpubs_crsr cursor
  for select pub_name, city, state
    from publishers
      for update
```

If you do not specify the `for update` clause, Adaptive Server chooses any unique index, although it can also use other indexes or table scans if no unique index exists for the specified table columns. However, when you specify the `for update` clause, Adaptive Server must use a unique index defined for one or more of the columns to scan the base table. If no unique index exists, Adaptive Server returns an error message.

In most cases, you should include only columns to be updated in the *column\_name\_list* of the *for update* clause. If the table has only one unique index, you do not need to include its column in the *for update column\_name\_list*; Adaptive Server finds it during the cursor scan. If the table has more than one unique index, include its column in the *for update column\_name\_list*, so that Adaptive Server can find it quickly for the cursor scan. For example, the table used in the following *declare cursor* statement has one unique index, on the column *c3*, so that column should not be included in the *for update* list:

```
declare mycursor cursor  
for select c1, c2, 3  
from mytable  
for update of c1, c2
```

However, if *mytable* has more than one unique index, for example, on columns *c3* and *c4*, you need to specify one unique index in the *for update* clause as follows:

```
declare mycursor cursor  
for select c1, c2, 3  
from mytable  
for update of c1, c2, c3
```

Allowing Adaptive Server to use the unique index in the cursor scan in this manner helps to prevent an update anomaly called the **Halloween problem**. The Halloween problem occurs when a client updates a column through a cursor, and that column defines the order in which the rows are returned from the base tables (that is, a unique indexed column). For example, if Adaptive Server accesses a base table using an index, and the index key is updated by the client, the updated index row can move within the index and be read again by the cursor. The row seems to appear twice in the result set: when the index key is updated by the client and when the updated index row moves farther down the result set.

Another way to avoid the Halloween problem is to create tables with the *unique auto\_identity* index database option set to on. See the *System Administration Guide* for more information.

## Opening cursors

After you declare a cursor, you must open it to fetch, update, or delete rows. Opening a cursor lets Adaptive Server begin to create the cursor result set by evaluating the select statement that defines the cursor and makes it available for processing. The syntax for the open statement is:

```
open cursor_name
```

You cannot open a cursor that is already open or that has not been defined with the declare cursor statement. You can reopen a closed cursor to reset the cursor position to the beginning of the cursor result set.

## Fetching data rows using cursors

A fetch completes the cursor result set and returns one or more rows to the client that is responsible for extracting the column data from the row.

Depending on the type of query defined in the cursor, Adaptive Server creates the cursor result set either by scanning the tables directly or by scanning a worktable generated by the query type.

The fetch command positions the cursor before the first row of the cursor result set. If the table has a valid index, Adaptive Server positions the cursor at the first index key.

Optionally, you can include Transact-SQL parameters or local variables with fetch to store column values.

### **fetch** syntax

The syntax for the fetch statement is:

```
fetch cursor_name [into fetch_target_list]
```

After generating the cursor result set, Adaptive Server moves the cursor position one or more rows down the result set. It retrieves the data from each row of the result set and stores the current position, allowing additional fetches until Adaptive Server reaches the end of the result set.

For example, after declaring and opening the authors\_crsr cursor, you can fetch the first row of its result set as follows:

```
fetch authors_crsr
```

```

au_id          au_lname          au_fname
-----          -----
341-22-1782   Smith            Meander
(1 row affected)

```

Each subsequent fetch retrieves another row from the cursor result set. For example:

```

fetch authors_crsr
au_id          au_lname          au_fname
-----          -----
527-72-3246   Greene           Morningstar
(1 row affected)

```

After you fetch all the rows, the cursor points to the last row of the result set. If you fetch again, Adaptive Server returns a warning through the `@@sqlstatus` variable (described under “Checking the cursor status” on page 599) indicating there is no more data. The cursor position remains unchanged.

You cannot fetch a row that has already been fetched. Close and reopen the cursor to generate the cursor result set again and start fetching from the beginning.

The `into` clause specifies that Adaptive Server returns column data into the specified variables. The `fetch_target_list` must consist of previously declared Transact-SQL parameters or local variables.

For example, after declaring the `@name`, `@city`, and `@state` variables, you can fetch rows from the `pubs_crsr` cursor as follows:

```
fetch pubs_crsr into @name, @city, @state
```

Adaptive Server expects a one-to-one correspondence between the variables in the `fetch_target_list` and the target list expressions specified by the `select_statement` that defines the cursor. The datatypes of the variables or parameters must be compatible with the datatypes of the columns in the cursor result set.

## Checking the cursor status

Adaptive Server returns a status value after each fetch. You can access the value through the global variable `@@sqlstatus`. Table 17-1 lists `@@sqlstatus` values and their meanings:

**Table 17-1: @@sqlstatus values**

Value	Meaning
0	Indicates successful completion of the fetch statement.
1	Indicates that the fetch statement resulted in an error.
2	Indicates that there is no more data in the result set. This warning can occur if the current cursor position is on the last row in the result set and the client submits a fetch statement for that cursor.

The following example determines the `@@sqlstatus` for the currently open `authors_crsr` cursor:

```
select @@sqlstatus
-----
0

(1 row affected)
```

Only a fetch statement can set `@@sqlstatus`. Other statements have no effect on `@@sqlstatus`.

## Getting multiple rows with each *fetch*

By default, `fetch` retrieves only one row at a time. You can use the `cursor rows` option of the `set` command to change the number of rows that are returned by `fetch`. However, this option does not affect a `fetch` containing an `into` clause.

The syntax for `set` is:

```
set cursor rows number for cursor_name
```

*number* specifies the number of rows for the cursor. The *number* can be a numeric literal with no decimal point, or a local variable of type `integer`. The default setting is 1 for each cursor you declare. You can set the `cursor rows` option for any cursor whether it is open or closed.

For example, you can change the number of rows fetched for the `authors_crsr` cursor as follows:

```
set cursor rows 3 for authors_crsr
```

After you set the number of cursor rows, each `fetch` of `authors_crsr` returns three rows from the cursor result set:

```
fetch authors_crsr
au_id      au_lname          au_fname
```

```
-----  
648-92-1872 Blotchet-Halls      Reginald  
712-45-1867 del Castillo       Innes  
722-51-5424 DeFrance           Michel
```

```
(3 rows affected)
```

The cursor is positioned on the last row fetched (the author Michel DeFrance in the example).

Fetching several rows at a time works especially well for client applications. If you fetch more than one row, Open Client or Embedded SQL buffers the rows sent to the client application. The client still sees a row-by-row access, but each fetch results in fewer calls to Adaptive Server, which improves performance.

## Checking the number of rows fetched

Use the `@@rowcount` global variable to monitor the number of rows of the cursor result set returned to the client up to the last fetch. This variable displays the total number of rows seen by the cursor at any one time.

Once all the rows are read from a cursor result set, `@@rowcount` represents the total number of rows in that result set. Each open cursor is associated with a specific `@@rowcount` variable. The variable is dropped when you close the cursor. Checking `@@rowcount` after a fetch provides you with the number of rows read for the cursor specified in that fetch.

The following example determines the `@@rowcount` for the currently open `authors_crsr` cursor:

```
select @@rowcount  
-----  
5  
  
(1 row affected)
```

## Updating and deleting rows using cursors

If the cursor is updatable, use the update or delete statement to update or delete rows. Adaptive Server determines whether the cursor is updatable by checking the *select\_statement* that defines the cursor. You can also explicitly define a cursor as updatable with the for update clause of the declare cursor statement. See “Making cursors updatable” on page 595 for more information.

### Updating cursor result set rows

You can use the where current of clause of the update statement to update the row at the current cursor position. Any update to the cursor result set also affects the base table row from which the cursor row is derived.

The syntax for update...where current of is:

```
update [[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}
      set [[[database.]owner.] {table_name. | view_name.}]
          column_name1 =
              {expression1 | NULL | (select_statement)}
          [, column_name2 =
              {expression2 | NULL | (select_statement)}]...
      where current of cursor_name
```

The set clause specifies the cursor’s result set column name and assigns the new value. When more than one column name and value pair is listed, you must separate them with commas.

The *table\_name* or *view\_name* must be the table or view specified in the first from clause of the select statement that defines the cursor. If that from clause references more than one table or view (using a join), you can specify only the table or view actually being updated.

For example, you can update the row that the *pubs\_crsr* cursor currently points to as follows:

```
update publishers
      set city = "Pasadena",
          state = "CA"
      where current of pubs_crsr
```

After the update, the cursor position remains unchanged. You can continue to update the row at that cursor position, as long as another SQL statement does not move the position of that cursor.

Adaptive Server allows you to update columns that are not specified in the list of columns of the cursor's *select\_statement*, but are part of the tables specified in that statement. However, when you specify a *column\_name\_list* with *for update*, you can update only the columns in that list.

## Deleting cursor result set rows

Using the *where current of* clause of the *delete* statement, you can delete the row at the current cursor position. When you delete a row from the cursor's result set, the row is deleted from the underlying database table. You can delete only one row at a time using the cursor.

The syntax for *delete...where current of* is:

```
delete [from]
[[database.]owner.] {table_name | view_name}
    where current of cursor_name
```

The *table\_name* or *view\_name* specified with a *delete...where current of* must be the table or view specified in the first *from* clause of the *select* statement that defines the cursor.

For example, you can delete the row that the *authors\_crsr* cursor currently points to by entering:

```
delete from authors
    where current of authors_crsr
```

The *from* keyword in the above example is optional.

---

**Note** You cannot delete a row from a cursor defined by a *select* statement containing a *join*, even if the cursor is updatable.

---

After you delete a row from a cursor, Adaptive Server positions the cursor before the row following the deleted row in the cursor result set. You must still use *fetch* to access that next row. If the deleted row is the last row in the cursor result set, Adaptive Server positions the cursor after the last row of the result set.

For example, after deleting the current row in the above example (the author Michel DeFrance), you can fetch the next three authors in the cursor result set (assuming that *cursor\_rows* is still set to 3):

```
fetch authors_crsr
```

```
au_id          au_lname          au_fname  
-----  
807-91-6654  Panteley        Sylvia  
899-46-2035  Ringer          Anne  
998-72-3567  Ringer          Albert  
  
( 3 rows affected)
```

You can, of course, delete a row from the base table without referring to a cursor. The cursor result set changes as changes are made to the base table.

## Closing and deallocated cursors

When you are finished with the result set of a cursor, you can close it using:

```
close cursor_name
```

Closing the cursor does not change its definition. If you reopen a cursor Adaptive Server creates a new cursor result set using the same query as before. For example:

```
close authors_crsr  
open authors_crsr
```

You can then fetch from authors\_crsr, starting from the beginning of its cursor result set. Any conditions associated with that cursor (such as the number of rows fetched defined by `set cursor rows`) remain in effect.

For example:

```
fetch authors_crsr  
au_id          au_lname          au_fname  
-----  
341-22-1782  Smith           Meander  
527-72-3246  Greene          Morningstar  
648-92-1872  Blotchet-Halls Reginald  
  
( 3 rows affected)
```

To discard a cursor, you must deallocate it using:

```
deallocate cursor cursor_name
```

Deallocating a cursor frees up any resources associated with the cursor, including the cursor name. You cannot reuse a cursor name until you deallocate it. If you deallocate an open cursor, Adaptive Server automatically closes it. Terminating a client connection to a server also closes and deallocates any open cursors.

## An example using a cursor

The following cursor example uses this query:

```
select author = au_fname + " " + au_lname, au_id  
from authors
```

The results of the query are:

author	au_id
Johnson White	172-32-1176
Marjorie Green	213-46-8915
Cheryl Carson	238-95-7766
Michael O'Leary	267-41-2394
Dick Straight	274-80-9391
Meander Smith	341-22-1782
Abraham Bennet	409-56-7008
Ann Dull	427-17-2319
Burt Gringlesby	472-27-2349
Chastity Locksley	486-29-1786
Morningstar Greene	527-72-3246
Reginald Blotchet Halls	648-92-1872
Akiko Yokomoto	672-71-3249
Innes del Castillo	712-45-1867
Michel DeFrance	722-51-5454
Dirk Stringer	724-08-9931
Stearns MacFeather	724-80-9391
Livia Karsen	756-30-7391
Sylvia Panteley	807-91-6654
Sheryl Hunter	846-92-7186
Heather McBadden	893-72-1158
Anne Ringer	899-46-2035
Albert Ringer	998-72-3567

( 23 rows affected )

To use a cursor with the above query:

1 Declare the cursor.

This declare cursor statement defines a cursor using the select statement shown above:

```
declare newauthors_crsr cursor for
select author = au_fname + " " + au_lname, au_id
from authors
for update
```

2 Open the cursor:

```
open newauthors_crsr
```

3 Fetch rows using the cursor:

```
fetch newauthors_crsr
author          au_id
-----
Johnson White      172-32-1176
(1 row affected)
```

You can fetch more than one row at a time by specifying the number of rows with the set command:

```
set cursor rows 5 for newauthors_crsr
go
fetch newauthors_crsr
author          au_id
-----
Marjorie Green    213-46-8915
Cheryl Carson     238-95-7766
Michael O'Leary    267-41-2394
Dick Straight      274-80-9391
Meander Smith      341-22-1782
(5 rows affected)
```

Each subsequent fetch brings back five more rows:

```
fetch newauthors_crsr
author          au_id
-----
Abraham Bennet    409-56-7008
Ann Dull          427-17-2319
Burt Gringlesby    472-27-2349
Chastity Locksley 486-29-1786
Morningstar Greene 527-72-3246
```

```
(5 rows affected)
```

The cursor is now positioned at author Morningstar Greene, the last row of the current fetch.

- 4 Perform the following update to change the first name of Greene:

```
update authors
set au_fname = "Violet"
where current of newauthors_crsr
```

The cursor remains at Ms. Greene's record until the next fetch.

- 5 When you are finished with the cursor, you can close it:

```
close newauthors_crsr
```

If you open the cursor again, Adaptive Server reruns the query and places the cursor before the first row in the result set. The cursor is still set to return five rows with each fetch.

- 6 Use the deallocate command to remove the cursor:

```
deallocate cursor newauthors_crsr
```

You cannot reuse a cursor name until you deallocate it.

## Using cursors in stored procedures

Cursors are particularly useful in stored procedures. They allow you to use only one query to accomplish a task that would otherwise require several queries. However, all cursor operations must execute within a single procedure. A stored procedure cannot open, fetch, or close a cursor that was not declared in the procedure. Cursors are undefined outside of the scope of the stored procedure. See “Cursor scope” on page 592.

For example, the stored procedure `au_sales` checks the sales table to see if any books by a particular author have sold well. It uses a cursor to examine each row, and then prints the information. Without the cursor, it would need several `select` statements to accomplish the same task. Outside stored procedures, you cannot include other statements with `declare cursor` in the same batch.

```
create procedure au_sales (@author_id int)
as
```

```
/* declare local variables used for fetch */
declare @title_id tid
declare @title varchar(80)
declare @ytd_sales int
declare @msg varchar(120)

/* declare the cursor to get each book written
   by given author */
declare author_sales cursor for
select ta.title_id, t.title, t.total_sales
from titleauthor ta, titles t
where ta.title_id = t.title_id
and ta.au_id = @author_id

open author_sales

fetch author_sales
      into @title_id, @title, @ytd_sales

if (@@sqlstatus = 2)
begin
    print "We do not sell books by this author."
    close author_sales
    return
end

/* if cursor result set is not empty, then process
   each row of information */
while (@@sqlstatus = 0)
begin
    if (@ytd_sales = NULL)
    begin
        select @msg = @title +
                    " -- Had no sales this year."
        print @msg
    end
    else if (@ytd_sales < 500)
    begin
        select @msg = @title +
                    " -- Had poor sales this year."
        print @msg
    end
    else if (@ytd_sales < 1000)
    begin
        select @msg = @title +
                    " -- Had mediocre sales this year."
        print @msg
    end
end
```

```
        print @msg
end
else
begin
    select @msg = @title +
        " -- Had good sales this year."
    print @msg
end

fetch author_sales into @title_id, @title,
@ytd_sales
end

au_sales "172-32-1176"
Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies -- Had good sales this year.

(return status = 0)
```

For more information about stored procedures, see Chapter 14, “Using Stored Procedures.” See also the *Performance and Tuning Guide* for information about how stored procedures that use cursors affect performance.

## Cursors and locking

*Cursor locking* methods are similar to other locking methods for Adaptive Server. In general, statements that read data (such as select or readtext) use shared locks on each data page to avoid reading changed data from an uncommitted transaction. Update statements use **exclusive locks** on each page they change. To reduce deadlocks and improve concurrency, Adaptive Server often precedes an exclusive lock with an update lock, which indicates that the client intends to change data on the page.

For updatable cursors, Adaptive Server uses update locks by default when scanning tables or views referenced with the `for update` clause of `declare cursor`. If the `for update` clause is included, but the list is empty, all tables and views referenced in the `from` clause of the `select_statement` receive update locks by default. If the `for update` clause is not included, the referenced tables and views receive shared locks. You can use shared locks instead of update locks by adding the `shared` keyword to the `from` clause after each table name for which you prefer a **shared lock**.

---

**Note** Adaptive Server releases an update lock when the cursor position moves off the data page. Since an application buffers rows for client cursors, the corresponding server cursor may be positioned on a different data row and page than the client cursor. In this case, a second client could update the row that represents the current cursor position of the first client, even if the first client used the `for update` option.

---

Any exclusive locks acquired by a cursor in a transaction are held until the end of that transaction. This also applies to shared or update locks when you use the `holdlock` keyword or the set isolation level 3 option. However, if you do not set the `close on endtran` option, the cursor remains open past the end of the transaction, and its current page lock remains in effect. It can also continue to acquire locks as it fetches additional rows.

For more information about cursor locking in Adaptive Server, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## Cursor locking options

These are the effects of specifying the `holdlock` or `shared` options (of the `select statement`) when you define an updatable cursor:

- If you omit both options, you can read data on the currently fetched pages only. Other users cannot update your currently fetched pages, through a cursor or otherwise. Other users can declare a cursor on the same tables you use for your cursor, but they cannot get an update lock on your currently fetched pages.
- If you specify the `shared` option, you can read data on the currently fetched pages only. Other users cannot update your currently fetched pages, through a cursor or otherwise.

- If you specify the holdlock option, you can read data on all pages fetched (in a current transaction) or only the pages currently fetched (if not in a transaction). Other users cannot update your currently fetched pages or pages fetched in your current transaction, through a cursor or otherwise. Other users can declare a cursor on the same tables you use for your cursor, but they cannot get an update lock on your currently fetched pages or the pages fetched in your current transaction.
- If you specify both options, you can read data on all pages fetched (in a current transaction) or only the pages currently fetched (if not in a transaction). Other users cannot update your currently fetched pages, through a cursor or otherwise.

## Getting information about cursors

Use `sp_cursorinfo` to find information about a cursor's name, its current status, and its result columns. This example displays information about `authors_crsr`:

```
sp_cursorinfo 0, authors_crsr
Cursor name 'authors_crsr' is declared at nesting
level '0'.
The cursor id is 327681
The cursor has been successfully opened 1 times
The cursor was compiled at isolation level 1.
The cursor is not open.
The cursor will remain open when a transaction is
committed or rolled back.
The number of rows returned for each FETCH is 1.
The cursor is updatable.
There are 3 columns returned by this cursor.
The result columns are:
Name = 'au_id', Table = 'authors', Type = ID,
Length = 11 (updatable)
Name = 'au_lname', Table = 'authors', Type =
VARCHAR, Length = 40 (updatable)
Name = 'au_fname', Table = 'authors', Type =
VARCHAR, Length = 20 (updatable)
```

You can also check the status of a cursor using the `@@sqlstatus` and `@@rowcount` global variables. See “Checking the cursor status” on page 599 and “Checking the number of rows fetched” on page 601.

For more information about `sp_cursorinfo`, see the *Reference Manual*.

## Using browse mode instead of cursors

Browse mode lets you search through a table and update its values one row at a time. It is used in front-end applications that use DB-Library and a host programming language. Browse mode is useful because it provides compatibility with Open Server™ applications and older Open Client libraries. However, its use in more recent Client-Library™ applications (release 10.0.x and later) is discouraged, because cursors provide the same functionality in a more portable and flexible manner. Additionally, because browse mode is Sybase-specific, it is not suited to heterogeneous environments.

Normally, you should use cursors to update data when you want to change table values row by row. Client-Library applications can use Client-Library cursors to implement some browse-mode features, such as updating a table while fetching rows from it. However, cursors may cause locking contention in the tables being selected.

For more information on browse mode, see the `dbqual` function in the Open Client/Server™ documentation.

## Browsing a table

To browse a table in a front-end application, append the `for browse` keywords to the end of the `select` statement sent to Adaptive Server.

For example:

*Start of select statement in an Open Client application*

...

for browse

*Completion of the Open Client application routine*

A table can be browsed in a front-end application if its rows have been timestamped.

## Browse-mode restrictions

You cannot use the `for browse` clause in statements involving the `union` operator, or in cursor declarations.

The keyword `holdlock` is forbidden in a `select` statement that includes the `for browse` option.

The keyword `distinct` in the `select` statement is ignored in `browse` mode.

## Timestamping a new table for browsing

When creating a new table for browsing, include a column named `timestamp` in the table definition. This column is automatically assigned the `timestamp` datatype; you do not have to specify its datatype. For example:

```
create table newtable(col1 int, timestamp,  
                      col3 char(7))
```

Whenever you insert or update a row, Adaptive Server timestamps it by automatically assigning a unique varbinary value to the `timestamp` column.

## Timestamping an existing table

To prepare an existing table for browsing, add a column named `timestamp` with `alter table`. For example:

```
alter table oldtable add timestamp
```

A `timestamp` column with a null value is added to each existing row. To generate a timestamp, update each row without specifying new column values.

For example:

```
update oldtable  
set col1 = col1
```

## Comparing *timestamp* values

Use the tsequal system function to compare timestamps when you are using browse mode in a front-end application. For example, the following statement updates a row in publishers that has been browsed. It compares the timestamp column in the browsed version of the row with the hexadecimal timestamp in the stored version. If the two timestamps are not equal, you receive an error message, and the row is not updated.

```
update publishers
set city = "Springfield"
where pub_id = "0736"
and tsequal(timestamp,0x0001000000002ea8)
```

Do not use the tsequal function in the where clause as a search argument. When you use tsequal, the rest of the where clause should match a single row uniquely. Use the tsequal function only in insert and update statements. If a timestamp column is used as a search clause, it should be compared like a regular varbinary column, that is, *timestamp1* = *timepstamp2*.

## Join cursor processing and data modifications

This section describes changes to cursor behavior, beginning with version 11.9.2, that may affect applications that use cursors. It also describes cursor positioning and modification rules for cursors on data-only-locked tables.

### Updates and deletes that can affect the cursor position

Two types of deletes and updates can affect the row at the cursor position:

- *Positioned* deletes and updates, using delete...where current of or update...where current of to change the row at the cursor position
- *Searched* deletes and updates, that is, any delete or update query that changes a value in the row at the cursor position, but without including a where current of clause

## Cursor positioning after a *delete* or *update* command without joins

The behavior of a delete or update command to the base table for a cursor on a single-table query depends on the type of modification, the locking scheme of the base table, and whether the clustered index of the base table is affected:

- A positioned delete or a searched delete that deletes the row at the cursor location positions the cursor to the next qualifying row on the table. This is true for both allpages-locked and data-only-locked tables. A subsequent positioned update or delete via this cursor is disallowed until the next fetch is done to position the cursor on the next row that qualifies.
- A searched or positioned update that does not change the position of the row leaves the current position of the cursor unchanged. The next fetch returns the next qualifying row.
- A searched or positioned update on an allpages-locked table can change the location of the row; for example, if it updates key columns of a clustered index. The cursor does not track the row; it remains positioned just before the next row at the original location. Positioned updates are not allowed until a subsequent fetch returns the next row. The updated row may be visible to the cursor a second time, if the row moves to a later position in the search order.

Data-only-locked tables have fixed row IDs, so expanding updates or updates that affect the clustered key do not move the location of the row. The cursor remains positioned on the row, and the next fetch returns the next qualifying row.

The cursor positioning behavior described above is unchanged from previous releases.

## Effects of updates and deletes on join cursors

When a searched or positioned delete is issued on the row at the cursor position of a cursor that includes a join, there can be one of two results:

- Searched deletes close the cursor implicitly. The next fetch returns error 582:

```
Cursor 'cursor_name' was closed implicitly  
because the current cursor position was deleted  
due to an update or a delete. The cursor scan
```

position could not be recovered. This happens for cursors which reference more than one table.

- Positioned deletes fail, with error 592:

The `DELETE WHERE CURRENT OF` to the cursor '`cursor_name`' failed because the cursor is on a join.

The cursor remains open, positioned at the same row.

When a searched or positioned update is issued on the join columns of a cursor:

- Searched updates to clustered index keys on allpages-locked tables succeed, but implicitly close the cursor, so the next fetch returns error 582. Searched updates to clustered index keys do not close cursors on data-only-locked tables.
- Positioned updates for all locking schemes, and searched updates that do not change a clustered index key on an allpages-locked table succeed and do not close the cursor.

The cursor position depends on the type of table and whether the column has a clustered index. See "Cursor positioning after a delete or update command without joins" on page 615 for more information.

Join column buffering may affect the result sets returned when join columns are updated. See "Join cursor processing and data modifications" on page 614 for more information.

Table 17-2 shows how delete and update commands affect join cursors.

In this table, "Left open" means that the cursor is not closed by the update. The cursor is still positioned on the row, so positioned updates can still be made, and the next fetch also succeeds.

**Table 17-2: Effects of deletes and join column updates in join cursors**

	Allpages-locked	Data-only-locked
<b>delete commands</b>		
Positioned direct delete	Error 592	Error 592
Searched direct delete	Error 582	Error 582
Searched deferred delete	Error 582	Error 582
Searched delete affecting clustered index (deferred)	Error 582	Error 582
<b>update commands</b>		
Positioned direct update	Left open	Left open

	Allpages-locked	Data-only-locked
Searched direct update	Left open	Left open
Searched deferred update	Left open	Left open
Searched update affecting clustered index (deferred)	Error 582	Left open

## Effects of join column buffering on join cursors

For cursors on queries that include joins, the join columns, search arguments and select list values for the outer table in the join order are buffered with the first fetch. If more than one row is returned from the inner table in the join order, subsequent fetches use the buffered value for the outer row. This means that the behavior of applications that update join columns and search arguments through cursors can vary, depending on the join order chosen for the query. Join column buffering affects both allpages-locked tables and data-only-locked tables.

---

**Note** In version 11.5.x, join cursors on allpages-locked tables did not buffer join values.

---

## Effects of column buffering during cursor scans

The results of cursor queries that perform joins may produce varying results, depending on the join order chosen for the query, if updates to the join column take place during the session. The following two examples illustrate how join order can affect cursor results sets.

```

select * from dept
dept_id deptloc
-----
1 Elm Street
2 Acacia Drive
3 Maple Lane
4 Oak Avenue
select * from employee
dept_id empid
-----
1 172321176
1 213468915
2 341221782
2 409567008

```

```
2 427172319  
3 472272349  
3 486291786
```

### **Example of join column buffering**

These statements declare a cursor, open it, and fetch the first row:

```
declare j_curs cursor for  
select d.dept_id, e.empid, d.deptloc  
from dept d , employee e  
where d.dept_id = e.dept_id  
and d.dept_id = 2  
open j_curs  
fetch j_curs  
dept_id      empid      deptloc  
-----  
2      341221782 Acacia Drive
```

If dept is chosen as the outer column in the join order, the value 2 for dept\_id is buffered. The following update changes the dept\_id of the join column in dept:

```
update dept set dept_id = 12  
where current of j_curs
```

This update changes the value stored in the table row, but does not alter the buffered value, hiding the result of this update to the base table from the cursor. The effect would be the same if the join column in dept were updated by a non-positioned update.

This update changes the dept\_id of the employee row:

```
update employee set dept_id = 12  
where current of j_curs
```

The next fetch on the table returns the second row in the result set:

```
fetch j_curs  
dept_id      empid      deptloc  
-----  
2      409567008 Acacia Drive
```

All matching rows from employee can be fetched and updated.

If the join order for this cursor selects employee as the outer table, and the join column in dept is updated after the first fetch, the second fetch finds no matching rows. This is the sequence of steps:

- 1 The value 2 for employee.dept\_id is buffered during the first fetch.

- 2 A searched or positioned update changes the value of dept.dept\_id to 12.
- 3 At the second fetch, 2, the buffered value for employee.dept\_id is used, and the inner table is scanned for matching values; since dept.dept\_id has been changed to 12, the second fetch does not return a row.

The two remaining rows in employee with dept\_id equal to 2 cannot be fetched by the cursor.

### Example of search argument buffering

Due to buffering of search arguments, the sensitivity of cursor results to updates of the search arguments on cursor select queries also depends on join order. This example uses the dept and employee tables as shown in “Effects of column buffering during cursor scans” on page 617. The following cursor joins on the dept\_id columns of the table, using a search argument on the deptloc column:

```
declare c cursor for
select d.dept_id, empid, deptloc
from dept d , employee e
where d.dept_id = e.dept_id
and deptloc = "Acacia Drive"
```

The first fetch on this table returns this row:

dept_id	empid	deptloc
2	41221782	Acacia Drive

This positioned update statement changes employee.dept\_id value to 4 for the current row; it needs to be performed for each employee in the department located at Acacia Drive:

```
update employee set dept_id = 4
where current of c
```

This positioned update changes the dept.deptloc value from “Acacia Drive” to “Pine Way”,

```
update dept set deptloc = "Pine Way"
where current of c
```

If the update to deptloc is issued after the first fetch, the result set may or may not return all of the rows that need to be changed; the results depend on the join order chosen for the query:

- If dept is chosen as the outer table, the dept.dept\_id and dept.deptloc columns, the values “2” and “Acacia Drive”, are buffered. After the first fetch, the update to deptloc updates the base table, but not the buffered values, and subsequent fetch commands return additional result set rows.
- If employee is chosen as the outer table, only the dept\_id qualification on the employee table is buffered. The update to the deptloc column changes the base table, and when the search argument qualification “Acacia Drive” is applied to the deptloc table at the next fetch, no rows are returned, even though two rows with employee.dept\_id of 2 remain in the table.

Note that issuing the update to deptloc after all rows from the employee table have been fetched would accomplish both updates, without a dependency on the join order.

#### **Effects of select-list buffering**

Columns from the select list of the outer table in the join order are buffered when a row from the outer table is fetched. If a searched or positioned update is performed on a column in the select list, and another row is fetched from the inner table, the buffered value from the outer table appears in the cursor result row.

## **Recommendations**

In general, applications should attempt to avoid updating join columns or columns with search clauses and other predicates to change their value when cursor scans are in progress.

- Avoid updates to the join columns of cursors or to the search arguments of join cursors whenever possible, unless you are completely sure of the join order.
- Use a cursor query that creates a worktable, and then use searched updates and deletes on the base table. When a cursor select query requires a worktable, the cursor is always insensitive to changes to the underlying table. Cursors that include order by, distinct, group by, or other clauses that create a worktable cannot be updated with positioned updates.

- If you are using cursors to update both join columns, consider using searched updates instead of positioned updates. Although further fetches may return buffered values instead of values that have been changed in the data rows, use of searched updates avoids the possibility of failing to fetch matching rows due to the choice of join order. Searched updates to a clustered index key in an allpages-locked table implicitly close the cursor.
- Note that the ANSI SQL 92 entry-level specification does not allow updates to join columns using cursors, so the behavior is implementation-specific. Applications designed to be portable across different database software must take individual implementations into account.



# Transactions: Maintaining Data Consistency and Recovery

A **transaction** groups a set of Transact-SQL statements so that they are treated as a unit. Either all statements in the group are executed or no statements are executed.

This chapter discusses:

Topic	Page
How transactions work	623
Using transactions	627
Selecting the transaction mode and isolation level	636
Using the lock table command to improve performance	647
Using transactions in stored procedures and triggers	648
Using cursors in transactions	657
Issues to consider when using transactions	658
Backup and recovery of transactions	659

For more information about transactions, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## How transactions work

Adaptive Server automatically manages all data modification commands, including single-step change requests, as transactions. By default, each insert, update, and delete statement is considered a single transaction.

However, consider the following scenario: Lee needs to make a series of data retrievals and modifications to the authors, titles, and titleauthors tables. As she is doing so, Lil begins to update the titles table. Lil's updates could cause inconsistent results with the work that Lee is doing. To prevent this from happening, Lee can group her statements into a single transaction, which locks Lil out of the portions of the tables that Lee is working on. This allows Lee to complete her work based on accurate data. After she completes her table updates, Lil's updates can take place.

You can use the following commands to create transactions:

- begin transaction – marks the beginning of the transaction block. The syntax is:

```
begin {transaction | tran} [transaction_name]
```

*transaction\_name* is the name assigned to the transaction. It must conform to the rules for identifiers. Use transaction names only on the outermost pair of nested begin/commit or begin/rollback statements.

- save transaction – marks a savepoint within a transaction:

```
save {transaction | tran} savepoint_name
```

*savepoint\_name* is the name assigned to the savepoint. It must conform to the rules for identifiers.

- commit – commits the entire transaction:

```
commit [transaction | tran | work]  
[transaction_name]
```

- rollback – rolls a transaction back to a savepoint or to the beginning of a transaction:

```
rollback [transaction | tran | work]  
[transaction_name | savepoint_name]
```

For example, user Lee sets out to change the royalty split for two authors of *The Gourmet Microwave*. Since the database would be inconsistent between the two updates, they must be grouped into a transaction, as shown in the following example:

```
begin transaction royalty_change  
  
update titleauthor  
set royaltyper = 65  
from titleauthor, titles  
where royaltyper = 75  
and titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
```

```
        and title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

        update titleauthor
        set royaltyper = 35
        from titleauthor, titles
        where royaltyper = 25
        and titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
        and title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

        save transaction percentchanged

/* After updating the royaltyper entries for
** the two authors, insert the savepoint
** percentchanged, then determine how a 10%
** increase in the book's price would affect
** the authors' royalty earnings. */

        update titles
        set price = price * 1.1
        where title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

        select (price * total_sales) * royaltyper
        from titles, titleauthor
        where title = "The Gourmet Microwave"
        and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id

/* The transaction is rolled back to the savepoint
** with the rollback transaction command. */

        rollback transaction percentchanged

        commit transaction
```

Transactions allow Adaptive Server to guarantee:

- Consistency – simultaneous queries and change requests cannot collide with each other, and users never see or operate on data that is partially through a change.
- Recovery – in case of system failure, database recovery is complete and automatic.

To support SQL standards-compliant transactions, Adaptive Server allows you to select the mode and isolation level for your transactions.

Applications that require SQL standards-compliant transactions should set those options at the beginning of every session. Transaction modes and isolation levels are described later in this chapter. See “Selecting the transaction mode and isolation level” on page 636 for more information.

## **Transactions and consistency**

In a multiuser environment, Adaptive Server must prevent simultaneous queries and data modification requests from interfering with each other. This is important because if the data being processed by a query can be changed by another user’s update, the results of the query may be ambiguous.

Adaptive Server automatically sets the appropriate level of locking for each transaction. You can make shared locks more restrictive on a query-by-query basis by including the `holdlock` keyword in a `select` statement.

## **Transactions and recovery**

A transaction is both a unit of work and a unit of recovery. The fact that Adaptive Server handles single-step change requests as transactions means that the database can be recovered completely in case of failure.

Adaptive Server’s recovery time is measured in minutes and seconds. You can specify the maximum acceptable recovery time.

The SQL commands related to recovery and backup are discussed in “Backup and recovery of transactions” on page 659.

---

**Note** Grouping large numbers of Transact-SQL commands into one long-running transaction may affect recovery time. If Adaptive Server fails before the transaction commits, recovery takes longer, because Adaptive Server must undo the transaction.

---

If you are using a remote database with Component Integration Services, there are a few differences in the way transactions are handled. See the *Component Integration Services User’s Guide* for more information.

If you have purchased and installed Adaptive Server DTM features, transactions that update data in multiple servers can also benefit from transactional consistency. See *Using Adaptive Server Distributed Transaction Features* for more information.

## Using transactions

The `begin transaction` and `commit transaction` commands tell Adaptive Server to process any number of individual commands as a single unit. `rollback transaction` undoes the transaction, either back to its beginning, or back to a **savepoint**. You define a savepoint inside a transaction using `save transaction`.

Transactions give you control over transaction management. In addition to grouping SQL statements to behave as a single unit, they improve performance, since system overhead is incurred once per transaction, rather than once for each individual command.

Any user can define a transaction. No permission is required for any of the transaction commands.

The following sections discuss general transaction topics and transaction commands, with examples.

## Allowing data definition commands in transactions

You can use certain data definition language commands in transactions by setting the `ddl in tran` database option to true. If `ddl in tran` is true in a particular database, you can issue commands such as `create table`, `grant`, and `alter table` inside transactions in that database. If `ddl in tran` is true in the `model` database, you can issue the commands inside transactions in all databases created after `ddl in tran` was set to true in `model`. To check the current settings of `ddl in tran`, use `sp_helpdb`.

---

**Warning!** Be careful when using data definition commands. The only scenario in which using data definition language commands inside transactions is justified is in `create schema`. Data definition language commands hold locks on system tables such as `sysobjects`. If you use data definition language commands inside transactions, keep the transactions short.

---

Avoid using data definition language commands on `tempdb` within transactions; doing so can slow performance to a halt. Always leave `ddl in tran` set to false in `tempdb`.

---

To set `ddl in tran` to true, enter:

```
sp_dboption database_name, "ddl in tran", true
```

Then execute the `checkpoint` command in that database.

The first parameter specifies the name of the database in which to set the option. You must be using the `master` database to execute `sp_dboption`. Any user can execute `sp_dboption` with no parameters to display the current option settings. To set options, however, you must be either a System Administrator or the Database Owner.

The following commands are allowed inside a transaction only if the `ddl in tran` option to `sp_dboption` is set to true:

**Table 18-1: DDL commands allowed in transactions**

alter table (you cannot issue the alter table command with a partition or unpartition clause within a user-defined transaction)	create default create index create procedure create rule create schema create table create trigger create view	drop default drop index drop procedure drop rule drop table drop trigger drop view	grant revoke
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------

System procedures that change the master database or create temporary tables cannot be used inside transactions.

Never use the following commands inside a transaction:

**Table 18-2: DDL commands not allowed in transactions**

alter database	disk init	load transaction	select into
alter table...partition	dump database	load database	update
alter table...unpartition	dump transaction	reconfigure	statistics
create database	drop database		truncate table

## System procedures that are not allowed in transactions

You cannot use the following system procedures within transactions:

- sp\_helpdb, sp\_helpdevice, sp\_helpindex, sp\_helpjoins, sp\_helpserver, sp\_lookup, and sp\_spaceused (because they create temporary tables)
- sp\_configure
- System procedures that change the master database

## Beginning and committing transactions

The begin transaction and commit transaction commands can enclose any number of SQL statements and stored procedures. The syntax for both statements is:

```
begin {transaction | tran} [transaction_name]
commit {transaction | tran | work} [transaction_name]
```

*transaction\_name* is the name assigned to the transaction. It must conform to the rules for identifiers.

The keywords transaction, tran, and work (in commit transaction) are synonymous; you can use one in the place of the others. However, transaction and tran are Transact-SQL extensions; only work is SQL standards-compliant.

Here is a skeletal example:

```
begin tran  
    statement  
    procedure  
    statement  
commit tran
```

commit transaction does not affect Adaptive Server if the transaction is not currently active.

## Rolling back and saving transactions

If you must cancel a transaction before it commits—either because of some failure or because of a change by the user—you must undo all of its completed statements or procedures. Refer to Table 18-4 on page 653 for the effects of rollback during processing.

You can cancel or roll back a transaction with the rollback transaction command any time before commit transaction has been given. Using savepoints, you can cancel either an entire transaction or part of it. However, you cannot cancel a transaction after it has been committed.

The syntax of rollback transaction is:

```
rollback {transaction | tran | work}  
        [transaction_name | savepoint_name]
```

A **savepoint** is a marker that the user puts inside a transaction to indicate a point to which it can be rolled back. You can commit only certain portions of a batch by rolling back the undesired portion to a savepoint before committing the entire batch.

You can insert a savepoint by putting a save transaction command in the transaction. The syntax is:

```
save {transaction | tran} savepoint_name
```

The savepoint name must conform to the rules for identifiers.

If no *savepoint\_name* or *transaction\_name* is given with rollback transaction, the transaction is rolled back to the first begin transaction in a batch.

Here is how you can use the save transaction and rollback transaction commands:

```
begin tran
    statements          Group A
    save tran mytran
        statements      Group B
    rollback tran mytran  Rolls back group B
        statements      Group C
    commit tran         Commits groups A and C
```

Until you issue a commit transaction, Adaptive Server considers all subsequent statements to be part of the transaction, unless it encounters another begin transaction statement. At that point, Adaptive Server considers all subsequent statements to be part of the new, nested transaction. Nested transactions are described under “[Nested transactions](#)” on page 633.

rollback transaction or save transaction does not affect Adaptive Server and does not return an error message if the transaction is not currently active.

You can also use save transaction to create transactions in stored procedures or triggers in such a way that they can be rolled back without affecting batches or other procedures. For example:

```
create proc myproc as
begin tran
    save tran mytran
    statements
    if ...
        begin
            rollback tran mytran
        /*
        ** Rolls back to savepoint.
        */
            commit tran
        /*
        ** This commit needed; rollback to a savepoint
        ** does not cancel a transaction.
        */
    end

    else
        commit tran
    /*
    ** Matches begin tran; either commits
    ** transaction (if not nested) or
    ** decrements nesting level.
    */
```

\* /

Unless you are rolling back to a savepoint, use transaction names only on the outermost pair of begin/commit or begin/rollback statements.

---

**Warning!** Transaction names are ignored, or can cause errors, when used in nested transaction statements. If you are using transactions in stored procedures or triggers that could be called from within other transactions, do not use transaction names.

---

## Checking the state of transactions

The global variable `@@transtate` keeps track of the current state of a transaction. Adaptive Server determines what state to return by keeping track of any transaction changes after a statement executes. `@@transtate` may contain the following values:

**Table 18-3: @@transtate values**

Value	Meaning
0	Transaction in progress. A transaction is in effect; the previous statement executed successfully.
1	Transaction succeeded. The transaction completed and committed its changes.
2	Statement aborted. The previous statement was aborted; no effect on the transaction.
3	Transaction aborted. The transaction aborted and rolled back any changes.

Adaptive Server does not clear `@@transtate` after every statement. In a transaction, you can use `@@transtate` after a statement (such as an insert) to determine whether it was successful or aborted, and to determine its effect on the transaction. The following example checks `@@transtate` during a transaction (after a successful insert) and after the transaction commits:

```
begin transaction
insert into publishers (pub_id) values ("9999")
(1 row affected)
select @@transtate
-----
0
```

```
(1 row affected)
commit transaction
select @@transtate
-----
1

(1 row affected)
```

The next example checks `@@transtate` after an unsuccessful insert (due to a rule violation) and after the transaction rolls back:

```
begin transaction
insert into publishers (pub_id) values ("7777")
Msg 552, Level 16, State 1:
A column insert or update conflicts with a rule bound
to the column. The command is aborted. The conflict
occured in database 'pubs2', table 'publishers',
rule 'pub_idrule', column 'pub_id'.
select @@transtate
-----
2

(1 row affected)
rollback transaction
select @@transtate
-----
3

(1 row affected)
```

Adaptive Server does not clear `@@transtate` after every statement. It changes `@@transtate` only in response to an action taken by a transaction. Syntax and compile errors do not affect the value of `@@transtate`.

## Nested transactions

You can nest transactions within other transactions. When you nest `begin transaction` and `commit transaction` statements, the outermost pair actually begin and commit the transaction. The inner pairs just keep track of the nesting level. Adaptive Server does not commit the transaction until the `commit transaction` that matches the outermost `begin transaction` is issued. Normally, this transaction “nesting” occurs as stored procedures or triggers that contain `begin/commit` pairs call each other.

The `@@trancount` global variable keeps track of the current nesting level for transactions. An initial implicit or explicit begin transaction sets `@@trancount` to 1. Each subsequent begin transaction increments `@@trancount`, and a commit transaction decrements it. Firing a trigger also increments `@@trancount`, and the transaction begins with the statement that causes the trigger to fire. Nested transactions are not committed unless `@@trancount` equals 0.

For example, the following nested groups of statements are not committed by Adaptive Server until the final commit transaction:

```
begin tran
    select @@trancount
    /* @@trancount = 1 */

begin tran
    select @@trancount
    /* @@trancount = 2 */

begin tran
    select @@trancount
    /* @@trancount = 3 */
    commit tran

    commit tran

    commit tran

select @@trancount
/* @@ trancount = 0 */
```

When you nest a rollback transaction statement without including a transaction or savepoint name, it rolls back to the outermost begin transaction statement and cancels the transaction.

## Example of a transaction

This example shows how a transaction might be specified:

```
begin transaction royalty_change
/* A user sets out to change the royalty split */
/* for the two authors of The Gourmet Microwave. */
/* Since the database would be inconsistent */
/* between the two updates, they must be grouped */
/* into a transaction. */
```

```
update titleauthor
set royaltyper = 65
from titleauthor, titles
where royaltyper = 75
and titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
and title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

update titleauthor
set royaltyper = 35
from titleauthor, titles
where royaltyper = 25
and titleauthor.title_id = titles.title_id
and title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

save transaction percent_changed

/* After updating the royaltyper entries for */
/* the two authors, the user inserts the */
/* savepoint "percent_changed," and then checks */
/* to see how a 10 percent increase in the */
/* price would affect the authors' royalty */
/* earnings. */

update titles
set price = price * 1.1
where title = "The Gourmet Microwave"

select (price * royalty * total_sales) * royaltyper
from titles, titleauthor, roysched
where title = "The Gourmet Microwave"
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
and titles.title_id = roysched.title_id

rollback transaction percent_changed

/* The transaction rolls back to the savepoint */
/* with the rollback transaction command. */
```

```
/* Without a savepoint, it would roll back to */  
/* the begin transaction. */
```

```
commit transaction
```

## Selecting the transaction mode and isolation level

Adaptive Server provides the following options to support SQL standards-compliant transactions:

- The **transaction mode** lets you set whether transactions begin with or without an implicit begin transaction statement.
- The **isolation level** refers to the degree to which data can be accessed by other users during a transaction.

Set these options at the beginning of every session that requires SQL standards-compliant transactions.

The following sections describe these options in more detail.

## Choosing a transaction mode

Adaptive Server supports the following transaction modes:

- The SQL standards-compatible mode, called **chained** mode, implicitly begins a transaction before any data retrieval or modification statement. These statements include: delete, insert, open, fetch, select, and update. You must still explicitly end the transaction with commit transaction or rollback transaction.
- The default mode, called **unchained** mode or Transact-SQL mode, requires explicit begin transaction statements paired with commit transaction or rollback transaction statements to complete the transaction.

You can set either mode using the chained option of the set command. However, do not mix these transaction modes in your applications. The behavior of stored procedures and triggers can vary, depending on the mode, and you may require special action to run a procedure in one mode that was created in the other.

The SQL standards require every SQL data-retrieval and data-modification statement to occur inside a transaction, using chained mode. A transaction automatically starts with the first data-retrieval or data-modification statement after the start of a session or after the previous transaction commits or aborts. This is the chained transaction mode.

You can set this mode for your current session by turning on the chained option of the `set` statement:

```
set chained on
```

However, you cannot execute the `set chained` command within a transaction. To return to the unchained transaction mode, set the `chained` option to `off`. The default transaction mode is unchained.

In chained transaction mode, Adaptive Server implicitly executes a `begin transaction` statement just before the following data retrieval or modification statements: `delete`, `insert`, `open`, `fetch`, `select`, and `update`. For example, the following group of statements produce different results, depending on which mode you use:

```
insert into publishers
    values ("9906", null, null, null)
begin transaction
delete from publishers where pub_id = "9906"
rollback transaction
```

In unchained transaction mode, the `rollback` affects only the `delete` statement, so `publishers` still contains the inserted row. In chained mode, the `insert` statement implicitly begins a transaction, and the `rollback` affects all statements up to the beginning of that transaction, including the `insert`.

All application programs and ad hoc user queries should know their current transaction mode. Which transaction mode you use depends on whether or not a particular query or application requires compliance to the SQL standards. Applications that use chained transactions (for example, the Embedded SQL precompiler) should set chained mode at the beginning of each session.

## Transaction modes and nested transactions

Although chained mode implicitly begins transactions with data retrieval or modification statements, you can nest transactions only by explicitly using begin transaction statements. Once the first transaction implicitly begins, further data retrieval or modification statements no longer begin transactions until after the first transaction commits or aborts. For example, in the following query, the first commit transaction commits all changes in chained mode; the second commit is unnecessary:

```
insert into publishers
    values ("9907", null, null, null)
insert into publishers
    values ("9908", null, null, null)
commit transaction
commit transaction
```

---

**Note** In chained mode, a data retrieval or modification statement begins a transaction whether or not it executes successfully. Even a select that does not access a table begins a transaction.

---

## Finding the status of the current transaction mode

You can check the global variable `@@tranchained` to determine Adaptive Server's current transaction mode. `select @@tranchained` returns 0 for unchained mode or 1 for chained mode.

## Choosing an isolation level

The SQL92 standard defines four levels of isolation for transactions. Each isolation level specifies the kinds of actions that are not permitted while concurrent transactions are executing. Higher levels include the restrictions imposed by the lower levels:

- Level 0 – ensures that data written by one transaction represents the actual data. It prevents other transactions from changing data that has already been modified (through an insert, delete, update, and so on) by an uncommitted transaction. The other transactions are blocked from modifying that data until the transaction commits. However, other transactions can still read the uncommitted data, which results in **dirty reads**.

- Level 1 – prevents dirty reads. Such reads occur when one transaction modifies a row, and a second transaction reads that row before the first transaction commits the change. If the first transaction rolls back the change, the information read by the second transaction becomes invalid. This is the default isolation level supported by Adaptive Server.
- Level 2 – prevents **nonrepeatable reads**. Such reads occur when one transaction reads a row and a second transaction modifies that row. If the second transaction commits its change, subsequent reads by the first transaction yield different results than the original read.

Adaptive Server supports this level for data-only-locked tables. It is not supported for allpages-locked tables.

- Level 3 – ensures that data read by one transaction is valid until the end of that transaction, hence preventing **phantom rows**. Adaptive Server supports this level through the holdlock keyword of the select statement, which applies a read-lock on the specified data. Phantom rows occur when one transaction reads a set of rows that satisfy a search condition, and then a second transaction modifies the data (through an insert, delete, update, and so on). If the first transaction repeats the read with the same search conditions, it obtains a different set of rows.

You can set the isolation level for your session by using the transaction isolation level option of the set command. You can enforce the isolation level for just a query as opposed to using the at isolation clause of the select statement. For example:

```
set transaction isolation level 0
```

## Default isolation levels for Adaptive Server and SQL92

By default, the Adaptive Server transaction isolation level is 1. The SQL92 standard requires that level 3 be the default isolation for all transactions. This prevents dirty reads, nonrepeatable reads, and phantom rows. To enforce this default level of isolation, Transact-SQL provides the transaction isolation level 3 option of the set statement. This option instructs Adaptive Server to apply a holdlock to all select operations in a transaction. For example:

```
set transaction isolation level 3
```

Applications that use transaction isolation level 3 should set that isolation level at the beginning of each session. However, setting transaction isolation level 3 causes Adaptive Server to hold any read locks for the duration of the transaction. If you also use the chained transaction mode, that isolation level remains in effect for any data retrieval or modification statement that implicitly begins a transaction. In both cases, this can lead to concurrency problems for some applications, since more locks may be held for longer periods of time.

To return your session to the Adaptive Server default isolation level:

```
set transaction isolation level 1
```

## Dirty reads

Applications that are not impacted by dirty reads may have better concurrency and reduced deadlocks when accessing the same data if you set transaction isolation level 0 at the beginning of each session. An example is an application that finds the momentary average balance for all savings accounts stored in a table. Since it requires only a snapshot of the current average balance, which probably changes frequently in an active table, the application should query the table using isolation level 0. Other applications that require data consistency, such as deposits and withdrawals to specific accounts in the table, should avoid using isolation level 0.

Scans at isolation level 0 do not acquire any read locks for their scans, so they do not block other transactions from writing to the same data, and vice versa. However, even if you set your isolation level to 0, utilities (like dbcc) and data modification statements (like update) still acquire read locks for their scans, because they must maintain the database integrity by ensuring that the correct data has been read before modifying it.

Because scans at isolation level 0 do not acquire any read locks, it is possible that the result set of a level 0 scan may change while the scan is in progress. If the scan position is lost due to changes in the underlying table, a unique index is required to restart the scan. In the absence of a unique index, the scan may be aborted.

By default, a unique index is required for a level 0 scan on a table that does not reside in a read-only database. You can override this requirement by forcing Adaptive Server to choose a nonunique index or a table scan, as follows:

```
select * from table_name (index table_name)
```

Activity on the underlying table may abort the scan before completion.

## Repeatable reads

A transaction performing repeatable reads locks all rows or pages read during the transaction. After one query in the transaction has read rows, no other transaction can update or delete the rows until the repeatable-reads transaction completes. However, repeatable-reads transactions do not provide phantom protection by performing range locking, as serializable transactions do. Other transactions can insert values that can be read by the repeatable-reads transaction and can update rows so that they match the search criteria of the repeatable-reads transaction.

A transaction performing repeatable reads locks all rows or pages read during the transaction. After one query in the transaction has read rows, no other transaction can update or delete the rows until the repeatable reads transaction completes. However, repeatable-reads transactions do not provide phantom protection by performing range locking, as serializable transactions do. Other transactions can insert values that can be read by the repeatable-reads transaction and can update rows so that they match the search criteria of the repeatable-reads transaction.

---

**Note** Transaction isolation level 2 is only supported for data-only-locked tables. If you use transaction isolation level 2 (repeatable reads) on allpages-locked tables, isolation level 3 (serializable reads) is also enforced.

---

To enforce repeatable reads at a session level, use:

```
set transaction isolation level 2
```

or

```
set transaction isolation level repeatable read
```

To enforce transaction isolation level 2 from a query, use:

```
select title_id, price, advance  
from titles  
at isolation 2
```

or

```
select title_id, price, advance  
from titles  
at isolation repeatable read
```

Transaction isolation level 2 is supported only at the transaction level. You cannot use the `at isolation` clause in a `select` or `readtext` statement to set the isolation level of a query to 2. See “[Changing the isolation level for a query](#)” on page 642.

For more information on transaction isolation levels, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## Finding the status of the current isolation level

The global variable `@@isolation` contains the current isolation level of your Transact-SQL session. Querying `@@isolation` returns the value of the active level (0, 1, or 3). For example:

```
select @@isolation
-----
1
(1 row affected)
```

For more information about isolation levels and locking, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## Changing the isolation level for a query

You can change the isolation level for a query by using the `at isolation` clause with the `select` or `readtext` statements. The `at isolation` clause supports isolation levels 0, 1, and 3. It does not support isolation level 2. The `read uncommitted`, `read committed`, and `Serializable` options of `at isolation` represent isolation levels as listed below:

<b><i>at isolation</i> option</b>	<b>Isolation level</b>
read uncommitted	0
read committed	1
Serializable	3

For example, the following two statements query the same table at isolation levels 0 and 3, respectively:

```
select *
from titles
at isolation read uncommitted
select *
from titles
at isolation serializable
```

The at isolation clause is valid only for single select and readtext queries or in the declare cursor statement. Adaptive Server returns a syntax error if you use at isolation:

- With a query using the into clause
- Within a subquery
- With a query in the create view statement
- With a query in the insert statement
- With a query using the for browse clause

If there is a union operator in the query, you must specify the at isolation clause after the last select.

The SQL-92 standard defines read uncommitted, read committed, and serializable as options for at isolation and set transaction isolation level. A Transact-SQL extension also allows you to specify 0, 1, or 3, but not 2, for at isolation. To simplify the discussion of isolation levels, the at isolation examples in this manual do not use this extension.

You can also enforce isolation level 3 using the holdlock keyword of the select statement. However, you cannot specify noholdlock or shared in a query that also specifies at isolation read uncommitted. (If you specify holdlock and isolation level 0 in a query, Adaptive Server issues a warning and ignores the at isolation clause.) When you use different ways to set an isolation level, the holdlock keyword takes precedence over the at isolation clause (except for isolation level 0), and at isolation takes precedence over the session level defined by set transaction isolation level. For more information about isolation levels and locking, see the *Performance and Tuning Guide*.

## Isolation level precedences

The following describes the precedence rules as they apply to the different methods of defining isolation levels:

- 1 The holdlock, noholdlock, and shared keywords take precedence over the at isolation clause and set transaction isolation level option, except in the case of isolation level 0. For example:

```
/* This query executes at isolation level 3 */
select *
    from titles holdlock
    at isolation read committed
create view authors_nolock
```

```
as select * from authors noholdlock
set transaction isolation level 3
/* This query executes at isolation level 1 */
select * from authors_nolock
```

- 2 The at isolation clause takes precedence over the set transaction isolation level option. For example:

```
set transaction isolation level 2
/* executes at isolation level 0 */
select * from publishers
at isolation read uncommitted
```

You cannot use the read uncommitted option of at isolation in the same query as the holdlock, noholdlock, and shared keywords.

- 3 The transaction isolation level 0 option of the set command takes precedence over the holdlock, noholdlock, and shared keywords. For example:

```
set transaction isolation level 0
/* executes at isolation level 0 */
select *
from titles holdlock
```

Adaptive Server issues a warning before executing the above query.

## Cursors and isolation levels

Adaptive Server provides three isolation levels for cursors:

- Level 0 – Adaptive Server uses no locks on base table pages that contain a row representing a current cursor position. Cursors acquire no read locks for their scans, so they do not block other applications from accessing the same data. However, cursors operating at this isolation level are not updatable, and they require a unique index on the base table to ensure the accuracy of their scans.
- Level 1 – Adaptive Server uses a shared or update lock on base table pages that contain a row representing a current cursor position. The page remains locked until the current cursor position moves off the page (as a result of fetch statements), or the cursor is closed. If an index is used to search the base table rows, it also applies shared or update locks to the corresponding index pages. This is the default locking behavior for Adaptive Server.

- Level 3 – Adaptive Server uses a shared or update lock on any base table pages that have been read in a transaction on behalf of the cursor. In addition, the locks are held until the transaction ends, as opposed to being released when the data page is no longer needed. The `holdlock` keyword applies this locking level to the base tables, as specified by the query on the tables or views.

Isolation level 2 is not supported for cursors.

Besides using `holdlock` for isolation level 3, you can use `set transaction` isolation level to specify any of the four isolation levels for your session. When you use `set transaction` isolation level, any cursor you open uses the specified isolation level, unless the transaction isolation level is set at 2. In this case, the cursor uses isolation level 3. You can also use the `select` statement's `at isolation` clause to specify isolation level 0, 1, or 3 for a specific cursor. For example:

```
declare commit_crsr cursor  
for select *  
from titles  
at isolation read committed
```

This statement makes the cursor operate at isolation level 1, regardless of the isolation level of the transaction or session. If you declare a cursor at isolation level 0 (read uncommitted), Adaptive Server also defines the cursor as read-only. You cannot specify the `for update` clause along with `at isolation read uncommitted` in a `declare cursor` statement.

Adaptive Server determines a cursor's isolation level when you open the cursor (not when you declare it), based on the following:

- If the cursor was declared with the `at isolation` clause, that isolation level overrides the transaction isolation level in which it is opened.
- If the cursor was *not* declared with `at isolation`, the cursor uses the isolation level in which it is opened. If you close the cursor and reopen it later, the cursor acquires the current isolation level of the transaction.

Adaptive Server compiles the cursor's query when you declare it. This compilation process is different for isolation level 0 as compared to isolation levels 1 or 3. If you declare a **language** or **client** cursor in a transaction with isolation level 1 or 3, opening it in a transaction at isolation level 0 causes an error.

For example:

```
set transaction isolation level 1
```

```
declare publishers_crsr cursor
    for select *
        from publishers
open publishers_crsr      /* no error */
fetch publishers_crsr
close publishers_crsr
set transaction isolation level 0
open publishers_crsr      /* error */
```

## Stored procedures and isolation levels

The Sybase system procedures always operate at isolation level 1, regardless of the isolation level of the transaction or session. User stored procedures operate at the isolation level of the transaction that executes it. If the isolation level changes within a stored procedure, the new isolation level remains in effect only during the execution of the stored procedure.

## Triggers and isolation levels

Since triggers are fired by data modification statements (like insert), all triggers execute at either the transaction's isolation level or isolation level 1, whichever is higher. So, if a trigger fires in a transaction at level 0, Adaptive Server sets the trigger's isolation level to 1 before executing its first statement.

## Compliance with SQL standards

To get transactions that comply with SQL standards, you must set the chained and transaction isolation level 3 options at the beginning of every application that changes the mode and isolation level for subsequent transactions. If your application uses cursors, you must also set the close on endtran option. These options are described in Using cursors in transactions on page 657.

## Using the *lock table* command to improve performance

The lock table command allows you to explicitly request that before a table is accessed, a table lock be put on it for the duration of a transaction. This is useful when an immediate table lock may reduce the overhead of acquiring a large number of row or page locks and save overall locking time. Examples of such cases are:

- A table will be scanned more than once in the same transaction, and each scan may need to acquire many page or row locks.
- A scan will exceed a table's lock-promotion threshold and will therefore attempt to escalate to a table lock in any event.

If a table lock is not explicitly requested, a scan acquires page or row locks until it reaches the table's lock promotion threshold (see system procedure `sp_setplockpromote`), at which point it tries to acquire a table lock.

## Syntax of the *lock table* command

The syntax of lock table is:

```
lock table table_name in {share | exclusive} mode  
[wait [no_of_seconds] | nowait]
```

The wait/nowait option allows you to specify how long the command waits to acquire a table lock if it is blocked (see “Using the wait/nowait options of the lock table command” on page 648).

The following considerations apply to the use of lock table:

- lock table can be issued only within a transaction.
- You cannot use lock table on system tables.
- You can first use lock table to lock a table in share mode, then use it to upgrade the lock to exclusive mode.
- You can use separate lock table commands to lock multiple tables within the same transaction.
- Once a table lock is obtained, there is no difference between a table locked with lock table and a table locked through lock promotion without the lock table command.

## Using the **wait/nowait** options of the **lock table** command

Use the wait option in the lock table command to specify the length of time the command waits to acquire a table lock. For example, the following command, inside a transaction, sets a wait period of 2 seconds for acquiring a table lock on the titles table:

```
lock table titles in share mode wait 2
```

If the wait time expires before a table lock is acquired, the transaction proceeds, and row or page locking is used, exactly as it would have been without the lock table command. The following informational message (error number 12207) is generated:

```
Could not acquire a lock within the specified wait period. COMMAND level wait...
```

For an example of error handling during transactions, see *lock table* in the *Reference Manual*.

---

**Note** If you use *lock table...wait* without specifying *no\_of\_seconds*, the command waits indefinitely for a lock.

---

You can set time limits on waiting for a lock at the session level and the system level. The wait period set with the lock table command overrides both of these, as described in the following section.

The nowait option is equivalent to the wait option with a 0-second wait: lock table either obtains a table lock immediately or generates the informational message given above. If the lock is not acquired, the transaction proceeds as it would have without lock table.

## Using transactions in stored procedures and triggers

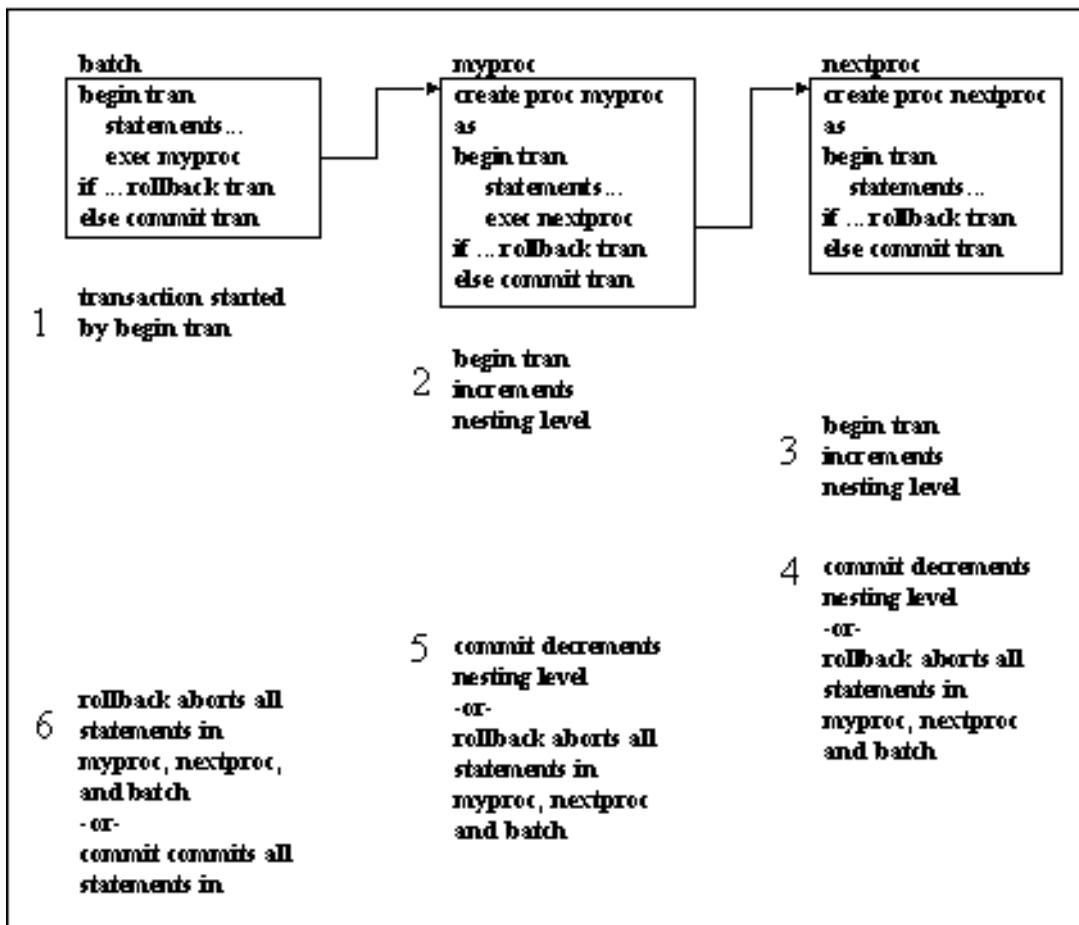
You can use transactions in stored procedures and triggers just as with statement batches. If a transaction in a batch or stored procedure invokes another stored procedure or trigger containing a transaction, that second transaction is nested into the first one.

The first explicit or implicit (using chained mode) begin transaction starts the transaction in the batch, stored procedure, or trigger. Each subsequent begin transaction increments the nesting level. Each subsequent commit transaction decrements the nesting level until it reaches 0. Adaptive Server then commits the entire transaction. A rollback transaction aborts the entire transaction up to the first begin transaction regardless of the nesting level or the number of stored procedures and triggers it spans.

In stored procedures and triggers, the number of begin transaction statements must match the number of commit transaction statements. This also applies to stored procedures that use chained mode. The first statement that implicitly begins a transaction must also have a matching commit transaction.

Figure 18-1 demonstrates how nested transaction statements work within stored procedures:

Figure 18-1: Nesting transaction statements



rollback transaction statements in stored procedures do not affect subsequent statements in the procedure or batch that originally called the procedure. Adaptive Server executes subsequent statements in the stored procedure or batch. However, rollback transaction statements in triggers abort the batch so that subsequent statements are not executed.

---

**Note** rollback statements in triggers: 1) roll back the transaction, 2) complete subsequent statements in the trigger, and 3) abort the batch so that subsequent statements in the batch are *not* executed.

---

For example, the following batch calls the stored procedure `myproc`, which includes a rollback transaction statement:

```
begin tran  
update titles set ...  
insert into titles ...  
execute myproc  
delete titles where ...
```

The `update` and `insert` statements are rolled back and the transaction is aborted. Adaptive Server continues the batch and executes the `delete` statement. However, if there is an `insert` trigger on a table that includes a rollback transaction, the entire batch is aborted and the `delete` is not executed. For example:

```
begin tran  
update authors set ...  
insert into authors ...  
delete authors where ...
```

Different transaction modes or isolation levels for stored procedures have certain requirements, which are described under “Transaction modes and stored procedures” on page 655. Triggers are not affected by the current transaction mode, since they are called as part of a data modification statement.

## Errors and transaction rollbacks

Errors that affect data integrity can affect the state of implicit or explicit transactions:

- Errors with severity levels of 19 or greater

Since these errors terminate the user connection to the server, any errors of level 19 or greater that occur while a user transaction is in progress abort the transaction and roll back all statements to the outermost `begin transaction`. Adaptive Server always rolls back any uncommitted transactions at the end of a session.

- Errors in data modification commands that affect data integrity (see Table 18-5):
  - Arithmetic overflow and divide-by-zero errors (effects on transactions can be changed with the `set arithabort arith_overflow` command)

- Permissions violations
- Rules violations
- Duplicate key violations

Table 18-4 summarizes how rollback affects Adaptive Server processing in several different contexts (such as within a transaction, stored procedure, or trigger):

**Table 18-4: How rollback affects processing**

<b>Context</b>	<b>Effects of rollback</b>
Transaction only	All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, rollback affects all of those batches.  Any commands issued after the rollback are executed.
Stored procedure only	None.
Stored procedure in a transaction	All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, rollback affects all those batches.  Any commands issued after the rollback are executed.  Stored procedure produces error message 266: “Transaction count after EXECUTE indicates that a COMMIT or ROLLBACK TRAN is missing.”
Trigger only	Trigger completes, but trigger effects are rolled back.  Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Trigger in a transaction	Trigger completes, but trigger effects are rolled back.  All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, rollback affects all those batches.  Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Nested trigger	Inner trigger completes, but all trigger effects are rolled back.  Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Nested trigger in a transaction	Inner trigger completes, but all trigger effects are rolled back.  All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, rollback affects all those batches.  Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.

In stored procedures and triggers, the number of begin transaction statements must match the number of commit statements. A procedure or trigger that contains unpaired begin/commit statements produces a warning message when it is executed. This also applies to stored procedures that use chained mode: the first statement that implicitly begins a transaction

must have a matching commit.

With duplicate key errors and rules violations, the trigger completes (unless there is also a return statement), and statements such as print, raiserror, or remote procedure calls are performed. Then, the trigger and the rest of the transaction are rolled back, and the rest of the batch is aborted. Remote procedure calls executed from inside a normal SQL transaction (not using the DB-Library two-phase commit) are not rolled back by a rollback statement.

Table 18-5 summarizes how a rollback caused by a duplicate key error or a rules violation affects Adaptive Server processing in several different contexts:

**Table 18-5: Rollbacks caused by errors in data modification**

Context	Effects of data modification errors during transactions
Transaction only	Current command is aborted. Previous commands are not rolled back, and subsequent commands are executed.
Transaction within a stored procedure	Same as above.
Stored procedure in a transaction	Same as above.
Stored procedure in a transaction	Same as above.
Trigger only	Trigger completes, but trigger effects are rolled back. Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Trigger in a transaction	Trigger completes, but trigger effects are rolled back. All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, the rollback affects all of those batches. Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Nested trigger	Inner trigger completes, but all trigger effects are rolled back. Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Nested trigger in a transaction	Inner trigger completes, but all trigger effects are rolled back. All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, the rollback affects all of those batches. Any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.

Context	Effects of data modification errors during transactions
Trigger with rollback followed by an error in the transaction	Trigger effects are rolled back. All data modifications since the start of the transaction are rolled back. If a transaction spans multiple batches, the rollback affects all of those batches.
	Trigger continues and gets duplicate key or rules error. Normally, the trigger rolls back effects and continues, but trigger effects are not rolled back in this case.
	After the trigger completes, any remaining commands in the batch are not executed. Processing resumes at the next batch.
Stored procedure in a transaction	Same as above.

## Transaction modes and stored procedures

Stored procedures written to use the unchained transaction mode may be incompatible with other transactions using chained mode, and vice versa. For example, here is a valid stored procedure using chained transaction mode:

```
create proc myproc
as
insert into publishers
    values ("9996", null, null, null)
commit work
```

A program using unchained transaction mode would fail if it called this procedure because the commit does not have a corresponding begin. You may encounter other problems:

- Applications that start a transaction using chained mode may create impossibly long transactions or may hold data locks for the entire length of their session, degrading Adaptive Server's performance.
- Applications may nest transactions at unexpected times. This can produce different results, depending on the transaction mode.

As a rule, applications using one transaction mode should call stored procedures written to use that mode. The exceptions to that rule are Sybase system procedures (except for `sp_proxmode`) that can be invoked by sessions using any transaction mode. (For information about `sp_proxmode`, see "Setting transaction modes for stored procedures" on page 656.) If no transaction is active when you execute a system procedure, Adaptive Server turns off chained mode for the duration of the procedure. Before returning, it resets the mode its original setting.

Adaptive Server tags all procedures with the transaction mode (“chained” or “unchained”) of the session in which they are created. This helps avoid problems associated with transactions that use one mode to invoke transactions that use the other mode. A stored procedure tagged as “chained” is not executable in sessions using unchained transaction mode, and vice versa.

Triggers are executable in any transaction mode. Since they are always called as part of a data modification statement, either they are part of a chained transaction (if the session uses chained mode) or they maintain their current transaction mode.

---

**Warning!** When using transaction modes, be aware of the effects each setting can have on your applications.

---

## Setting transaction modes for stored procedures

Use `sp_procxmode` to display or change the transaction mode of stored procedures. For example, to change the transaction mode for the stored procedure `byroyalty` to “chained,” enter:

```
sp_procxmode byroyalty, "chained"
```

`sp_procxmode` “anymode” lets stored procedures run under either chained or unchained transaction mode. For example:

```
sp_procxmode byroyalty, "anymode"
```

Use `sp_procxmode` without any parameter values to get the transaction modes for all stored procedures in the current database:

sp_procxmode	procedure name	transaction mode
-----	-----	-----
byroyalty		Any Mode
discount_proc		Unchained
history_proc		Unchained
insert_sales_proc		Unchained
insert_salesdetail_proc		Unchained
storeid_proc		Unchained
storename_proc		Unchained
title_proc		Unchained
titleid_proc		Unchained

(9 rows affected, return status = 0)

You can use `sp_proxmode` only in unchained transaction mode.

To change a procedure's transaction mode, you must be a System Administrator, the Database Owner, or the owner of the procedure.

## Using cursors in transactions

By default, Adaptive Server does not change a cursor's state (open or closed) when a transaction ends through a commit or rollback. The SQL standards, however, associate an open cursor with its active transaction. Committing or rolling back that transaction automatically closes any open cursors associated with it.

To enforce this SQL standards-compliant behavior, Adaptive Server provides the `close on endtran` option of the `set` command. In addition, if you set chained mode to `on`, Adaptive Server starts a transaction when you open a cursor and closes that cursor when the outermost transaction is committed or rolled back.

For example, by default, this sequence of statements produces an error:

```
open test_crsr  
commit tran  
open test_crsr
```

If you set either the `close on endtran` or `chained` options to `on`, the cursor's state changes from open to closed after the outermost transaction is committed. This allows the cursor to be reopened.

---

**Note** Since client application buffer rows are returned through cursors, and allow users to scroll within those buffers, those client applications should not scroll backward after a transaction aborts. The rows in a client cache may become invalid because of a transaction rollback (unknown to the client) that is enforced by the `close on endtran` option or the `chained` mode.

---

Any exclusive locks acquired by a cursor in a transaction are held until the end of that transaction. This also applies to shared locks when you use the holdlock keyword, the at isolation serializable clause, or the set isolation level 3 option. However, if you do not set the close on endtran option, the cursor remains open past the end of the transaction, and its current page lock remains in effect. It may also continue to acquire locks as it fetches additional rows.

The following rules define the behavior of updates through a cursor with regard to transactions:

- If an update occurs within an explicit transaction, the update is considered part of the transaction. If the transaction commits, any updates included with the transaction also commit. If the transaction aborts, any updates included with the transaction are rolled back. Updates through the same cursor that occurred outside the aborted transaction are not affected.
- If updates through a cursor occur within an explicit (and client-specified) transaction, Adaptive Server does not commit them when the cursor is closed. It commits or rolls back pending updates only when the transaction associated with that cursor ends.
- A transaction commit or abort has no effect on SQL cursor statements that do not manipulate result rows, such as declare cursor, open cursor, close cursor, set cursor rows, and deallocate cursor. For example, if the client opens a cursor within a transaction, and the transaction aborts, the cursor remains open after the abort (unless the close on endtran is set or the chained mode is used).

## **Issues to consider when using transactions**

You should consider the following issues when using transactions in your applications:

- A rollback statement, without a transaction or savepoint name, always rolls back statements to the outermost begin transaction (explicit or implicit) statement and cancels the transaction. If there is no current transaction when you issue rollback, the statement has no effect.

In triggers or stored procedures, rollback statements, without transaction or savepoint names, roll back all statements to the outermost begin transaction (explicit or implicit).

- rollback does not produce any messages to the user. If warnings are needed, use raiserror or print statements.
- Grouping a large number of Transact-SQL commands into one long-running transaction may affect recovery time. If Adaptive Server fails during a long transaction, recovery time increases, since Adaptive Server must first undo the entire transaction.
- You can have as many databases in a user transaction as there are in your Adaptive Server installation. For example, if your Adaptive Server has 25 databases, you can include 25 databases in your user transactions.
- A remote procedure call (RPC) can be executed independently from any transaction in which it is included. In a standard transaction (one that does not use Open Client DB-Library/C two-phase commit or Adaptive Server Distributed Transaction Management features), commands executed via an RPC by a remote server are not rolled back with rollback and do not depend on commit to be executed.
- Transactions cannot span more than one connection between a client application and a server. For example, a DB-Library/C application cannot group SQL statements in a transaction across multiple open DBPROCESS connections.

## Backup and recovery of transactions

Every change to a database, whether it is the result of a single update statement or a grouped set of SQL statements, is recorded in the system table syslogs. This table is called the **transaction log**.

Some commands that change the database are not logged, such as truncate table, bulk copy into a table that has no indexes, select into, writetext, and dump transaction with no\_log.

The transaction log records update, insert, or delete statements on a moment-to-moment basis. When a transaction begins, a begin transaction event is recorded in the log. As each data modification statement is received, it is recorded in the log.

The change is always recorded in the log before any change is made in the database itself. This type of log, called a write-ahead log, ensures that the database can be recovered completely in case of a failure.

Failures can be due to hardware or media problems, system software problems, application software problems, program-directed cancellations of transactions, or a user decision to cancel the transaction.

In case of any of these failures, the transaction log can be played back against a copy of the database restored from a backup made with the dump commands.

To recover from a failure, transactions that were in progress but not yet committed at the time of the failure must be undone, because a partial transaction is not an accurate change. Completed transactions must be redone if there is no guarantee that they have been written to the database device.

If there are active, long-running transactions that are not committed when Adaptive Server fails, undoing the changes may require as much time as the transactions have been running. Such cases include transactions that do not contain a commit transaction or rollback transaction to match a begin transaction. This prevents Adaptive Server from writing any changes and increases recovery time.

Adaptive Server's dynamic dump allows the database and transaction log to be backed up while use of the database continues. Make frequent backups of your database transaction log. The more often you back up your data, the less work will be lost if a system failure occurs.

The owner of each database or a user with the `ss_oper` role is responsible for backing up the database and its transaction log with the dump commands, though permission to execute them can be transferred to other users. Permission to use the load commands, however, defaults to the Database Owner and cannot be transferred.

Once the appropriate load commands are issued, Adaptive Server handles all aspects of the recovery process. Adaptive Server also controls the checkpoint interval, which is the point at which all data pages that have been changed are guaranteed to have been written to the database device. Users can force a checkpoint, if necessary, with the `checkpoint` command.

For more information about backup and recovery, see the *Reference Manual* and the *System Administration Guide*.

# Locking Commands and Options

Adaptive Server provides a wide range of commands and options for providing locking. This chapter reviews the types of locking available and how they are invoked through Transact SQL.

This chapter includes the following sections:

Topic	Page
Setting a time limit on waiting for locks	661
Readpast locking for queue processing	665

## Setting a time limit on waiting for locks

Adaptive Server allows you to specify a lock wait period that determines how long a command will wait to acquire locks:

- You can specify a time limit on waiting to obtain a table lock with the `wait/nowait` option of the `lock table` command.
- During a session, you can use the `set lock` command to specify a lock wait period for all subsequent commands issued during the session.
- The `sp_configure` parameter `lock wait` period, used with the session-level setting `set lock wait nnn`, is only applicable to user-defined tables. These settings have no influence on system tables.
- Within a stored procedure, you can use the `set lock` command to specify a lock wait period for all subsequent commands issued within the stored procedure.
- You can use the `lock wait` period option of `sp_configure` to set a Server-wide lock wait period.

## **wait/nowait option of the *lock table* command**

Within a transaction, the lock table command allows you to request a table lock on a table without waiting for the command to acquire enough row-level or page-level locks to escalate to a table lock.

The lock table command contains a wait/nowait option that allows you to specify the length of time the command will wait until operations in other transactions relinquish any locks they have on the target table.

The syntax for lock table is:

```
lock table table_name in {share | exclusive} mode  
[wait [no_of_seconds] | nowait]
```

The following command, inside a transaction, sets a wait period of 2 seconds for acquiring a table lock on the titles table:

```
lock table titles in share mode wait 2
```

If the wait time expires before a table lock is acquired, the transaction proceeds, and row or page locking is used, exactly as it would have been without lock table, and the following informational message (error number 12207) is generated:

```
Could not acquire a lock within the specified wait  
period. COMMAND level wait...
```

For a code example of handling this error message during a transaction, see lock table in the *Reference Manual*.

---

**Note** If you use lock table...wait without specifying *no\_of\_seconds*, the command waits indefinitely for a lock.

---

You can set time limits on waiting for a lock at the session level and the system level, as described in the following sections. The wait period set with the lock table command overrides both of these

The nowait option is equivalent to the wait option with a 0-second wait: lock table either obtains a table lock immediately or generates the informational message given above. If the lock is not acquired, the transaction proceeds as it would have without the lock table command.

You can use the set lock command at either the session level or within a stored procedure to control the length of time a task will wait to acquire locks.

A System Administrator can use the `sp_configure` option, `lock wait period`, to set a server-wide time limit on acquiring locks.

## Setting a session-level lock-wait limit

You can use `set lock` to control the length of time that a command in a session or in a stored procedure waits to acquire locks. The syntax is:

```
set lock {wait no_of_seconds | nowait}
```

*no\_of\_seconds* is an integer. Thus, the following example sets a session-level time limit of 5 seconds on waiting for locks:

```
set lock wait 5
```

With one exception, if the `set lock` wait period expires before a command acquires a lock, the command fails, the transaction containing it is rolled back, and the following error message is generated:

```
Msg 12205, Level 17, State 2:  
Server 'sagan', Line 1:  
Could not acquire a lock within the specified wait  
period. SESSION level wait period=300 seconds,  
spid=12, lock type=shared page, dbid=9,  
objid=2080010441, pageno=92300, rowno=0. Aborting  
the transaction.
```

The exception to this occurs when lock table in a transaction sets a longer wait period than `set lock wait`. In this case, the transaction uses the lock table wait period before timing out, as described in the preceding section.

The `set lock nowait` option is equivalent to the `set lock wait` option with a 0-second wait. If a command other than lock table cannot obtain a requested lock immediately, the command fails, its transaction is rolled back, and the preceding error message is generated.

If both a server-wide lock-wait limit and a session-level lock-wait limit are set, the session-level limit takes precedence. If no session-level wait period is set with `set lock wait`, the server-level wait period is used.

---

**Note** Stored procedures do not use a wait period set at either the server level or the session level. The wait period for commands in a stored procedure is unbounded, unless you explicitly specify a time limit by using the `set lock wait` command inside the stored procedure.

---

## Setting a server-wide lock-wait limit

A System Administrator can configure a server-wide lock-wait limit with the configuration parameter lock wait period. The syntax is:

```
sp_configure "lock wait period" [, no_of_seconds]
```

If the lock-wait period expires before a command acquires a lock, unless there is an overriding set lock wait or lock table wait period, the command fails, the transaction containing it is rolled back, and the following error message is generated:

```
Msg 12205, Level 17, State 2:  
Server 'wiz', Line 1:  
Could not acquire a lock within the specified wait  
period. SERVER level wait period=300 seconds,  
spid=12, lock type=shared page, dbid=9,  
objid=2080010441, pageno=92300, rowno=0. Aborting  
the transaction.
```

A time limit entered through set lock wait or lock table wait overrides a server-level lock-wait period. Thus, for example, if the server-level wait period is 5 seconds and the session-level wait period is 10 seconds, an update command waits 10 seconds to acquire a lock before failing and aborting its transaction.

The default server-level lock-wait period is effectively “wait forever.” To restore the default after setting a time-limited wait, you can use sp\_configure to set the value of lock wait period as follows:

```
sp_configure "lock wait period", 0, "default"
```

## Information on the number of lock-wait timeouts

sp\_sysmon reports on the number of times tasks waiting for locks did not acquire the lock within the specified period. See the *Performance and Tuning Guide* for more information.

## Readpast locking for queue processing

Readpast locking is an option available for the select and readtext commands and the data modification commands update, delete, and writetext. It instructs a command to silently skip all incompatible locks it encounters, without blocking, terminating, or generating a message. It is primarily used when the rows of a table constitute a queue. In such a case, a number of tasks may access the table to process the queued rows, which could, for example, represent queued customers or customer orders. A given task is not concerned with processing a specific member of the queue, but with processing any available members of the queue that meet its selection criteria.

## Readpast syntax

The syntax for using readpast locking is:

```
{select | update | delete} ...
    from tablename [holdlock | noholdlock]
        [readpast] [shared]
    ...
    readtext [[database.owner.]table_name.column_name
        text_pointer offset size
        [holdlock | noholdlock] [shared] [readpast]
    ...
    writetext [[database.owner.]table_name.column_name
        text_pointer [readpast] [with log] data
```

## Incompatible locks during readpast queries

For select and readtext commands, incompatible locks are exclusive locks. Therefore, select and readpast commands can access any rows or pages on which shared or update locks are held.

For delete, update, and writetext commands, any type of page or row lock is incompatible, so that:

- All rows with shared, update, or exclusive row locks are skipped in datarows-locked tables, and

- All pages with shared, update, or exclusive locks are skipped in datapages-locked tables.

All commands specifying readpast block if there is an exclusive table lock, except select commands executed at transaction isolation level 0.

## **Allpages-locked tables and readpast queries**

If the readpast option is specified for an allpages-locked table, the readpast option is ignored. The command operates at the isolation level specified for the command or session:

- If the isolation level is 0, dirty reads are performed, and the command returns values from locked rows, and does not block.
- If the isolation level is 1 or 3, the command blocks when pages with incompatible locks must be read.

## **Effects of isolation levels *select* queries with readpast**

Readpast locking is designed to be used at transaction isolation level 1 or 2.

## **Session-level transaction isolation levels and readpast**

For data-only-locked tables, the effects of readpast on a table in a select command are shown in Table 19-1.

**Table 19-1: Session-level isolation level and the use of readpast**

Session Isolation Level	Effects
0, read uncommitted (dirty reads)	readpast is ignored, and rows containing uncommitted transactions are returned to the user. A warning message is printed.
1, read committed	Rows or pages with incompatible locks are skipped; no locks are held on the rows or pages read.
2, repeatable read	Rows or pages with incompatible locks skipped; shared locks are held on all rows or pages that are read until the end of the statement or transaction.
3, serializable	readpast is ignored, and the command executes at level 3. The command blocks on any rows or pages with incompatible locks.

## Query-level isolation levels and readpast

If select commands that specify readpast also include any of the following clauses, the commands fail and display error messages:

- The at isolation clause, specifying 0 or read uncommitted
- The at isolation clause, specifying 3 or serializable
- The holdlock keyword on the same table

If a select query that specifies readpast also specifies at isolation 2 or at isolation repeatable read, shared locks are held on the readpast table or tables until the statement or transaction completes.

readtext commands that include readpast and that specify at isolation read uncommitted automatically run at isolation level 0 after issuing a warning message.

## Data modification commands with *readpast* and isolation levels

If the transaction isolation level for a session is 0, the delete, update, and writetext commands that use readpast do not issue warning messages.

- For datapages-locked tables, these commands modify all rows on all pages that are not locked with incompatible locks.
- For datarows-locked tables, they affect all rows that are not locked with incompatible locks.

If the transaction isolation level for a session is 3 (serializable reads), the delete, update, and writetext commands that use readpast automatically block when they encounter a row or page with an incompatible lock.

At transaction isolation level 2 (serializable reads), the delete, update, and writetext commands:

- Modify all rows on all pages that are not locked with incompatible locks.
- For datarows-locked tables, they affect all rows that are not locked with incompatible locks.

## ***text and image columns and readpast***

If a select command with the readpast option encounters a text column that has an incompatible lock on it, readpast locking retrieves the row, but returns the text column with a value of null. No distinction is made, in this case, between a text column containing a null value and a null value returned because the column is locked.

If an update command with the readpast option applies to two or more text columns, and the first text column checked has an incompatible lock on it, readpast locking skips the row. If the column does not have an incompatible lock, the command acquires a lock and modifies the column. Then, if any subsequent text column in the row has an incompatible lock on it, the command blocks until it can obtain a lock and modify the column.

A delete command with the readpast option skips the row if any of the text columns in the row have an incompatible lock.

## **Readpast-locking examples**

The following examples illustrate readpast locking.

To skip all rows that have exclusive locks on them:

```
select * from titles readpast
```

To update only rows that are not locked by another session:

```
update titles
  set price = price * 1.1
  from titles readpast
```

To use readpast locking on the titles table but not on the authors or titleauthor table:

```
select *
    from titles readpast, authors, titleauthor
   where titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
     and authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
```

To delete only rows that are not locked in the stores table, but to allow the scan to block on the authors table:

```
delete stores from stores readpast, authors
   where stores.city = authors.city
```



# The *pubs2* Database

This appendix describes the sample database *pubs2*. This database contains the tables *publishers*, *authors*, *titles*, *titleauthor*, *au\_pix*, *salesdetail*, *sales*, *stores*, *discounts*, *roysched*, and *blurbs*.

The *pubs2* database also contains primary and foreign keys, rules, defaults, views, triggers, and stored procedures.

A diagram of the *pubs2* database appears in Figure A-2 on page 699.

For information about installing *pubs2*, see the *Configuring Adaptive Server Enterprise* for your platform.

## Tables in the *pubs2* database

The following sections describe each *pubs2* table. In the tables, each column header specifies the column name, its datatype (including any user-defined datatypes), and its null or not null status. The column header also specifies any defaults, rules, triggers, and indexes that affect the column.

### ***publishers* table**

*publishers* is defined as follows:

```
create table publishers
(pub_id char(4) not null,
pub_name varchar(40) not null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null)
```

Its primary key is *pub\_id*:

```
sp_primarykey publishers, pub_id
```

Its *pub\_idrule* rule is defined as:

```
create rule pub_idrule
as @pub_id in
("1389", "0736", "0877", "1622", "1756")
or @pub_id like "99[0-9][0-9]"
```

Table A-1 lists the contents of publishers:

**Table A-1: publishers table**

pub_id	pub_name	city	state
0736	New Age Books	Boston	MA
0877	Binnet & Hardley	Washington	DC
1389	Algodata Infosystems	Berkeley	CA

## authors table

authors is defined as follows:

```
create table authors
(au_id id not null,
au_lname varchar(40) not null,
au_fname varchar(20) not null,
phone char(12) not null,
address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode char(10) null)
```

Its primary key is au\_id:

```
sp_primarykey authors, au_id
```

Its nonclustered index for the au\_lname and au\_fname columns is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index aunmind
on authors (au_lname, au_fname)
```

The phone column has the following default:

```
create default phonedflt as "UNKNOWN"
sp_bindefault phonedft, "authors.phone"
```

The following view uses authors:

```
create view titleview
as
select title, au_ord, au_lname,
price, total_sales, pub_id
```

```
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

Table A-2 lists the contents of authors:

**Table A-2: authors table**

au_id	au_lname	au_fname	phone	address	city	state	country	post-alcode
172-32-1176	White	Johnson	408 496-7223	10932 Bigge Rd.	Menlo Park	CA	USA	94025
213-46-8915	Green	Marjorie	510 986-7020	309 63rd St. #411	Oakland	CA	USA	94618
238-95-7766	Carson	Cheryl	510 548-7723	589 Darwin Ln.	Berkeley	CA	USA	94705
267-41-2394	O'Leary	Michael	408 286-2428	22 Cleveland Av. #14	San Jose	CA	USA	95128
274-80-9391	Straight	Dick	510 834-2919	5420 College Av.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
341-22-1782	Smith	Meander	913 843-0462	10 Mississippi Dr.	Lawrence	KS	USA	66044
409-56-7008	Bennet	Abraham	510 658-9932	6223 Bateman St.	Berkeley	CA	USA	94705
427-17-2319	Dull	Ann	415 836-7128	3410 Blonde St.	Palo Alto	CA	USA	94301
472-27-2349	Gringlesby	Burt	707 938-6445	PO Box 792	Covelo	CA	USA	95428
486-29-1786	Locksley	Chastity	415 585-4620	18 Broadway Av.	San Francisco	CA	USA	94130
527-72-3246	Greene	Morningstar	615 297-2723	22 Graybar House Rd.	Nashville	TN	USA	37215
648-92-1872	Blotchet-Halls	Reginald	503 745-6402	55 Hillsdale Bl.	Corvallis	OR	USA	97330
672-71-3249	Yokomoto	Akiko	415 935-4228	3 Silver Ct.	Walnut Creek	CA	USA	94595
712-45-1867	del Castillo	Innes	615 996-8275	2286 Cram Pl. #86	Ann Arbor	MI	USA	48105
722-51-5454	DeFrance	Michel	219 547-9982	3 Balding Pl.	Gary	IN	USA	46403
724-08-9931	Stringer	Dirk	510 843-2991	5420 Telegraph Av.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
724-80-9391	MacFeather	Stearns	510 354-7128	44 Upland Hts.	Oakland	CA	USA	94612

<b>au_id</b>	<b>au_lname</b>	<b>au_fname</b>	<b>phone</b>	<b>address</b>	<b>city</b>	<b>state</b>	<b>country</b>	<b>post-alcode</b>
756-30-7391	Karsen	Livia	510 534-9219	5720 McAuley St.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
807-91-6654	Panteley	Sylvia	301 946-8853	1956 Arlington Pl.	Rockville	MD	USA	20853
846-92-7186	Hunter	Sheryl	415 836-7128	3410 Blonde St.	Palo Alto	CA	USA	94301
893-72-1158	McBadden	Heather	707 448-4982	301 Putnam	Vacaville	CA	USA	95688
899-46-2035	Ringer	Anne	801 826-0752	67 Seventh Av.	Salt Lake City	UT	USA	84152
998-72-3567	Ringer	Albert	801 826-0752	67 Seventh Av.	Salt Lake City	UT	USA	84152

## **titles table**

**titles** is defined as follows:

```
create table titles
(title_id tid not null,
title varchar(80) not null,
type char(12) not null,
pub_id char(4) null,
price money null,
advance money null,
total_sales int null,
notes varchar(200) null,
pubdate datetime not null,
contract bit not null)
```

Its primary key is **title\_id**:

```
sp_primarykey titles, title_id
```

Its **pub\_id** column is a foreign key to the **publishers** table:

```
sp_foreignkey titles, publishers, pub_id
```

Its nonclustered index for the **title** column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleind
on titles (title)
```

Its **title\_idrule** is defined as:

```
create rule title_idrule
```

```
as
@title_id like "BU[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "[MT]C[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "P[SC][0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]xxxx" or
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]YYYY"
```

The type column has the following default:

```
create default typedflt as "UNDECIDED"
sp_bindefault typedflt, "titles.type"
```

The pubdate column has this default:

```
create default datedflt as getdate()
sp_bindefault datedflt, "titles.pubdate"
```

**titles** uses the following trigger:

```
create trigger delttitle
on titles
for delete
as
if (select count(*) from deleted, salesdetail
where salesdetail.title_id = deleted.title_id) >0
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "You can't delete a title with sales."
end
```

The following view uses **titles**:

```
create view titleview
as
select title, au_ord, au_lname,
price, total_sales, pub_id
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

Table A-3 lists the contents of **titles**:

**Table A-3: titles table**

<b>title- _id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub- _id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad- vance</b>	<b>total_- sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub- date</b>	<b>con- tract</b>
BU1032	The Busy Executive's Database Guide	business	1389	19.99	5000.00	4095	An overview of available database systems with emphasis on common business applications. Illustrated.	Jun 12, 1986	1
BU1111	Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance Sheets	business	1389	11.95	5000.00	3876	Helpful hints on how to use your electronic resources to the best advantage.	Jun 9, 1988	1
BU2075	You Can Combat Computer Stress!	business	0736	2.99	10125.00	18722	The latest medical and psychological techniques for living with the electronic office. Easy-to-understand explanations.	Jun 30, 1985	1
BU7832	Straight Talk About Computers	business	1389	19.99	5000.00	4095	Annotated analysis of what computers can do for you: a no-hype guide for the critical user.	Jun 22, 1987	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>total_sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
MC2222	Silicon Valley Gastro-nomic Treats	mod-cook	0877	19.99	0.00	2032	Favorite recipes for quick, easy, and elegant meals; tried and tested by people who never have time to eat, let alone cook.	Jun 9, 1989	1
MC3021	The Gourmet Microwave	mod-cook	0877	2.99	15000.00	22246	Traditional French gourmet recipes adapted for modern microwave cooking.	Jun 18, 1985	1
PC1035	But Is It User Friendly?	popular_comp	1389	22.95	7000.00	8780	A survey of software for the naive user, focusing on the “friendliness” of each.	Jun 30, 1986	1
MC3026	The Psychology of Computer Cooking	UNDE-CIDED	0877	NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	Jul 24, 1991	0

Tables in the pubs2 database

---

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>total_sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PC8888	Secrets of Silicon Valley	popular_comp	1389	20.00	8000.00	4095	Muckraking reporting by two courageous women on the world's largest computer hardware and software manufacturers.	Jun 12, 1987	1
PC9999	Net Etiquette	popular_comp	1389	NULL	NULL	NULL	A must-read for computer conferencing debutantes!	Jul 24, 1996	0
PS1372	Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals: Behavior Variations	psycho-logy	0877	21.59	7000.00	375	A must for the specialist, this book examines the difference between those who hate and fear computers and those who think they are swell.	Oct 21, 1990	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>total_sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PS2091	Is Anger the Enemy?	psychology	0736	10.95	2275.00	2045	Carefully researched study of the effects of strong emotions on the body. Metabolic charts included.	Jun 15, 1989	1
PS2106	Life Without Fear	psychology	0736	7.00	6000.00	111	New exercise, meditation, and nutritional techniques that can reduce the shock of daily interactions. Popular audience. Sample menus included. Exercise video available separately.	Oct 5, 1990	1
PS3333	Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies	psychology	0736	19.99	2000.00	4072	What happens when the data runs dry? Searching evaluations of information shortage effects on heavy users.	Jun 12, 1988	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>total_sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PS7777	Emotional Security: A New Algorithm	psycho- logy	0736	7.99	4000.00	3336	Protecting yourself and your loved ones from undue emotional stress in the modern world. Use of computer and nutritional aids emphasized.	Jun 12, 1988	1
TC3218	Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of the Mediterranean	trad_cook	0877	20.95	7000.00	375	Profusely illustrated in color, this makes a wonderful gift book for a cuisine-oriented friend.	Oct 21, 1990	1
TC4203	Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens	trad_cook	0877	11.95	4000.00	15096	More anecdotes from the Queen's favorite cook, describing life among English royalty. Recipes, techniques, tender vignettes.	Jun 12, 1985	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>total_sales</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>contract</b>
TC7777	Sushi, Anyone?	trad_cook	0877	14.99	8000.00	4095	Detailed instructions on improving your position in life by learning how to make authentic Japanese sushi in your spare time. 5-10% increase in number of friends per recipe reported from beta test.	Jun 12, 1987	1

## **titleauthor table**

titleauthor is defined as follows:

```
create table titleauthor
(au_id int not null,
title_id int not null,
au_ord tinyint null,
royaltyper int null)
```

Its primary keys are au\_id and title\_id:

```
sp_primarykey titleauthor, au_id, title_id
```

Its title\_id and au\_id columns are foreign keys to titles and authors:

```
sp_foreignkey titleauthor, titles, title_id
sp_foreignkey titleauthor, authors, au_id
```

Its nonclustered index for the au\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index auidind
```

```
on titleauthor(au_id)
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind
on titleauthor(title_id)
```

The following view uses titleauthor:

```
create view titleview
as
select title, au_ord, au_lname,
price, total_sales, pub_id
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

The following procedure uses titleauthor:

```
create procedure byroyalty @percentage int
as
select au_id from titleauthor
where titleauthor.royaltyper = @percentage
```

Table A-4 lists the contents of titleauthor:

**Table A-4: titleauthor table**

<b>au_id</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>au_ord</b>	<b>royaltyper</b>
172-32-1176	PS3333	1	100
213-46-8915	BU1032	2	40
213-46-8915	BU2075	1	100
238-95-7766	PC1035	1	100
267-41-2394	BU1111	2	40
267-41-2394	TC7777	2	30
274-80-9391	BU7832	1	100
409-56-7008	BU1032	1	60
427-17-2319	PC8888	1	50
472-27-2349	TC7777	3	30
486-29-1786	PC9999	1	100
486-29-1786	PS7777	1	100
648-92-1872	TC4203	1	100
672-71-3249	TC7777	1	40
712-45-1867	MC2222	1	100
722-51-5454	MC3021	1	75
724-80-9391	BU1111	1	60
724-80-9391	PS1372	2	25
756-30-7391	PS1372	1	75
807-91-6654	TC3218	1	100
846-92-7186	PC8888	2	50
899-46-2035	MC3021	2	25
899-46-2035	PS2091	2	50
998-72-3567	PS2091	1	50
998-72-3567	PS2106	1	100

## ***salesdetail* table**

*salesdetail* is defined as follows:

```
create table salesdetail
(stor_id char(4) not null,
ord_num numeric(6,0),
title_id tid not null,
qty smallint not null,
discount float not null)
```

Its primary keys are stor\_id and ord\_num:

```
sp_primarykey salesdetail, stor_id, ord_num
```

Its title\_id, stor\_id, and ord\_num columns are foreign keys to titles and sales:

```
sp_foreignkey salesdetail, titles, title_id  
sp_foreignkey salesdetail, sales, stor_id, ord_num
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind  
on salesdetail (title_id)
```

Its nonclustered index for the stor\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index salesdetailind  
on salesdetail (stor_id)
```

Its title\_idrule rule is defined as:

```
create rule title_idrule  
as  
@title_id like "BU[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "[MT]C[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "P[SC][0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]xxxx" or  
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]yyyy"
```

salesdetail uses the following trigger:

```
create trigger totalsales_trig on salesdetail  
for insert, update, delete  
as  
/* Save processing: return if there are no rows  
affected */  
if @@rowcount = 0  
begin  
    return  
end  
/* add all the new values */  
/* use isnull: a null value in the titles table means  
**          "no sales yet" not "sales unknown"  
*/  
update titles  
set total_sales = isnull(total_sales, 0) + (select  
sum(qty)  
from inserted  
where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id)  
where title_id in (select title_id from inserted)  
/* remove all values being deleted or updated */
```

```

update titles
    set total_sales = isnull(total_sales, 0) - (select
sum(qty)
        from deleted
       where titles.title_id = deleted.title_id)
      where title_id in (select title_id from deleted)

```

Table A-5 lists the contents of salesdetail:

**Table A-5: salesdetail table**

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
7896	234518	TC3218	75	40.000000
7896	234518	TC7777	75	40.000000
7131	Asoap432	TC3218	50	40.000000
7131	Asoap432	TC7777	80	40.000000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	TC3218	85	40.000000
8042	91-A-7	PS3333	90	45.000000
8042	91-A-7	TC3218	40	45.000000
8042	91-A-7	PS2106	30	45.000000
8042	91-V-7	PS2106	50	45.000000
8042	55-V-7	PS2106	31	45.000000
8042	91-A-7	MC3021	69	45.000000
5023	BS-345-DSE-860-1F2	PC1035	1000	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	BU2075	500	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	BU1032	200	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	BU7832	150	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	PS7777	125	46.700000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	TC7777	1000	46.700000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	BU1032	1000	46.700000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	PC1035	750	46.700000
7131	Fsoap867	BU1032	200	46.700000
7066	BA52498	BU7832	100	46.700000
7066	BA71224	PS7777	200	46.700000
7066	BA71224	PC1035	300	46.700000
7066	BA71224	TC7777	350	46.700000
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	PS2091	1000	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	PS2091	200	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	PS7777	250	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	PS3333	345	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	BU7832	360	46.700000

Tables in the pubs2 database

---

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	PS2091	845	46.700000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	PS7777	581	46.700000
5023	ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0	PS1372	375	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	BU1111	175	46.700000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	BU7832	885	46.700000
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	BU7832	900	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	TC4203	550	46.700000
7131	Fsoap867	TC4203	350	46.700000
7896	234518	TC4203	275	46.700000
7066	BA71224	TC4203	500	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	TC4203	512	46.700000
7131	Fsoap867	MC3021	400	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	PC8888	105	46.700000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	PC8888	300	46.700000
7066	BA71224	PC8888	350	46.700000
7067	NB-3.142	PC8888	335	46.700000
7131	Asoap432	BU1111	500	46.700000
7896	234518	BU1111	340	46.700000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	BU1111	370	46.700000
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	PS3333	750	46.700000
8042	13-J-9	BU7832	300	51.700000
8042	13-E-7	BU2075	150	51.700000
8042	13-E-7	BU1032	300	51.700000
8042	13-E-7	PC1035	400	51.700000
8042	91-A-7	PS7777	180	51.700000
8042	13-J-9	TC4203	250	51.700000
8042	13-E-7	TC4203	226	51.700000
8042	13-E-7	MC3021	400	51.700000
8042	91-V-7	BU1111	390	51.700000
5023	AB-872-DEF-732-2Z1	MC3021	5000	50.000000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	PC8888	2000	50.000000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	BU2075	2000	50.000000
5023	GH-542-NAD-713-9F9	PC1035	2000	50.000000
5023	ZA-000-ASD-324-4D1	PC1035	2000	50.000000
5023	ZA-000-ASD-324-4D1	PS7777	1500	50.000000
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	TC7777	1500	50.000000

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
5023	ZS-645-CAT-415-1B2	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	ZS-645-CAT-415-1B2	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	PS3333	2687	50.000000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	TC7777	1090	50.000000
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	PC1035	2138	50.000000
5023	ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0	MC2222	2032	50.000000
5023	ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0	BU1111	1001	50.000000
5023	ZA-000-ASD-324-4D1	BU1111	1100	50.000000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	BU7832	1400	50.000000
5023	BS-345-DSE-860-1F2	TC4203	2700	50.000000
5023	GH-542-NAD-713-9F9	TC4203	2500	50.000000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	TC4203	3500	50.000000
5023	BS-345-DSE-860-1F2	MC3021	4500	50.000000
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	MC3021	1600	50.000000
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	MC3021	2550	50.000000
5023	ZA-000-ASD-324-4D1	MC3021	3000	50.000000
5023	ZS-645-CAT-415-1B2	MC3021	3200	50.000000
5023	BS-345-DSE-860-1F2	BU2075	2200	50.000000
5023	GH-542-NAD-713-9F9	BU1032	1500	50.000000
5023	ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0	PC8888	1005	50.000000
7896	124152	BU2075	42	50.500000
7896	124152	PC1035	25	50.500000
7131	Asoap132	BU2075	35	50.500000
7067	NB-1.142	PC1035	34	50.500000
7067	NB-1.142	TC4203	53	50.500000
8042	12-F-9	BU2075	30	55.500000
8042	12-F-9	BU1032	94	55.500000
7066	BA27618	BU2075	200	57.200000
7896	124152	TC4203	350	57.200000
7066	BA27618	TC4203	230	57.200000
7066	BA27618	MC3021	200	57.200000
7131	Asoap132	MC3021	137	57.200000
7067	NB-1.142	MC3021	270	57.200000
7067	NB-1.142	BU2075	230	57.200000
7131	Asoap132	BU1032	345	57.200000
7067	NB-1.142	BU1032	136	57.200000
8042	12-F-9	TC4203	300	62.200000

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
8042	12-F-9	MC3021	270	62.200000
8042	12-F-9	PC1035	133	62.200000
5023	AB-123-DEF-425-1Z3	TC4203	2500	60.500000
5023	AB-123-DEF-425-1Z3	BU2075	4000	60.500000
6380	342157	BU2075	200	57.200000
6380	342157	MC3021	250	57.200000
6380	356921	PS3333	200	46.700000
6380	356921	PS7777	500	46.700000
6380	356921	TC3218	125	46.700000
6380	234518	BU2075	135	46.700000
6380	234518	BU1032	320	46.700000
6380	234518	TC4203	300	46.700000
6380	234518	MC3021	400	46.700000

## **sales table**

sales is defined as follows:

```
create table sales
(stor_id char(4) not null,
ord_num varchar(20) not null,
date datetime not null)
```

Its primary keys are stor\_id and ord\_num:

```
sp_primarykey sales, stor_id, ord_num
```

Its stor\_id column is a foreign key to stores:

```
sp_foreignkey sales, stores, stor_id
```

Table A-6 lists the contents of sales:

**Table A-6: sales table**

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>date</b>
5023	AB-123-DEF-425-1Z3	Oct 31 1995
5023	AB-872-DEF-732-2Z1	Nov 6 1995
5023	AX-532-FED-452-2Z7	Dec 1 1996
5023	BS-345-DSE-860-1F2	Dec 12 1996
5023	GH-542-NAD-713-9F9	Feb 15 1997
5023	NF-123-ADS-642-9G3	Mar 18 1997
5023	XS-135-DER-432-8J2	Mar 21 1997
5023	ZA-000-ASD-324-4D1	Jul 27 1994
5023	ZD-123-DFG-752-9G8	Mar 21 1997
5023	ZS-645-CAT-415-1B2	Mar 21 1997
5023	ZZ-999-ZZZ-999-0A0	Mar 21 1997
6380	342157	Dec 13 1994
6380	356921	Feb 17 1995
7066	BA27618	Oct 12 1996
7066	BA52498	Oct 27 1995
7066	BA71224	Aug 5 1996
7067	NB-1.142	Jan 2 1997
7067	NB-3.142	Jun 13 1995
7131	Asoap132	Nov 16 1996
7131	Asoap432	Dec 20 1995
7131	Fsoap867	Sep 8 1996
7896	124152	Aug 14 1996
7896	234518	Feb 14 1997
8042	12-F-9	Jul 13 1996
8042	13-E-7	May 23 1995
8042	13-J-9	Jan 13 1997
8042	55-V-7	Feb 20 1997
8042	91-A-7	Mar 20 1997
8042	91-V-7	Mar 20 1997

## **stores table**

**stores** is defined as follows:

```
create table stores
  (stor_id char(4) not null,
```

```

stor_name varchar(40) not null,
stor_address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode char(10) null,
payterms varchar(12) null)

```

Its primary key is stor\_id:

```
sp_primarykey stores, stor_id
```

Table A-7 lists the contents of stores:

**Table A-7: stores table**

stor_id	stor_name	stor_address	city	state	country	postal-code	pay-terms
7066	Barnum's	567 Pasadena Ave.	Tustin	CA	USA	92789	Net 30
7067	News & Brews	577 First St.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	96745	Net 30
7131	Doc-U-Mat: Quality Laundry and Books	24-A Avrogado Way	Remulade	WA	USA	98014	Net 60
8042	Bookbeat	679 Carson St.	Portland	OR	USA	89076	Net 30
6380	Eric the Read Books	788 Catamaugus Ave.	Seattle	WA	USA	98056	Net 60
7896	Fricative Bookshop	89 Madison St.	Fremont	CA	USA	90019	Net 60
5023	Thoreau Reading Discount Chain	20435 Walden Expressway	Concord	MA	USA	01776	Net 60

## **roysched table**

roysched is defined as follows:

```

create table roysched
title_id tid not null,
lorange int null,
hirange int null,
royalty int null)

```

Its primary key is title\_id:

```
sp_primarykey roysched, title_id
```

Its title\_id column is a foreign key to titles:

```
sp_foreignkey roysched, titles, title_id
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind  
on roysched (title_id)
```

Table A-8 lists the contents of roysched:

**Table A-8: roysched table**

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
BU1032	0	5000	10
BU1032	5001	50000	12
PC1035	0	2000	10
PC1035	2001	3000	12
PC1035	3001	4000	14
PC1035	4001	10000	16
PC1035	10001	50000	18
BU2075	0	1000	10
BU2075	1001	3000	12
BU2075	3001	5000	14
BU2075	5001	7000	16
BU2075	7001	10000	18
BU2075	10001	12000	20
BU2075	12001	14000	22
BU2075	14001	50000	24
PS2091	0	1000	10
PS2091	1001	5000	12
PS2091	5001	10000	14
PS2091	10001	50000	16
PS2106	0	2000	10
PS2106	2001	5000	12
PS2106	5001	10000	14
PS2106	10001	50000	16
MC3021	0	1000	10
MC3021	1001	2000	12
MC3021	2001	4000	14
MC3021	4001	6000	16
MC3021	6001	8000	18
MC3021	8001	10000	20
MC3021	10001	12000	22
MC3021	12001	50000	24
TC3218	0	2000	10
TC3218	2001	4000	12
TC3218	4001	6000	14
TC3218	6001	8000	16
TC3218	8001	10000	18

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
TC3218	10001	12000	20
TC3218	12001	14000	22
TC3218	14001	50000	24
PC8888	0	5000	10
PC8888	5001	10000	12
PC8888	10001	15000	14
PC8888	15001	50000	16
PS7777	0	5000	10
PS7777	5001	50000	12
PS3333	0	5000	10
PS3333	5001	10000	12
PS3333	10001	15000	14
PS3333	15001	50000	16
BU1111	0	4000	10
BU1111	4001	8000	12
BU1111	8001	10000	14
BU1111	12001	16000	16
BU1111	16001	20000	18
BU1111	20001	24000	20
BU1111	24001	28000	22
BU1111	28001	50000	24
MC2222	0	2000	10
MC2222	2001	4000	12
MC2222	4001	8000	14
MC2222	8001	12000	16
MC2222	8001	12000	16
MC2222	12001	20000	18
MC2222	20001	50000	20
TC7777	0	5000	10
TC7777	5001	15000	12
TC7777	15001	50000	14
TC4203	0	2000	10
TC4203	2001	8000	12
TC4203	8001	16000	14
TC4203	16001	24000	16
TC4203	24001	32000	18
TC4203	32001	40000	20

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
TC4203	40001	50000	22
BU7832	0	5000	10
BU7832	5001	10000	12
BU7832	10001	15000	14
BU7832	15001	20000	16
BU7832	20001	25000	18
BU7832	25001	30000	20
BU7832	30001	35000	22
BU7832	35001	50000	24
PS1372	0	10000	10
PS1372	10001	20000	12
PS1372	20001	30000	14
PS1372	30001	40000	16
PS1372	40001	50000	18

## ***discounts* table**

*discounts* is defined as follows:

```
create table discounts
(discounttype varchar(40) not null,
stor_id char(4) null,
lowqty smallint null,
highqty smallint null,
discount float not null)
```

Its primary keys are *discounttype* and *stor\_id*:

```
sp_primarykey discounts, discounttype, stor_id
```

Its *stor\_id* is a foreign key to stores:

```
sp_foreignkey discounts, stores, stor_id
```

Table A-9 lists the contents of *discounts*:

***Table A-9: discounts table***

<b>discounttype</b>	<b>stor_id</b>	<b>lowqty</b>	<b>highqty</b>	<b>discount</b>
Initial Customer	8042	NULL	NULL	10.5
Volume Discount	NULL	100	1001	6.7
Huge Volume Discount	NULL	1001	NULL	10
Customer Discount	8042	NULL	NULL	5

## **blurbs table**

blurbs is defined as follows:

```
create table blurbs
(au_id  id not null,
copy   text null)
```

Its primary key is au\_id:

```
sp_primarykey blurbs, au_id
```

Its au\_id column is a foreign key to authors:

```
sp_foreignkey blurbs, authors, au_id
```

Table A-10 lists the contents of blurbs:

**Table A-10: blurbs table**

au_id	copy
486-29-1786	If Chastity Locksley didn't exist, this troubled world would have created her! Not only did she master the mystic secrets of inner strength to conquer adversity when she encountered it in life, but also, after "reinventing herself," as she says, by writing "Emotional Security: A New Algorithm" following the devastating loss of her cat, Old Algorithm, she founded Publish or Perish, the page-by-page, day-by-day, write-yourself-to-wellness encounter workshops franchise empire, the better to share her inspiring discoveries with us all. Her "Net Etiquette," a brilliant social treatise in its own right and a fabulous pun, is the only civilized alternative to the gross etiquette often practiced on the public networks.
648-92-1872	A chef's chef and a raconteur's raconteur, Reginald Blotchet-Halls calls London his second home. "Th' palace kitchen's me first 'ome, act'lly!" Blotchet-Halls' astounding ability to delight our palates with palace delights is matched only by his equal skill in satisfying our perpetual hunger for delicious back-stairs gossip by serving up tidbits and entrees literally fit for a king!
998-72-3567	Albert Ringer was born in a trunk to circus parents, but another kind of circus trunk played a more important role in his life years later. He grew up as an itinerant wrestler and roustabout in the renowned Ringer Brothers and Betty and Bernie's Circus. Once known in the literary world only as Anne Ringer's wrestling brother, he became a writer while recuperating from a near-fatal injury received during a charity benefit bout with a gorilla. "Slingshotting" himself from the ring ropes, Albert flew over the gorilla's head and would have landed head first on the concrete. He was saved from certain death by Nana, an elephant he had befriended as a child, who caught him in her trunk. Nana held him so tightly that three ribs cracked and he turned blue from lack of oxygen. "I was delirious. I had an out-of-body experience! My whole life passed before my eyes. I promised myself 'If I get through this, I'll use my remaining time to share what I learned out there.' I owe it all to Nana!"

au_id	copy
899-46-2035	Anne Ringer ran away from the circus as a child. A university creative writing professor and her family took Anne in and raised her as one of their own. In this warm and television-less setting she learned to appreciate the great classics of literature. The stream of aspiring and accomplished writers that flowed constantly through the house confirmed her repudiation of the circus family she'd been born into: "Barbarians!" The steadily growing recognition of her literary work was, to her, vindication. When her brother's brush with death brought them together after many years, she took advantage of life's crazy chance thing and broke the wall of anger that she had constructed to separate them. Together they wrote, "Is Anger the Enemy?" an even greater blockbuster than her other collaborative work, with Michel DeFrance, "The Gourmet Microwave."
672-71-3249	They asked me to write about myself and my book, so here goes: I started a restaurant called "de Gustibus" with two of my friends. We named it that because you really can't discuss taste. We're very popular with young business types because we're young business types ourselves. Whenever we tried to go out to eat in a group we always got into these long tiresome negotiations: "I just ate Italian," or "I ate Greek yesterday," or "I NEVER eat anything that's not organic!" Inefficient. Not what business needs today. So, it came to us that we needed a restaurant we could all go to every day and not eat the same thing twice in a row maybe for a year! We thought, "Hey, why make people choose one kind of restaurant over another, when what they really want is a different kind of food?" At de Gustibus you can eat Italian, Chinese, Japanese, Greek, Russian, Tasmanian, Iranian, and on and on all at the same time. You never have to choose. You can even mix and match! We just pooled our recipes, opened the doors, and never looked back. We're a big hit, what can I say? My recipes in "Sushi, Anyone?" are used at de Gustibus. They satisfy crowds for us every day. They will work for you, too. Period!
409-56-7008	Bennet was the classic too-busy executive. After discovering computer databases, he now has the time to run several successful businesses and sit on three major corporate boards. Bennet also donates time to community service organizations. Miraculously, he also finds time to write and market executive-oriented, in-depth computer hardware and software reviews. "I'm hyperkinetic, so being dynamic and fast-moving is a piece of cake. But being organized isn't easy for me or for anyone I know. There's just one word for that: 'databases!' Databases can cure you or kill you. If you get the right one, you can be like me. If you get the wrong one, watch out. Read my book!"

## au\_pix table

au\_pix is defined as follows:

```
create table au_pix
(au_id char(11) not null,
pic image null,
format_type char(11) null,
bytesize int null,
pixwidth_hor char(14) null,
pixwidth_vert char(14) null)
```

Its primary key is au\_id:

```
sp_primarykey au_pix, au_id
```

Its au\_id column is a foreign key to authors:

```
sp_foreignkey au_pix, authors, au_id
```

Table A-11 lists the contents of au\_pix:

**Table A-11: au\_pix table**

au_id	pic	format_type	bytesize	pixwidth_hor	pixwidth_vert
409-56-7008	0x0000...	PICT	30220	626	635
486-29-1786	0x59a6...	Sunraster	27931	647	640
648-92-1872	0x59a6...	Sunraster	36974	647	640
672-71-3249	0x000a...	PICT	13487	654	639
899-46-2035	0x4949...	TIF	52023	648	641
998-72-3567	0x4949...	TIF	52336	653	637

The pic column contains binary data, which is not reproduced in its entirety in this table. The pictures represented by this data are shown on the next page. Since the image data (six pictures, two each in PICT, TIF, and Sunraster file formats) is quite large, you should run the *installpix2* script *only* if you want to use or test the image datatype. The image data is supplied to show how Sybase stores image data. Sybase does not supply any tools for displaying image data: you must use the appropriate screen graphics tools in order to display the images once you have extracted them from the database.

*Figure A-1: Author portraits from the au\_pix table*



Akiko Yokomoto



Chastity Locksley

486-29-1786



Anne Ringer

899-46-2035



Albert Ringer

998-72-3567



Abraham Bennet

409-56-7008

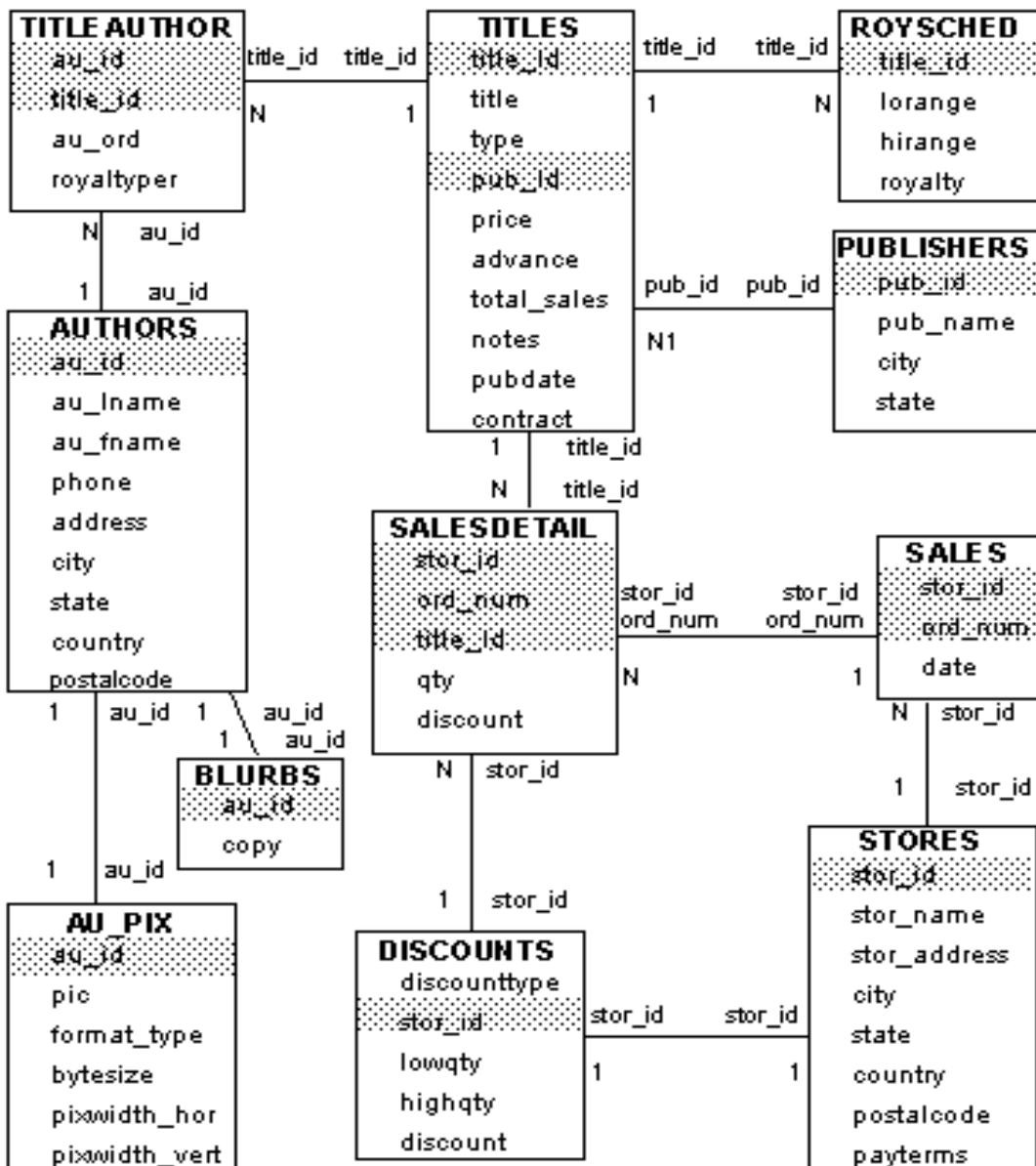


Reginald Blotchet-Halls

648-92-1872

## Diagram of the *pubs2* database

*Figure A-2: Diagram of the *pubs2* database*





# The *pubs3* Database

This chapter describes the sample database *pubs3*. This database contains the tables *publishers*, *authors*, *titles*, *titleauthor*, *salesdetail*, *sales*, *stores*, *store\_employees*, *discounts*, *roysched*, and *blurbs*.

The *pubs3* database also contains

primary and foreign keys, rules, defaults, views, triggers, and stored procedures.

A diagram of the *pubs3* database appears in Figure B-1 on page 733.

For information about installing *pubs3*, see the configuration guide for your platform.

## Tables in the *pubs3* database

The following sections describe each *pubs3* table. In the tables, each column header specifies the column name, its datatype (including any user-defined datatypes), its null or not null status, and how it uses referential integrity. The column header also specifies any defaults, rules, triggers, and indexes that affect the column.

### *publishers* table

*publishers* is defined as follows:

```
create table publishers
(pub_id char(4) not null,
pub_name varchar(40) not null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
unique nonclustered (pub_id))
```

Its *pub\_idrule* rule is defined as:

```
create rule pub_idrule
as @pub_id in
("1389", "0736", "0877", "1622", "1756")
or @pub_id like "99[0-9][0-9]"
```

Table B-1 lists the contents of publishers:

**Table B-1: publishers table**

pub_id	pub_name	city	state
0736	New Age Books	Boston	MA
0877	Binnet & Hardley	Washington	DC
1389	Algodata Infosystems	Berkeley	CA

## authors table

authors is defined as follows:

```
create table authors
(au_id id not null,
au_lname varchar(40) not null,
au_fname varchar(20) not null,
phone char(12) not null,
address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode char(10) null,
unique nonclustered (au_id))
```

Its nonclustered index for the au\_lname and au\_fname columns is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index aunmind
on authors (au_lname, au_fname)
```

The phone column has the following default:

```
create default phonedflt as "UNKNOWN"
sp_bindefault phonedft, "authors.phone"
```

The following view uses authors:

```
create view titleview
as
select title, au_ord, au_lname,
price, num_sold, pub_id
from authors, titles, titleauthor
```

```
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

Table B-2 lists the contents of authors:

**Table B-2: authors table**

<b>au_id</b>	<b>au_lname</b>	<b>au_fname</b>	<b>phone</b>	<b>address</b>	<b>city</b>	<b>state</b>	<b>country</b>	<b>postalcode</b>
172-32-1176	White	Johnson	408-496-7223	10932 Bigge Rd.	Menlo Park	CA	USA	94025
213-46-8915	Green	Marjorie	510-986-7020	309 63rd St. #411	Oakland	CA	USA	94618
238-95-7766	Carson	Cheryl	510-548-7723	589 Darwin Ln.	Berkeley	CA	USA	94705
267-41-2394	O'Leary	Michael	408-286-2428	22 Cleveland Av. #14	San Jose	CA	USA	95128
274-80-9391	Straight	Dick	510-834-2919	5420 College Av.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
341-22-1782	Smith	Meander	913-843-0462	10 Mississippi Dr.	Lawrence	KS	USA	66044
409-56-7008	Bennet	Abraham	510-658-9932	6223 Bateman St.	Berkeley	CA	USA	94705
427-17-2319	Dull	Ann	415-836-7128	3410 Blonde St.	Palo Alto	CA	USA	94301
472-27-2349	Gringlesby	Burt	707-938-6445	PO Box 792	Covelo	CA	USA	95428
486-29-1786	Locksley	Chastity	415-585-4620	18 Broadway Av.	San Francisco	CA	USA	94130
527-72-3246	Greene	Morningstar	615-297-2723	22 Graybar House Rd.	Nashville	TN	USA	37215
648-92-1872	Blotchet-Halls	Reginald	503-745-6402	55 Hillsdale Bl.	Corvallis	OR	USA	97330

<b>au_id</b>	<b>au_lname</b>	<b>au_fname</b>	<b>phone</b>	<b>address</b>	<b>city</b>	<b>state</b>	<b>country</b>	<b>postalcode</b>
672-71-3249	Yokomoto	Akiko	415 935-4228	3 Silver Ct.	Walnut Creek	CA	USA	94595
712-45-1867	del Castillo	Innes	615 996-8275	2286 Cram Pl. #86	Ann Arbor	MI	USA	48105
722-51-5454	DeFrance	Michel	219 547-9982	3 Balding Pl.	Gary	IN	USA	46403
724-08-9931	Stringer	Dirk	510 843-2991	5420 Telegraph Av.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
724-80-9391	MacFeather	Stearns	510 354-7128	44 Upland Hts.	Oakland	CA	USA	94612
756-30-7391	Karsen	Livia	510 534-9219	5720 McAuley St.	Oakland	CA	USA	94609
807-91-6654	Panteley	Sylvia	301 946-8853	1956 Arlington Pl.	Rockville	MD	USA	20853
846-92-7186	Hunter	Sheryl	415 836-7128	3410Blonde St.	Palo Alto	CA	USA	94301
893-72-1158	McBadden	Heather	707 448-4982	301 Putnam	Vacaville	CA	USA	95688
899-46-2035	Ringer	Anne	801 826-0752	67 Seventh Av.	Salt Lake City	UT	USA	84152
998-72-3567	Ringer	Albert	801 826-0752	67 Seventh Av.	Salt Lake City	UT	USA	84152

## **titles table**

**titles** is defined as follows:

```
create table titles
(title_id tid not null,
title varchar(80) not null,
```

```
type char(12) not null,
pub_id char(4) null
    references publishers(pub_id),
price money null,
advance numeric(12,2) null,
num_sold int null,
notes varchar(200) null,
pubdate datetime not null,
contract bit not null,
unique nonclustered (title_id))
```

Its nonclustered index for the title column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleind
on titles (title)
```

Its title\_idrule is defined as:

```
create rule title_idrule
as
@title_id like "BU[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "[MT]C[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "P[SC][0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]xxxx" or
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]yyyy"
```

The type column has the following default:

```
create default typedf1t as "UNDECIDED"
sp_bindefault typedf1t, "titles.type"
```

The pubdate column has this default:

```
create default datedf1t as getdate()
sp_bindefault datedf1t, "titles.pubdate"
```

titles uses the following trigger:

```
create trigger delttitle
on titles
for delete
as
if (select count(*) from deleted, salesdetail
where salesdetail.title_id = deleted.title_id) > 0
begin
    rollback transaction
    print "You can't delete a title with sales."
end
```

The following view uses titles:

```
create view titleview  
as  
select title, au_ord, au_lname,  
price, num_sold, pub_id  
from authors, titles, titleauthor  
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id  
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

Table B-3 lists the contents of titles:

**Table B-3: titles table**

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>contract</b>
BU1032	The Busy Executive's Database Guide	business	1389	19.99	5000.00	4095	An overview of available database systems with emphasis on common business applications. Illustrated.	Jun 12, 1986	1
BU1111	Cooking with Computers: Surreptitious Balance Sheets	business	1389	11.95	5000.00	3876	Helpful hints on how to use your electronic resources to the best advantage.	Jun 9, 1988	1
BU2075	You Can Combat Computer Stress!	business	0736	2.99	10125.00	18722	The latest medical and psychological techniques for living with the electronic office. Easy-to-understand explanations.	Jun 30, 1985	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
BU7832	Straight Talk About Computers	business	1389	19.99	5000.00	4095	Annotated analysis of what computers can do for you: a no-hype guide for the critical user.	Jun 22, 1987	1
MC2222	Silicon Valley Gastro-nomic Treats	mod_cook	0877	19.99	0.00	2032	Favorite recipes for quick, easy, and elegant meals; tried and tested by people who never have time to eat, let alone cook.	Jun 9, 1989	1
MC3021	The Gourmet Microwave	mod_cook	0877	2.99	15000.00	22246	Traditional French gourmet recipes adapted for modern microwave cooking.	Jun 18, 1985	1
PC1035	But Is It User Friendly?	popular_comp	1389	22.95	7000.00	8780	A survey of software for the naive user, focusing on the “friendliness” of each.	Jun 30, 1986	1
MC3026	The Psychology of Computer Cooking	UNDE-CIDED	0877	NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	Jul 24, 1991	0

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_-sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PC8888	Secrets of Silicon Valley	popular_comp	1389	20.00	8000.00	4095	Muck-raking reporting by two courageous women on the world's largest computer hardware and software manufacturers.	Jun 12, 1987	1
PC9999	Net Etiquette	popular_comp	1389	NULL	NULL	NULL	A must-read for computer conferencing debutantes!	Jul 24, 1996	0
PS1372	Computer Phobic and Non-Phobic Individuals: Behavior Variations	psycho-logy	0877	21.59	7000.00	375	A must for the specialist, this book examines the difference between those who hate and fear computers and those who think they are swell.	Oct 21, 1990	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PS2091	Is Anger the Enemy?	psycho- logy	0736	10.95	2275.00	2045	Carefully researched study of the effects of strong emotions on the body. Metabolic charts included.	Jun 15, 1989	1
PS2106	Life Without Fear	psycho- logy	0736	7.00	6000.00	111	New exercise, meditation, and nutritional techniques that can reduce the shock of daily interactions. Popular audience. Sample menus included. Exercise video available separately.	Oct 5, 1990	1
PS3333	Prolonged Data Deprivation: Four Case Studies	psycho- logy	0736	19.99	2000.00	4072	What happens when the data runs dry? Searching evaluations of information-shortage effects on heavy users.	Jun 12, 1988	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_-sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
PS7777	Emotional Security: A New Algorithm	psycho- logy	0736	7.99	4000.00	3336	Protecting yourself and your loved ones from undue emotional stress in the modern world. Use of computer and nutritional aids emphasized.	Jun 12, 1988	1
TC3218	Onions, Leeks, and Garlic: Cooking Secrets of the Mediterranean	trad_coo k	0877	20.95	7000.00	375	Profusely illustrated in color, this makes a wonderful gift book for a cuisine-oriented friend.	Oct 21, 1990	1
TC4203	Fifty Years in Buckingham Palace Kitchens	trad_coo k	0877	11.95	4000.00	15096	More anecdotes from the Queen's favorite cook describing life among English royalty. Recipes, techniques, tender vignettes.	Jun 12, 1985	1

<b>title_id</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>type</b>	<b>pub_id</b>	<b>price</b>	<b>ad-vance</b>	<b>num_sold</b>	<b>notes</b>	<b>pub-date</b>	<b>con-tract</b>
TC7777	Sushi, Anyone?	trad_cook	0877	14.99	8000.00	4095	Detailed instructions on improving your position in life by learning how to make authentic Japanese sushi in your spare time. 5-10% increase in number of friends per recipe reported from beta test.	Jun 12, 1987	1

## **titleauthor table**

titleauthor is defined as follows:

```
create table titleauthor
(au_id id not null
    references authors(au_id),
title_id tid not null
    references titles(title_id),
au_ord tinyint null,
royaltyper int null)
```

Its nonclustered index for the au\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index auidind
on titleauthor(au_id)
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind
on titleauthor(title_id)
```

The following view uses titleauthor:

```
create view titleview
as
select title, au_ord, au_lname,
price, num_sold, pub_id
from authors, titles, titleauthor
where authors.au_id = titleauthor.au_id
and titles.title_id = titleauthor.title_id
```

The following procedure uses titleauthor:

```
create procedure byroyalty @percentage int
as
select au_id from titleauthor
where titleauthor.royaltyper = @percentage
```

Table B-4 lists the contents of titleauthor:

**Table B-4: titleauthor table**

<b>au_id</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>au_ord</b>	<b>royaltyper</b>
172-32-1176	PS3333	1	100
213-46-8915	BU1032	2	40
213-46-8915	BU2075	1	100
238-95-7766	PC1035	1	100
267-41-2394	BU1111	2	40
267-41-2394	TC7777	2	30
274-80-9391	BU7832	1	100
409-56-7008	BU1032	1	60
427-17-2319	PC8888	1	50
472-27-2349	TC7777	3	30
486-29-1786	PC9999	1	100
486-29-1786	PS7777	1	100
648-92-1872	TC4203	1	100
672-71-3249	TC7777	1	40
712-45-1867	MC2222	1	100
722-51-5454	MC3021	1	75
724-80-9391	BU1111	1	60
724-80-9391	PS1372	2	25
756-30-7391	PS1372	1	75
807-91-6654	TC3218	1	100
846-92-7186	PC8888	2	50
899-46-2035	MC3021	2	25
899-46-2035	PS2091	2	50
998-72-3567	PS2091	1	50
998-72-3567	PS2106	1	100

## ***salesdetail* table**

*salesdetail* is defined as follows:

```
create table salesdetail
(stor_id char(4) not null
    references sales(stor_id),
ord_num numeric(6,0)
    references sales(ord_num),
title_id tid not null
    references titles(title_id),
```

```
qty smallint not null,  
discount float not null)
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind  
on salesdetail (title_id)
```

Its nonclustered index for the stor\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index salesdetailind  
on salesdetail (stor_id)
```

Its title\_idrule rule is defined as:

```
create rule title_idrule  
as  
@title_id like "BU[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "[MT]C[0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "P[SC][0-9][0-9][0-9][0-9]" or  
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]xxxx" or  
@title_id like "[A-Z][A-Z]yyyy"
```

salesdetail uses the following trigger:

```
create trigger totalsales_trig on salesdetail  
for insert, update, delete  
as  
/* Save processing: return if there are no rows  
affected */  
if @@rowcount = 0  
begin  
    return  
end  
/* add all the new values */  
/* use isnull: a null value in the titles table  
means  
**          "no sales yet" not "sales unknown"  
*/  
update titles  
    set num_sold = isnull(num_sold, 0) + (select  
sum(qty)  
        from inserted  
        where titles.title_id = inserted.title_id)  
    where title_id in (select title_id from inserted)  
/* remove all values being deleted or updated */  
update titles  
    set num_sold = isnull(num_sold, 0) - (select  
sum(qty)  
        from deleted
```

```
where titles.title_id = deleted.title_id)
where title_id in (select title_id from deleted)
```

Table B-5 lists the contents of salesdetail:

**Table B-5: salesdetail table**

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
7896	100014	TC3218	75	40.000000
7896	100014	TC7777	75	40.000000
7131	100017	TC3218	50	40.000000
7131	100017	TC7777	80	40.000000
5023	100020	TC3218	85	40.000000
8042	100016	PS3333	90	45.000000
8042	100016	TC3218	40	45.000000
8042	100016	PS2106	30	45.000000
8042	100023	PS2106	50	45.000000
8042	100015	PS2106	31	45.000000
8042	100016	MC3021	69	45.000000
5023	100009	PC1035	1000	46.700000
5023	100007	BU2075	500	46.700000
5023	100007	BU1032	200	46.700000
5023	100007	BU7832	150	46.700000
5023	100007	PS7777	125	46.700000
5023	100018	TC7777	1000	46.700000
5023	100018	BU1032	1000	46.700000
5023	100018	PC1035	750	46.700000
7131	100004	BU1032	200	46.700000
7066	100012	BU7832	100	46.700000
7066	100021	PS7777	200	46.700000
7066	100021	PC1035	300	46.700000
7066	100021	TC7777	350	46.700000
5023	100025	PS2091	1000	46.700000
7067	100019	PS2091	200	46.700000
7067	100019	PS7777	250	46.700000
7067	100019	PS3333	345	46.700000
7067	100019	BU7832	360	46.700000
5023	100020	PS2091	845	46.700000
5023	100020	PS7777	581	46.700000
5023	100027	PS1372	375	46.700000
7067	100019	BU1111	175	46.700000
5023	100020	BU7832	885	46.700000
5023	100025	BU7832	900	46.700000
5023	100007	TC4203	550	46.700000

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
7131	100004	TC4203	350	46.700000
7896	100014	TC4203	275	46.700000
7066	100021	TC4203	500	46.700000
7067	100019	TC4203	512	46.700000
7131	100004	MC3021	400	46.700000
5023	100007	PC8888	105	46.700000
5023	100018	PC8888	300	46.700000
7066	100021	PC8888	350	46.700000
7067	100019	PC8888	335	46.700000
7131	100017	BU1111	500	46.700000
7896	100014	BU1111	340	46.700000
5023	100007	BU1111	370	46.700000
5023	100025	PS3333	750	46.700000
8042	100014	BU7832	300	51.700000
8042	100013	BU2075	150	51.700000
8042	100013	BU1032	300	51.700000
8042	100013	PC1035	400	51.700000
8042	100016	PS7777	180	51.700000
8042	100014	TC4203	250	51.700000
8042	100013	TC4203	226	51.700000
8042	100013	MC3021	400	51.700000
8042	100023	BU1111	390	51.700000
5023	100003	MC3021	5000	50.000000
5023	100018	PC8888	2000	50.000000
5023	100018	BU2075	2000	50.000000
5023	100010	PC1035	2000	50.000000
5023	100022	PC1035	2000	50.000000
5023	100022	PS7777	1500	50.000000
5023	100025	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	100025	TC7777	1500	50.000000
5023	100026	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	100026	BU2075	3000	50.000000
5023	100020	PS3333	2687	50.000000
5023	100020	TC7777	1090	50.000000
5023	100020	PC1035	2138	50.000000
5023	100027	MC2222	2032	50.000000
5023	100027	BU1111	1001	50.000000

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>title_id</b>	<b>qty</b>	<b>discount</b>
5023	100022	BU1111	1100	50.000000
5023	100018	BU7832	1400	50.000000
5023	100009	TC4203	2700	50.000000
5023	100010	TC4203	2500	50.000000
5023	100018	TC4203	3500	50.000000
5023	100009	MC3021	4500	50.000000
5023	100007	MC3021	1600	50.000000
5023	100018	MC3021	2550	50.000000
5023	100022	MC3021	3000	50.000000
5023	100026	MC3021	3200	50.000000
5023	100009	BU2075	2200	50.000000
5023	100010	BU1032	1500	50.000000
5023	100027	PC8888	1005	50.000000
7896	100013	BU2075	42	50.500000
7896	100013	PC1035	25	50.500000
7131	100005	BU2075	35	50.500000
7067	100011	PC1035	34	50.500000
7067	100011	TC4203	53	50.500000
8042	100015	BU2075	30	55.500000
8042	100015	BU1032	94	55.500000
7066	100001	BU2075	200	57.200000
7896	100013	TC4203	350	57.200000
7066	100001	TC4203	230	57.200000
7066	100001	MC3021	200	57.200000
7131	100005	MC3021	137	57.200000
7067	100011	MC3021	270	57.200000
7067	100011	BU2075	230	57.200000
7131	100005	BU1032	345	57.200000
7067	100011	BU1032	136	57.200000
8042	100015	TC4203	300	62.200000
8042	100015	MC3021	270	62.200000
8042	100015	PC1035	133	62.200000
5023	100002	TC4203	2500	60.500000
5023	100002	BU2075	4000	60.500000
6380	100028	BU2075	200	57.200000
6380	100028	MC3021	250	57.200000
6380	100029	PS3333	200	46.700000

stor_id	ord_num	title_id	qty	discount
6380	100029	PS7777	500	46.700000
6380	100029	TC3218	125	46.700000
6380	100014	BU2075	135	46.700000
6380	100014	BU1032	320	46.700000
6380	100014	TC4203	300	46.700000
6380	100014	MC3021	400	46.700000

## ***sales* table**

*sales* is defined as follows:

```
create table sales
(stor_id char(4) not null
    references stores(stor_id),
ord_num numeric(6,0) identity,
date datetime not null,
unique nonclustered (ord_num))
```

Table B-6 lists the contents of *sales*:

**Table B-6: sales table**

<b>stor_id</b>	<b>ord_num</b>	<b>date</b>
5023	100002	Oct 31 1995
5023	100003	Nov 6 1995
5023	100007	Dec 1 1996
5023	100009	Dec 12 1996
5023	100010	Feb 15 1997
5023	100018	Mar 18 1997
5023	100020	Mar 21 1997
5023	100022	Jul 27 1994
5023	100025	Mar 21 1997
5023	100026	Mar 21 1997
5023	100027	Mar 21 1997
6380	100028	Dec 13 1994
6380	100029	Feb 17 1995
7066	100001	Oct 12 1996
7066	100012	Oct 27 1995
7066	100021	Aug 5 1996
7067	100008	Jan 2 1997
7067	100024	Jun 13 1995
7131	100006	Nov 16 1996
7131	100011	Dec 20 1995
7131	100019	Sep 8 1996
7896	100005	Aug 14 1996
7896	100017	Feb 14 1997
8042	100004	Jul 13 1996
8042	100013	May 23 1995
8042	100014	Jan 13 1997
8042	100015	Feb 20 1997
8042	100016	Mar 20 1997
8042	100023	Mar 20 1997

## **stores table**

stores is defined as follows:

```
create table stores
(stor_id char(4) not null,
```

```

stor_name varchar(40) not null,
stor_address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,
state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode char(10) null,
payterms varchar(12) null,
unique nonclustered (stor_id))

```

Table B-7 lists the contents of stores:

**Table B-7: stores table**

stor_id	stor_name	stor_address	city	state	country	postalcode	payterms
7066	Barnum's	567 Pasadena Ave.	Tustin	CA	USA	92789	Net 30
7067	News & Brews	577 First St.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	96745	Net 30
7131	Doc-U-Mat: Quality Laundry and Books	24-A Avrogado Way	Remulade	WA	USA	98014	Net 60
8042	Bookbeat	679 Carson St.	Portland	OR	USA	89076	Net 30
6380	Eric the Read Books	788 Catamaugus Ave.	Seattle	WA	USA	98056	Net 60
7896	Fricative Bookshop	89 Madison St.	Fremont	CA	USA	90019	Net 60
5023	Thoreau Reading Discount Chain	20435 Walden Expressway	Concord	MA	USA	01776	Net 60

## **store\_employees table**

store\_employees is defined as follows:

```

create table store_employees
(stor_id char(4) null
     references stores(stor_id),
emp_id id not null,
mgr_id id null
     references store_employees(emp_id),
emp_lname varchar(40) not null,
emp_fname varchar(20) not null,
phone char(12) null,
address varchar(40) null,
city varchar(20) null,

```

```

state char(2) null,
country varchar(12) null,
postalcode varchar(10) null,
unique nonclustered (emp_id))

```

Table B-8 lists the contents of store\_employees:

**Table B-8: store\_employees table**

stor_id	emp_id	mgr_id	emp_lname	emp_fname	phone	address	city	state	country	postalcode
7066	415-92-7301	415-92-7301	Chichikov	P.	619 336-8978	20 Alfalfa Ave.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7066	202-93-0009	415-92-7301	Spindle-shanks	Daisy	619 336-8900	14 Wild Cat Way	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7066	444-89-2342	415-92-7301	Ratsbane	Ian	619 344-92321	1827 Road-runner Dr.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92278
7066	332-78-2382	415-92-7301	Bayless	Chuck	619 777-4356	7 Maynard Dr.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7066	898-00-2383	415-92-7301	Pumpion	Tammy	619 222-3434	10089 Lazy Joe Ave.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7066	222-90-3737	415-92-7301	Barnum	Arthur	619 333-3232	522 Lupine Ave.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7066	939-32-1212	415-92-7301	Ronald	Bill	619 333-4550	69 Coyote Ct.	Twenty-nine Palms	CA	USA	92277
7067	343-38-9494	343-38-9494	St. Augustine	Fiona	408 222-8383	17 Call of the Wild Rd.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	95030
7067	222-90-3483	343-38-9494	Sebastian	Basil	408 334-8928	29 Dharma Rd.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	95030
7067	121-00-3823	343-38-9494	March-main	Albin	408 343-8934	1001 Top of the Hill Ct.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	95030
7067	232-29-8938	343-38-9494	Barlow	Hilary	408 232-3332	2 Topping Way	Los Gatos	CA	USA	95032

stor_id	emp_id	mgr_id	emp_lname	emp_fname	phone	address	city	state	country	postal-code
7067	232-89-	343-38-	Dieuberri	Gustav	408675-	30 Mount Madonna Rd.	Los Gatos	CA	USA	95030
		9393	9494		8938					
7131	565-67-	565-67-	Lavator	Marie	206328-	14 Peter Grubb Rd.	Renton	WA	USA	98058
	3920	3920			2838	SE				
7131	848-34-	565-67-	Sope	Inez	206438-	1238 Index Ave.	Renton	WA	USA	98058
	4838	3920			3434	SE				
7131	232-38-	565-67-	Tubb	Wally	206323-	180 Moses Lane S	Renton	WA	USA	98058
	2232	3920			2828					
7131	111-90-	565-67-	Basin	Chalker	206323-	192 Naches	Renton	WA	USA	98055
	3283	3920			7777	Ave. N				
7131	323-32-	565-67-	Waters	Johnny	206323-	1 Pelly Ave. N	Renton	WA	USA	98055
	4444	3920			9020					
7131	238-32-	238-32-	Scrubbs	Billy	206444-	90 Vashion	Renton	WA	USA	98059
	0079	0079			3232	St. NE				
7131	349-00-	565-67-	Tuwel	Terry	206323-	66 Sunset Blvd. SW	Renton	WA	USA	98055
	9393	3920			3233					
8042	723-99-	723-99-	Crookshank	Flannery	503323-	SW 222 Laber Ct.	Portland	OR	USA	97236
	9329	9329			9090					
8042	343-32-	723-99-	Sitwell	Davenport	503333-	14 SE Krause	Portland	OR	USA	97236
	0034	9329			9494	Lane				
8042	877-12-	723-99-	Bartholomew	Curan	503333-	18 SE Knee St.	Portland	OR	USA	97266
	9393	9329			9332					
8042	323-99-	723-99-	Yaddo	Mary	503333-	NE Klickitat	Portland	OR	USA	97212
	0009	9329			4844	St.				
8042	434-94-	723-99-	Peacock	Mavis	503494-	4978 SW Huns Rd.	Portland	OR	USA	97223
	3203	9329			3413					

Tables in the pubs3 database

---

<b>stor- _id</b>	<b>emp- _id</b>	<b>mgr- _id</b>	<b>emp_- Iname</b>	<b>emp_- fname</b>	<b>phone</b>	<b>address</b>	<b>city</b>	<b>state</b>	<b>coun- try</b>	<b>postal- code</b>
8042	232- 94- 5885	723- 99- 9329	Baldwin	Dorothy	503 333- 9494	9 N. Image Canoe Ave.	Port- land	OR	USA	97217
8042	323- 09- 5872	723- 99- 9329	Corbit	P.	503 335- 3491	89 NW Industry St.	Port- land	OR	USA	97210
8042	323- 54- 3434	723- 99- 9329	Pilkinton	Faith	503 333- 4531	18 SW Inez St.	Port- land	OR	USA	97224
8042	331- 90- 8484	723- 99- 9329	Botteghe	Obscura	503 889- 2832	555 SW Keerins Ct.	Port- land	OR	USA	97223
8042	884- 32- 8282	723- 99- 9329	Martineau	Tristan	503 323- 5954	346 N. Leade Rd.	Port- land	OR	USA	97203
8042	112- 90- 3829	723- 99- 9329	Laughton	Karla	503 323- 5929	900 N. Magpie St.	Port- land	OR	USA	97202
8042	434- 23- 9292	723- 99- 9329	MacLeish	Cochran	503 433- 9493	1722 SE Ogden Ct.	Port- land	OR	USA	97202
6380	433- 01- 3922	433- 01- 3922	Horgran	Eric	206 323- 4983	18 Thud Dr. S.	Seattle	WA	USA	98198
6380	232- 30- 9999	433- 01- 3922	Farnsdale	Finwick	206 434- 4949	2 Bellevue Ave.	Seattle	WA	USA	98118
6380	333- 90- 3828	433- 01- 3922	Wolfe	Wanda	206 323- 3333	2 S. Boze St. #15	Seattle	WA	USA	98108
6380	322- 09- 2122	433- 01- 3922	Begude	Nina	206 333- 9023	1297 W. Cay Way	Seattle	WA	USA	98108
6380	342- 78- 2832	433- 01- 3922	Howe	Saphron	206 323- 4933	9827 Des Moines Dr.	Seattle	WA	USA	98108
6380	882- 00- 3234	433- 01- 3922	Salidin	Uma	206 390- 8328	13 Echo Lake Place	Seattle	WA	USA	98126

stor_id	emp_id	mgr_id	emp_lname	emp_fname	phone	address	city	state	country	postal-code
6380	321-89-	433-01-	Marsicano	Evan	206 322- 9392	7 Dancer Ave. SW'	Seattle	WA	USA	98126
	8832	3922								
6380	762-32-	433-01-	Boulignini	Gus	206 323- 9396	308 S. Fidalgo St.	Seattle	WA	USA	98108
	5555	3922								
7896	433-01-	433-01-	Malraison	Marcel	206 889- 9983	2298 Berry Dr.	Fremont	CA	USA	94555
	3921	3921								
7896	322-32-	433-01-	West	Diana	206 898- 3233	20-B Knute St.	Fremont	CA	USA	94536
	8382	3921								
7896	328-74-	433-01-	Cazalis	Mari	206 326- 6785	18 May Dr. #7	Fremont	CA	USA	94555
	8748	3921								
7896	325-87-	433-01-	Zorronius	Gaius	206 363- 8988	1967 Claude Dr.	Fremont	CA	USA	94555
	6766	3921								
7896	323-67-	433-01-	Podding	Marvin	206 438- 7858	242 Ram Ct. #123	Fremont	CA	USA	94539
	5646	3921								
7896	673-03-	433-01-	Phelan	Micky	206 323- 7676	1212 Spinn Ct.	Fremont	CA	USA	94539
	6728	3921								
7896	326-77-	433-01-	Bokanowski	Peter	206 432- 4832	13 Sparto Dr.	Fremont	CA	USA	94539
	6482	3921								
7896	653-48-	433-01-	Poodals	F.W.	206 387- 6863	739 Sendak Dr.	Fremont	CA	USA	94538
	2975	3921								
7896	320-37-	433-01-	Scrubbs	Randy	206 323- 3874	18 Washo Dr. #A	Fremont	CA	USA	94539
	4682	3921								
7896	323-67-	433-01-	Mullins	M.	206 382- 7862	1717 Zircon Ter.	Fremont	CA	USA	94555
	4762	3921								
7896	326-76-	433-01-	Clarac	Sebastia	206 387- 6732	5622 Zin St. #78	Fremont	CA	USA	94539
	3863	3921	n							

stor_id	emp_id	mgr_id	emp_lname	emp_fname	phone	address	city	state	country	postal-code
5023	534-92-2910	534-92-2910	Armand	Mary	510 323-5478	1912 Badger Ln.	Concord	CA	USA	94521
5023	342-38-2782	534-92-2910	Blanzat	Gomez	510 382-3828	4229 Tiffany Pl.	Concord	CA	USA	94518
5023	322-39-3222	534-92-2910	Winate	Patrick	510 322-5873	16 Mahoo Ln.	Concord	CA	USA	94521
5023	932-20-4389	534-92-2910	Burke	Aldous	510 433-4829	12 Ponder Dr. #4	Concord	CA	USA	94521
5023	322-43-2828	534-92-2910	Rough-head	Jonatha	510 323-4782	2 Athos Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94521
5023	832-32-3289	534-92-2910	Johnson	Alexis	510 323-3824	927 Aramis Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94520
5023	432-32-4444	534-92-2910	Blitzstein	Jack	510 323-3874	2 Porthos Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94519
5023	543-43-8438	534-92-2910	Darby	Andy	510 422-3232	222 Juniper Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94519
5023	423-42-9933	534-92-2910	Askanzi	Robert	510 422-3232	222 Juniper Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94519
5023	838-28-1982	534-92-2910	Zavatta	Virginia	510 423-4932	629 Wind Way	Concord	CA	USA	94521
5023	433-43-3838	534-92-2910	Fife	Ben	510 322-8427	782 Sapling Ct.	Concord	CA	USA	94519

## roysched table

roysched is defined as follows:

```
create table roysched
title_id tid not null
```

```
    references titles(title_id),
    lorange int null,
    hirange int null,
    royalty int null)
```

Its nonclustered index for the title\_id column is defined as:

```
create nonclustered index titleidind
on roysched (title_id)
```

Table B-9 lists the contents of roysched:

**Table B-9: roysched table**

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
BU1032	0	5000	10
BU1032	5001	50000	12
PC1035	0	2000	10
PC1035	2001	3000	12
PC1035	3001	4000	14
PC1035	4001	10000	16
PC1035	10001	50000	18
BU2075	0	1000	10
BU2075	1001	3000	12
BU2075	3001	5000	14
BU2075	5001	7000	16
BU2075	7001	10000	18
BU2075	10001	12000	20
BU2075	12001	14000	22
BU2075	14001	50000	24
PS2091	0	1000	10
PS2091	1001	5000	12
PS2091	5001	10000	14
PS2091	10001	50000	16
PS2106	0	2000	10
PS2106	2001	5000	12
PS2106	5001	10000	14
PS2106	10001	50000	16
MC3021	0	1000	10
MC3021	1001	2000	12
MC3021	2001	4000	14
MC3021	4001	6000	16
MC3021	6001	8000	18
MC3021	8001	10000	20
MC3021	10001	12000	22
MC3021	12001	50000	24
TC3218	0	2000	10
TC3218	2001	4000	12
TC3218	4001	6000	14
TC3218	6001	8000	16
TC3218	8001	10000	18

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
TC3218	10001	12000	20
TC3218	12001	14000	22
TC3218	14001	50000	24
PC8888	0	5000	10
PC8888	5001	10000	12
PC8888	10001	15000	14
PC8888	15001	50000	16
PS7777	0	5000	10
PS7777	5001	50000	12
PS3333	0	5000	10
PS3333	5001	10000	12
PS3333	10001	15000	14
PS3333	15001	50000	16
BU1111	0	4000	10
BU1111	4001	8000	12
BU1111	8001	10000	14
BU1111	12001	16000	16
BU1111	16001	20000	18
BU1111	20001	24000	20
BU1111	24001	28000	22
BU1111	28001	50000	24
MC2222	0	2000	10
MC2222	2001	4000	12
MC2222	4001	8000	14
MC2222	8001	12000	16
MC2222	8001	12000	16
MC2222	12001	20000	18
MC2222	20001	50000	20
TC7777	0	5000	10
TC7777	5001	15000	12
TC7777	15001	50000	14
TC4203	0	2000	10
TC4203	2001	8000	12
TC4203	8001	16000	14
TC4203	16001	24000	16
TC4203	24001	32000	18
TC4203	32001	40000	20

<b>title_id</b>	<b>lorange</b>	<b>hirange</b>	<b>royalty</b>
TC4203	40001	50000	22
BU7832	0	5000	10
BU7832	5001	10000	12
BU7832	10001	15000	14
BU7832	15001	20000	16
BU7832	20001	25000	18
BU7832	25001	30000	20
BU7832	30001	35000	22
BU7832	35001	50000	24
PS1372	0	10000	10
PS1372	10001	20000	12
PS1372	20001	30000	14
PS1372	30001	40000	16
PS1372	40001	50000	18

## **discounts table**

discounts is defined as follows:

```
create table discounts
(discounttype varchar(40) not null,
stor_id char(4) null
    references stores(stor_id),
lowqty smallint null,
highqty smallint null,
discount float not null)
```

Table B-10 lists the contents of discounts:

**Table B-10: discounts table**

<b>discounttype</b>	<b>stor_id</b>	<b>lowqty</b>	<b>highqty</b>	<b>discount</b>
Initial Customer	8042	NULL	NULL	10.5
Volume Discount	NULL	100	1001	6.7
Huge Volume Discount	NULL	1001	NULL	10
Customer Discount	8042	NULL	NULL	5

## ***blurbs* table**

*blurbs* is defined as follows:

```
create table blurbs
(au_id  id not null
    references authors(au_id),
copy text null)
```

Table B-11 lists the contents of *blurbs*:

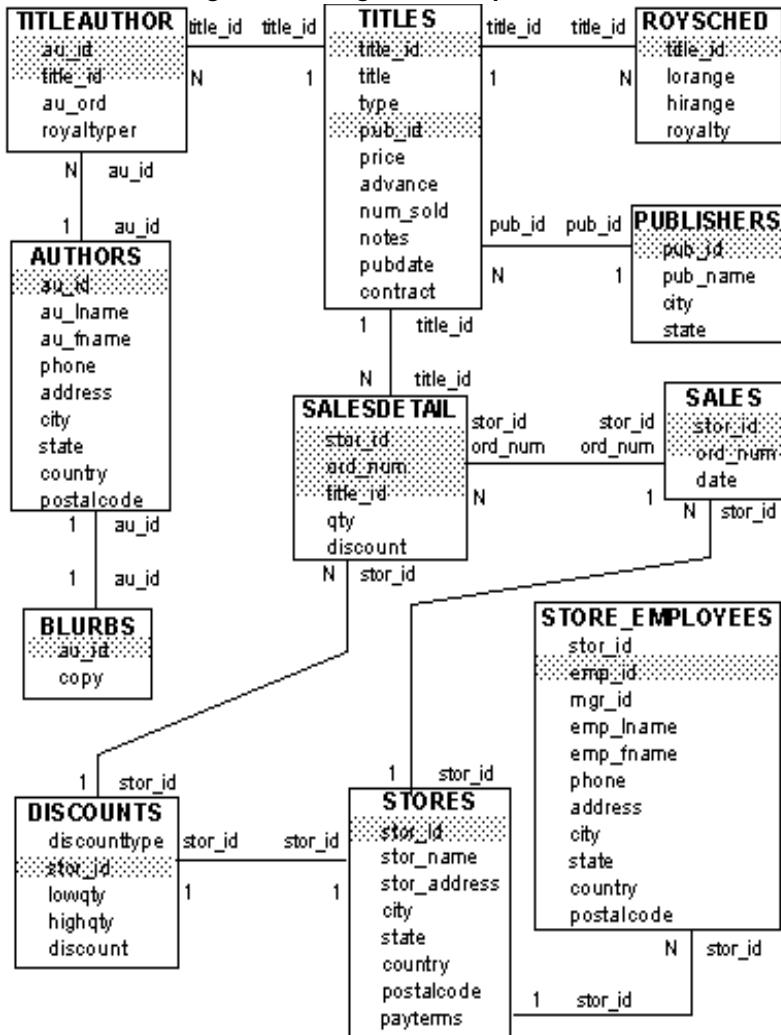
***Table B-11: blurbs table***

<b>au_id</b>	<b>copy</b>
486-29-1786	If Chastity Locksley didn't exist, this troubled world would have created her! Not only did she master the mystic secrets of inner strength to conquer adversity when she encountered it in life, but also, after "reinventing herself," as she says, by writing "Emotional Security: A New Algorithm" following the devastating loss of her cat, Old Algorithm, she founded Publish or Perish, the page-by-page, day-by-day, write-yourself-to-wellness encounter workshops franchise empire, the better to share her inspiring discoveries with us all. Her "Net Etiquette," a brilliant social treatise in its own right and a fabulous pun, is the only civilized alternative to the gross etiquette often practiced on the public networks.
648-92-1872	A chef's chef and a raconteur's raconteur, Reginald Blotchet-Halls calls London his second home. "Th' palace kitchen's me first 'ome, act'ly!" Blotchet-Halls' astounding ability to delight our palates with palace delights is matched only by his equal skill in satisfying our perpetual hunger for delicious back-stairs gossip by serving up tidbits and entrees literally fit for a king!
998-72-3567	Albert Ringer was born in a trunk to circus parents, but another kind of circus trunk played a more important role in his life years later. He grew up as an itinerant wrestler and roustabout in the renowned Ringer Brothers and Betty and Bernie's Circus. Once known in the literary world only as Anne Ringer's wrestling brother, he became a writer while recuperating from a near-fatal injury received during a charity benefit bout with a gorilla. "Slingshotting" himself from the ring ropes, Albert flew over the gorilla's head and would have landed head first on the concrete. He was saved from certain death by Nana, an elephant he had befriended as a child, who caught him in her trunk. Nana held him so tightly that three ribs cracked and he turned blue from lack of oxygen. "I was delirious. I had an out-of-body experience! My whole life passed before me eyes. I promised myself 'If I get through this, I'll use my remaining time to share what I learned out there.' I owe it all to Nana!"

au_id	copy
899-46-2035	Anne Ringer ran away from the circus as a child. A university creative writing professor and her family took Anne in and raised her as one of their own. In this warm and television-less setting she learned to appreciate the great classics of literature. The stream of aspiring and accomplished writers that flowed constantly through the house confirmed her repudiation of the circus family she'd been born into: "Barbarians!" The steadily growing recognition of her literary work was, to her, vindication. When her brother's brush with death brought them together after many years, she took advantage of life's crazy chance thing and broke the wall of anger that she had constructed to separate them. Together they wrote, "Is Anger the Enemy?" an even greater blockbuster than her other collaborative work, with Michel DeFrance, "The Gourmet Microwave."
672-71-3249	They asked me to write about myself and my book, so here goes: I started a restaurant called "de Gustibus" with two of my friends. We named it that because you really can't discuss taste. We're very popular with young business types because we're young business types ourselves. Whenever we tried to go out to eat in a group we always got into these long tiresome negotiations: "I just ate Italian," or "I ate Greek yesterday," or "I NEVER eat anything that's not organic!" Inefficient. Not what business needs today. So, it came to us that we needed a restaurant we could all go to every day and not eat the same thing twice in a row maybe for a year! We thought, "Hey, why make people choose one kind of restaurant over another, when what they really want is a different kind of food?" At de Gustibus you can eat Italian, Chinese, Japanese, Greek, Russian, Tasmanian, Iranian, and on and on all at the same time. You never have to choose. You can even mix and match! We just pooled our recipes, opened the doors, and never looked back. We're a big hit, what can I say? My recipes in "Sushi, Anyone?" are used at de Gustibus. They satisfy crowds for us every day. They will work for you, too. Period!
409-56-7008	Bennet was the classic too-busy executive. After discovering computer databases, he now has the time to run several successful businesses and sit on three major corporate boards. Bennet also donates time to community service organizations. Miraculously, he also finds time to write and market executive-oriented, in-depth computer hardware and software reviews. "I'm hyperkinetic, so being dynamic and fast-moving is a piece of cake. But being organized isn't easy for me or for anyone I know. There's just one word for that: 'databases!' Databases can cure you or kill you. If you get the right one, you can be like me. If you get the wrong one, watch out. Read my book!"

## Diagram of the *pubs3* database

Figure B-1: Diagram of the *pubs3* database





# Index

## Symbols

- & (ampersand)
  - “and” bitwise operator 15, 49
- \* (asterisk)
  - multiplication operator 14, 49–53
  - for overlength numbers 376
  - pairs surrounding comments 470
  - select** and 44
- \*=(asterisk equals) outer join operator 129, 160
- \*/(asterisk slash), comment keyword 470
- @ (at sign)
  - local variable name 472
  - procedure parameters and 490
  - rule arguments and 435
- @@ (at signs), global variable name 477
- \(backslash)
  - character string continuation with 19
- ^ (caret)
  - “exclusive or” bitwise operator 15, 49
- , (comma)
  - in default print format for money values 203
- \$ (dollar sign)
  - in identifiers 8
  - in money datatypes 312
- (double hyphen) comments 29, 471
- =\*(equals asterisk) outer join operator 129, 160
- = (equals sign)
  - comparison operator 17, 60
- > (greater than)
  - comparison operator 17, 60
  - range specification 61
- >= (greater than or equal to) comparison operator 17, 60
- < (less than)
  - comparing dates 60
  - comparison operator 17
  - range queries and 61
- <= (less than or equal to) comparison operator 17, 60
- (minus sign)
- arithmetic operator 14, 49–53
  - for negative monetary values 312
- != (not equal to) comparison operator 17, 60
- <> (not equal to) comparison operator 17, 60
- !> (not greater than) comparison operator 17, 60
- !< (not less than) comparison operator 17, 60
- ( ) (parentheses)
  - in arithmetic statements 52
  - in built-in functions 369
  - in expressions 13
  - in matching lists 63
  - in system functions 369
  - with **union** operators 119
- % (percent sign)
  - arithmetic operator (modulo) 14, 49–53
- | (pipe)
  - “or” bitwise operator 15, 49
- + (plus)
  - arithmetic operator 14, 49–53
  - null values and 76
  - string concatenation operator 16, 379
- # (pound sign), temporary table identifier prefix 230, 239, 241
- £ (pound sterling sign)
  - in identifiers 8
  - in money datatypes 312
- “ ” (quotation marks)
  - comparison operators and 17
  - enclosing column headings 47–48
  - enclosing empty strings 18, 318
  - enclosing parameter values 493
  - enclosing passwords 34
  - enclosing values 204, 306–307
  - in expressions 18
  - literal specification of 18
- / (slash)
  - arithmetic operator (division) 14, 49–53
- /\* (slash asterisk), comment keyword 470
- ~ (tilde)
  - “not” bitwise operator 15, 49

– (underscore)  
  in temporary table names 240  
¥ (yen sign)  
  in identifiers 8  
  in money datatypes 312

## Numerics

“0x” 312  
  counted in *textsize* 54

## A

abbreviations  
  date parts 390  
  **out** for **output** 511  
**abs** absolute value mathematical function 386  
accounts, server.  
  See logins; users  
**acos** mathematical function 386  
adding  
  column data with **insert** 316, 325–327  
  foreign keys 559–560  
  IDENTITY column to a table 282  
  rows to a table or view 315–327  
  **timestamp** column 613  
  user-defined datatypes 215  
  users to a database 222  
addition operator (+) 14, 49–53  
administrative instructions and results 2  
aggregate functions 81–86, 384–385  
  See also row aggregates; *individual function names*  
**compute** clause and 21, 108–115  
cursors and 595  
datatypes and 83  
**distinct** keyword and 82, 85  
**group by** clause and 87–101  
on multiple columns 115  
nesting 94  
null values and 86  
**order by** clause and 107  
scalar aggregates 83  
subqueries including 178  
vector aggregates 88

views and 354  
**where** clause, not permitted 83  
aliases  
  table correlation names 58  
**all** keyword  
  comparison operators and 180, 190  
  **group by** 97–98  
  searching with 180  
  **select** 55–57  
  subqueries including 19, 181, 190  
  **union** 118  
**allow nested triggers** configuration parameter 574–576  
**allow\_dup\_row** option, **create index** 420–421  
**alter database** command 227–228  
  See also **create database** command  
**alter table**  
  adding a column 274–276  
  adding columns with user-defined datatypes 287  
  adding columns, effect on column IDs 275  
  adding constraints 276  
  adding IDENTITY columns 283  
  adding not-null columns 275  
  and CIS 274  
  and dumping the transaction log 273  
  bulk copying existing dumps into modified columns 280  
  changing **exp\_row\_size** during data copy 285  
  command 272–290  
  converting datatypes 279  
  data copying 284–285  
  decreasing column length truncates data 280  
  dropping columns 277–278  
  dropping columns with user-defined datatypes 287  
  dropping columns, effect on column IDs 277–278  
  dropping constraints 278  
  dropping IDENTITY columns 283–284  
  error messages 288–290  
  errors generated by **alter table modify** 289–290  
  exclusive table lock 273  
  execute immediate statement in 290  
  modifying columns 278–282  
  modifying columns with precision 281  
  modifying columns with scale 281  
  modifying columns with user-defined datatypes 287

modifying datetime columns 281  
 modifying locking scheme 286  
 modifying NULL default values 281  
 modifying *text* and *image* columns 282  
 objects that perform a **select \*** 273  
 of table with a clustered index 286  
 on remote tables 274  
 restrictions for dropping IDENTITY columns 283–284  
 syntax 272  
 when it performs a data copy 285  
 with **arithabort numeric\_truncation** turned on or off 282

**alter table** command  
     adding *timestamp* column 613

altering.  
*See* Changing

and (&)  
     bitwise operator 15, 49

**and** keyword  
     in expressions 20  
     in joins 131  
     in search conditions 77–78

angles, mathematical functions for 386

**ansinull** option, **set** 31

**any** keyword  
     in expressions 19  
     searching with 180  
     subqueries using 182–185, 190

approximate numeric datatypes 203

arguments  
     date functions 390  
     mathematical functions 386  
     string functions 372  
     system functions 366–369  
     text functions 382

**arithabort** option, **set**  
     **arith\_overflow** and 30, 403  
     mathematical functions and **arith\_overflow** 403  
     mathematical functions and **numeric\_truncation** 403

**arithignore** option, **set**  
     **arith\_overflow** and 30, 403

arithmetic errors 29, 402

arithmetic expressions 13, 47  
     not allowed with **distinct** 85

operator precedence in 52  
 arithmetic operations 82  
     mixed mode 212–214  
 arithmetic operators 49–51  
     as comparison operators 60  
     in expressions 14, 47  
     precedence of 52–53, 78  
 ascending order, **asc** keyword 105  
 ASCII characters  
     **ascii** string function and 372, 379  
     **ascii** string function 372, 379  
     **asin** mathematical function 386  
 asterisk (\*)  
     multiplication operator 14, 49–53  
     overlength numbers 376  
     pairs surrounding comments 470  
     **select** and 44  
     in subqueries with **exists** 190  
 at sign (@)  
     local variable name 472  
     procedure parameters and 490  
     rule arguments and 435  
     **atan** mathematical function 386  
     @@char\_convert global variable 480, 481  
     @@cis\_version global variable 483  
     @@client\_csid global variable 481  
     @@client\_cservername global variable 481  
     @@connections global variable 482  
     @@cpu\_busy global variable 482  
     @@error global variable 477  
     **select into** and 269  
     @@guestuserid global variable 483  
     @@identity global variable 237, 321, 477  
     @@idle global variable 482  
     @@invaliduserid global variable 483  
     @@io\_busy global variable 482  
     @@isolation global variable 480, 642  
     @@langid global variable 481  
     @@language global variable 481  
     @@max\_connections global variable 483  
     @@maxcharlen global variable 481  
     @@maxgroupid global variable 483  
     @@maxuserid global variable 483  
     @@mingroupid global variable 483  
     @@minuserid global variable 483  
     @@minuserid global variable 483

- @@ncharsize global variable 481  
@@nestlevel global variable  
  nested procedures and 499  
  nested triggers and 574  
@@options global variable 480  
@@pack\_received global variable 482  
@@pack\_sent global variable 482  
@@packet\_errors global variable 482  
@@parallel\_degree global variable 480  
@@procid global variable 483  
@@rowcount global variable 480  
  cursors and 601  
  triggers and 559  
@@scan\_parallel\_degree global variable 480  
@@servername global variable 483  
@@spid global variable 483  
@@sqlstatus global variable 479  
@@textcolid global variable 484  
@@textdbid global variable 484  
@@textobjid global variable 484  
@@textptr global variable 484  
@@textsize global variable 53, 480, 484  
@@textts global variable 484  
@@thresh\_hysteresis global variable 483  
@@timeticks global variable 483  
@@total\_errors global variable 482  
@@total\_read global variable 482  
@@total\_write global variable 482  
@@tranchained global variable 480  
@@trancount global variable 478, 634  
@@transtate global variable 478, 632, 633  
@@version global variable 483  
**atn2** mathematical function 386  
*au\_pix* table, *pubs2* database 696  
author *blurbs* table  
  *pubs2* database 695  
  *pubs3* database 731  
*authors* table  
  *pubs2* database 672–674  
  *pubs3* database 702–704  
**auto identity** database option 238  
  **identity in nonunique indexes** and 415  
automatic operations  
  chained transaction mode 636  
  datatype conversion 211, 396  
  hidden IDENTITY columns 238  
  triggers 551  
**avg** aggregate function 82, 384  
  *See also* aggregate functions  
  as row aggregate 111
- ## B
- backing up.  
  *See* recovery
- backslash ()  
  for character string continuation 19
- base 10 logarithm function 387
- base date 310, 389
- base tables.  
  *See* tables
- batch processing 441  
  control-of-flow language 21, 441–442, 447–471  
  errors in 445–446  
  **go** command 446  
  local variables and 463  
  rules for 442–445  
  submitting as files 446–447
- bcp** (bulk copy utility)  
  IDENTITY columns and 324
- begin transaction** command 629
- begin...end** commands 460
- between** keyword 61–62  
  **check** constraint using 260
- binary* datatype 209  
  *See also* datatypes  
  **like** and 65
- binary datatypes 209–210  
  “0x” prefix 312  
  concatenating 371  
  conversion 404  
  operations on 371–381
- binary expressions xxv  
  concatenating 16, 379–380
- binary representation of data for bitwise operations 15
- binding  
  defaults 430–432  
  rules 436–438
- bit* datatype 210  
  *See also* datatypes
- bitwise operators 15–16, 49

- blanks  
 character datatypes and 205  
 in comparisons 17, 60, 70  
 empty string evaluated as 18  
**like** and 70  
 removing leading with **ltrim** function 373  
 removing trailing with **rtrim** function 373
- blurbs* table  
*pubs2* database 695  
*pubs3* database 731
- Boolean (logical) expressions 13  
**select** statements in 449
- branching 463
- break** command 462–463
- browse mode 612–614  
 cursor declarations and 613  
*timestamp* datatype and 211, 368
- built-in functions 365–406  
 aggregate 384–385  
 conversion 396  
 date 389–396  
 image 382–384  
 mathematical 386–389  
 security 406–407  
 string 371–381  
 system 365–371  
 text 382–384  
 type conversion 396–401  
 views and 345
- bytes  
`@@maxcharlen` limit 481  
`@@ncharsize` average length 481  
`@@textsize` limit 480  
 composite index limit 413  
 datatype storage 200, 229  
 delimited identifier limit 9  
 for *text* and *image* data 484  
 hexadecimal digits and 312  
 identifier limit 7  
 length of expression (**datalength** function) 367  
 output string limit 466  
**print** messages limit 465  
 quoted column limit 48  
 retrieved by **readtext** 54  
 subquery limit 169  
 temporary table name limit 7
- C**
- calculating dates 394–395  
 Cartesian product 130  
 cascading changes (triggers) 552, 560  
**case** expressions 450–460  
**when\xc9 then** keyword 454  
**coalesce** 458  
 comparing values and **nullif** 459  
 data representation 451  
 determining datatype 454  
 division by zero avoidance 451  
 search conditions in 454  
 stored procedure example 492  
 value comparisons and 456
- case sensitivity 8  
 in comparison expressions 17
- ceiling** mathematical function 387
- chained** option, **set** 637  
 chained transaction mode 28, 636
- changing  
*See also* updating  
 database size 227–228  
 default database 37  
 index names 291  
 object names 291–292  
 tables 272–292  
 view definitions 352
- changing data.  
*See* data modification
- char** datatype 204–205  
*See also* character data; datatypes
- char datatype**  
 entry rules 306  
 in expressions 18  
**like** and 65
- char** string function 372  
`@@char_convert` global variable 480, 481
- char\_length** string function 373
- character data 203  
*See also individual character datatype names*  
 avoiding “NULL” in 318  
 converting 398  
 entry rules 306  
 operations on 371–381  
 searching for 71  
 trailing blanks in 205

- character datatypes 204
  - converting from multibyte to single-byte 399
  - converting numbers to 399
- character expressions xxv, 13
- character set 6
- character sets
  - conversion errors 9
  - iso\_1 9
- character strings 71
  - continuation with backslash () 19
  - empty 18
  - matching 65
  - select list using 48
  - specifying quotes within 18
  - truncation 29
- characters
  - number of 373
  - special 7
  - wildcard 66–71, 495
- charindex** string function 372, 375–376
- check constraints 252, 260
- checkpoint** command 660
- @@cis\_version** global variable 483
- clauses 2
- client
  - cursors 591
  - host computer name 367
  - @@client\_csid** global variable 481
  - @@client\_cname** global variable 481
- close** command 604
- close on endtran** option, **set** 657
- closing cursors 589
- clustered** constraint
  - create index** 418
  - create table** 256
- clustered indexes 417–419
  - See also* indexes
- integrity constraints 256
- number of total pages used 368
- used\_pgs** system function and 368
- coalesce** keyword, **case** 458
- codes
  - soundex** 373
- col\_length** system function 366, 369
- col\_name** system function 366
- column length
  - decreasing with **alter table** 280
- column names 10
  - changing in views 343
  - finding 366
  - qualifying in subqueries 171
- column pairs.
  - See* joins; keys
- column-level constraints 252
- columns
  - See also* Database objects; **select** command
  - access permissions on 293
  - adding data with **insert** 316, 325–327
  - adding with **alter table** 274–276
  - defaults for 254, 430–432
  - dropping columns with user-defined datatypes 287
  - dropping with **alter table** 277–278
  - gaps in IDENTITY values 249–250
  - group by** and 93
  - IDENTITY 235–238
  - indexing more than one 413
  - initializing text 333
  - joins and 126, 129
  - length definition 235
  - length of 366
  - modifying columns with user-defined datatypes 287
  - modifying with **alter table** 278–282
  - null values and check constraints 260
  - null values and default 234
  - order in **insert** statements 316, 325
  - order in **select** statements 45
  - qualifying names in subqueries 171
  - rules 435
  - rules conflict with definitions of 235, 437
  - system-generated 235
  - variable-length 234
- comma (,)
  - default print format for money values 203
- command terminator 37
- commands 2
  - See also* individual command names
  - not allowed in user-defined transactions 629
- comments
  - ANSI style 29
  - double-hyphen style 471
  - in SQL statements 470–471

**commit** command 629  
**common keys**  
*See also* foreign keys; joins; primary keys  
**comparing values**  
 in expressions 17  
 for joins 129  
 null 74, 475  
*timestamp* 368, 614  
**comparison operators** 59–61  
*See also* relational expressions  
 correlated subqueries and 196–198  
 in expressions 16  
 modified, in subqueries 180  
 null values and 73, 475  
 symbols 17, 60  
 unmodified, in subqueries 176–179  
**compatibility, data**  
**create default** and 429  
**component Integration Services**  
**alter table** command on remote tables 274  
 and **update statistics** command 425  
 automatic IDENTITY columns 238  
 connecting to a server 36  
 described 26  
*image* datatype 210  
 joins 123  
*text* datatype 208  
 transactions and 626  
 triggers 578  
**composite indexes** 413  
**computations.**  
*See* computed columns  
**compute** clause 108–116  
 different aggregates in same 115  
 grand totals 115–116  
 multiple columns and 112, 114  
 not allowed in cursors 590  
 row aggregates and 111–115  
 subgroups and 112  
 subtotals for grouped summaries 109  
**union** and 122  
 using more than one 113  
**computed columns** 48–53, 356  
**insert** 326  
 with null values 50  
**update** 329  
 and views 344, 355  
**computing dates** 394–395  
**concatenation** 379–381  
 binary data 371  
 expressions 371  
 strings 371  
 using + operator 16, 379  
 using + operator, null values and 76  
**connections**  
 transactions and 659  
**@@connections** global variable 482  
**consistency**  
 transactions and 626  
**constants** xxv  
 in expressions 18, 47  
**constraints** 221, 251  
 adding with **alter table** 276  
**check** 252, 260  
 column-level 252  
**default** 252  
 dropping with **alter table** 278  
**primary key** 252, 255  
 referential integrity 252, 256  
 table-level 252  
 unique 252, 255  
 with NULL values 233  
 with rules 437  
**continuation lines, character string** 19  
**continue** command 462–463  
**control-break report** 108  
**control-of-flow language** 21, 23, 447–471  
**conventions**  
*See also* syntax  
 naming 6–13  
 Transact-SQL 6–13  
 used in manuals xxiii  
**conversion**  
 between character sets 8–9  
 datatypes 235  
 degrees to radians 387  
 implicit 18, 211, 396  
 integer value to character value 372  
 lower to higher datatypes 18  
 lowercase to uppercase 374  
 radians to degrees 387  
 string concatenation 16

uppercase to lowercase 373  
**convert** function 211, 397–406  
concatenation and 16, 371, 380  
date styles 405  
explicit conversion with 384  
length default 398  
truncating values 399  
copying  
  data with **insert...select** 326  
  rows 327  
  tables with **bcp** 324  
  tables with **select into** 266  
correlated subqueries 194–198  
comparison operators in 196  
correlation names and 196  
**exists** and 190  
**having** clause in 198  
correlation names  
  in joins (ANSI syntax) 143–145  
  self-joins 134  
  subqueries using 171, 196  
  table names 58, 134  
**cos** mathematical function 387  
**cot** mathematical function 387  
**count** aggregate function 82, 384  
  *See also* aggregate functions  
  on columns with null values 86, 95  
  as row aggregate 111  
**count(\*)** aggregate function 81–82, 84, 111  
  *See also* aggregate functions  
  on columns with null values 95  
  including null values 86  
@@cpu\_busy global variable 482  
**create database** command 224–228  
  batches using 443  
**create default** command 429–430  
  batches and 443  
**create procedure** with 511  
**create index** command 412–422  
  batches using 443  
**ignore\_dup\_key** 414  
**create procedure** command 488–489, 489–503, 544  
  *See also* stored procedures; extended stored procedures (ESPs)  
  batches using 443  
  null values and 494  
**output** keyword 507–511  
rules for 511  
**with recompile** option 498  
**create rule** command 435  
  batches using 443  
**create procedure** with 512  
**create schema** command 258  
**create table** command 229–232  
  batches using 443  
  composite indexes and 413  
  constraints and 251  
  in different database 242  
  example 232, 262  
  null types and 233  
  null values and 318  
  in stored procedures 512  
  user-defined datatypes and 216  
**create trigger** command 553–555  
  batches using 443  
**create procedure** with 512  
  displaying text of 583  
**create view** command 342  
  batches using 443  
**create procedure** with 511  
  syntax 342  
  **union** prohibited in 122  
creating  
  databases 224–226  
  datatypes 215–216  
  defaults 429–430, 433  
  indexes 412–419  
  rules 435  
  stored procedures 503–511  
  tables 262–272  
  temporary tables 230, 239–240  
  triggers 553–555  
CS\_DATAFMT structure 534  
CS\_SERVERMSG structure 534  
currency symbols 312  
current database  
  changing 223  
  finding name 367  
  finding number 367  
current date 393  
current user  
  **suser\_id** system function 368

**suser\_name** system function 368  
**user** system function 368  
cursor result set 585, 594  
**cursor rows** option, **set** 600  
cursors 585–612  
  buffering client rows 601  
  client 591  
  closing 604  
  deallocating 604  
  declaring 590–597  
  deleting rows 603  
  error message 582 615  
  error message 592 616  
  execute 591  
  fetching 598–601  
  fetching multiple rows 600  
**for browse** and 613  
Halloween problem 597  
join column updates 615–621  
language 591  
locking and 609  
name conflicts 593  
nonunique indexes 594  
number of rows fetched 601  
opening 598  
position 585  
positioned deletes and 614  
positioned updates and 614  
read-only 595  
scans 594  
scope 592, 592–593  
searched deletes and 614  
searched updates and 614  
server 591  
status 599  
stored procedures and 607  
subqueries and 169  
transactions and 657–658  
unique indexes 594  
updatable 595  
updating rows 602  
variables 599  
**curunreservedpgs** system function 367  
custom datatypes.  
*See* user-defined datatypes

**D**

data copying 284–285  
  when does **alter table** perform a data copy 285  
data definition 518  
data dependency.  
  *See* dependencies, database object  
data dictionary.  
  *See* system tables  
data integrity 23, 220, 434  
*See also* data modification; referential integrity  
  methods 251  
data modification 2, 338  
  permissions 304  
  *text and image* with **writetext** 332–333  
  **update** 327–332  
  views and 354  
**data\_pgs** system function 367  
database devices 225  
database integrity.  
  *See* data integrity; referential integrity  
database object owners  
  names in stored procedures 513  
database objects 219  
*See also individual object names*  
  access permissions for 293  
  dropping 443  
  ID number (**object\_id**) 368  
  naming 7–12  
  renaming 291–292  
  restrictions for **alter table** 273  
  stored procedures and 512, 513  
  system procedures and 518  
Database Owners  
  adding users 222  
  transferring ownership 224  
  user ID number 1 366  
Databases  
  ownership 224  
databases 222–228  
*See also* database objects  
  adding users 222  
  choosing 223  
  creating user 224–226  
  default 31  
  dropping 228  
  help on 294

- ID number, **db\_id** function 367
- joins and design 125
- name 224
- number of server 224
- optional 222
- size 225, 227–228
- system 222
- use** command 223
- user 222
- datalength** system function 367, 370, 382
- datatype conversions 396–401
  - automatic 211
  - binary and numeric data 402
  - bit information 405
  - case** expressions 454
  - character information 398, 399
  - column definitions and 235
  - date and time information 400
  - domain errors 403
  - hexadecimal-like information 404
  - image* 405
  - money information 399
  - numeric information 399, 400
  - overflow errors 402
  - rounding during 399
  - scale errors 403
- datatype precedence.
  - See* precedence
- datatypes 199–212
  - aggregate functions and 83
  - altering columns with user defined 287–288
  - approximate numeric 203
  - character 203
  - converting with **alter table** 279
  - create table** and 229, 233, 413
  - creating 215–218
  - datetime* values comparison 17
  - defaults and 216, 430–432
  - dropping columns with user defined 287
  - entry rules 202, 306–314
  - hierarchy 212–214
  - integer 201
  - joins and 129
  - length 216
  - local variables and 472
  - mixed, arithmetic operations on 14
- modifying columns with user defined 287
- money 203
- rules and 216, 436–438
- summary of 200–201
- temporary tables and 240
- unichar 205
- union** 117
- views and 342
- datatypes, custom.
  - See also* user-defined datatypes
- date functions 389–396
- date parts 308, 390–394
  - abbreviation names and values 390
- dateadd** function 390, 395
- datediff** function 390, 394–395
- dateformat** option, **set** 308–310, 311
- datename** function 311, 390–394
- datepart** function 311, 390–394
- dates
  - See also* time values
  - acceptable range of 307
  - adding date parts 395
  - calculating 394–395
  - comparing 17, 60
  - current 393
  - display formats 204, 390
  - entry formats 204, 307–311, 390
  - entry rules 71
  - functions for 389–396
  - like** and 311
  - searching for 71, 311
  - storage 389
- datetime* datatype 203, 307, 389
  - See also* dates; *timestamp* datatype
  - comparison of 17
  - concatenating 380
  - entry format 307, 390
  - like** and 65
  - operations on 389
  - storage 389
- day** date part 391
- dayofyear** date part abbreviation and values 391
- db\_id** system function 367
- db\_name** system function 367
- dbcc** (Database Consistency Checker)
  - stored procedures and 512

DB-Library programs  
**set** options for 24  
 transactions and 654

**dd.**  
*See* **day** date part

**deallocate cursor** command 604  
 deallocating cursors 589, 604  
 debugging aids 23  
**decimal** datatype 313  
**declare** command 472  
**declare cursor** command 590  
 declaring  
   cursors 587, 590–597  
   local variables 472–476  
   parameters 490–491  
 default database 31  
 default database devices 225  
**default** keyword 254  
   **create database** 225  
 default parameters in stored procedures 494  
 default settings  
   databases 36  
   date display format 204  
   language 31, 308, 311  
   parameters for stored procedures 492–495  
   print format for money values 203  
 default values  
   datatype length 204, 209  
   datatype precision 202  
   datatype scale 202  
   datatypes 216  
 defaults 23, 428–429  
*See also* database objects  
 binding 430–432  
 column 319  
 creating 429–430, 433  
 datatypes and 216, 430–432  
 dropping 434  
**insert** statements and 316  
 naming 429  
 null values and 265, 433  
 unbinding 432  
 defining local variables 472–476  
**degrees** mathematical function 387  
 delayed execution (**waitfor**) 468–469  
**delete** command 333–335, 356

*See also* dropping  
 cursors and 603  
 multitable views and 354  
 subqueries and 173  
 triggers and 555, 557–558, 560–561  
 views and 354  
**deleted** table 557–558, 591  
 deleting  
   cursor rows 603  
   cursors 588  
   rows 333–335  
   views 359  
 delimited identifiers 9  
 dependencies, database object 524–525  
 dependencies, display 362  
 dependent tables 560  
 dependent views 352  
 descending order (**desc** keyword) 105  
 designing tables 262  
 detail tables 556  
 devices 225  
*See also* **sysdevices** table  
 diagram  
   **pubs2** database 699  
   **pubs3** database 733  
**difference** (with **exists** and **not exists**) 192–193  
**difference** string function 373, 377  
 dirty reads 639  
*See also* isolation levels  
**discounts** table  
   **pubs2** database 694  
   **pubs3** database 730  
 disk crashes.  
*See* recovery  
**distinct** keyword  
   aggregate functions and 82, 85  
   cursors and 595  
   expression subqueries using 179  
   **order by** and 107  
   row aggregates and 111  
   **select** 55–57  
   **select**, null values and 57  
 distribution pages 336  
 division operator (/) 14, 49–53  
 DLL (dynamic link library).  
*See* dynamic link libraries

dollar sign (\$)  
  in identifiers 8  
  in money datatypes 312  
**double precision** datatype 203  
**double precision datatype**  
  entry format 313  
**drop** commands in batches 443  
**drop database** command 228  
**drop default** command 434  
**drop index** command 422  
**drop procedure** command 497, 514, 546  
**drop rule** command 439  
**drop table** command 292–293  
**drop trigger** command 582  
**drop view** command 359  
dropping  
  *See also delete* command; *individual drop commands*  
databases 228  
  defaults 434  
  indexes 422  
  objects 443  
  primary keys 560–561  
  procedures 514  
  rows from a table 333–335  
  rules 439  
  system tables 292–293  
  tables 292–293, 354  
  triggers 582  
  views 354, 359  
dump, database 660  
duplicate key errors, user transaction 654  
duplicate rows  
  indexes and 420  
  removing with **union** 118  
**dw.**  
  *See weekday* date part  
**dy.**  
  *See dayofyear* date part  
dynamic dumps 660  
dynamic Link Libraries  
  building 541–543  
  for extended stored procedures 541–543  
  sample definition file 543  
  search order 541  
UNIX makefile 541  
Windows NT makefile 543

## E

e or E exponent notation  
approximate numeric datatypes 313  
  money datatypes 312  
**else** keyword.  
  *See if...else* conditions  
embedding join operations 124  
empty string (“ ”) or (‘ ’) 205, 381  
  not evaluated as null 318  
  as a single space 18  
encryption  
  data 5  
**end** keyword 455, 460  
enhancements to SQL 20–26  
equal to.  
  *See Comparison operators*  
  *See comparison operators*  
equijoins 128, 131  
@@error global variable 477  
  **select into** and 269  
error handling 23  
error messages  
  12205 663, 664  
  12207 648, 662  
  582 615  
  592 616  
  constraints and 253  
  **lock table** command 648, 662  
  numbering of 466  
  **set lock wait** 663  
  severity levels of 467  
  user-defined transactions and 659  
**errorexit** keyword, **waitfor** 469  
errors  
  arithmetic overflow 402  
  in batches 445–446  
  **convert** function 398–403  
  divide-by-zero 402  
  domain 403  
  duplicate key 654  
  packet 482  
  return status values 504–511  
  scale 403  
  trapping mathematical 388  
  triggers and 574  
  in user-defined transactions 654

- escape characters 69
- esp execution priority** configuration parameter 532
- esp unload dll** configuration parameter 529, 532
- ESPs.
- See* extended stored procedures
- European characters in object identifiers 9
- execute** command 12, 489
- for ESPs 546
  - output** keyword 507–511
  - with recompile** option 498
- execute cursors 591
- execution
- extended stored procedures 531
- exists** keyword 192–193, 449
- search conditions 189
- exp** mathematical function 387
- explicit null value 318
- explicit transactions 638
- explicit values for IDENTITY columns 321
- exponential value 387
- expression subqueries 176–179
- expressions 60, 82
- concatenating 371, 379–380
  - converting datatypes 396–401
  - definition of 13
  - including null values 76
  - replacing with subqueries 175
  - types of xxv, 13
- extended stored procedures 22, 527–549
- creating 544, 545
  - creating functions for 533–543
  - DLL support for 529
  - example 530
  - exceptions 549
  - executing 546
  - freeing memory of 532
  - function example 535
  - messages from 549
  - naming 530
  - Open Server support for 529
  - performance impact of 532–533
  - permissions on 531
  - priority of 532
  - removing 546
  - renaming 546
- extensions, Transact-SQL 7, 25–26
- F**
- FALSE, return value of 189
- fetch** command 598
- fetching cursors 588
- fields, data.
- See* Columns
  - See* columns
- files
- batch 446–447
- finding
- object dependencies 292
- FIPS flagger 28
- fipsflagger** option, **set** 28
- fixed-length columns
- binary datatypes for 209
  - character datatypes for 204
  - compared to variable-length 205
  - null values in 234
- float** datatype 203
- See also* datatypes
  - computing with 388
  - entry format 313
- floating-point data xxv, 313
- See also* float datatype; real datatype
- floor** mathematical function 387
- flushmessage** option, **set** 24
- for browse** option, **select** 122
- not allowed in cursors 590
- for load** option
- alter database** 227
  - create database** 226
- for read only** option, **declare cursor** 590, 595
- for update** option, **declare cursor** 590, 595
- foreign key** constraint 257
- foreign keys 556–557
- inserting 559–560
  - sp\_help** report on 297
  - updating 567–568
- format strings
- print** 465
- free pages, **curunreservedpgs** system function 367
- from** keyword 57
- delete** 334
  - joins 127
  - update** 331
- front-end applications, browse mode and 612

full name 31  
functions 365–406  
    aggregate 384–385  
    conversion 396–406  
    date 389–396  
    image 382–384  
    mathematical 386–389  
    security 406–407  
    string 371–381  
    system 365–371  
    text 382–384  
    and views 345  
**futureonly** option  
    defaults 431, 432  
    rules 436, 439

## G

gaps in IDENTITY column values 243–251  
**getdate** date function 390–393  
global variables 477–484, 512  
    *See also individual variable names*  
**go** command terminator 37, 441  
**goto** keyword 463  
grand totals  
    **compute** 115–116  
    **order by** 105  
**grant** command 293  
greater than.  
    *See* Comparison operators  
    *See* comparison operators  
**group by** clause 87–94, 595  
    aggregate functions and 87–101, 109  
    **all** and 97–98  
    correlated subqueries compared to 197–198  
    **having** clause and 99–101  
    multiple columns in 93  
    nesting 89–94  
    null values and 95  
    **order by** and 107  
    **select** 89  
    subqueries using 179  
    triggers using 568–570  
    **union** and 122  
    **where** clause and 96–97

without aggregate functions 87, 93  
grouping  
    *See also* user-defined transactions  
    procedures 653  
    procedures of the same name 497  
groups  
    database users 32  
    discretionary access control and 32  
    membership in 32  
guest users 221, 222, 366  
    @@*guestuserid* global variable 483

## H

Halloween problem 597  
**having** clause 99–104  
    different from **where** clause 99  
    **group by** and 99  
    logical operators and 100  
    subqueries using 179, 198  
    **union** and 122  
    without aggregates 100  
    without **group by** 104  
headings, column 46–48  
help reports  
    *See also individual system procedures*  
    columns 440  
    database devices 225  
    database object 294–297  
    databases 294  
    datatypes 294–297  
    defaults 440  
    dependencies 524  
    indexes 423  
    rules 440  
    system procedures 522  
    text, object 523  
    triggers 582  
hexadecimal numbers  
    “0x” prefix for 54, 312  
    converting 401  
**hexToInt** function 211, 404  
**hh.**  
    *See* **hour** date part  
hierarchy

*See also* precedence  
 datatype 212–214  
 operators 14  
**holdlock** keyword 590, 626  
 cursors and 610  
**readtext** 383  
 host computer name 367  
 host process ID, client process 367  
**host\_id** system function 367  
**host\_name** system function 367  
**hour** date part 391  
 hyphens as comments 471

**I**

identifiers 6–12  
 delimited 9  
 quoted 9  
 system functions and 369  
**IDENTITY** columns 235–238  
 @@*identity* global variable 477  
 adding 283  
 and referential integrity 237  
 Component Integration Services 238  
 creating tables with 235  
 datatype of 236  
 deleting with **syb\_identity** keyword 335  
 dropping 283–284  
 explicit values for 321  
 gaps in values 249–250, 323  
 gaps, eliminating 323  
 inserting values into 320, 358  
 nonunique indexes 414  
 renumbering 323  
 reserving block of 322  
 restrictions for dropping 283–284  
 selecting 238, 270  
**syb\_identity** in views 347  
**syb\_identity** keyword 238  
 unique values for 321  
 updating with **syb\_identity** keyword 332  
 user-defined datatypes and 236  
 using with **select into** 269–272  
 views and 347–348, 358–359  
@@*identity* global variable 237, 321, 477

**identity grab size** configuration parameter 322  
**identity in nonunique index** database option 414, 594  
**identity** keyword 236  
**IDENTITY** property for user-defined datatypes 217  
**identity\_insert** option, **set** 321  
@*idle* global variable 482  
IDs, user  
 database (**db\_id**) 367  
 server user 368  
**user\_id** function for 368  
**if update** clause, **create trigger** 554, 578–579  
**if...else** conditions 448–450, 462  
**case** expressions compared to 450  
**ignore\_dup\_key** option, **create index** 414, 420  
**ignore\_dup\_row** option, **create index** 420–421  
**image** datatype 210  
*See also* datatypes  
“0x” prefix for 312  
changing with **writetext** 332  
Component Integration Services 210  
initializing with null values 235  
inserting 315  
null values in 235  
prohibited actions on 106  
selecting 53–383  
selecting in views 351  
subqueries using 169  
triggers and 578  
**union** not allowed on 122  
updating 328  
**writetext** to 355  
image functions 382  
implicit conversion (of datatypes) 18, 211, 396  
implicit transactions 636  
**in** keyword 62–64  
**check** constraint using 260  
 in expressions 19  
 subqueries using 183, 185–188  
index pages  
 allocation of 368  
 system functions 367, 368  
 total of table and 368  
**index\_col** system function 367  
indexes  
*See also* clustered indexes; database objects  
 composite 413

creating 412–419  
distribution pages 336  
dropping 422  
duplicate values and 420  
guidelines for 411–412  
IDENTITY columns in nonunique 414  
integrity constraints 256  
joins and 411  
key values 418  
leaf level 417, 419  
on multiple columns 413  
naming 10  
nonclustered 417–419  
options 419–422  
on presorted data 421–422  
on primary keys 411, 417  
renaming 291  
retrieval speed and 411, 412, 418  
searching 412  
space used by 299  
unique 414, 420  
views and 342, 343

infected processes 469  
information messages (Server).  
*See* error messages; severity levels  
inner joins 145–148  
join table (ANSI syntax) 146  
nested (ANSI syntax) 147  
**on** clause (ANSI syntax) 147–148

inner queries.  
*See* Subqueries

inner tables  
predicate restrictions (ANSI syntax) 152–153

input packets, number of 482

**insert** command 315–327, 356  
batches using 443  
duplicate data from 420, 421  
IDENTITY columns and 320  
*image* data and 210  
null/not null columns and 318  
rules and 428  
**select** 315  
subqueries and 173  
*text* data and 208  
triggers and 555, 557–558, 559–560  
**union** operator in 122

views and 354  
**inserted** table 557–558, 591  
inserting  
rows 315–327

installing  
sample *image* data in *pubs2* 697

**installmaster** script 515

**int** datatype 314  
*See also* integer data; *smallint* datatype; *tinyint* datatype

integer data 201  
*See also* individual datatype names  
converting 401  
in SQL xxv

integer remainder.  
*See* modulo operator (%)

integrity of data 220  
constraints 251  
transactions and 651  
unique indexes 414

integrity. *See* **dbcc** (database consistency checker); referential integrity

interactive SQL 447–471

internal structures  
pages used for 368

intersection (set operation) 192–193

**into** clause, **select**.  
*See* **select into** command

**into** keyword  
**fetch** 599  
**insert** 315  
**select** 266  
**union** 121

**inttohex** function 211, 404  
@@invaliduserid global variable 483  
@@io\_busy global variable 482  
**is null** keyword 76, 319  
**is\_sec\_service\_on** security function 406  
**isnull** system function 76, 367, 370  
**insert** and 319

iso\_1 character set 9  
@@isolation global variable 480, 642

isolation levels 28, 636, 638  
changing for queries 642  
cursor locking 644  
defined 638

level 0 reads 414  
**readpast** option and 666  
 transactions 636–642

**isql** utility command xx, 36–38  
 batch files for 446–447  
**go** command terminator 37, 441

## J

Japanese character sets 204  
 object identifiers and 8  
 joined table 142  
 joins 4  
   column names in 129  
   column order in results 126  
   comparison operators 133  
   Component Integration Services 123  
   correlation names (ANSI syntax) 143–145  
   correlation names and 134  
   equijoins 128, 131  
   **from** clause in 127  
   help for 165  
   indexes and 411  
   inner joins (ANSI syntax) 143, 145–148  
   joined table 142  
   left join 140  
   many tables in 138–140  
   natural 131  
   not-equal 133, 135–138  
   null values and 74, 164  
   operators for 128, 129, 133  
   outer 129, 140–163  
   outer joins (ANSI syntax) 148–160  
   process of 124, 130  
   relational model and 125  
   relational operators and 128  
   restrictions 129  
   right join 140  
   select list in 125–127  
   selection criteria for 132  
   self-joins 134–135  
   self-joins compared to subqueries 172  
   subqueries compared to 137, 186–188  
   theta 129  
   updates using 331

used with views 142, 346  
 views and 345  
**where** clause in 128, 130, 132

## K

key values 418  
 keys, table  
*See also* common keys; foreign keys; primary keys  
 views and 342  
 keywords 6–7  
   control-of-flow 447–471  
   new 30  
   phrases 2

## L

labels 463  
`@@langid` global variable 481  
 language cursors 591  
 language defaults 31, 308, 311  
`@@language` global variable 481  
**language** option, **set** 308, 311  
 languages, alternate  
   effect on date parts 308, 311, 392  
 last-chance thresholds 368  
**lct\_admin** system function 368  
 leaf levels of indexes 417, 419  
 length  
   of expressions in bytes 367  
   of columns 366  
 less than.  
*See* Comparison operators  
*See* comparison operators  
 levels  
   nested transactions 633  
`@@trancount` global variable 478, 634  
 transaction isolation 636–642  
**like** keyword 65–71  
**check** constraint using 260  
   searching for dates with 311  
 lines (text), entering long 19  
 list, matching in **select** 62–64  
 listing

database objects 300  
datatypes with types 212–213  
lists  
  **dbcc** stored procedures 522  
literal character specification  
  quotes (" ") 18  
literal values  
  null 76  
local and remote servers.  
  See remote servers  
local variables 463–476  
  displaying on screen 465–466  
  last row assignment 473  
  printing values 473  
**lock table** command 647–648, 662  
  error message 12207 and 648, 662  
lock timeouts  
  **set lock wait** command 663  
**lock wait** option, **set** command 663  
**lock wait period** configuration parameter 664  
locking  
  cursors and 609  
  transactions and 626  
**log** mathematical function 387  
**log on** option  
  **create database** 226  
**log10** mathematical function 387  
logging out  
  of **isql** 38  
logical expressions xxv  
  **case** expression and 450  
  **if...else** 448  
  syntax 19  
  truth tables for 20  
logical operators 77–78  
  **having** clauses 100  
login process 36  
logins  
  account information 33  
logs.  
  See transaction logs  
**log10** mathematical function 387  
loops  
  **break** and 462  
  **continue** and 462  
  **while** 460–463

lower and higher datatypes.  
  See precedence  
**lower** string function 373  
**ltrim** string function 373

**M**

macintosh character set 9  
makefile for ESP DLLs 541–543  
*master* database 222  
  guest user in 222  
master tables 556  
master-detail relationship 556  
matching  
  row (= or =\*), outer join 140  
mathematical functions  
  examples 388  
  list 386–388  
  syntax 386  
**max** aggregate function 82, 385  
  See also aggregate functions  
  as row aggregate 111  
@@max\_connections global variable 483  
@@maxcharlen global variable 481  
@@maxgroupid global variable 483  
@@maxuserid global variable 483  
messages 465–468  
  transactions and 659

**mi.**  
  See **minute** date part

**millisecond** date part 391

**min** aggregate function 82, 385  
  See also aggregate functions  
  as row aggregate 111  
@@mingroupid global variable 483  
@@minuid global variable 483  
minus sign (-)  
  subtraction operator 14  
@@minuserid global variable 483

**minute** date part 391

**mirrorexit** keyword 469

mixed datatypes, arithmetic operations on 14, 212–214

**mm.**  
  See **month** date part

- model* database 215, 222  
 user-defined datatypes in 240
- modifying  
 databases 227  
 tables 272
- modifying data.  
*See* data modification
- modulo operator (%) 14, 49–53
- money* datatype 203, 214  
*money datatype*  
*See also* *smallmoney* datatype  
 entry format 312
- monitoring  
 system activity 482
- month** date part 391
- month values  
 date part abbreviation and 391
- ms.**  
*See* **millisecond** date part
- multibyte character sets  
 converting 399  
 datatypes for 204–205
- multicolumn index.  
*See* composite indexes
- multiple SQL statements.  
*See* batch processing
- multiplication (\*) operator 14, 49–53
- multitable views 142, 346, 358  
**delete** and 142, 346  
**insert** and 142, 346
- N**
- “N/A”, using “NULL” or 318
- names  
 alias for table 58  
 date parts 390  
**db\_name** function 367  
 host computer 367  
**index\_col** and index 367  
**object\_name** function 368  
**suser\_name** function 368  
 of transactions 632  
**user** system function 368  
**user\_name** function 369
- naming  
*See also* renaming  
 columns 10  
 conventions 6–12  
 database objects 7–12  
 databases 224  
 indexes 10  
 labels 463  
 local variables 472  
 parameters in procedures 490–491  
 rules 435  
 savepoints 630  
 stored procedures 11–13  
 tables 230, 291–292  
 temporary tables 7, 230, 240  
 transactions 624, 629  
 triggers 554  
 views 11–13
- natural joins 131
- nchar** datatype 204–205  
 entry rules 306  
**like** and 65  
 operations on 371–381  
**@@ncharsize** global variable 481
- negative sign (-) in money values 312
- nested queries.  
*See* nesting; subqueries
- nesting  
*See also* joins  
 aggregate functions 94  
**begin transaction/commit** statements 633  
**begin...end** blocks 460  
 comments 470  
**group by** clauses 89–94  
 groups 89  
**if...else** conditions 450  
 levels 499  
 sorts 105  
 stored procedures 499  
 string functions 371, 381  
 subqueries 172  
 transactions 633, 649  
 triggers 499, 574–576  
 vector aggregates 94  
 warning on transactions 632  
**while** loops 463

- @@nestlevel global variable
    - nested procedures and 499
    - nested triggers and 574
  - noholdlock** keyword, **select** 643
  - nonclustered** constraint
    - create index** 418
    - nonclustered indexes 417–419
      - integrity constraints 256
      - “none”, using “NULL” or 318
    - nonrepeatable reads 639
    - nonshareable temporary tables 239
    - normalization 125, 206
    - not between** keyword 61
    - not exists** keyword 192–193
      - See also* **exists** keyword
    - not in** keyword 62–64
      - null values and 188
      - subqueries using 188–189
    - not** keyword
      - See also* logical operators
      - search conditions 61, 78
    - not like** keyword 67
    - not null** keyword 215, 233, 265
      - See also* null values
      - not null values 233
      - not-equal joins 135–138
        - compared to subqueries 188
      - null** keyword 72, 255
        - See also* Null values
        - defaults and 232, 433
          - in user-defined datatypes 215
        - null string in character columns 318
        - null values 71–75, 232–233
          - aggregate functions and 86
          - built-in functions and 369
          - case** expressions and 454, 459–460
          - check constraints and 260
          - comparing 74, 475–476
          - comparing with **nullif** 459
          - in computed columns 50
          - constraints and 233
          - create procedure** and 494
          - datatypes allowing 216
          - default parameters as 73
          - defaults and 265, 433
          - defining 233
  - distinct** keyword and 57
  - group by** and 95
  - insert** and 319, 357
  - inserting substitute values for 318
  - joins and 74, 164
  - new rules and column definition 76
  - not allowed in IDENTITY columns 235
  - null defaults and 234
  - parameter defaults as 494, 496
  - rules and 233, 265
  - selecting 74–75
  - sort order of 105, 106
  - triggers and 578–579
  - variables and 472, 474, 475–476
- nullif** keyword 459
- number** (quantity of)
  - databases within transactions 659
  - rows reported by **rowcnt** 368
  - server databases 224
  - tables allowed in a query 57, 127
- number of pages**
  - allocated to table or index 368
  - reserved\_pgs** function 368
  - used by table and clustered index (total) 368
  - used by table or index 367
  - used\_pgs** function 368
- numbers**
  - asterisks (\*\*) for overlength 376
  - database ID 367
- numeric** data
  - concatenating 380
  - operations on 388
- numeric** datatype 313
- numeric expressions** xxv
- nvarchar** datatype 205
  - See also* character data; datatypes
  - entry rules 306
  - like** and 65
  - operations on 371–381

## O

- object\_id** system function 368
  - object\_name** system function 368
- objects.

- See* database objects; *individual object names*
- of option, declare cursor** 590
- offset position, **readtext** command 383
- on** clause
- in outer joins (ANSI syntax) 151–155
  - of an inner join (ANSI syntax) 147–148
  - on an inner table (ANSI syntax) 153
- on** keyword
- alter database** 227
  - create database** 225
  - create index** 413, 419, 422
  - create table** 232
- Open Client applications
- set** options for 24
- open** command 598
- opening cursors 588
- operators
- arithmetic 14, 49–51, 52
  - bitwise 15–16, 49
  - comparison 16, 59–61
  - join 128
  - logical 77–78
  - precedence 14, 52, 78
  - relational 128
- @@options** global variable 480
- or (|)** bitwise operator 77–78
- See also* logical operators
- or** keyword
- in expressions 20
  - in joins 131
- order
- See also* indexes; precedence; sort order
  - of execution of operators in expressions 14
  - of null values 106
- order by** clause
- compute by** and 112
  - group by** and 107
  - indexing and 411
  - select** and 105–106
  - union** and 121
- outer joins 140–163
- See also* joins
  - ANSI syntax 149–150
  - converting outer joins with join-order dependency (ANSI syntax) 157–160
  - how predicates are evaluated in Transact-SQL outer joins 158
  - nested outer joins (ANSI syntax) 155–157
  - on** clause (ANSI syntax) 151–155
  - on clause in nested outer join (ANSI syntax) 156–157
  - operators 129, 161–163
  - parentheses in nested outer joins (ANSI syntax) 156
  - placement of predicate (ANSI syntax) 151–155
  - position of the **on** clause in a nested outer join (ANSI syntax) 156–157
  - restrictions 141
  - restrictions for the **where** clause (ANSI syntax) 153–155
  - roles of inner tables (ANSI syntax) 148
  - where** clause (ANSI syntax) 151–155
- outer tables
- predicate restrictions (ANSI syntax) 151–152
- output** option 507–511
- overflow errors
- arithmetic 402
  - data and time conversion 400
  - set arithabort** and 403
- P**
- @@pack\_received** global variable 482
- @@pack\_sent** global variable 482
- @@packet\_errors** global variable 482
- padding, data
- null values and 235
  - underscores in temporary table names 240
- pages, data
- allocation of 368
  - data\_pgs** system function 367
  - reserved\_pgs** system function 368
  - used for internal structures 368
  - used in a table or an index 367, 368
  - used\_pgs** system function 368
- pair of columns.
- See common keys; joins*
- @@parallel\_degree** global variable 480
- parameters, procedure 490–496
- delimited identifiers not allowed 9
  - maximum number 512

- parameters, using defaults 494
- parentheses ()
  - See also Symbols section of this index*
- in arithmetic statements 52
- in an expression 13
- in system functions 369
- passwords 36
  - changing 33
- patindex** string function 373
  - See also* wildcard characters
- datatypes for 371
- examples of using 375–376
- text/image* function 382
- pattern matching 377
  - charindex** string function 375
  - difference** string function 378
  - patindex** string function 375
- percent sign (%)
  - modulo operator 14, 49–53
- performance
  - indexes and 411
  - log placement and 226
  - stored procedures and 489
  - transactions and 627
  - triggers and 579
  - variable assignment and 472
- period (.)
  - separator for qualifier names 10
- permissions 37, 221, 224
  - assigning 293
  - create procedure** 489
  - data modification 304
  - database object owners 336
  - readtext** and column 235
  - referential integrity 259
  - stored procedures 488, 514
  - system procedures 515–517
  - triggers and 577, 582
  - views 344, 359–360
  - writetext** and column 235
- phantoms in transactions 639
- pi** mathematical function 387
- placeholders
  - print** message 465
- plus (+)
  - arithmetic operator 14, 49–53
- null values and 76
- string concatenation operator 16, 379
- pointers
  - text or image* column 332
- positioning cursors 586
- pound sign (#) temporary table name prefix 230, 239, 241
- pound sterling sign (£)
  - in identifiers 8
  - in money datatypes 312
- power** mathematical function 387
- precedence
  - of lower and higher datatypes 18
  - of operators in expressions 14
- precision, datatype
  - exact numeric types 313
- predicate
  - placement in outer join (ANSI syntax) 151–155
- primary keys 297, 556–557
  - constraints 255
  - dropping 560–561
  - indexing on 411, 417
  - referential integrity and 556, 560
  - updating 562–566
- print** command 465–466, 467–468
- privileges.
  - See* permissions
- proc\_role** system function 506
- procedure calls, remote 34
- procedures.
  - See* remote procedure calls; stored procedures;
  - system procedures
- processes (Server tasks)
  - infected 469
- processexit** keyword, **waitfor** 469
- processing cursors 586
- @@procid** global variable 483
- projection
  - See also* **select** command
  - distinct views 347
  - queries 3
  - views 344
- publishers* table
  - pubs2* database 671
  - pubs3* database 701
- pubs2* database 38, 671–699

changing data in 305  
 diagram 699  
 guest user in 221  
 organization chart 699  
 table names 671  
 using in examples xx  
*pubs3* database 38, 701–733  
 table names 701  
 punctuation  
 enclosing in quotation marks 215

## Q

**qq.**

*See* **quarter** date part

qualifying  
 column names in joins 126  
 column names in subqueries 171  
 database objects 10  
 object names within stored procedures 512  
 table names 230  
**quarter** date part 391  
 queries 2, 3  
 nesting subqueries 172  
 optimizing 489  
 projection 3  
 query processing 486  
 quotation marks ()  
 for empty strings 18  
 quotation marks (“ ”)  
 comparison operators and 17  
 for empty strings 318  
 enclosing column headings 47–48  
 enclosing parameter values 493  
 enclosing values 204, 306–307  
 in expressions 18  
 literal specification of 18  
 quoted identifiers 9

## R

**radians** mathematical function 387  
 radians, conversion to degrees 387  
**raiserror** command 466

**rand** mathematical function 387  
 range queries 61, 412  
 using < and > 61  
 read-only cursors 590, 595  
**readpast** option 665–669  
 isolation levels and 666  
**readtext** command 54  
 isolation levels and 642  
 and views 351  
**readtext** command (advanced) 383  
*real* datatype 203, 313  
*real datatype*  
*See also* datatypes; numeric data records, table.  
*See* rows, table  
 recovery 659–660  
 backing up databases 267  
 log placement and 226  
 temporary tables and 240  
 time and transaction size 659  
 transactions and 626  
 reference information  
 datatypes 199  
 Transact-SQL functions 365  
**references** constraint 257  
 referencing 524–525  
 referential integrity 256–259, 304  
*See also* data integrity; triggers  
 constraints 252, 256  
**create schema** command 258  
 cross-referencing tables 258  
 general rules 259  
 IDENTITY columns 237  
 maximum references allowed 258  
 tips 261  
 triggers for 556–557  
 regulations  
 batches 442  
 identifiers 6  
 relational expressions 19  
*See also* comparison operators  
 relational model, joins and 125  
 relational operations 3  
 relational operators 128  
 remarks text.  
*See* comments

- remote procedure calls 12–13, 34, 502–503  
syntax for 487  
user-defined transactions 654, 659  
remote servers 12–13, 34, 502–503, 517  
Component Integration Services 26  
**execute** and 487  
non-Sybase 26  
system procedures affecting 516  
removing.  
    *See* dropping  
renaming  
    *See also* naming  
    database objects 291–292  
    stored procedures 513  
    tables 291–292, 354  
    views 353, 354  
repeating subquery.  
    *See* subqueries  
**replicate** string function 373  
repositioning cursors 589, 598  
**reserved\_pgs** system function 368  
restoring  
    sample databases 38  
restrictions 3  
    *See also* **select** command  
results  
    cursor result set 585  
retrieving  
    null values 73  
retrieving data.  
    *See* queries  
**return** command 464, 505  
return parameters 507–511  
return status 503–506  
**reverse** string function 373  
**revoke** command 293  
**right** string function 373, 379  
right-justification of **str** function 377  
roles  
    **show\_role** security function 406  
    stored procedures and 506  
roles, user-defined 294  
**rollback** command 630–631  
    *See also* transactions  
    *See also* Transactions  
    in stored procedures 658  
triggers and 572, 658  
**rollback trigger** command 572  
**round** mathematical function 387  
rounding  
    approximate numeric datatypes 203  
    converting money values 399  
    `datetime` values 204  
    money values 203  
    **str** string function and 376  
row aggregates 108  
    compared to aggregate functions 111  
    **compute** and 21, 111  
    **group by** clause and 112  
    views and 354  
**rowcnt** system function 368  
@@rowcount global variable 480  
cursors and 601  
triggers and 559  
rows, table 3  
    *See also* triggers  
    adding 315–327  
    changing 327–332  
    choosing 41, 58  
    copying 327  
    dropping 333–335  
    duplicate 118, 420–421  
    number of 368  
    summary 108–111  
    unique 421  
**roysched** table  
    **pubs2** database 690–694  
    **pubs3** database 726–730  
RPCs (remote procedure calls).  
    *See* remote procedure calls  
**rtrim** string function 373  
rules 23, 317, 434  
    *See also* database objects  
    binding 436–438  
    column definition conflict with 76  
    creating new 435  
    datatypes and 216  
    dropping user-defined 439  
    naming user-created 435  
    null values and 233  
    precedence 437  
    source text 438

specifying values with 435  
 testing 428, 434  
 triggers and 552  
 unbinding 438  
 and views 342, 343  
 violations in user transaction 654  
 with temporary constraints 437

## S

*sales* table  
*pubs2* database 688  
*pubs3* database 719  
*salesdetail* table  
*pubs2* database 683–688  
*pubs3* database 713–719  
 sample databases. *See* *pubs2* database; *pubs3* database  
**save transaction** command 630–631  
*See also* transactions  
*See also* Transactions  
 savepoints 630  
 setting using **save transaction** 624  
 scalar aggregates 83, 94  
`@@scan_parallel_degree` global variable 480  
 schemas 258  
 scope of cursors 592  
 screen messages 465–468  
 search conditions 58  
**second** date part 391  
 security  
*See also* permissions  
 stored procedures as 488, 514  
 views and 339, 359–360  
 security functions 406–407  
 seed values  
**rand** function 387  
**set identity\_insert** and 321  
 segments, placing objects on 232, 413, 419, 422  
**select \* command** 44–45, 127  
 limitations 326–327  
 new columns and limitations 498  
**select command** 3, 41, 42–78  
*See also* joins; subqueries; views  
 Boolean expressions in 449  
 character data in 71

character strings in display 48  
 choosing columns 42  
 choosing rows 41, 58  
 column headings 46  
 column order in 45  
 combining results of 117–122  
 computing in 48–53  
**create view** and 344  
 creating tables for results 266–268  
 database object names and 43  
 displaying results of 42, 45–48  
 with **distinct** 56–57  
 eliminating duplicate rows with 55–57  
**for browse** 612  
**if...else** keyword and 448  
*image* data 53–383  
 inserting data with 315, 316, 324–327  
 isolation levels and 642  
 matching character strings with 65–71  
 quotation marks in 47–48  
 reserved words in 48  
*text* data 53–383  
 variable assignment and 463–476  
 variable assignment and multiple row results 473  
 and views 354  
 wildcard characters in 66–69  
**select distinct query, group by** and 107  
**select distinct query, order by** and 107  
**select into** command 266–268  
**compute** and 111  
 IDENTITY columns and 270–271  
 not allowed in cursors 590  
 temporary table 242  
**union** and 121  
**select into/bulkcopy/plisort** database option  
**select into** and 266  
**writetext** and 332  
**select list** 55, 125–127  
 subqueries using 190  
**union** statements 117, 119  
 selections.  
*See* **select** command  
 self-joins 134–135  
 compared to subqueries 172  
 server cursors 591  
 server user name and ID

**suser\_id** function 368  
**suser\_name** function for 368  
@@servername global variable 483  
servers  
executing remote procedures on 34  
permissions for remote logins 34  
**set** command  
chained transaction mode 28  
character string truncation and 29  
inside a stored procedure 500  
transaction isolation levels and 640  
within **update** 329  
set theory operations 192–193  
**setuser** command 224, 293  
severity levels, error  
user-defined messages 467  
shareable temporary tables 239  
**shared** keyword  
cursors and 610  
locking and 643  
**show\_role** system function 406  
**show\_sec\_services** security function 406  
**sign** mathematical function 387  
**sin** mathematical function 388  
size  
column 366  
database 225, 227–228  
size of columns, by datatype 200  
slash (/)  
division operator 14, 49  
slash asterisk (\*) comment keyword 470  
*smalldatetime* datatype 203  
    *See also* *datetime* datatype; *timestamp* datatype  
converting 405  
date functions and 395–396  
entry format 307, 390  
operations on 389–395  
storage of 390  
*smallint* datatype 314  
    *See also* *int* datatype; *tinyint* datatype  
*smallmoney* datatype 203, 214  
    *See also* *money* datatype  
entry format 312  
sort order  
    *See also* **order by** clause  
comparison operators and 17  
  
**order by** and 105  
**sorted\_data** option, **create index** 421–422  
**soundex** string function 373, 377  
source text 4  
    encrypting 5  
**sp\_addextendedproc** system procedure 545  
**sp\_addmessage** system procedure 467–468  
**sp\_addtype** system procedure 199, 215, 240  
**sp\_binddefault** system procedure 216, 430–432  
    batches using 443  
**sp\_bindrule** system procedure 216, 436–438  
    batches using 443  
**sp\_changegbowner** system procedure 224  
**sp\_commonkey** system procedure 165  
**sp\_dboption** system procedure  
    transactions and 628  
**sp\_depends** system procedure 362, 524–525, 584  
**sp\_displaylogin** system procedure 33  
**sp\_dropextendedproc** system procedure 546  
**sp\_dropsegment** system procedure 228  
**sp\_droptype** system procedure 217  
**sp\_extendsegment** system procedure 228  
**sp\_foreignkey** system procedure 165, 297, 556  
**sp\_freedll** system procedure 529  
**sp\_getmessage** system procedure 467–468  
**sp\_help** system procedure 294–297  
    IDENTITY columns and 348  
**sp\_helpconstraint** system procedure 297  
**sp\_helpdb** system procedure 294  
**sp\_helpdevice** system procedure 225  
**sp\_helpextendedproc** system procedure 548  
**sp\_helpindex** system procedure 423  
**sp\_helpjoins** system procedure 165, 556  
**sp\_helpprotect** system procedure 525  
**sp\_helptext** system procedure  
    defaults 440  
    procedures 488, 523  
    rules 440  
    triggers 582, 583  
**sp\_helpuser** system procedure 32  
**sp\_modifylogin** system procedure 223  
**sp\_monitor** system procedure 482  
**sp\_password** system procedure 33  
    remote servers and 35  
**sp\_primarykey** system procedure 556  
**sp\_proxmode** system procedure 656

- sp\_recompile** system procedure 489  
**sp\_rename** system procedure 291–292, 353, 513  
**sp\_spaceused** system procedure 299  
**sp\_unbindefault** system procedure 432  
**sp\_unbindrule** system procedure 438  
**space**  
  database storage 227–228  
  estimating table and index size 299  
  freeing with **truncate table** 336  
  for index pages 299  
**space** string function 373  
**spaces, character**  
  empty strings (“ ”) or (‘ ’) as 18, 318  
**special characters** 7  
**speed (Server)**  
  of recovery 659  
**@@spid** global variable 483  
**SQL standards** 27  
  **set** options for 24, 27  
  transactions 646  
**SQL.**  
  *See* Transact-SQL  
**@@sqlstatus** global variable 479, 599  
**sqrt** mathematical function 388  
**SRV\_PROC** structure 534  
**ss.**  
  *See also* **second** date part  
**statements** 2, 6  
  statement blocks (**begin...end**) 460  
  timed execution of statement blocks 468  
**store\_employees** table, *pubs3* database 721–726  
**stored procedures** 21, 485–488  
  *See also* system procedures; triggers  
  access permissions on 293  
  checking for roles in 506  
  compiling 486  
  control-of-flow language 447–471  
  creating 503–511  
  cursors within 607  
  default parameters 492–495  
  dependencies 524–525  
  dropping 514  
  grouping 497  
  information on 522  
  isolation levels 655  
  local variables and 472  
  modes 655  
  naming 11–13  
  nesting 499  
  object owner names in 513  
  parameters 490, 496  
  permissions on 488, 514  
  renaming 513  
  results display 487  
  return parameters 507–511  
  return status 503–506  
**rollback** in 658  
  as security mechanisms 488, 514  
  source text 502  
  storage of 488  
  temporary tables and 241, 512  
  timed execution of 468  
  transactions and 648–657  
**with recompile** 498  
**stores** table  
  *pubs2* database 689  
  *pubs3* database 720  
**str** string function 374, 376  
**string functions** 371–381  
  concatenating 379–381  
  examples 375–379  
  nesting 371, 381  
  testing similar 378  
**string\_tr truncation** option, **set** 29  
**strings**  
  concatenating 16, 371, 379–381  
  empty 205, 381  
  matching with **like** 65–71  
  truncating 306  
**Structured Query Language (SQL)** 1  
**stuff** string function 374, 377  
**subqueries** 167  
  *See also* joins  
  *See also* Joins  
  aggregate functions and 178, 179  
  **all** keyword and 177, 181, 190  
  **any** keyword and 19, 177, 182, 190  
  column names in 171  
  comparison operators in 176–182, 190  
  comparison operators in correlated 196–198  
  correlated or repeating 194–198  
  correlation names in 171, 196

- datatypes not allowed in 169  
**delete** statements using 173  
**exists** keyword in 189–193  
in expressions 19  
expressions, replacing with 175  
**group by** clause in 179, 197–198  
**having** clause in 179, 198  
**in** keyword and 63, 183, 185–188, 190  
**insert** statements using 173  
joins as 137  
joins compared to 186–188  
manipulating results in 169  
modified comparison operators and 180, 190  
nesting 172  
**not exists** keyword and 192–193  
**not in** keyword and 188–189  
not-equal joins and 137–138  
null values and 168  
**order by** and 106  
repeating 194–198  
restrictions on 168  
**select** lists for 190  
syntax 168–176  
types 176  
unmodified comparison operators and 176–179  
**update** statements using 173  
**where** clause and 169, 187, 189  
**substring** string function 374  
subtraction operator (-) 14, 49–53  
suffix names, temporary table 240  
**sum** aggregate function 82, 385  
    *See also* aggregate functions  
    as row aggregate 111  
summary rows 108–111  
summary values 21, 81  
    aggregate functions and 108  
    triggers and 568–570  
**suser\_id** system function 368  
**suser\_name** system function 368  
**syb\_identity** keyword 238, 347  
    IDENTITY columns and 238, 321  
**sybsystemdb** database 222  
**sybsystemprocs** database 515, 547  
symbols  
    *See also* wildcard characters; *Symbols section of this index*
- arithmetic operator 14, 49  
bitwise operator 49  
comparison operator 17, 59, 60  
matching character strings 66  
money 312  
in SQL statements xxiv  
synonyms  
    datatype 200  
    keywords 30  
    **out** for **output** 511
- syntax  
    Transact-SQL 6–13  
*syscolumns* table 211  
*syscomments* table 488, 582  
*sysdatabases* table 224  
*sysdevices* table 225  
*syskeys* table 165, 556  
*syslogs* table 659  
*sysmessages* table  
    **raiserror** and 466  
*sysname* custom datatype 211  
*sysobjects* table 296–297  
*sysprocedures* table 582  
*sysprocesses* table 469  
System Administrator  
    database ownership 224  
    user ID 366  
system datatypes.  
    *See* datatypes  
system extended stored procedures 547–548  
system functions  
    examples 365, 369–371  
    syntax 365, 369  
system procedures 22, 514–516  
    *See also* stored procedures; *individual procedure names*  
    data definition 518  
    delimited identifiers not allowed as parameters 9  
    isolation level 646  
    for login management 516  
    not allowed in user-defined transactions 629  
    re-optimizing queries with 489  
    security administration 516  
    system administration 520  
    on temporary tables 242  
    viewing text of 524

system tables 221, 341  
*See also* tables; *individual table names*  
 dropping 292–293  
 system procedures and 515  
 triggers and 578, 582–584  
**sys.types** table 212, 296, 297  
**sys.usages** table 224  
**sysusermessages** table 467  
**sysusers** table 221

## T

table columns.  
*See* columns  
 table pages  
   system functions 367, 368  
 table rows.  
*See* rows, table  
 table-level constraints 252  
 tables 3, 228–242  
*See also* database objects; triggers; views  
 access permissions on 293  
 allowed in a **from** clause 57, 127  
 changing 272–292  
 correlation names 58, 134, 171  
 correlation names in subqueries 196  
 creating new 262–272  
 dependent 560  
 designing 262  
 dropping 292–293  
 IDENTITY column 235–236  
 inner 140  
**isnull** system function and 319  
 joins of 123–165  
 names, in joins 127, 134  
 naming 7–12, 58, 230  
 outer 140  
 renaming 291–292  
 row copying in 327  
 space used by 299  
 tables, temporary.  
*See* temporary tables  
**tan** mathematical function 388  
**tempdb** database 222  
 temporary tables 7, 58

*See also* tables; *tempdb* database  
**create table** and 230, 239–240  
 creating 239–240  
 naming 7, 230, 240  
**select into** and 242, 266–268  
 stored procedures and 512  
 triggers and 240, 577  
 views not permitted on 240, 342  
**text**  
   line continuation with backslash () 19  
**text** datatype 208  
*See also* datatypes  
 changing with **writetext** 332  
 Component Integration Services 208  
 converting 399  
 entry rules 306  
 initializing with null values 235  
 inserting 315  
 length of data returned 24  
**like** and 65, 67  
 operations on 371, 382–384  
 prohibited actions on 106  
 selecting 53–383  
 selecting in views 351  
 subqueries using 169  
 triggers and 578  
**union** not allowed on 122  
 updating 328  
 updating in views 355  
**where** clause and 59, 67  
**text** functions 382–384  
**text** pointer values 332  
@**@textcolid** global variable 484  
@**@textdbid** global variable 484  
@**@textobjid** global variable 484  
**textptr** function 382, 384  
@**@textptr** global variable 484  
@**@textsize** global variable 53, 480, 484  
**textsize** option, **set** 382  
@**@textts** global variable 484  
**textvalid** function 382  
The 26  
theta joins 129  
*See also* joins  
@**@thresh\_hysteresis** global variable 483  
thresholds

- last-chance 368
- time interval, execution 469
- time** option, **waitfor** 469
- time values
  - See also* dates; *datetime* datatype; *smalldatetime* datatype
  - display format 390
  - entry format 307–308
  - functions on 389–392
  - like** and 311
  - searching for 311
  - storage 389
- timestamp** datatype 211
  - See also* *datetime* datatype; *smalldatetime* datatype
  - browse mode and 612
  - comparing timestamp values 614
  - comparison using **tsequal** function 368
  - inserting data and 314
  - skipping 316
- timestamp tsequal** function 614
- @@timeticks** global variable 483
- timing
  - @@error** status check 477
- tinyint** datatype 314
  - See also* *int* datatype; *smallint* datatype
- titleauthor** table
  - pubs2* database 681–683
  - pubs3* database 711
- titles** table
  - pubs2* database 674–681
  - pubs3* database 704–711
- to\_unichar** string function 374
- @@total\_errors** global variable 482
- @@total\_read** global variable 482
- @@total\_write** global variable 482
- totals
  - See also* aggregate functions
  - grand (**compute** without **by**) 115
  - with **compute** clause 109
- @@tranchained** global variable 480
- @@trancount** global variable 478, 634
- transaction isolation levels
  - readpast** option and 666
  - transaction logs 659
    - on a separate device 226
    - size 226
- writetext** and 332
- transactions 305, 623–660
  - cancelling 658
  - Component Integration Services 626
  - cursors and 657
  - isolation levels 28, 636
  - locking 626
  - modes 28, 636
  - names not used in nested 632
  - naming 629
  - nesting levels 633, 649
  - number of databases allowed 659
  - performance and 627
  - recovery and 626, 660
  - SQL standards compliance 646
  - states 632
  - stored procedures and 631
  - stored procedures and triggers 648
  - timed execution 468
  - @@transtate** global variable 632
  - triggers and 572, 631
- Transact-SQL
  - enhancements to 20–26
  - extensions 25–26
- translation
  - of integer arguments into binary numbers 15
- @@transtate** global variable 478
- transtate global variable 632–633
- trigger tables 554, 557
  - dropping 582
- triggers 23, 551–584
  - See also* database objects; stored procedures
  - Component Integration Services 578
  - creating 553–555
  - dropping 582
  - help on 582
  - on *image* columns 578
  - naming 554
  - nested 574–576
  - nested, and **rollback trigger** 573
  - null values and 578–579
  - object renaming and 580
  - performance and 579
  - permissions and 577, 582
  - recursion 575
  - restrictions on 555, 577

**rollback** in 658  
 rolling back 572  
 rules and 552  
 self-recursion 575  
**set** commands in 580  
 storage 582  
 summary values and 568–570  
 system tables and 578, 582–584  
 temporary tables and 577  
 test tables 557–559  
 on *text* columns 578  
 transactions and 572, 648–657  
**truncate table** command and 578  
 views and 342, 343, 577  
 trigonometric functions 387  
 TRUE, return value of 189  
**truncate table** command 336  
 referential integrity and 259  
 triggers and 578  
 truncation  
   binary datatypes 312  
   character string 29  
   **str** conversion and 377  
   temporary table names 240  
 truth tables  
   logical expressions 20  
**tsequal** system function 368, 614

## U

**uhighsurr** string function 374  
**ulowsurr** string function 374  
 unbinding  
   defaults 432  
   rules 438  
 unchained transaction mode 636  
 underscore (\_)  
   in temporary table names 240  
 Unichar data 205  
**unichar** datatype 204–206  
   **like** and 65  
   operations on 371–381  
**union** operator 117–122, 595  
 unique constraints 252, 255  
 unique indexes 414, 420

**unique** keyword 414  
 duplicate data from 420  
**univarchar** datatype  
   **like** and 65  
   operations on 371–381  
 unknown values.  
   *See* null values  
 updatable cursors 595  
**update** command 327–332, 356  
   cursors and 602  
   duplicate data from 420, 421  
   *image* data and 210  
   multitable views 355  
   null values and 234, 235, 319  
   rules and 428  
   subqueries using 173  
   *text* data and 208  
   triggers and 557–558, 562–568, 578  
   views and 142, 346, 354  
**update partition statistics** command 426  
**update statistics** command 425  
   with Component Integration Services 425  
 updating  
   *See also* changing; data modification  
   in browse mode 368, 612  
   cursor rows 602  
   cursors 588  
   foreign keys 567–568  
   *image* datatype 328  
   index statistics 425  
   partition statistics 426  
   prevention during browse mode 368  
   primary keys 562–566  
   *text* datatype 328  
   using join operations 331  
**upper** string function 374, 379  
**uscalar** string function 375  
**use** command 223  
   batches using 442  
   **create procedure** with 511  
**used\_pgs** system function 368  
 user databases 222  
 user IDs 366  
   **user\_id** function for 369  
   **valid\_user** function 369  
**user** keyword

**create table** 254  
system function 368  
user names  
  defined 369  
  finding 368  
**user** system function 368  
**user\_id** system function 369  
**user\_name** system function 366, 369, 370  
user-defined datatypes 215  
  altering columns 287  
  defaults and 233, 430–432  
  dropping a column with 287  
  IDENTITY columns and 217, 236  
  modifying columns with 287  
  rules and 215–216, 436–438  
  `sysname` as 211  
  temporary tables and 242  
  `timestamp` as 211  
user-defined procedures 485–525  
user-defined roles 294  
user-defined transactions.  
  *See* transactions  
users  
  adding 222  
  management 516  
**using** option, **readtext** 383

## V

**valid\_name** system function 369  
  checking strings with 8  
**valid\_user** system function 369  
values  
  IDENTITY columns 235  
  null 232  
**values** option, **insert** 315  
**varbinary** datatype 209  
  *See also* binary data; datatypes  
  “0x” prefix 312  
  **like** and 65  
  operations on 371–381  
**varchar** datatype 205  
  *See also* character data; datatypes  
  entry rules 306  
  in expressions 18

**like** and 65  
operations on 371–381  
variable-length columns  
  compared to fixed-length 205  
  null values in 234  
variables  
  comparing 475–476  
  declaring 472–476  
  global 477–484, 512  
  in **update** statements 330  
  last row assignment 473  
  local 463–476, 512  
  printing values 473  
vector aggregates 88  
  nesting 94  
**@@version** global variable 483  
views 337, 341  
  *See also* database objects  
access permissions on 293  
advantages 338  
aggregate functions and 354  
allowed in a **from** clause 57, 127  
column names 342  
computed columns and 355  
creating 341  
data modification and 354  
datatypes and 342  
  defaults and 342, 343  
dependent 352  
**distinct** and 343  
dropping 359  
functions and 345  
help on 360  
IDENTITY columns and 358–359  
indexes and 342, 343  
**insert** and 349–350  
joins and 123, 345  
keys and 342  
naming 10–12  
permissions on 344, 359–360  
projection of distinct 347  
projections 344  
querying 350  
**readtext** and 351  
redefining 352  
references 362

renaming 353  
 renaming columns 343  
 resolution 350, 351  
 restrictions 354–359  
 retrieving data through 350  
 rules and 342, 343  
 security and 339  
 source text 348  
 temporary tables and 240, 342, 343  
 triggers and 240, 342, 343, 577  
**union** and 122  
**update** and 349–350  
 updates not allowed 355  
**with check option** 142, 346, 349–350, 354, 357  
 with joins 142, 346  
 and **writetext** 351

## W

**waitfor** command 468–469  
**week** date part 391  
**weekday** date part 391  
**when...then** conditions  
 in **case** expressions 450, 454  
**where** clause  
 aggregate functions not permitted in 83  
 compared to **having** 99  
**group by** clause and 96–97  
 in outer join (ANSI syntax) 151–155  
**join** and 132  
 joins and 128  
**like** and 67  
 null values in a 74  
 search conditions in 58  
 skeleton table creation with 268  
 subqueries using 169, 187, 189  
*text* data and 59, 67  
**update** 330  
**where current of** clause 602, 603  
**while** keyword 460–463  
 wildcard characters  
 default parameters using 495  
 in a **like** match string 66–71  
 searching for 68  
**with check option** option

views and 349–350  
**with log** option, **writetext** 305  
**with recompile** option  
**create procedure** 498  
**execute** 498  
**wk.**  
*See week* date part  
**work** keyword (transactions) 630  
 write-ahead log 659  
**writetext** command 332  
 and views 351, 355  
**with log** option 305

## X

XP Server 22, 528–529, 549  
**xp\_cmdshell context** configuration parameter 532  
**xp\_cmdshell** system extended stored procedure 547  
**xp\_cmdshell context** configuration parameter and 532  
**xpserver** utility command 549

## Y

**year** date part 391  
 yen sign (¥)  
 in identifiers 8  
 in money datatypes 312  
**yy.**  
*See year* date part

## Z

zeros  
 using NULL or 318

